Canon

How to Use This Manual
Printing This Manual

MG8100 series

On-screen Manual

MC-5160-V1.00



Basic Guide

Describes the summary of this product.

Advanced Guide

Describes the detailed function of this product.

Troubleshooting

Canon

How to Use This Manual
Printing This Manual
About Disc Label Printing

MP-5035-V1.00



Advanced Guide

Contents

Overview of the Machine

Main Components
How to Navigate Menus on the LCD

Printing Photos

Printing Photos Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive
Using Various Functions
Inserting the Memory Card
Inserting the USB Flash Drive

Copying

Making Copies
Using Various Copy Functions

Reprinting Photos from Printed Photos

Reprinting Printed Photos
Printing Photos from Films
Loading the Films
Using Various Functions

Scanning

Saving Scanned Data to the Computer
Using Various Scan Functions

Printing from Your Computer

Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)
Printing Documents
Printing Web Pages (Easy-WebPrint EX)
Starting Various Software Applications

Other Usages

Printing PDF Files Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive
Printing the Template Forms such as Notebook Paper
Printing Photos Directly from Your Digital Camera or Mobile Phone
Machine Settings

Loading Paper / Originals

Loading Paper
Loading Originals

Routine Maintenance

Replacing an Ink Tank
When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect
Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller
Cleaning the Pad in the Cassette

Appendix

Legal Limitations on Use of Your Product and Use of Images
Tips on How to Use Your Machine

Overview of the Machine

This section shows the component names of the machine and describes the basic operations you need to know before using it.

Main Components

Front View
Rear View
Inside View
Operation Panel

How to Navigate Menus on the LCD

Using the Operation Panel
Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen
Selecting a Menu or Setting Item
Other Operations



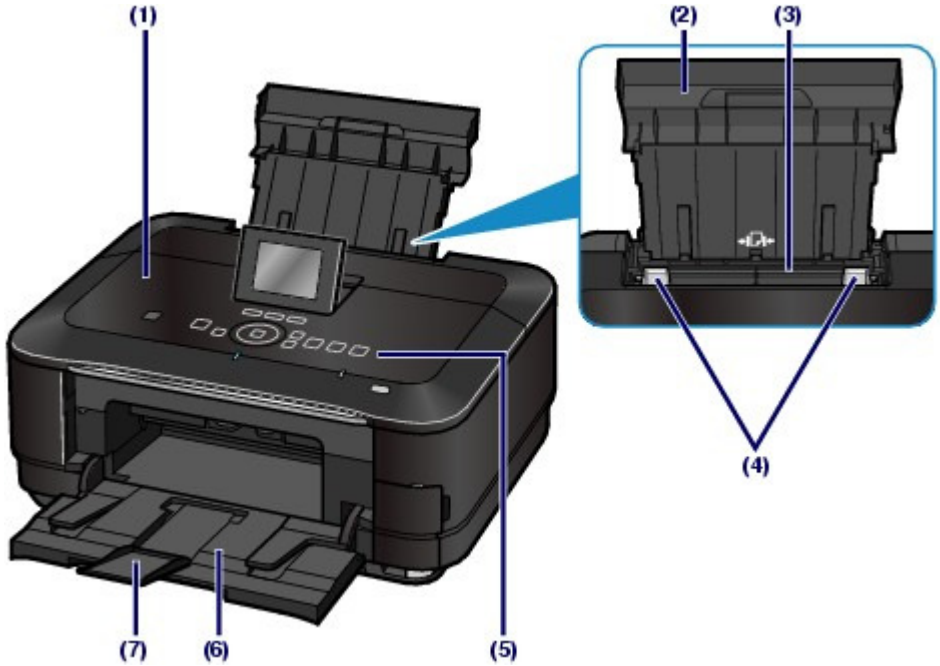
Page top

C001

Main Components

Front View
Rear View
Inside View
Operation Panel

■ Front View



(1) Document Cover

Open to load an original on the Platen Glass.

(2) Paper Support

Raise and tip back to load paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Rear Tray

Load photo paper or envelopes which you can use on the machine. Two or more sheets of the same size and type of paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

See Loading Paper .

(4) Paper Guides

Slide to align with both sides of the paper stack.

(5) Operation Panel

Use to change the settings of the machine or to operate it.

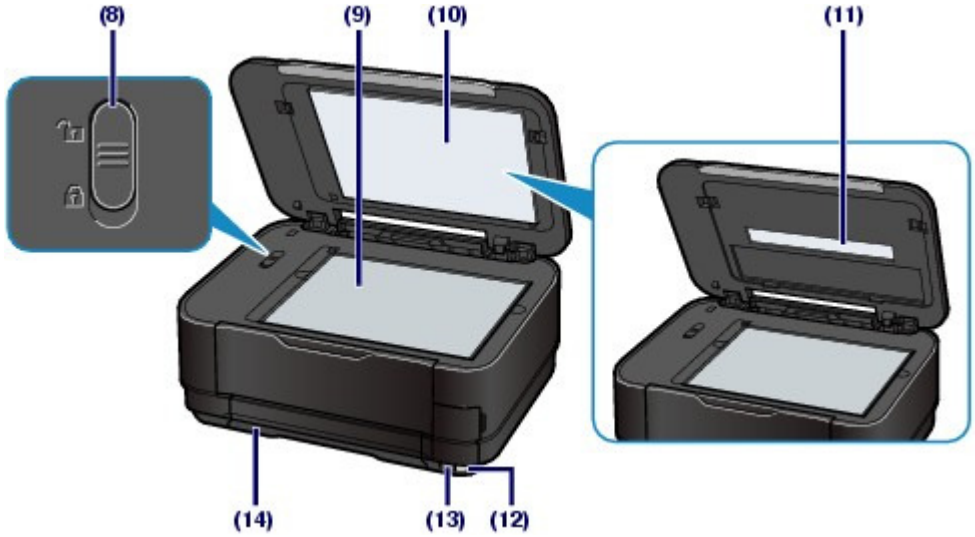
See Operation Panel .

(6) Paper Output Tray

Opens automatically when printing or copying starts and printed paper is ejected.

(7) Output Tray Extension

Open to support the printouts. Open it when printing or copying.



(8) Scanner Lock Switch

Locks the scanner to prevent sliding or damage when transporting the machine. Be sure to unlock it before turning the power on.

(9) Platen Glass

Load an original to copy or scan.

(10) FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet

Protects the FAU lamp and the Platen Glass. The Film Guide used for scanning film can be stored behind the FAU Protective Sheet.

See Loading the Films .

(11) FAU (Film Adapter Unit) lamp

Lights up the film when scanning films.

(12) Infrared Port

Use this port to print from a mobile phone with wireless infrared communication.

See Printing Photos from a Wireless Communication Device .

(13) Direct Print Port

Connect a PictBridge compliant device such as a digital camera or the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30* to print directly.

See Printing Photos Directly from Your Digital Camera or Mobile Phone.

You can also insert a USB flash drive to this port.

See Inserting the USB Flash Drive .

* The Bluetooth Unit is not available in some countries or regions depending on the local laws and regulations. For details, contact the service center.

Warning

- Do not connect any equipment other than PictBridge compliant devices, the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30, and USB flash drives to the Direct Print Port of the machine. This may cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.

Important

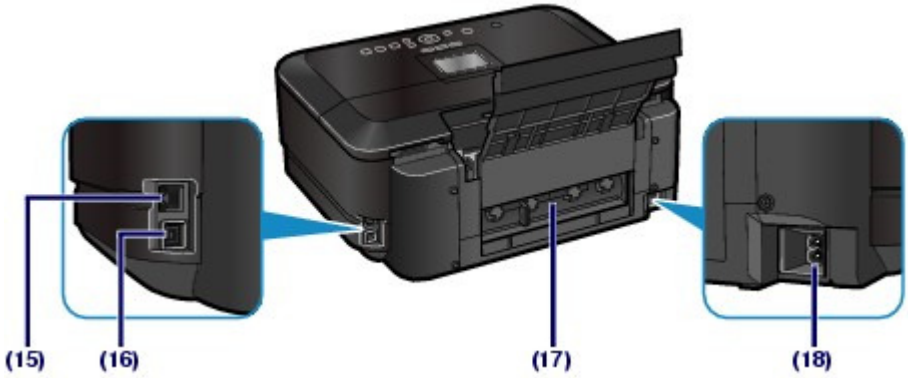
- Do not touch the metal casing.
- Do not use the USB cable longer than around 10 feet / 3 meters to connect any PictBridge compliant device to the machine since it may affect the operation of other peripheral devices.

(14) Cassette

Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper and insert it into the machine. Two or more sheets of the same size of plain paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

See Loading Paper .

■ Rear View



(15) Wired LAN Connector

Plug in the LAN cable to connect the machine to a LAN.

Important

- Do not touch the metal casing.

Note

- Remove the LAN connector cap before connecting the LAN cable.

(16) USB Port

Plug in the USB cable to connect the machine with a computer.

Important

- Do not touch the metal casing.
- Do not plug in or unplug the USB cable while the machine is printing or scanning originals with the computer.

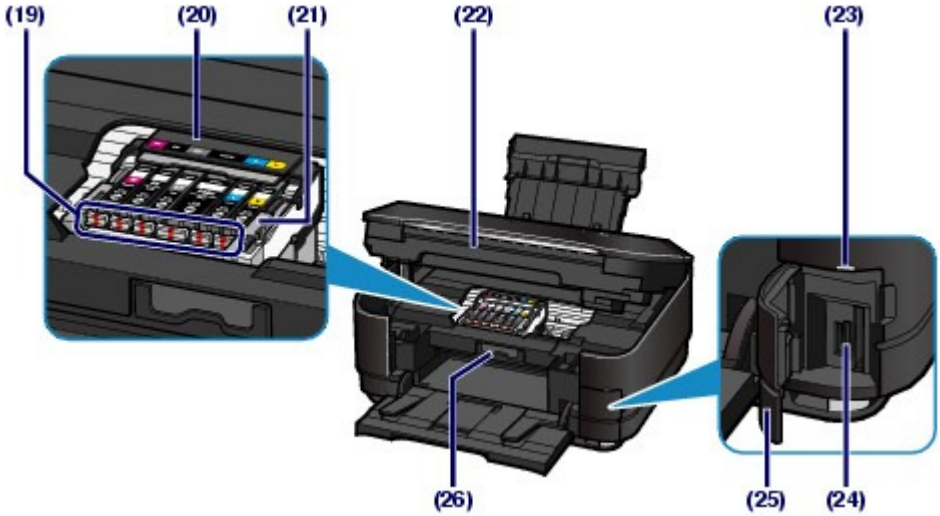
(17) Rear Cover

Detach to remove jammed paper.

(18) Power Cord Connector

Plug in the supplied power cord.

■ Inside View



(19) Ink lamps

Light or flash red to indicate the ink tank status.

See Checking the Ink Status .

(20) Print Head Holder
Install the Print Head.

(21) Print Head Lock Lever
Locks the Print Head into place.

Important

- Do not raise this lever after installing the Print Head.

(22) Scanning Unit (Cover)
Scans originals. Open it to replace ink tanks, to check ink lamps, or to remove jammed paper inside the machine. When opening the Scanning Unit (Cover), lift it with the Document Cover closed.

(23) Access lamp
Lights or flashes to indicate the memory card status.

See Inserting the Memory Card .

(24) Card Slot
Insert a memory card.

See Inserting the Memory Card .

(25) Card Slot Cover
Open to insert a memory card.

See Inserting the Memory Card .

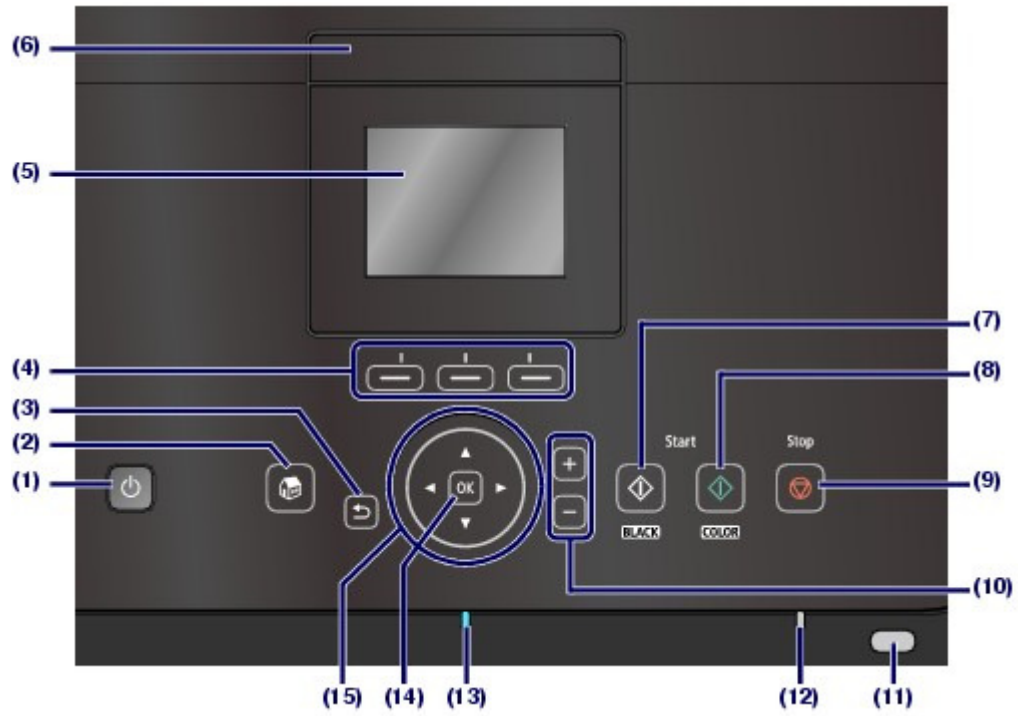
(26) Inner Cover
Close it when printing on paper.

Note

- For details on installing the Print Head and ink tanks, refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.

■ Operation Panel

* The illustration below shows all Operation Panel lit for explanatory purposes.
Except for the **ON** button, only available buttons will be lit.



(1) ON button

Turns the power on or off. Before turning on the power, make sure that the Document Cover is closed.

Important

Disconnecting the power plug

- When disconnecting the power plug after turning off the power, be sure to confirm that the **POWER** lamp is not lit. If the power plug is disconnected from the wall outlet while the **POWER** lamp is lit or flashing, the machine may become unable to print properly since the Print Head is not protected.

(2) HOME button

Used to display the HOME screen.

See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

(3) Back button

Returns the LCD to the previous screen.

(4) Function buttons

Used to select menus on the HOME screen or select a function menu displayed at the bottom of the LCD.

See Selecting a Menu or Setting Item .

(5) LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)

Displays messages, menu items, and the operational status. You can also preview photos on the LCD before printing.

Note

- The display of the LCD and buttons on the Operation Panel will turn off if the machine is not operated for about 5 minutes. To restore the display, touch any button except the **ON** button. This will let the LCD turn on, and available buttons light. Performing a print operation from a PC, etc. will also restore the display as it was before the LCD turned off.

(6) LCD open button

Press to raise the LCD.

(7) Black button

Starts black & white copying, scanning, etc.

(8) Color button

Starts color printing, copying, or scanning.

(9) Stop button

Cancels operation when print, copy, or scan job is in progress.

(10) [+] [-] buttons

Specifies the number of copies to copy or print.

(11) Wi-Fi lamp

Lights or flashes blue to indicate the wireless LAN status.

Lights: Wireless LAN active is selected.

Flashes: Printing or scanning over wireless LAN. Also flashes while searching for wireless LAN access point during setup and when connecting to the access point.

(12) Alarm lamp

Lights or flashes orange when an error occurs, such as paper-out or ink-out.

(13) POWER lamp

Lights blue after flashing when the power is turned on.

(14) OK button

Finalizes the selection of a menu or setting item.

Resolves an error when printing is in progress or resumes the machine's normal operation after removing jammed paper.

(15) ▲, ▼, ◄, and ► buttons (Scroll Wheel)

Used to select a menu or setting item.

See Using the Operation Panel .

Note

- When Operation panel buttons are touched, the machine generates keypad or alarm sounds as necessary. For information about setting sound volume, see Machine Settings.



Page top

C002

How to Navigate Menus on the LCD

You can use the machine to print photos on a memory card or USB flash drive, make copies, or scan originals without a computer. You can also make good use of the various functions of the machine with the menu screen and the settings screen on the LCD.

This section describes the basic operation to navigate menus on the HOME screen and to select setting items necessary for printing.

Using the Operation Panel
Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen
Selecting a Menu or Setting Item
Other Operations

■ Using the Operation Panel

The buttons lit on the Operation panel depend on the screen being displayed. To aid operation, only buttons available for the current screen light up.
To select a button, touch it lightly with your finger tip.



Important

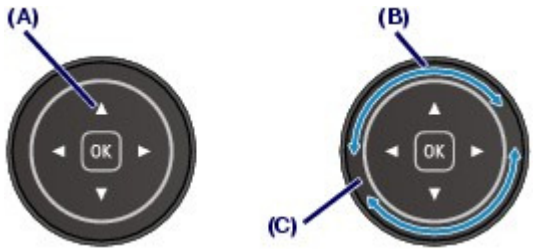
Notes on using the Operation Panel

- Do not place any object (especially metallic objects or objects containing moisture) on the Operation Panel. Doing so may cause the machine to malfunction.
- Precious metals, such as in rings and bracelets, may cause malfunction of the machine. When using the Operation Panel, keep such metals at least 0.8 inches / 2 cm away from the Operation Panel.

Note

- The display of the buttons on the Operation Panel will turn off if the machine is not operated for about 5 minutes. To restore the display, touch any button except the **ON** button. This will let the LCD turn on, and available buttons light. Performing a print operation from a PC, etc. will also restore the display as it was before the LCD turned off.

Using the ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► button (Scroll Wheel)



(A) Touch the ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► button to select items.
Or
(B) Trace your finger along the **Scroll Wheel** to select items.
(C) **Scroll Wheel**

Be careful not to trace your finger along the **Scroll Wheel** when you touch the ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► button.

When it is indicated in this guide that the **Scroll Wheel** can be used, it is also described in the operation procedure, i.e., " ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**)".

■ Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen

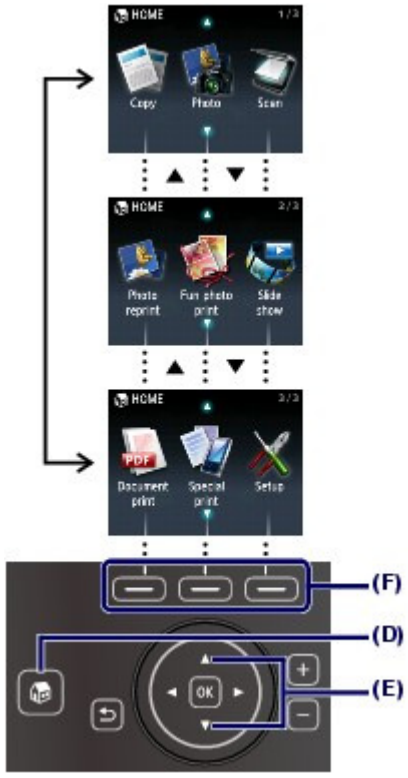
The HOME screen will appear when the power is turned on or when the **HOME** button is touched. The HOME screen consists of three screens, and the menus to make a copy, print photos, scan originals, or etc. are displayed on the screens. The ▲ or ▼ button allows you to switch each screen. To select a menu, use the left, center, or right **Function** button.

1. Display the HOME screen.

If the HOME screen is not displayed, touch the **HOME** button (D) to display it.

2. Use the ▲ or ▼ button (E) to display a desired menu, then touch the **Function** button (F).

The selected menu screen will appear.



The following menus are available on the HOME screen.

Copy

You can change copy scale or erase dark frame or shade of bound part when copying a book. And also you can copy an original in various layouts.
See Copying .

Photo

You can print photos saved on a memory card of your digital camera or USB flash drive.
See Printing Photos .

Scan

You can save/forward scanned data to your computer or save them on a memory card or USB flash drive with the Operation Panel.
See Scanning .

Photo reprint

You can reprint printed photos or print photos from 35 mm films (film strip or mount films).
See Reprinting Photos from Printed Photos .

Fun photo print

You can print stickers, calenders, and other photo items using photos on a memory card or USB flash drive.
See Functions in Fun photo print .

Slide show

You can sequentially preview photos from a memory card or USB flash drive on the LCD. You can also select and print desired photos.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

Document print

You can print documents (PDF files) that were scanned and saved by the machine.
See Printing PDF Files Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive .

Special print

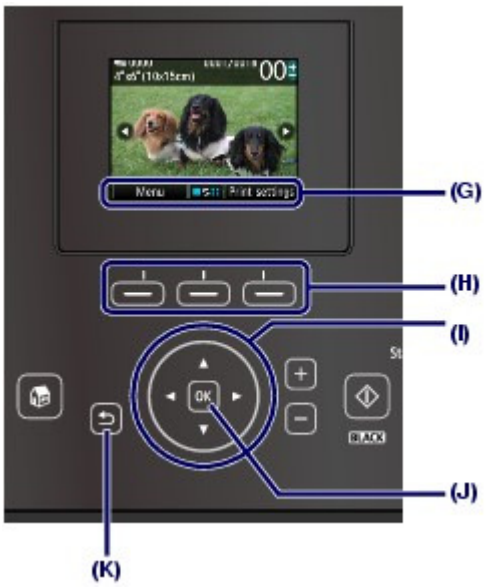
You can print available template forms such as notebook paper, graph paper, etc. You can also print photos on a mobile phone using a wireless connection.
See Printing the Template Forms such as Notebook Paper or Printing Photos from a Wireless Communication Device .

Setup

You can maintain the machine, or change settings of the machine. You can also configure a wireless LAN connection.
See When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect , Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller , or Machine Settings .
For details on the wireless LAN setup, refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.

■ Selecting a Menu or Setting Item

When you select a menu on the HOME screen, function menus (G) for that menu will appear at the bottom of the screen. Touching a **Function** button (H) displays its corresponding menu or settings screen.



On the menu screen or settings screen, use the ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**) (I) to select an item, then touch the **OK** button (J) to proceed with the procedure. To return to the previous screen, touch the **Back** button (K).

Using the Function buttons

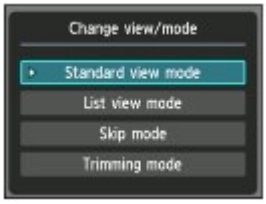
The following describes the operation on the photo selection screen as an example.
The functions and number of function menus vary depending on the screen. Check the items displayed at the bottom of the screen, then select the one desired.



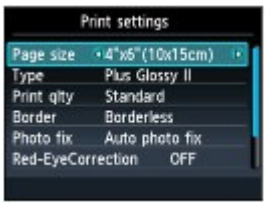
(L) Touch the left **Function** button. The Photo menu screen will appear.



(M) Touch the center **Function** button. The Change view/mode screen will appear.



(N) Touch the right **Function** button. The Print settings screen will appear.



Basic Operation on the Settings Screen

On screens for changing print settings, use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) (I) to select an item, use the ◄ or ► button to select an option, then touch the **OK** button (J).

On the Print settings screen of Photo, for example, the procedure to change the print quality is as follows.

1. Use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select Print qlty.



2. Use the ◄ or ► button to select High, and touch the **OK** button.



The selected option will be set.

Note

- **When the screen has a single setting item with two or more options**
  Use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select an option, and touch the **OK** button.



- **When the screen has setting items displayed in a single row**
  Use the ◄ or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select a menu, and touch the **OK** button.



Other Operations



- ## Returning to the Previous Screen

  The screen will return to the previous screen every time you touch the **Back** button (O).

- ## Canceling a Copy, Print, or Scan Job

  You can touch the **Stop** button (P) to cancel a print, copy, or scan job in progress.

Page top

Printing Photos

You can preview photos from a memory card or USB flash drive on the LCD, to select and print the desired photo.
You can also print your favorite photos in various layouts or use them for making a sticker.

Printing Photos Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive

- Changing the Settings

Using Various Functions

- Functions in Photo menu
- Functions in Fun photo print
- Other Useful Functions

Inserting the Memory Card

- Before Inserting the Memory Card
- Inserting the Memory Card
- Removing the Memory Card

Inserting the USB Flash Drive

- Inserting the USB Flash Drive
- Removing the USB Flash Drive



Page top

C011

Printing Photos Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive

Preview each photo from the memory card or USB flash drive on the LCD, to select and print the desired photo.
This section describes the procedure to print borderless photos on 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper.
For the operation, see the notes and operation procedure described in the reference page.




You need to prepare:

A memory card *1 with saved photos. See Before Inserting the Memory Card .



A USB flash drive *1 with saved photos. See Inserting the USB Flash Drive .



Photo paper for printing. See Media Types You Can Use .



*1 The machine can read up to 2000 photos.

1. Prepare for printing.

(1) Turn on the power.

See Operation Panel .

(2) Load paper.

See Loading Paper .

Here we load 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper in the Rear Tray.

Note

- When you print on A4 or Letter-sized plain paper, make sure that they are loaded in the Cassette. Load other sizes or types of paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.



2. Insert a memory card or USB flash drive.

(1) Select Photo on the HOME screen.

See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The message "USB flash drive or memory card is not set." will appear.

(2) Insert a memory card or USB flash drive.

Memory card:

Insert it WITH THE LABELED SIDE FACING TO THE LEFT into the Card Slot.

For the types of memory card compatible with the machine and locations to insert them, see Inserting the Memory Card .

USB flash drive:

Insert it into the Direct Print Port.

See Inserting the USB Flash Drive .

The photo selection screen in Select photo print will appear.



(A) USB flash drive

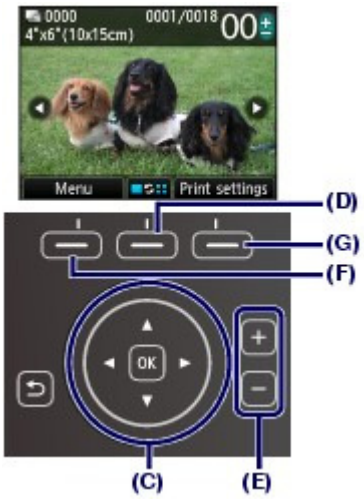
(B) Memory card

Note

- If a memory card or USB flash drive is inserted on the HOME screen, copy standby screen, etc., the photo selection screen in Select photo print will also appear.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- Do not insert memory card and USB flash drive at the same time. Also do not insert two or more memory cards at the same time.
- When Read/write attribute is set to Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC, you cannot print image data from the memory card using the Operation Panel on the machine. To print image data from the memory card, select Device user settings in Device settings of Setup on the HOME screen, and set Read/write attribute to Not writable from PC.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
  * You can print image data from the USB flash drive regardless of the setting in Read/write attribute.

3. Select photos to print.

(1) Use the ◄ or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**) (C) to display a desired photo.



Note

- may appear on the LCD while reading photos. If you use the ◄ or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**) to display the photo while appears on the LCD, the desired photo may not be selected.
- If you touch the center **Function** button (D), the Change view/mode screen will appear. This screen lets you change how photos are displayed. It also lets you select Trimming mode for cropping photos.
  See Other Useful Functions .

(2) Use the [+] or [-] button (E) to specify the number of copies.

Note

- If you touch the **Color** button without specifying the number of copies, one copy of the selected photo will be printed.

(3) Repeat the procedures of (1) and (2) to specify the number of copies for each photo.

Note

- If you touch the left **Function** button (F) to select Menu, you can select various photo print functions other than Select photo print.

See Using Various Functions .

4. Start printing.

(1) Touch the right **Function** button (G) to select Print settings, and confirm the page size, media type, print quality, etc.

Here we confirm that 4"x6" (10x15cm) is selected for Page size and the type of loaded photo paper for Type.

To change the settings, use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select the item to change, and use the ◄ or ► button to select an option. After confirming or changing the settings, touch the **OK** button to return to the photo selection screen.

See Basic Operation on the Settings Screen and Changing the Settings .

Note

- You can specify Photo fix or Print date on the Print settings screen.
  See Changing the Settings .

(2) Confirm the number of sheets to be used for printing the selected photos.



(3) Touch the **Color** button.

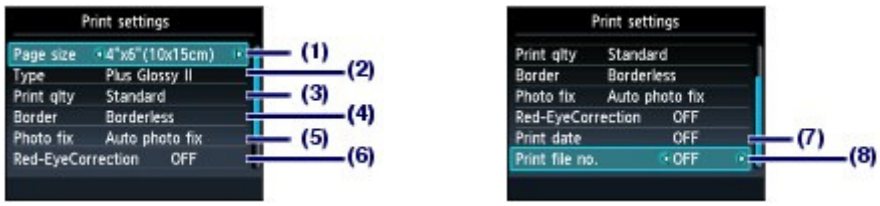
The machine starts printing photos.

Note

- When you touch the right **Function** button to select Queue print while printing, the screen will return to the photo selection screen. You can then continue selecting photos for printing.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- Touch the **Stop** button to cancel printing.
- Printing does not start if you touch the **Black** button.
- To remove the memory card, see Removing the Memory Card .
  To remove the USB flash drive, see Removing the USB Flash Drive .

■ Changing the Settings

If you touch the right **Function** button to select Print settings on the photo selection screen, the Print settings screen will appear.
You can use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select the item, such as page size, media type, or print quality, and use the ◄ or ► button to change the setting.
For the setting operation, see Basic Operation on the Settings Screen .
For the print settings of Print all photos or Fun photo print, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .



(1) Page size

Select the page size of the paper to print: 4"x6" (10x15cm), A4, etc.

(2) Type (Media type)

Select the media type of the paper to print: Plus Glossy II, Glossy, etc.

Note

- If you do not select the page size and media type correctly, the machine may feed paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.
  See Paper Sources to Load Paper .

(3) Print qlty (Print quality)

Select the print quality: High or Standard.

(4) Border

Select bordered or borderless print: Bordered or Borderless.

Note

- If the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data when Borderless is selected, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.

(5) Photo fix

Correct photos: Auto photo fix or Manual correction. The photo can be also printed without correction.

When Manual correction is selected and the right **Function** button is touched to select Advanced, brightness, contrast, color balance, etc. can be adjusted.

For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

(6) Red-EyeCorrection

Correct red eyes in portraits caused by flash photography.

(7) Print date

Print a photo with shot date.

See Printing Photos with Shot Date or File Number .

(8) Print file no.

Print a photo with file number.

See Printing Photos with Shot Date or File Number .

Note

- The settings of the page size, media type, print quality, photo fix, border, etc. are retained, and these settings will appear next time when Photo is selected even if the power is turned off and on.
- If the combination of some setting items is invalid, the mark appears at the invalid item. Touch the left **Function** button to select Error details and check the error message, then correct the settings.

Page top

C012

Using Various Functions

You can print photos in various ways when you use the left **Function** button to select Menu on the photo selection screen. You can also use the useful functions to print photos.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

■ Functions in Photo menu

On the Photo menu screen, you can select Select photo print, Print all photos, To fun photo print, or To slide show.

Note

- Fun photo print or Slide show can be also selected on the HOME screen.
  See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .
- For details on Slide show, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

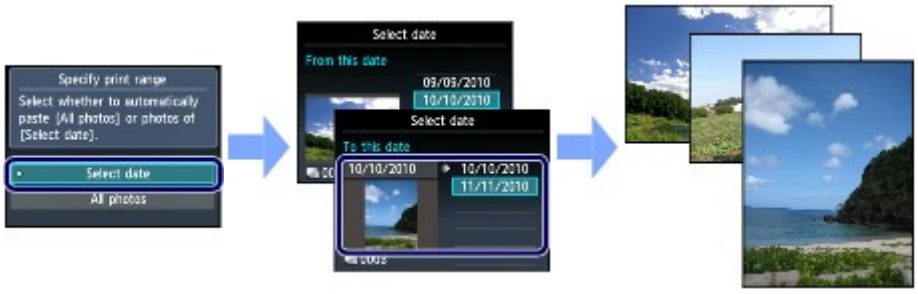
● Print All Photos

If Print all photos is selected, you can print all photos on the memory card or USB flash drive at one time. You can also print only photos in a specified date range.



Search for photos by date

You can specify a date range and print only the photos in that range.



■ Functions in Fun photo print

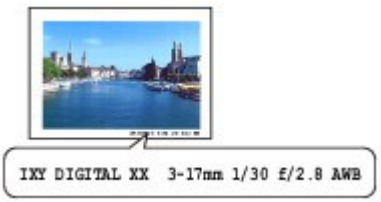
You can select various layouts on the Fun photo print screen. You can also select DPOF print.



Layout print



Sticker print



Captured info print



Photo Index print



ID photo size print



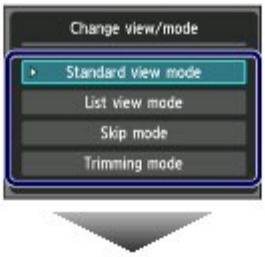
Calendar print

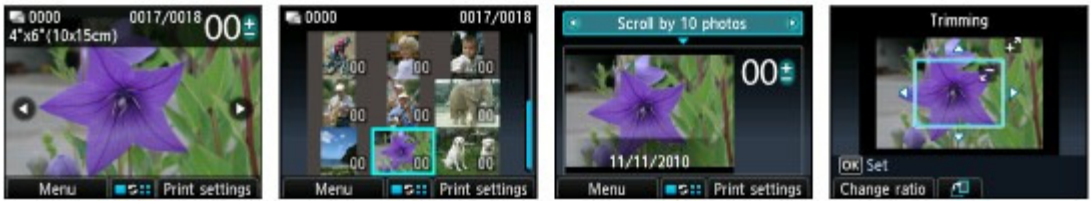
■ Other Useful Functions

Besides the functions selected on the Photo menu screen, you can specify the display style of photos, cropping, photo fix, date print, etc.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

● Changing the Display

To display the Change view/mode screen, touch the center **Function** button on the photo selection screen.
The Standard view mode shows a single photo. The List view mode shows 9 thumbnails. The Skip mode lets you scroll in units of 10 or 100 photos, or by date. The Trimming mode lets you crop photos.





Standard view mode **List view mode** **Skip mode** **Trimming mode**

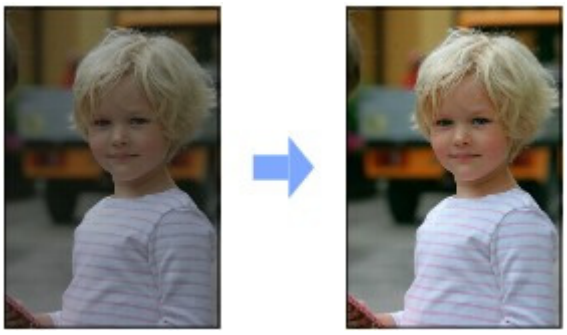
● Cropping Photos

On the Trimming screen, you can use the [+] or [-] button or the **Scroll Wheel** to change the cropping size and use the ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► button to change the cropping area. Touch the **OK** button to apply the changes, then return to the photo selection screen.



● Correcting Photos

If Auto photo fix is selected for Photo fix on the Print settings screen, the selected photos will be corrected automatically.



Auto photo fix

Printing Photos with Shot Date or File Number

If ON is selected for Print date or Print file no. on the Print settings screen, the selected photos can be printed with shot date or file number.



Print date **Print file no.**

Page top

C013

Inserting the Memory Card

■ Before Inserting the Memory Card

The following types of memory cards and image data are compatible with the machine.

Important

Image data shot by the digital camera

- If you took and saved photos on a type of memory card that does not guarantee the operation on your digital camera, the image data may be unreadable on the machine or damaged. For information on memory cards that your digital camera guarantees operation, refer to the instruction manual supplied with your digital camera.
- Format the memory card with a digital camera compliant with the Design rule for Camera File system (Exif 2.2/2.21 compliant), TIFF (Exif 2.2/2.21 compliant). The memory card may not be compatible with the machine if it is formatted on a computer.

● Memory Cards that Do Not Require a Card Adapter

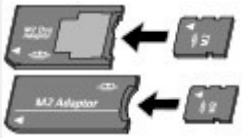
	● SD Secure Digital memory card ● SDHC memory card ● MultiMediaCard ● MultiMediaCard Plus
	● Compact Flash (CF) Card Supports Type I/II (3.3 V) ● Microdrive
	● Memory Stick ● Memory Stick PRO ● Memory Stick Duo ● Memory Stick PRO Duo

● Memory Cards that Require a Card Adapter

Important

- Be sure to attach the special card adapters to the following memory cards before inserting to the Card Slot.
  If one of the following memory cards is inserted without the card adapter, you may not be able to remove the memory card. In this case, refer to " Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

	● miniSD Card *1 ● miniSDHC Card *1
	● microSD Card *1 ● microSDHC Card *1
	● xD-Picture Card *2 ● xD-Picture Card Type M *2 ● xD-Picture Card Type H *2

	● RS-MMC *3 ● MMCmobile *3
	● Memory Stick Micro *4

*1 Use the special "SD Card Adapter".

*2 Requires purchase of a separate compact flash card adapter for xD-Picture Card.

*3 Use the special card adapter.

*4 Use the special Duo size adapter or full size adapter.

● Printable Image Data

- This machine accepts images taken with a camera compliant with the Design rule for Camera File system (Exif 2.2/2.21 compliant), TIFF (Exif 2.2/2.21 compliant). Other image or movie types such as RAW images cannot be printed.
- The machine accepts images scanned and saved with the machine when Doc. type is set to Photo and Format is set to JPEG (file extension ".jpg").

■ Inserting the Memory Card

Important

- When a memory card is inserted into the Card Slot, the **Access** lamp is lit. When the **Access** lamp is flashing, the machine is accessing the memory card. In this case, do not touch the area around the Card Slot.

Note

- When Read/write attribute is set to Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC, you cannot print image data from the memory card or save scanned data on the memory card using the Operation Panel of the machine. After using the Card Slot as the memory card drive of a computer, remove the memory card, select Device user settings in Device settings of Setup on the HOME screen, then set Read/write attribute to Not writable from PC.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- When you use a computer to edit or enhance photos saved on a memory card, be sure to print them from the computer. If you use the Operation Panel, the photos may not be printed properly.

1. Prepare your memory card.

Attach a special card adapter if your memory card requires one.

See Memory Cards that Require a Card Adapter .

2. Turn on the power, and open the Card Slot Cover.



3. Insert only one memory card into the Card Slot.

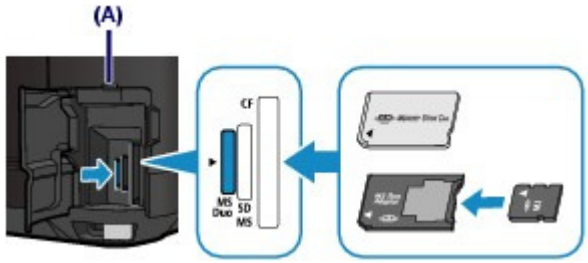
The location to insert a memory card varies depending on each type of memory card. Insert your memory card straightforward WITH THE LABELED SIDE FACING TO THE LEFT into the Card Slot, according to the insert location in the figure below.

When the memory card is inserted properly, the **Access** lamp (A) will light up.

Be sure to attach the card adapter for memory card with the mark * (asterisk), and then insert it into the Card Slot as shown below.

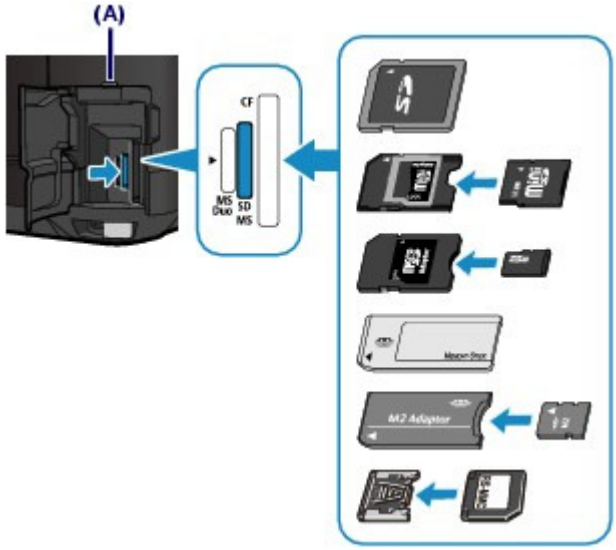
Insert the following types of memory cards into the left Card Slot:

- Memory Stick Duo, Memory Stick PRO Duo
- Memory Stick Micro (with the Duo size adapter) *



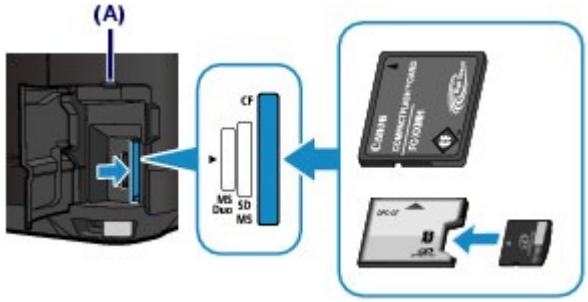
Insert the following types of memory cards into the center Card Slot:

- SD Secure Digital memory card, SDHC memory card, MultiMediaCard, MultiMediaCard Plus
- miniSD Card *, miniSDHC Card *
- microSD Card *, microSDHC Card *
- Memory Stick, Memory Stick PRO
- Memory Stick Micro (with the full size adapter) *
- RS-MMC *
- MMCmobile *



Insert the following types of memory cards into the right Card Slot:

- Compact Flash (CF) Card, Microdrive
- xD-Picture Card *, xD-Picture Card Type M *, xD-Picture Card Type H *



Important

- Part of the memory card will protrude from the Card Slot, but do not force it into the slot any further. This can damage the machine or the memory card.
- Make sure that the memory card is correctly oriented before inserting it into the Card Slot. If you force the memory card into the Card Slot in the wrong orientation, the memory card or the machine can be damaged.
- Do not insert more than one memory card at a time.

4. Close the Card Slot Cover.

■ Removing the Memory Card

Important

- If you used the Card Slot as the memory card drive of a computer, you must perform the "safe removal" operation on your computer before physically removing the memory card from the machine.
  If you are connecting the machine with a USB cable, right-click the removable disk icon and click Eject. If Eject does not appear on the screen, make sure that the **Access** lamp is lit, and then remove the memory card.
  If you used the Card Slot via the LAN, you do not need to perform the "safe removal" operation on your computer.

1. Open the Card Slot Cover.

2. Make sure that the **Access** lamp is lit, and remove the memory card.

Hold the part of the memory card that is protruding and remove it straightforward from the machine.

Important

- Do not remove the memory card while the **Access** lamp is flashing. The **Access** lamp flashes while the machine is reading or writing data from/to the memory card. If you remove the memory card or turn off the power while the **Access** lamp is flashing, the data saved on the memory card can be damaged.

3. Close the Card Slot Cover.

Page top

C014

Inserting the USB Flash Drive

■ Inserting the USB Flash Drive

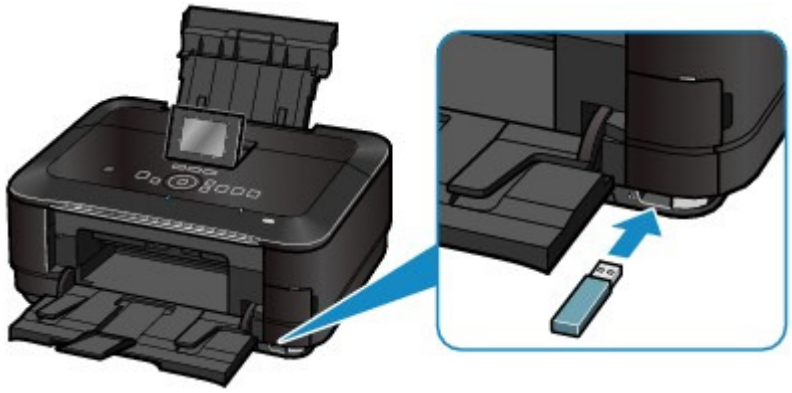
Note

Before inserting the USB flash drive

- If your USB flash drive cannot be inserted into the Direct Print Port of the machine, you may be required to use an extension cable for the USB flash drive. Purchase it at electronics retail stores.
- Some USB flash drives may have recognition problem, and these devices may not guarantee proper operation of the machine.
- You may not be able to use USB flash drives with security function.
- For information on the data that can be printed with this machine, see Printable Image Data in "Before Inserting the Memory Card".

1. Insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

Make sure that the USB flash drive is correctly oriented before inserting it straightforward into the Direct Print Port.



■ Removing the USB Flash Drive

1. Make sure that the machine is not reading or writing data from/to the USB flash drive.

Check if the reading or writing operation is completed on the LCD.

Important

- Do not remove the USB flash drive or turn off the power while the machine is operating.

Note

- If your USB flash drive has the access lamp, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the USB flash drive to check if the reading or writing operation is completed on the USB flash drive.

2. Remove the USB flash drive.

Hold the USB flash drive and remove it straightforward from the machine.



Page top

Copying

You can copy in the various methods such as enlarging/reducing or copying two original pages onto a single sheet of paper.

Making Copies

Changing the Settings

Using Various Copy Functions

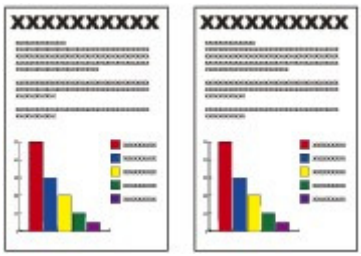


Page top

C021

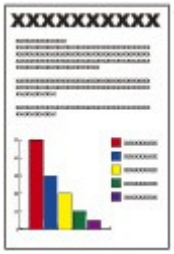
Making Copies

This section describes the procedure to copy a document of A4 size on plain paper.
For the operation, see the notes and operation procedure described in the reference page.

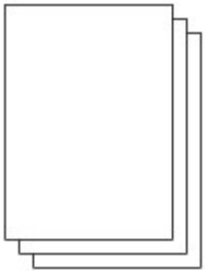


You need to prepare:

Originals to copy. See Originals You Can Load .



Paper for printing. See Media Types You Can Use .



1. Prepare for copying.

(1) Turn on the power.

See Operation Panel .

(2) Load paper.

See Loading Paper .

Here we make sure that A4 plain paper is loaded in the Cassette.

Note

- Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette. Load other sizes or types of paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.



(4) Select Copy on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

(5) Load an original on the Platen Glass.
See Loading Originals .

To load the original on the Platen Glass, align it with the alignment mark WITH THE SIDE TO COPY FACING DOWN as shown below.

Then close the Document Cover gently.

Note

- For details on the types and conditions of the original which can be copied, and how to load the original, see Loading Originals .
- Characters and lines written with a light colored pen or highlight pen may not be copied properly.



2. Start copying.

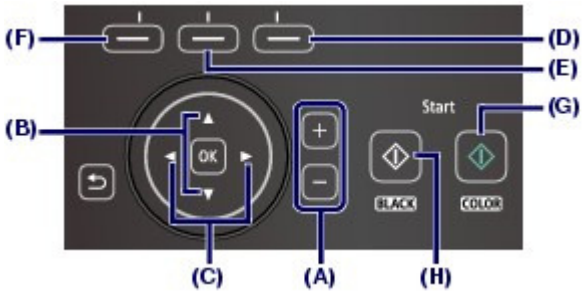
(1) Use the [+] or [-] button (A) to specify the number of copies.
The number of copies can be changed with the **Scroll Wheel** .

(2) Use the ▲ or ▼ button (B) to specify the magnification.
Here we select 100%.

(3) Use the ◄ or ► button (C) to specify the copy intensity.
Touch the ◄ button to decrease the intensity and the ► button to increase the intensity. You can also select automatic intensity adjustment.

For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .





(4) Touch the right **Function** button (D) to select Print settings, and confirm the page size, media type, etc.

Here we confirm that A4 is selected for Page size and Plain paper for Type.

To change the settings, use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) (B) to select the item to change, and use the ◄ or ► button (C) to select an option. After confirming or changing the settings, touch the **OK** button to return to the copy standby screen.

See Basic Operation on the Settings Screen and Changing the Settings .



Note

- You can check the preview of print result if you touch the center **Function** button (E) when copying the original on the Platen Glass.
  Refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- You can select various copy functions, such as Borderless copy, if you touch the left **Function** button (F) to select Copy menu.
  See Using Various Copy Functions .

(5) Touch the **Color** button (G) for color copying, or the **Black** button (H) for black & white copying.

The machine starts copying.

Remove the original on the Platen Glass after copying is completed.

Important

- Do not stare at the light directly for an extended period of time when copying the original.
- Do not open the Document Cover or move the loaded original until copying is completed.

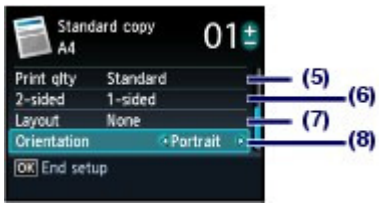
Note

- Touch the **Stop** button to cancel copying.

■ Changing the Settings

Touch the right **Function** button to select Print settings on the copy standby screen. You can select the item, such as page size, media type, or print quality, and change the setting.
For the setting operation, see Basic Operation on the Settings Screen .
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.





(1) Magnif. (Magnification)

Specify the enlargement/reduction manner. You can specify the copy scale by selecting the page size: A4 to A5, A4 to B5, etc. If you do not want to enlarge/reduce the page size, select SameMagnification.

(2) Intensity

Specify the intensity when you want to make the darkened/lightened copy. Select Auto to automatically adjust the intensity according to the original.

(3) Page size

Select the page size of the paper to print: A4, 8.5"x11" (LTR), etc.

(4) Type (Media type)

Select the media type of the paper to print: Plain paper, Plus Glossy II, etc.

Note

- If you do not select the page size and media type correctly, the machine may feed paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.
  See Paper Sources to Load Paper .

(5) Print qlty (Print quality)

Select the print quality according to the original to copy: Standard, High, etc. The available print quality settings depend on the paper selected for Type.

(6) 2-sided

Copy a single side of two originals to both sides of a single paper. When 2-sided is selected, touch the right **Function** button to select Advanced and specify the staple side of the print paper.

(7) Layout

Select the layout: 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy.

See Using Various Copy Functions .

(8) Orientation

Select the orientation of the original to copy: Portrait or Landscp..

Note

- If Two-sided copy is selected or 2-sided is set, select A4 or 8.5"x11" (LTR) for Page size and Plain paper for Type.
- If 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy is selected, select A4 or 8.5"x11" (LTR) for Page size.
- If Borderless copy is selected, select 8.5"x11" (LTR), A4, 4"x6" (10x15cm), or 5"x7" (13x18cm) for Page size and any types of paper except Plain paper for Type.
- If Borderless copy is selected, slight cropping may occur at the edges since the copied image is enlarged to fill the whole page.
- The settings of the page size, media type, print quality, automatic intensity adjustment, etc. are retained, and these settings will appear next time when Copy is selected even if the power is turned off and on.
- If the combination of some setting items is invalid, the mark appears at the invalid item. Touch the left **Function** button to select Error details and check the error message, then correct the settings.
- If you select Fast with the media type set to Plain paper and the quality is not as good as expected, select Standard or High and then try copying again.

Page top

C022

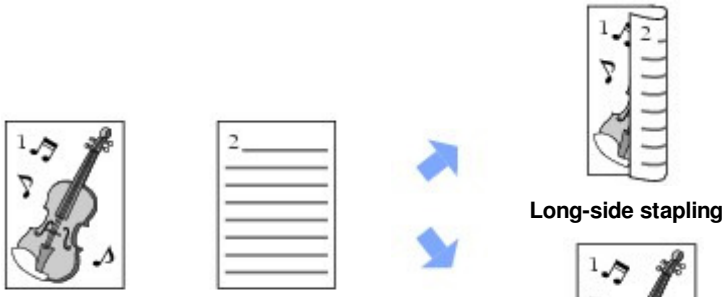
Using Various Copy Functions

You can make various kinds of copies, such as making borderless copies or copying two pages onto a single sheet, if you touch the left **Function** button to select Copy menu on the copy standby screen. For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

Two-sided copy

When Two-sided copy is selected, the standard copy screen appears and the print settings are automatically changed to 2-sided for 2-sided and Portrait for Orientation. This lets you copy a single side of two originals to both sides of a single paper. If you want to change the settings, touch the right **Function** button to select Print settings.

Originals in portrait



Long-side stapling

Short-side stapling

Originals in landscape



Long-side stapling

Short-side stapling

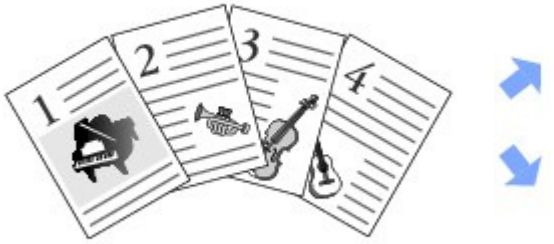
2-on-1 copy / 4-on-1 copy

When 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy is selected, the standard copy screen appears and the print settings are automatically changed to 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy for Layout and Portrait for Orientation. You can copy the originals onto a single sheet of paper as shown in the figure below. If you want to change the settings, touch the right **Function** button to select Print settings.



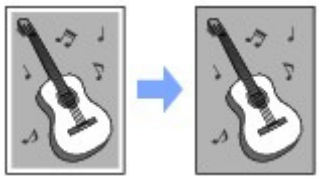
2-on-1 copy



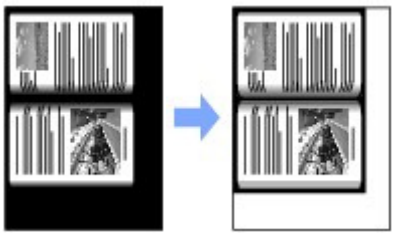


4-on-1 copy

Borderless copy



Frame erase copy



Page top

Reprinting Photos from Printed Photos

You can reprint printed photos or print photos from films without computer.

Reprinting Printed Photos

Printing Photos from Films

Loading the Films

- Loading the Film Strip
- Loading the Mount Films
- Removing the Films

Using Various Functions

- Printing Photos in Various Layouts
- Correcting Photos



Page top

C031

Reprinting Printed Photos

Reprint printed photos.
This section describes the procedure to scan printed photos and print them on 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper.

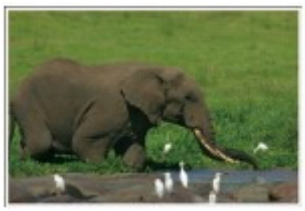
Note

- You cannot save scanned images with this function.
  To save scanned images on the computer, memory card, or USB flash drive, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .



You need to prepare:

Printed photos.



Paper for photo printing. See Media Types You Can Use .



1. Prepare for reprinting printed photos.

(1) Turn on the power.
See Operation Panel .

(2) Load paper.
See Loading Paper in the Rear Tray .

Here we load 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

(4) Select Photo reprint on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

(5) Select Reprint from printed photo and touch the **OK** button.

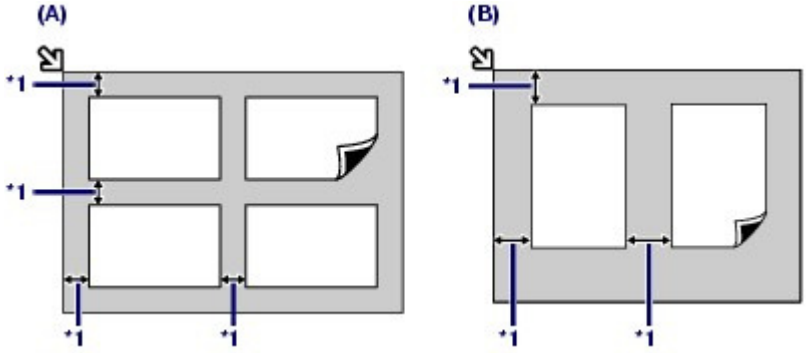
(6) When the guidance screen appears, touch the **OK** button.

2. Load photos on the Platen Glass to scan.

(1) Open the Document Cover.

(2) Load the photos WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN on the Platen Glass.

See Loading Originals .



(A) To load four photos on the Platen Glass

(B) To load two photos on the Platen Glass

*1: 0.4 inches / 10 mm

Note

- Place the photo(s) at least 0.4 inches / 10 mm away from and in square with the edges of the Platen Glass.
- When loading two or more photos at the same time, place them at least 0.4 inches / 10 mm apart from each other. If photos are placed closer, they may be scanned as a single image.
- The Skew Correction function automatically compensates for photos placed at an angle of up to approximately 10 degrees.
- Slanted photos with a long edge of 7.1 inches / 180 mm or more cannot be corrected.
- If appears on the photo selection screen, check the followings and reset the photos properly to scan them again.
  - The slant is not too large.
  - The photos are not placed too close to the edge of the Platen Glass.
- Photos smaller than approximately 1 inch / 25 mm square will not be scanned properly.
- The types of photos listed below may not be scanned properly.
  - Photos that are non-rectangular or irregular shaped (such as cut out photos)
  - Photos that are entirely white
  - Photos that have white surrounds
- The borders of bordered photos may not be scanned properly. Crop photos if necessary. Refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

(3) Close the Document Cover gently, and touch the **OK** button.

The machine starts scanning.

Important

- Do not stare at the light directly for an extended period of time when scanning photos.
- The photos are rescanned before printing starts. Do not open the Document Cover or move the loaded photos until printing is completed.

3. Select photos to print.

(1) Select Select and print , and touch the **OK** button.

Note

- You can also select useful printing functions other than Select and print. See Using Various Functions .

(2) Use the ◄ or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**) to display a desired photo.

(3) Use the [**+**] or [**-**] button to specify the number of copies.

Note

- If appears at the upper left of the photo, it may not have been scanned properly. Touch the left **Function** button to select Rescan. Confirm the message, and repeat the procedures from step 2 to scan the photo again.
- Touch the center **Function** button to display the trimming screen, and crop photos. See Cropping Photos .

(4) Repeat the procedures of (2) and (3) to specify the number of copies for each photo.

(5) Confirm the number of sheets to be used for printing the selected photos.



4. Start printing.

(1) Touch the right **Function** button to select Print settings, and confirm the page size, media type, print quality, etc.

Here we confirm that 4"x6" (10x15cm) is selected for Page size and the type of loaded photo paper for Type.

To change the settings, use the ▲ or ▼ button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select the item to change, and use the ◄ or ► button to select an option.

See Changing the Settings .

Note

- If Manual correction is selected for Photo fix on the Print settings screen, touch the right **Function** button to select Advanced, and correct a photo manually. See Using Various Functions .
- The settings of the page size, media type, print quality, etc. are retained, and these settings will appear next time when Photo reprint is selected even if the power is turned off and on.

(2) Touch the **Color** button to print in color, or the **Black** button to print in black & white.

The machine starts printing.

Remove the photos on the Platen Glass after printing is completed.

Note

- Touch the **Stop** button to cancel printing.
- You can exit Photo reprint and display the HOME screen, if you touch the **HOME** button after printing is completed.

Page top

C151

Printing Photos from Films

Print photos from a 35 mm film strip or mount films (positive films for slides).



You need to prepare:

35 mm film strip (a series of six frames on a strip)



or
35 mm mount film (positive film for slide)



Paper for photo printing. See Media Types You Can Use .



Note

- "Film strip" is a series of six frames on a strip after regular development. "Mount film" is each frame mounted on a slide mount.
- You cannot save scanned images with this function.
  To save scanned images on the computer or save them on a memory card or USB flash drive, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

1. Prepare for printing photos from a film.

(1) Turn on the power.
See Operation Panel .

(2) Load paper.
See Loading Paper in the Rear Tray .

Here we load 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

(4) Select Photo reprint on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

(5) Select Reprint from film and touch the **OK** button.

(6) Select Color negative film, B&W negative film, Color positive film, or Mounted slides according to your film, and touch the **OK** button.
Here we select Color negative film.



2. Load the film strip or mount films on the Platen Glass.

If Color negative film, B&W negative film, or Color positive film is selected, see Loading the Film Strip .
If Mounted slides is selected, see Loading the Mount Films .

3. Close the Document Cover gently, and touch the **OK** button.

The machine starts scanning the film.

Important

- Do not stare at the light directly for an extended period of time when scanning the film.
- The film is rescanned before printing starts. Do not open the Document Cover or move the loaded film on the Platen Glass until printing is completed.

Note

- If the film is not scanned properly, refer to "Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

4. Select photos to print.

See Select photos to print. in "Reprinting Printed Photos".
Here we select Select and print, and specify the number of copies.

5. Start printing.

See Start printing. in "Reprinting Printed Photos".

6. Remove the film and reattach the Film Guide, after all the printings are completed.

See Removing the Films .

Note

- You can exit Photo reprint and display the HOME screen, if you touch the **HOME** button after printing is completed.

Page top

Loading the Films

You can use the Film Guide stored behind the Document Cover to load the films.

Loading the Film Strip
Loading the Mount Films
Removing the Films

Film strip

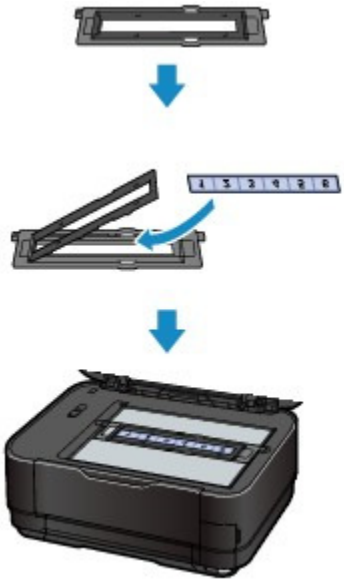


See Loading the Film Strip .

Mount films (positive films for slides)



See Loading the Mount Films .





Page top

C152

■ Loading the Film Strip

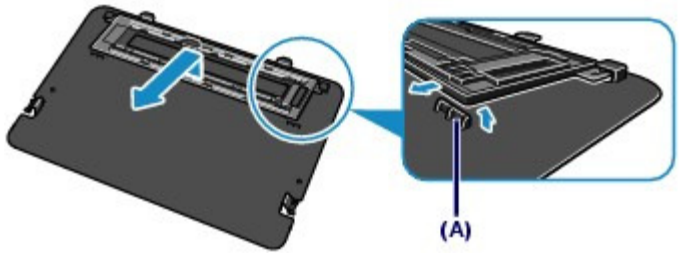
Mount the film strip in the Film Guide stored behind the Document Cover, and then load it on the Platen Glass. To scan the film strip with a computer, follow the same procedure below.

1. Remove the Film Guide from the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet.

(1) Open the Document Cover, and remove the FAU Protective Sheet.



(2) Turn over the FAU Protective Sheet, then raise slightly the center of the Film Guide. Pull the Film Guide towards you to remove it, holding it high enough so that it does not strike the fixing knobs (A).



Important

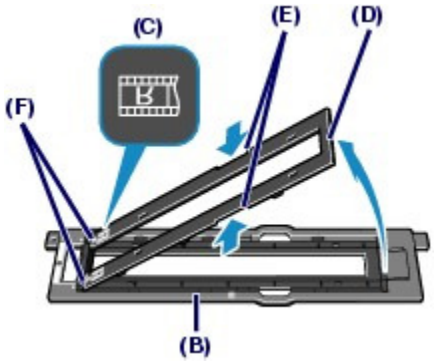
- When printing photos from the film strip, make sure that the FAU Protective Sheet is removed from the Document Cover. The film strip cannot be scanned if the FAU Protective Sheet remains attached.

2. Mount the film strip in the Film Guide (B).

(1) TURN THE SIDE SHOWING THE FILM MARK (C) UP, and open the Film Holder (D) by pinching the indentations (E) in the directions of the arrows as shown.

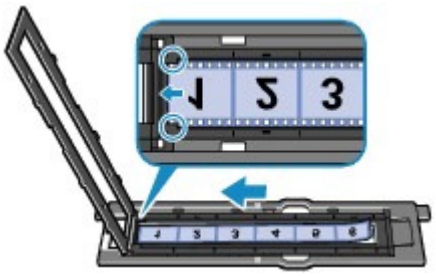
Note

- Be sure to open the Film Holder so that the hinge parts (F) do not come off the Film Guide.



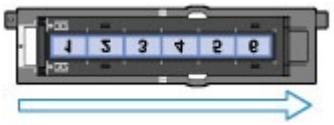
(2) TURN OVER THE FILM STRIP (with the correct image facing down) so that THE IMAGES WILL BE UPSIDE DOWN, and insert the edges of the film strip into the slots of the Film Strip Frame.

The film order must be FROM LEFT TO RIGHT.



Note

- The film strip with up to six frames can be mounted in the Film Strip Frame.
- Mount the film strip so that the film runs from left to right in the same direction as the scanning direction. However, depending on the model or brand of your camera, the scanning order may differ from the frame order of the film strip.



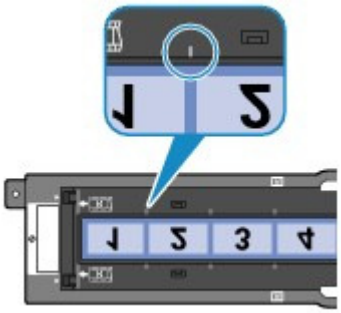
(3) Close the Film Holder completely.

Note

- If the Film Holder does not close completely, confirm that the film strip is mounted properly in the Film Strip Frame.
- If the Film Holder does not close completely, press the whole Film Holder gently downward to fit the six protrusions in the slots of the Film Guide.

(4) Make sure that the white lines on the Film Holder are aligned with the borderlines between frames of the film.

Reconfirm the direction of the mounted film strip.



Note

- Depending on how the end of the film is cut, the borderlines between frames may not line up with the white lines on the Film Holder. In such a case, align them by adjusting the film position.

3. Load the Film Guide to fit in the grooves on the right and left sides on the Platen Glass.



Note

- When a film strip that is shorter than the Film Strip Frame is scanned, portion of an image near the open area may appear pale. Scan the film strip shield with black paper over the open area.
- Labels attached to areas of the film without images may be interpreted as images and will be included in the scan.

Page top

C153

■ Loading the Mount Films

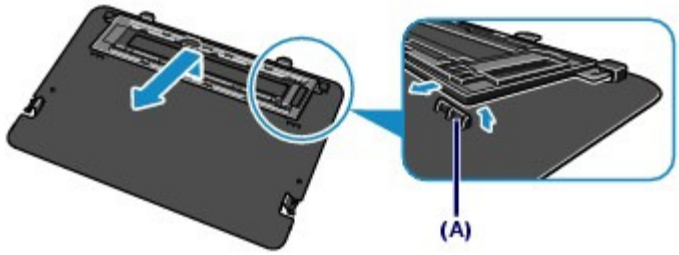
Load the Film Guide without the Film Strip Frame on the Platen Glass, and then mount the mount films in the Film Guide. To scan the mount films with a computer, follow the same procedure below.

1. Remove the Film Guide from the FAU Protective Sheet.

(1) Open the Document Cover, and remove the FAU Protective Sheet.



(2) Turn over the FAU Protective Sheet, then raise slightly the center of the Film Guide. Pull the Film Guide towards you to remove it, holding it high enough so that it does not strike the fixing knobs (A).



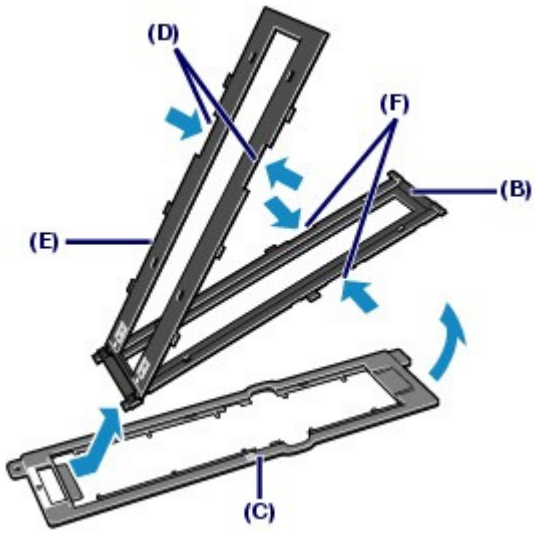
Important

- When printing photos from the mount films, make sure that the FAU Protective Sheet is removed from the Document Cover. The mount films cannot be scanned if the FAU Protective Sheet remains attached.

2. Remove the Film Strip Frame (B) from the Film Guide (C).

(1) Pinch the indentations (D) in the directions of the arrows as shown to open the Film Holder (E).

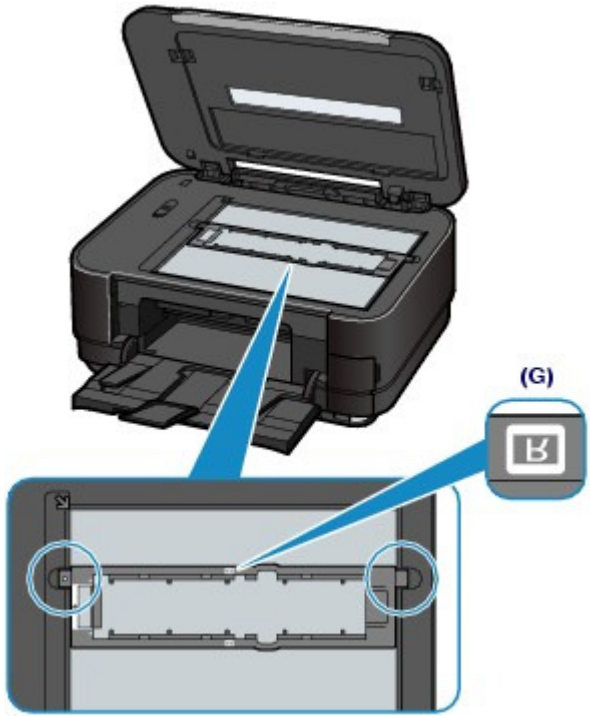
(2) Pinch the indentations (F) in the directions of the arrows as shown to remove the Film Strip Frame (B) from the Film Guide (C).



Note

- The Film Strip Frame is not necessary for mounting the mount films. Be sure to remove the Film Strip Frame.

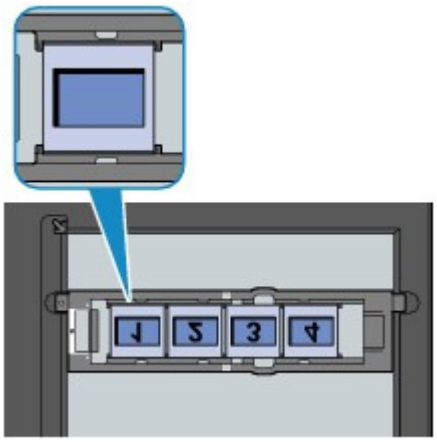
3. Load the Film Guide to fit in the grooves on the right and left sides of the Platen Glass with the side showing the film mark (G) facing up.



4. Mount the mount films in the Film Guide.

TURN OVER THE MOUNT FILMS (with the correct image facing down) so that THE IMAGES WILL BE UPSIDE DOWN, and mount the mount films in the film order FROM LEFT TO RIGHT.

Be sure to load the mount films properly in close contact with the Platen Glass.



Note

- Up to four mount films can be mounted in the Film Guide.

Page top

C154

■ Removing the Films

Remove the films from the Film Guide, and store the Film Guide onto the Document Cover again.

1. Open the Document Cover to remove the Film Guide.

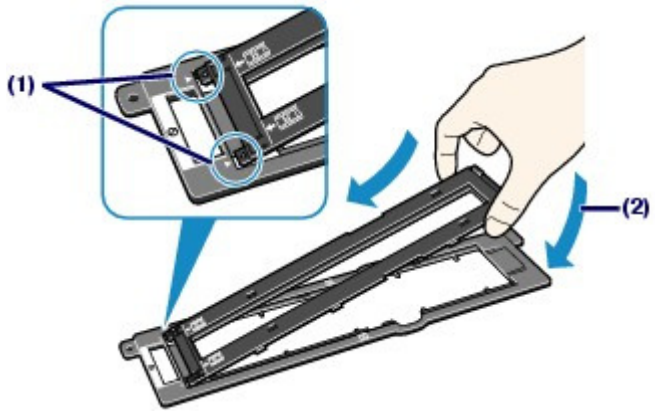
2. Remove the film strip or mount films from the Film Guide.

For the mount films:

After the mount films are removed, reassemble the Film Strip Frame with the Film Guide.

(1) Align the alignment marks ◀ on the Film Strip Frame with the alignment marks ▷ on the Film Guide, and insert the tabs on the leading edge of the Film Strip Frame into the Film Guide.

(2) Push down to close the Film Holder completely.



Note

- If the Film Holder does not close completely, push the whole Film Holder gently downward to fit the protrusions in the slots of the Film Guide.

3. Reattach the Film Guide.

(1) Reattach the Film Guide behind the FAU Protective Sheet.

Turn over the Film Guide, then insert it at an angle all the way into the fittings (A) of the FAU Protective Sheet.



(2) Reattach the FAU Protective Sheet with the Film Guide to the Document Cover.

Insert the protrusions of the FAU Protective Sheet into the slots of the Document Cover, and press both sides at top of the FAU Protective Sheet to fit it in.



Important

- Once the photo printing from the film has been completed, be sure to store the removed Film Guide behind the FAU Protective Sheet and reattach the FAU Protective Sheet to the Document Cover. The FAU Protective Sheet should remain attached when copying or scanning originals other than films, such as documents or photos.

Page top

C032

Using Various Functions

This section introduces a few of the useful functions in Photo reprint.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

■ Printing Photos in Various Layouts

You can select a layout and print photos other than Select and print.



Sticker print



Print all photos

■ Correcting Photos

You can correct photos manually if Manual correction is selected for Photo fix on the Print settings screen, such as adjusting brightness, contrast, and color balance, or applying the fade restoration.



Brightness



Contrast

Page top

Scanning

You can save or forward scanned data to your computer, and edit or process them with the supplied software application. You can also save scanned data on a memory card or USB flash drive inserted into the machine.

Saving Scanned Data to the Computer

Preparing for Scanning with the Operation Panel
Saving Scanned Data to the Computer
Changing the Settings

Using Various Scan Functions



Page top

C041

Saving Scanned Data to the Computer

You can save or forward scanned data to the computer with the USB cable or via a network.
This section describes the procedure to detect the type of original automatically with Auto scan, and save the scanned data to the computer connecting with the USB cable, according to the settings specified with MP Navigator EX.
For operations to save scanned data on a memory card or USB flash drive and to scan originals from the computer, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Important

- Please note that Canon shall not be liable for any damage or loss of the data for any reason whatsoever, even within the warranty period of the machine.

Note

- You can select Auto scan only when saving or forwarding scanned data to the computer with the USB cable.
- The machine can detect the following types of originals with Auto scan: photo, film, postcard, business card, magazine, newspaper, text document, and disc (BD/DVD/CD, etc.). For other originals, select Document or Photo for Doc. type and specify the scan size to scan them.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

■ Preparing for Scanning with the Operation Panel

Before scanning originals, check the following:

- Are the necessary software applications (MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX) installed?
  Install MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX from the *Setup CD-ROM* when they have not been installed or have been uninstalled. To install MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX, select MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX in Custom Install.
- Are the settings for saving data scanned with Auto scan specified in MP Navigator EX?
  When you save scanned data to the computer with Auto scan using the Operation Panel, you can specify the settings for saving scanned data in Preferences of MP Navigator EX.
  For details on the settings, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- Does the original to be scanned meet the requirements for the original to be loaded on the Platen Glass?
  For details, see Originals You Can Load .

● If the Machine Is Connected via USB

Confirm that the connection with USB cable between the machine and the computer is physically secure.

● If the Machine Is Connected over a Network

When you use a computer connected over a network, check the following:

- Confirm that the machine and computer are correctly connected to the network.
- Is the machine selected in the settings screen of the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility?
- Is the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility running?
  For details, refer to the instructions for scanning over a network in the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

■ Saving Scanned Data to the Computer

1. Select the scan operation.

(1) Turn on the power.
See Operation Panel .

(2) Select Scan on the HOME screen.

See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

If you have ever specified a computer for saving scanned data, go to (5).

(3) Use the ◄ or ► button (**Scroll Wheel**) to select PC , and touch the **OK** button.

The computer selection screen will appear.

Besides saving scanned data on the computer, you can save them on a memory card or USB flash drive, or attach them to E-mail on the computer.

For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

(4) Select the computer to save or forward scanned data, and touch the **OK** button.

Here we select Local (USB).

Note

- For the network connection, select the computer name to save or forward scanned data in the list. If the computer connected over a network is selected, Auto scan does not appear on the LCD in (5).

(5) Select the document type.

Here we select Auto scan.



Note

- To select other options for saving or forwarding scanned data, touch the left **Function** button to select Save/Forward.
- The document types other than Auto scan are Document, Photo, and Film.
- When Document, Photo, or Film is selected for Doc. type, you can save or forward scanned data to the computer with the settings (data format, scan resolution, etc.) specified in Scan settings (the right **Function** button).
  See Changing the Settings .

2. Load an original on the Platen Glass.

See Loading Originals .

For details on loading films, see Loading the Films .

For details on the types and sizes of the original which can be scanned, see Originals You Can Load .

Note

- When Document or Photo is selected for Doc. type, touch the right **Function** button to select Scan settings and select the size of original for Scan size.
  See Changing the Settings .
- Characters and lines written with a light colored pen or highlight pen may not be scanned properly.

3. Touch the **Color** or **Black** button to start scanning.

MP Navigator EX will be started, and the scanned data will be saved to the computer according to the settings specified with MP Navigator EX.

Scanning document... will appear while scanning the original.

The machine automatically detects the type of a scanned data (photo, document, film) and the scanned data is saved to a single file on the computer according to the settings specified with MP Navigator EX (JPEG/Exif, TIFF,

PDF).

If you want to scan another original, load it on the Platen Glass, and touch the **Color** or **Black** button again.

Remove the original on the Platen Glass after scanning is completed.

Important

- Do not stare at the light directly for an extended period of time when scanning originals.
- Do not turn off the power while the machine is operating.
- Do not plug in or unplug the USB cable or LAN cable while the machine is scanning originals with the computer.
- Do not open the Document Cover or move the loaded original until scanning is completed.

Note

- The position or size of the original may not be scanned correctly depending on the type of original.
  If the original is not scanned correctly, select Document or Photo for Doc. type, specify the scan settings such as Scan size to match the original, then scan it again.
  See Changing the Settings .
- The following types of scanned data can be printed by selecting Document print on the HOME screen.
  - Scanned data saved by selecting PDF or Compact PDF for the data format with the Scan operation
  - Scanned data saved as a PDF file with MP Navigator EX

  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

When the program selection screen appears:

- The program selection screen may appear after performing step 3.
  If the program selection screen appears, select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 and click OK.
  To start MP Navigator EX automatically without displaying the program selection screen, follow the procedure below.
  - For Windows 7 or Windows Vista users, refer to "For Windows Users" in " Troubleshooting " of the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .
  - For Windows XP users, select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 as the software application to be used in the program selection screen, select Always use this program for this action, then click OK.

■ Changing the Settings

Touch the right **Function** button to select Scan settings on the scan standby screen when Document, Photo, or Film is selected for Doc. type. You can select the item, such as scan size, data format, or resolution, and change the setting.
For the setting operation, see Basic Operation on the Settings Screen .

The setting items described below are available when Document is selected for Doc. type.



(1) Scan size*1 *3

Select the size of the original to be scanned: A4, 4"x6" (10x15cm), etc. When Auto crop is selected, the size of the original is detected automatically.

(2) Format

Select the data format to save the scanned data: PDF, Compact PDF, TIFF or JPEG.

(3) Scan res (Scan resolution)

Select the resolution at which to scan the original: 75 dpi, 150 dpi, 300 dpi, or 600 dpi when Document or Photo is selected for Doc. type, or 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi, 1200 dpi, 2400 dpi, or 4800 dpi when Film is selected for Doc. type.

(4) Preview

Display a preview of the scanned image on the LCD when Memory card or USB flash drive is selected in Save/Forward and the original is scanned from the Platen Glass.

(5) Reduce show-thru [*2] [*3]

Reduce show-through of the opposite side of a text document, or lighten the color of recycled paper, newspaper, etc.

(6) Descreen [*2] [*3]

Reduce the moire effect when uneven gradations or stripe patterns appear on the original to be scanned.

(7) Unsharp mask

Emphasize outlines of subjects and sharpen the image when the original image is not clear.

[*1] You can select Multi crop when Photo is selected for Doc. type. Then, when two or more photos are loaded on the Platen Glass, each photo is scanned as an individual image.

[*2] This setting item is not available when Photo is selected for Doc. type.

[*3] This setting item is not available when Film is selected for Doc. type.

Note

- Available setting items are different when you select an option other than PC in Save/Forward.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Page top

C042

Using Various Scan Functions

Besides saving scanned data to the computer, you can save them on a memory card or USB flash drive, or attach them to E-mail on the computer, if you touch the left **Function** button to select Save/Forward on the scan standby screen.

For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.



PC **Attach to E-mail** **Memory card** **USB flash drive**

Page top

Printing from Your Computer

This section describes the procedure to print documents or photos with a computer.
You can easily print photos taken with your digital camera by using Easy-PhotoPrint EX supplied with the machine.

Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

- Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Documents

Printing Web Pages (Easy-WebPrint EX)

Starting Various Software Applications

- Solution Menu EX
- Easy-WebPrint EX
- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro



Page top

C051

Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

Print image data saved on your computer by using Easy-PhotoPrint EX supplied with the machine. This section describes the procedure to print borderless photos on 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper. For details on Easy-PhotoPrint EX, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Note

- Install Easy-PhotoPrint EX from the *Setup CD-ROM* when it has not been installed or has been uninstalled. To install Easy-PhotoPrint EX, select Easy-PhotoPrint EX in Custom Install.

1. Prepare for printing.

(1) Make sure that the machine is turned on.

See Operation Panel .

(2) Load paper.

See Loading Paper .

Here we load 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm photo paper in the Rear Tray.

Note

- Load A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette and other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper in the Rear Tray.

(3) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.



2. Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Solution Menu EX.

(1) Start Solution Menu EX.

See Solution Menu EX.

Click Here: Solution Menu EX

(2) Click (Photo Print) in the Photo Print menu.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX will be started, and the operation screen of Photo Print will appear.

Note

- In addition to photo printing, functions for creating albums, calendars, and other photo items are available.
  See Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.



3. Select a photo to print.

(1) Select the folder in which images are saved.

(2) Click the image to print.

The number of copies appears as "1", and the image you selected appears in the selected image area (A).
You can select two or more images at the same time.

Note

- To print two or more copies, click (Up arrow) to change the number of copies.
- To cancel the selection, click the image to cancel in the selected image area (A) and click (Delete Imported Image) (B). You can also use (Down arrow) to change the number of copies to zero.
- You can also correct or enhance the selected image.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- You can capture and print an image from a video.
  See Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

(3) Click Select Paper.



4. Select the loaded paper.

(1) Make sure that your machine's name is selected in Printer.

(2) Make sure that Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source.

Note

- For details on other settings for Paper Source, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

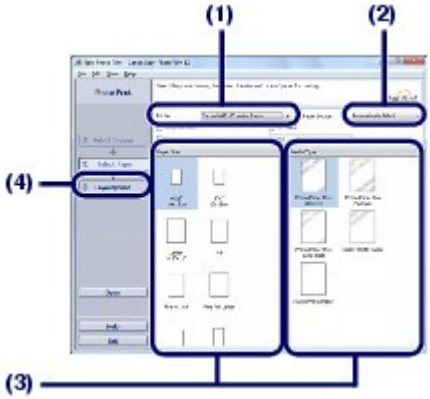
(3) Select the size and type of the loaded paper in Paper Size and Media Type.

Here we select 4"x6" 10x15cm in Paper Size and the type of the loaded photo paper in Media Type.

Note

- If you select A4 or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the machine feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the machine feeds the paper from the Rear Tray.
  If you select the wrong page size or media type, the machine may feed paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.

(4) Click Layout/Print.



5. Select a layout and start printing.

(1) Select the layout of the photo.

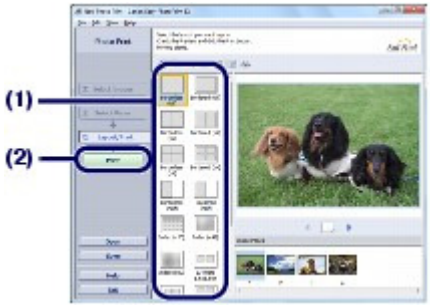
Here we select Borderless (full).

The preview will appear in the selected layout for confirmation of the required print result.

Note

- You can change the direction of photo or crop photos to print.
  For details on the operation, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

(2) Click Print.



Note

- To cancel a print job in progress, touch the **Stop** button on the machine or click Cancel Printing on the printer status monitor. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected.
  To display the printer status monitor, click the printer icon on the taskbar. In Windows Vista or Windows XP, click Canon XXX Printer (where " **XXX**" is your machine's name) on the taskbar.

Page top

C052

■ Using Various Functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX

This section introduces a few of the useful functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

● Creating Your Own Prints

You can create an album or calendar using your photos.



Album



Calendar



Stickers



Layout Print

● Creating Still Images from Videos

You can capture video frames and create still images.



Page top

C053

Printing Documents

This section describes the procedure to print a document of A4 size on plain paper.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

Note

- Operations may vary depending on your software application. For details on the operation, refer to the instruction manual of your application.
- The screens used in this section are for printing with Windows 7 operating system Home Premium (hereafter referred to as "Windows 7").

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

See Operation Panel .

2. Load paper.

See Loading Paper .

Here we make sure that A4 plain paper is loaded in the Cassette.

Note

- Load A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette and other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper in the Rear Tray.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

4. Create (or open) a document to print using an appropriate software application.

5. Open the printer driver setup window.

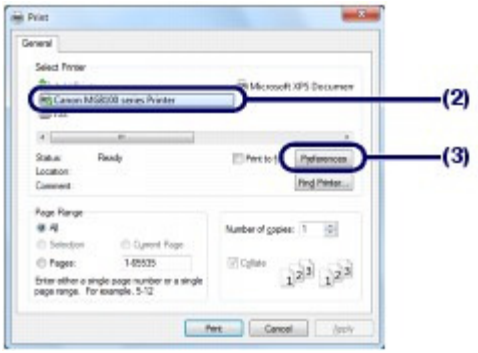
(1) Select Print on the File menu or the command bar in your software application.
The Print dialog box will appear.

(2) Make sure that your machine's name is selected.

Note

- If another printer's name is selected, click and select your machine's name.

(3) Click Preferences (or Properties).



6. Specify the required print settings.

(1) Select Business Document in Commonly Used Settings.

Note

- When the print object such as Business Document or Photo Printing is selected in Commonly Used Settings, the items in Additional Features will be selected automatically. The settings suitable for the print object such as media type or print quality will also appear.

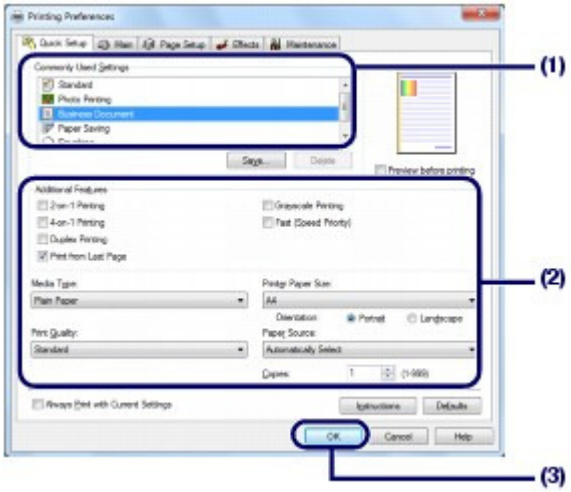
(2) Make sure of the displayed settings.

Here we make sure that Plain Paper in Media Type, Standard in Print Quality, A4 in Printer Paper Size, and Automatically Select in Paper Source are selected.

Note

- When you specify two or more copies in Copies, the printed pages will be collated.
- The settings can be changed.
  However, after changing Printer Paper Size, confirm that the setting for Page Size on the Page Setup sheet matches the setting set in the software application.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- If you select A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper when Automatically Select is selected in Paper Source, the machine feeds the paper from the Cassette. If you select other sizes or types of paper such as photo paper, the machine feeds the paper from the Rear Tray. If you select the wrong page size or media type, the machine may feed paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.

(3) Click OK.

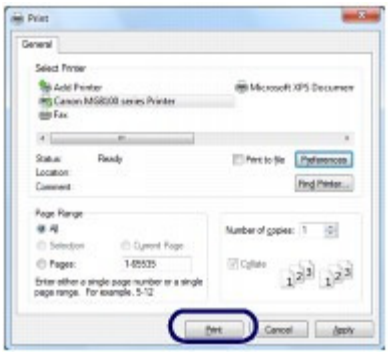


Note

- For details on the printer driver functions, click Help or Instructions to view the online help or the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* . The Instructions button appears on the Quick Setup, Main and Maintenance sheets if the on-screen manual is installed on your computer.
- You can name the changed settings and add to Commonly Used Settings.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- If the Always Print with Current Settings check box is selected, the current settings will be applied from the next print job onward. Some software applications may not have this function.
- To display the preview to confirm the print result, select the Preview before printing check box. Some software applications may not have a preview function.
- You can specify the detailed print settings on the Main sheet or Page Setup sheet.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

7. Start printing.

Click Print (or OK) to start printing.



Note

- To cancel a print job in progress, touch the **Stop** button on the machine or click Cancel Printing on the printer status monitor. After canceling the print job, blank sheets of paper may be ejected.
  To display the printer status monitor, click the printer icon on the taskbar. In Windows Vista operating system (hereafter referred to as "Windows Vista") or Windows XP, click Canon XXX Printer (where "**XXX**" is your machine's name) on the taskbar.
- If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.
  See Aligning the Print Head .

Page top

C054

Printing Web Pages (Easy-WebPrint EX)

Easy-WebPrint EX provides quick and easy printing of web pages for Internet Explorer.
You can print web pages automatically resized to fit the paper width without cutting off the sides of pages, or preview and select the desired web pages to print.
Easy-WebPrint EX requires Internet Explorer 7 or later.

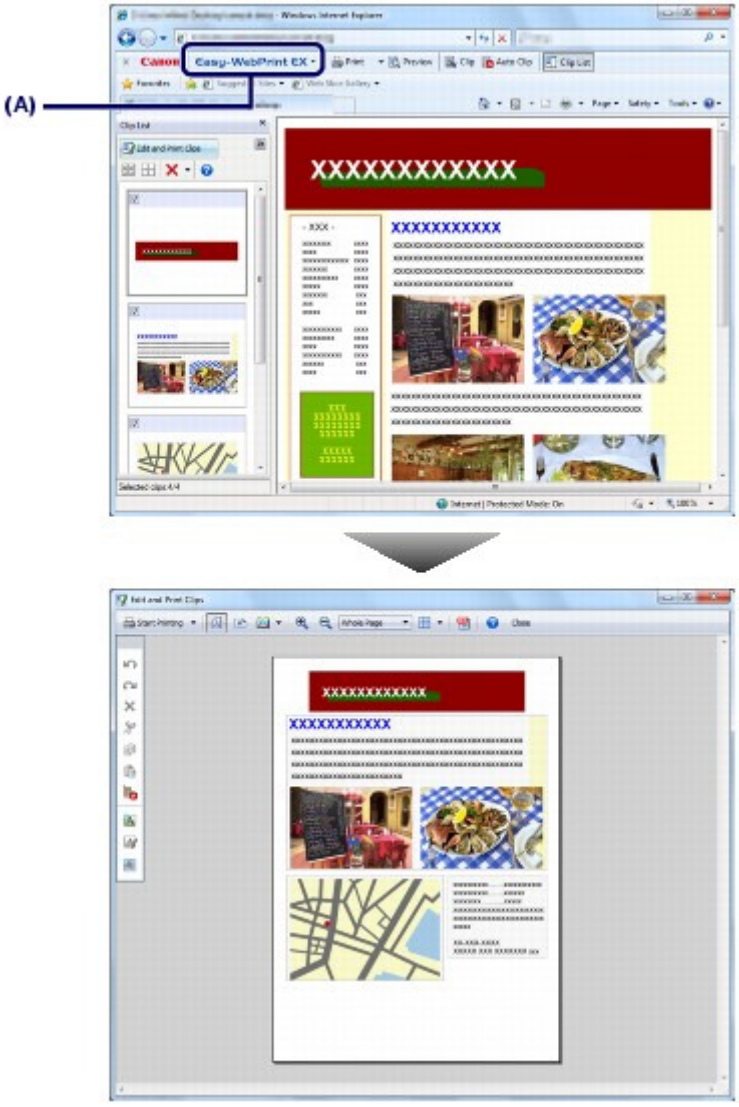
Important

- It is unlawful to reproduce or edit the copyrighted work of another person without permission from the copyright holder, except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright. Additionally, reproducing or editing photographs of people may infringe on portrait rights.

Note

- For information on installing or starting Easy-WebPrint EX, see Easy-WebPrint EX .

The clip function, for example, allows you to clip desired parts of web pages and edit them to print.
For details on operating Easy-WebPrint EX, refer to the online help. Click Easy-WebPrint EX (A) on the toolbar, then select Help from the pull-down menu to view the online help.





Page top

C055

Starting Various Software Applications

This section describes Solution Menu EX, which is used to start the software applications supplied with the machine. The information on Easy-WebPrint EX, a software application for printing web pages, is also included.

■ Solution Menu EX

Solution Menu EX is a software application that provides quick access to other software applications supplied with the machine, manuals, and online product information.

Note

- Install Solution Menu EX, the on-screen manual, or other supplied software applications you want to use from the *Setup CD-ROM* when they have not been installed or have been uninstalled. To install them, select them in Custom Install.

Menus are displayed in Category Menu Area of Solution Menu EX Main Screen. Click a menu in Category Menu Area to display icons for functions available in that menu, in Function Icon Area of Main Screen. The number and types of icons or menus displayed in Main Screen may vary depending on your machine and region.

* The screen below is for Windows 7.



(A) Main Screen
(B) Function Icon Area
(C) Category Menu Area
(D) Desktop Accessory
(E) Shortcut menu to which you can add the icons of frequently used functions
(F) Accessory Icon that lets you display Main Screen, show or hide Shortcut menu, etc.

Photo Print
Print photos taken with a digital camera.

Use Scanner
Scan photos or documents.

Canon Web Service
Download content or materials from the website for printing.

CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM
CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM is a premium content service available exclusively to users of genuine Canon inks for this machine.

Make sure that genuine Canon ink tanks are installed properly for all colors.

Help & Settings
View the Solution Menu EX online help or the on-screen manual of the machine. Set up Solution Menu EX or the machine.

Start Application
Start the supplied software applications such as Easy-PhotoPrint EX and My Printer.
With My Printer, you can display the printer driver setup window, and get information on what action to take if you have trouble with the operation.

Online Shopping
Purchase consumables such as ink from the website.

Information
Find useful information on the machine.

Note

- The computer must be connected to the Internet to access the website for useful information, etc.
- For details on operating Solution Menu EX, refer to the online help. Select the Help & Settings menu, then click (Solution Menu EX's Help) to view the online help.

Starting Software Applications from Solution Menu EX

From Solution Menu EX, you can start a software application, and also directly access a function of the software application.
The following procedure is to start Solution Menu EX and, for example, select one of the Easy-PhotoPrint EX functions, Photo Print.

1. Start Solution Menu EX.

Double-click (Solution Menu EX) on the desktop.

Click Here: Solution Menu EX

Note

- Unless the default setting has been changed, Solution Menu EX starts automatically when you start up the computer.
- To start Solution Menu EX from the Start menu, select All Programs, Canon Utilities, Solution Menu EX, then Solution Menu EX.
- If Solution Menu EX Main Screen does not appear after starting Solution Menu EX, right-click (Accessory Icon) and select Show Main Screen.

2. Select the function of a software application that you want to start.

(1) Click the Photo Print menu.

(2) Click (Photo Print).
Easy-PhotoPrint EX will be started, and the operation screen of Photo Print will appear.



Note

- In addition to photo printing, functions for creating albums, calendars, and other photo items are available.
  For details on operations and functions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX, see Printing Photos (Easy-PhotoPrint EX).

■ Easy-WebPrint EX

When Easy-WebPrint EX is installed, it adds a toolbar to your Internet Explorer screen. The toolbar is available whenever Internet Explorer is running.



Note

Installing Easy-WebPrint EX

- If Easy-WebPrint EX is not installed, the guidance for installation of Easy-WebPrint EX may appear in the notification area of the taskbar.
  To install Easy-WebPrint EX, click the displayed guidance and follow the instructions on the screen.
- You can also install Easy-WebPrint EX from the *Setup CD-ROM* .
  To install Easy-WebPrint EX, select Easy-WebPrint EX in Custom Install.
- To install Easy-WebPrint EX on your computer, Internet Explorer 7 or later is required and the computer must be connected to the Internet.

■ Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro is a plug-in application started from Digital Photo Professional, a RAW image development software designed for Canon brand digital camera (for supported models, visit our website), Adobe Photoshop, or Adobe Photoshop Elements.
Easy-PhotoPrint Pro allows easy performance of various photo prints, such as borderless print, index print, grayscale print, or print using Adobe RGB.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro is only compatible with Adobe Photoshop CS4/CS3/CS2/CS and Adobe Photoshop Elements 6/7/8, or Digital Photo Professional Ver. 2.1 or later.
  For updated compatibility, visit our website.

* The screen below is for Windows 7.



Print in Various Layouts



Bordered (full) print



Index print

Color Management Function Compatible with Adobe RGB



Adobe RGB



sRGB

Color Correction While Viewing a Sample Pattern



Produce Retro Flavor by Grayscale Photos



Cool Tone



Black/White (Default)



Warm Tone

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Starting from Digital Photo Professional

1. Select photos to print in Digital Photo Professional.

2. From the File menu of Digital Photo Professional, select Print with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro in Plug-in printing.

   Easy-PhotoPrint Pro starts and the photos selected in Digital Photo Professional appear in Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro cannot be started when no photo is selected in Digital Photo Professional.

Starting from Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements

1. Open files of photos to print in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.

2. From the File menu of Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements, select Canon Easy-PhotoPrint Pro... in Automate.

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro starts and the photos opened in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements appear in Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro cannot be started when no photo is displayed in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint Pro does not appear in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements's menu even after installing Easy-PhotoPrint Pro, follow these steps to install the Photoshop Plug-In.

  1. Exit Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.
  2. From the Start menu, select All Programs, Canon Utilities, Easy-PhotoPrint Pro, then Photoshop Plug-In Installer.
  3. Click Yes or Continue in the User Account Control dialog box.
     If you are using Windows XP, the User Account Control dialog box does not appear. Go to step 4.
  4. Follow the on-screen instructions to install.

  * The Photoshop Plug-In will not be installed if Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements has never been started.
- If you create or edit a photo in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe photoshop Elements using the layer function, the photo may not be displayed in Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.
  In this case, combine the photo and the layer in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.

Page top

Other Usages

This section introduces the document print function to print PDF files on the memory card or USB flash drive, the function to print the template forms such as notebook paper, graph paper, etc., the setting items of the machine, and the function to print directly from a digital camera or mobile phone.

Printing PDF Files Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive

Printing the Template Forms such as Notebook Paper

Printing Photos Directly from Your Digital Camera or Mobile Phone

Printing Photos from a PictBridge Compliant Device
Printing Photos from a Wireless Communication Device

Machine Settings



Page top

C061

Printing PDF Files Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive

You can print documents (PDF files) on the memory card or USB flash drive directly with the machine. To start document printing, follow the operation below.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

- Select Document print on the HOME screen.
  See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .
  Insert a memory card or USB flash drive containing documents (PDF files).
  A list of documents will appear. Select the desired document.

- Insert a memory card or USB flash drive containing documents (PDF files) on the HOME screen, copy standby screen, etc.
  A list of documents will appear. Select the desired document.

Note

If a message appears

- If photos and documents (PDF files) are saved on the memory card or USB flash drive, the message "Photos and documents (PDF) are saved. Which do you want to print?" will appear.
  Select Print documents, then touch the **OK** button.
  A list of documents will appear. Select the desired document.

Printable PDF Files

The following documents (PDF files) can be printed with the operation panel on the machine.
For details on printing, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

- PDF files that are created by scanning with the machine with Format set to PDF or Compact PDF (file extension ".pdf")
- PDF files that are created by scanning from MP Navigator EX (supplied with the machine) with the PDF compression set to Standard or High (file extension ".pdf"), except those below
  - Encrypted files
  - PDF files containing any images whose width and height both have 9601 pixels or more

Other PDF files cannot be printed even if they appear on the list.
If you touch the right **Function** button on the document selection screen, the Details screen will appear. In the following cases, you cannot print the selected PDF file.
- The Details screen does not appear for the selected PDF file.
- Displayed name for Created with is other than the machine's name or MP Navigator EX.

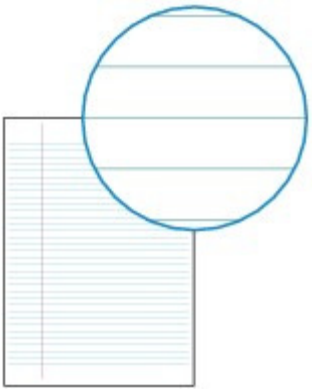
C062

Printing the Template Forms such as Notebook Paper

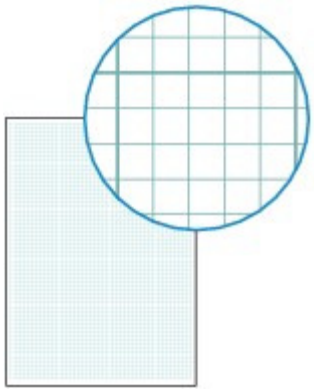
You can print various template forms such as notebook paper, graph paper, etc., with the machine.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.

To print template forms with the machine, select Special print on the HOME screen, then select Template print.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

Two examples of template forms you can print are shown below.



Notebook paper



Graph paper

Page top

C063

Printing Photos Directly from Your Digital Camera or Mobile Phone

■ Printing Photos from a PictBridge Compliant Device

You can connect the PictBridge compliant device to this machine with a USB cable that is recommended by the device's manufacturer, and print saved images directly.
For details on how to print saved images connecting the PictBridge compliant device, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
For details on the print settings on the PictBridge compliant device, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the device.



Connectable devices:

Any PictBridge compliant device can be connected to this machine regardless of the manufacturer or model as long as it is compliant with the PictBridge Standard.

Important

- Do not use the USB cable longer than around 10 feet / 3 meters to connect any PictBridge compliant device to the machine since it may affect the operation of other peripheral devices.

Note

- PictBridge is the Standard to print your photos directly without using a computer, connecting a device such as a digital still camera, digital camcorder, or camera-equipped mobile phone.

(PictBridge) A device with this mark is PictBridge compliant.

Printable image data format:

This machine accepts images* taken with a camera compliant with the Design rule for Camera File system and PNG files.
* Exif 2.2/2.21 compliant

Note

- When printing from the PictBridge compliant device, set the print quality with the Operation Panel on the machine. You cannot set the print quality on the PictBridge compliant device.

■ Printing Photos from a Wireless Communication Device

You can easily print image data with wireless infrared communication from your mobile phone. If the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30 is connected to the machine, you can print image data with wireless communication from Bluetooth compatible mobile phones or computers.
For details on the operation, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .



Page top

C064

Machine Settings

This section describes the items you can set or change in Device settings of Setup.
For details on setting or changing, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Plain paper feed settings

Selects the paper source (Rear Tray or Cassette) in which you load plain paper. The machine feeds plain paper from the Cassette by default. Use this setting to change the paper source for plain paper to the Rear Tray.

Print settings

Prevent paper abrasion

Use this setting only if the print surface becomes smudged.

Extended copy amount

Selects the amount of image that extends off the paper when selecting Borderless copy in Copy menu.

Film cutting range setting

Selects the cutting range of a film when scanning the 35 mm film in the film printing.

Auto photo fix setting

Selects whether or not to prioritize the Exif information saved on a photo when Auto photo fix is selected.

LAN settings

Change wireless/wired

Switches between wired LAN and wireless LAN. You can also disable LAN connection.

Wireless LAN setup

Configures the wireless LAN connection according to the type of access point or the network environment. To set up the wireless LAN, select an access point from the list of detected access points and specify the security settings. You can also set up the wireless LAN by using the WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) or specifying detailed settings.
For details, refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.

Confirm LAN settings

Displays the wireless or wired LAN configurations of the machine on the LCD, or prints this information from the machine.

Other settings

Configures other network settings including the machine's network name, IPv4/IPv6 setting, memory card sharing, WSD (Web Services on Devices) setting, etc.

Reset LAN settings

Sets the machine network settings back to the default.

Device user settings

Date display format

Selects the format of date that is displayed on the LCD or printed on papers.

Read/write attribute

Selects whether to use the Card Slot of the machine as the memory card drive of a computer.

Volume control

Adjusts the keypad volume generated when touching the buttons on the Operation Panel, or the alarm volume generated when there is a conflict in the settings or an error.

Power save setting

Selects the length of wait time until the machine enters the Power save mode.
The machine enters the Power save mode if not operated for a certain time interval. In the Power save mode, the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) lamp will be turned off to reduce the power consumption of the machine.
The default setting is 15 minutes.

Quiet mode setting

Enables this function if you want to reduce the operating noise of the machine, such as when using the machine at night (when copying, printing from the memory card, printing from the PictBridge compliant device, printing with wireless communication, etc.).

Guide display settings

The guidance appears at the top of the operation screen or settings screen. You can change the time interval before the guidance appears or hide it.

Key repeat

Enables to increase or decrease numbers rapidly by holding your finger on a button when inputting numbers. When this setting is disabled, holding your finger on the button is the same as touching it once.

Mobile phone print settings

Specifies paper or image correction when you print from the wireless communication device.

Bluetooth settings

Changes the Bluetooth settings, such as the device name or passkey. This setting appears only when the optional Bluetooth Unit is connected to the machine.

PictBridge print settings

Specifies paper, print quality, etc. when you print from the PictBridge compliant device.

Language selection

Changes the language for LCD messages and menus.

Reset setting

Sets the machine settings back to the default. (However, the settings configured in LAN settings, the values set for the print head alignment, the setting in Read/write attribute, and the language set in Language selection will not be reset.)

Page top

Loading Paper / Originals

This section describes types of paper or originals you can load, how to load printing paper in the Rear Tray or Cassette, and how to load originals to copy or scan.

Loading Paper

Paper Sources to Load Paper
Loading Paper in the Cassette
Loading Paper in the Rear Tray
Loading Photo Paper
Loading Envelopes
Media Types You Can Use
Media Types You Cannot Use

Loading Originals

Loading Originals
How to Load Originals for Each Function
Originals You Can Load



Page top

C071

Loading Paper

Paper Sources to Load Paper
Loading Paper in the Cassette
Loading Paper in the Rear Tray
Media Types You Can Use
Media Types You Cannot Use

■ Paper Sources to Load Paper

The machine has two paper sources to feed paper; Cassette and Rear Tray.
You can load paper in either one of the paper sources, depending on the page size and media type of paper. Paper is fed from the Cassette or Rear Tray depending on the selection of the page size or media type.
See Media Types You Can Use .

Note

- When printing, select the correct page size and media type. If you select the wrong page size or media type, the machine may feed paper from the wrong paper source or may not print with the proper print quality.
  For details on how to load paper in each paper source, see Loading Paper in the Cassette or Loading Paper in the Rear Tray .

● Loading Plain Paper in the Cassette

When you use A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper, load it in the Cassette.
The machine feeds paper from the Cassette automatically by selecting plain paper (A4, B5, A5, or Letter size) in the print settings with the Operation Panel or the printer driver when printing.
For details on how to change the paper source setting, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide.



● Loading Photo Paper / Envelopes in the Rear Tray

When you use photo paper, load it in the Rear Tray.
The machine feeds paper from the Rear Tray automatically by selecting the media types other than plain paper, such as photo paper, in the print settings with the Operation Panel or the printer driver when printing.
When you use plain paper other than A4, B5, A5, or Letter size, also load it in the Rear Tray.



Page top

C072

■ Loading Paper in the Cassette

You can load only A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette.
Load other sizes or types of paper in the Rear Tray.
See Media Types You Can Use .

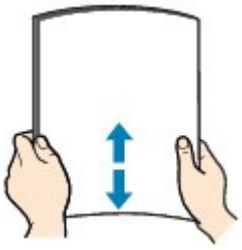
Note

Advice for printing on plain paper

- We recommend Canon genuine photo paper for printing photos.
  For details on the Canon genuine paper, see Media Types You Can Use .
- You can use general copy paper.
  For the page size and paper weight you can use for this machine, see Media Types You Can Use .

1. Prepare paper.

Align the edges of paper. If paper is curled, flatten it.



Note

- Align the edges of paper neatly before loading. Loading paper without aligning the edges may cause paper jams.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.
  For details on how to flatten curled paper, refer to " Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

2. Load paper.

(1) Pull out the Cassette from the machine.



(2) Slide the Paper Guide (A) to align with the mark of page size.
The Paper Guide (A) will stop when it aligns with the corresponding page size mark.

(3) Load the paper stack WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING DOWN and THE LEADING EDGE TO THE FAR SIDE, and align it against the right side of the

Cassette.

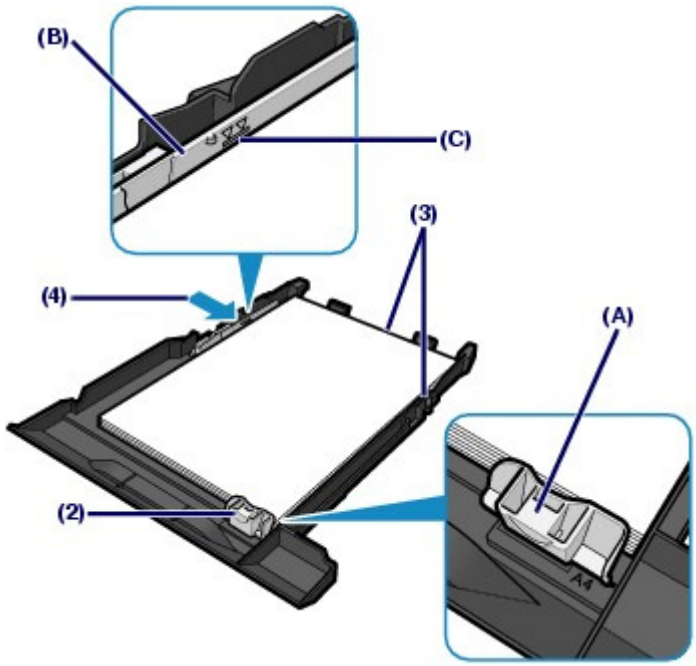
Note

- There may be a little space between the Paper Guide (A) and the paper stack.

(4) Slide the Paper Guide (B) on the left to align completely with the side of the paper stack.

Note

- Do not load sheets of paper higher than the Load Limit Mark (C).



(5) Insert the Cassette into the machine.

Push the Cassette all the way into the machine.



3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

Note

After loading paper

- When using the machine to copy or print without a computer, select the size and type of the loaded paper for Page size and Type on the print settings screen.
  See Changing the Settings in "Printing Photos Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive" or Changing the Settings in "Making Copies".
- When printing with a computer, select the size and type of the loaded paper in Printer Paper Size and Media Type in the printer driver.
  See Printing Documents .



Page top

C073

■ Loading Paper in the Rear Tray

You can load photo paper or envelopes in the Rear Tray.

● Loading Photo Paper

Important

- If you cut plain paper into small size such as 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm, 4" x 8" / 101.6 x 203.2 mm, 5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm, or 2.16" x 3.58" / 55.0 x 91.0 mm (Card size) to perform trial print, it can cause paper jams.

1. Prepare paper.

See step 1 in Loading Paper in the Cassette .

Align the edges of paper. If paper is curled, flatten it.

2. Load paper.

(1) Open the Paper Support, raise it, then tip it back.

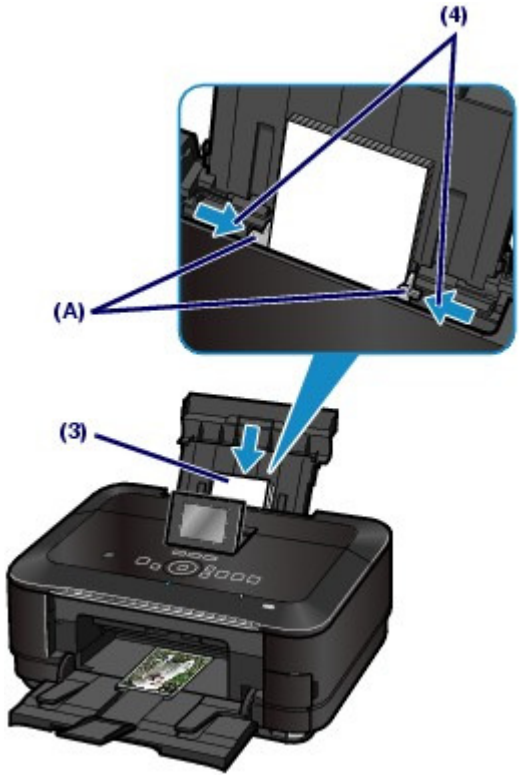
(2) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.



(3) Slide the Paper Guides (A) to open them, and load the paper in the center of the Rear Tray WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.

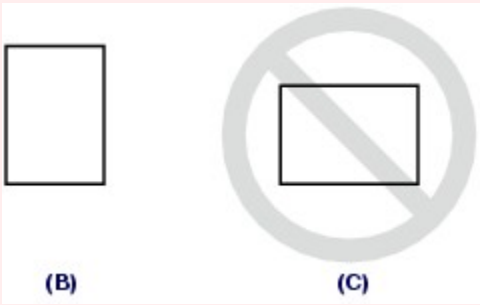
(4) Slide the Paper Guides (A) to align them with both sides of the paper stack.

Do not slide the Paper Guides too hard. The paper may not be fed properly.



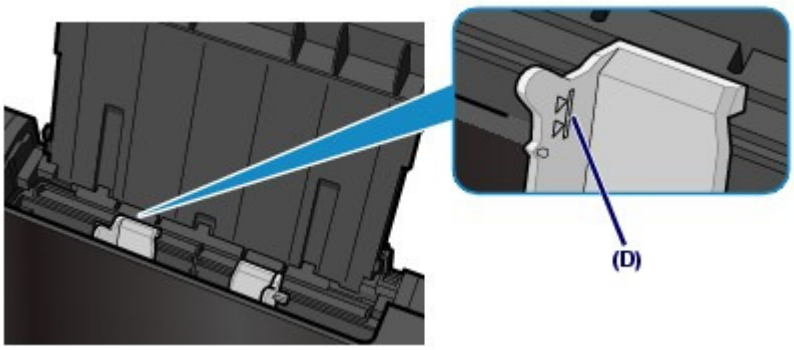
Important

- Always load paper in the portrait orientation (B). Loading paper in the landscape orientation (C) can cause paper jams.



Note

- Do not load sheets of paper higher than the Load Limit Mark (D).



Note

After loading paper

- When using the machine to copy or print without a computer, select the size and type of the loaded paper for Page size and Type on the print settings screen.

See Changing the Settings in "Printing Photos Saved on the Memory Card / USB Flash Drive" or Changing the Settings in "Making Copies".

- When printing with a computer, select the size and type of the loaded paper in Printer Paper Size and Media Type in the printer driver.
  See Printing Documents .



Page top

C074

Loading Envelopes

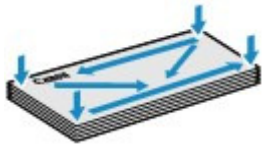
You can print on European DL and US #10 envelopes.
The address is automatically rotated and printed according to the envelope's direction by specifying with the printer driver properly.

Important

- You can only print on envelopes with the computer.
- Do not use the following envelopes. They could jam in the machine or cause the machine to malfunction.
  - Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
  - Envelopes with a double flap (or sticker flaps)
  - Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive

1. Prepare envelopes.

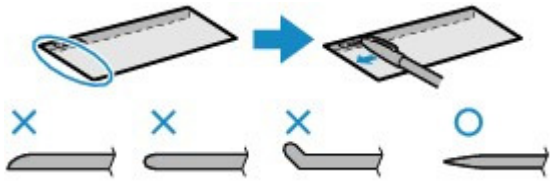
- Press down on all four corners and edges of the envelopes to flatten them.



- If the envelopes are curled, hold the opposite corners and gently twist them in the opposite direction.



- If the corner of the envelope flap is folded, flatten it.
- Use a pen to press the leading edge in the inserting direction flat and sharpen the crease.



The figures above show a side view of the leading edge of the envelope.

Important

- The envelopes may jam in the machine if they are not flat or the edges are not aligned. Make sure that no curl or puff exceeds 0.1 inches / 3 mm.

2. Load envelopes.

(1) Open the Paper Support, raise it, then tip it back.
See (1) of step 2 in Loading Photo Paper .

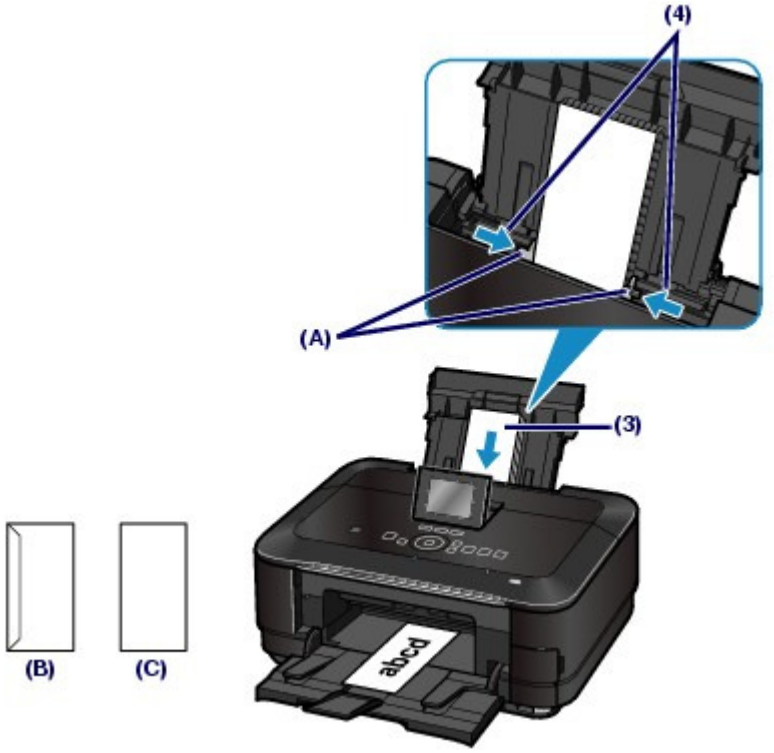
(2) Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.
See (2) of step 2 in Loading Photo Paper .

(3) Slide the Paper Guides (A) to open them, and load the envelopes in the center of

the Rear Tray WITH THE ADDRESS SIDE FACING YOU.
The folded flap of the envelope will be faced down on the left side.

Up to 10 envelopes can be loaded at once.

(4) Slide the Paper Guides (A) to align them with both sides of the envelopes.
Do not slide the Paper Guides too hard. The envelopes may not be fed properly.

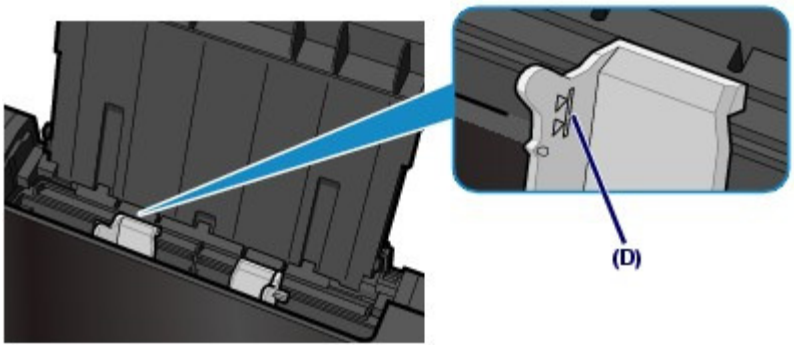


(B) Rear side

(C) Address side

Note

- Do not load envelopes higher than the Load Limit Mark (D).



3. Specify the settings with the printer driver.

(1) Select Envelope in Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup sheet.

(2) Select DL Env. or Comm. Env. #10 in the Envelope Size Setting window.

(3) Select Landscape in Orientation.

Important

- If you do not specify the envelope size or orientation properly, the address will be printed upside down or will be turned to 90 degrees.

Note

- If the print result is upside down, open the printer driver setup window, select Envelope in Commonly Used Settings, then select the Rotate 180 degrees check box in Additional Features.
- For details on the printer driver settings, see Printing Documents .



Page top

C075

■ Media Types You Can Use

Choose paper suitable for printing, for the best print results. Canon provides you various types of paper to enhance the fun of printing, such as stickers as well as papers for photo or document. We recommend the use of Canon genuine paper for printing your important photos.

● Media Types

Commercially available papers

● Plain Paper (including recycled paper)

- Media type settings -

Operation Panel: Plain paper
Printer driver: Plain Paper

- Paper load limit -

Rear Tray: Approx. 150 sheets *1
Cassette: Approx. 150 sheets for A4, B5, A5, and Letter / 8.5" x 11"

- Paper Output Tray load limit -

Approx. 50 sheets

*1 A4, B5, A5, or Letter-sized plain paper can be loaded only when Rear tray is selected for Plain paper feed settings in Device settings of Setup.

Note

- Proper feeding of paper may not be possible at the maximum capacity depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (either very high or low temperature or humidity). In such cases, reduce the number of paper you load at a time to less than half (100% recycled paper can be used).

● Envelopes

- Media type settings -

Printer driver: Envelope

- Paper load limit -

Rear Tray:10 envelopes

- Paper Output Tray load limit -

We recommend that you remove the previously printed envelope from the Paper Output Tray before continuously printing to avoid blurs and discoloration.

Note

- Available only when printing from your computer.
- Feeding envelopes from the Cassette can damage the machine. Always load in the Rear Tray.

Canon genuine papers

Refer to the instruction manual supplied with the paper for detailed information on the printable side and notes on handling paper. For information on the page sizes available for each Canon genuine paper, visit our website.

Note

- The Model Number of Canon genuine paper is shown in brackets.
- You may not be able to purchase some Canon genuine papers depending on the country or region of purchase. Paper is not sold in the US by Model Number. Purchase paper by name.

- To specify the page size and media type when printing photos saved on a PictBridge compliant device or mobile phone, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

For printing photos:

- **Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101>**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Pro Platinum
  Printer driver: Photo Paper Pro Platinum

- **Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501>**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Glossy
  Printer driver: Glossy Photo Paper

- **Photo Paper Glossy <GP-502>**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Glossy
  Printer driver: Glossy Photo Paper

- **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201>**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Plus Glossy II
  Printer driver: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II

- **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201>**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Plus Semi-gloss
  Printer driver: Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss

- **Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Matte
  Printer driver: Matte Photo Paper

  - Paper load limit -
  Rear Tray:
  10 sheets for A4, Letter / 8.5" x 11", 5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm, and 8" x 10" / 20 x 25 cm
  20 sheets for 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm

  - Paper Output Tray load limit -
  We recommend that you remove the previously printed sheet from the Paper Output Tray before continuously printing to avoid blurs and discoloration.

  Note

  - Feeding this paper from the Cassette can damage the machine. Always load in the Rear Tray.
  - When loading paper in stacks, the print side may become marked as it is fed or paper may not feed properly. In this case, load one sheet at a time (except for Matte Photo Paper <MP -101>).

- **Fine Art Paper "Photo Rag"<FA-PR1> *1**

  - Media type settings -
  Printer driver: Fine Art "Photo Rag"

  - Paper load limit -
  Rear Tray: 1 sheet

  - Paper Output Tray load limit -
  We recommend that you remove the previously printed sheet from the Paper Output Tray before continuously printing to avoid blurs and discoloration.

*1 If you are using Fine Art Paper "Photo Rag", you cannot print in the 1.38 inches / 35 mm margin on the top and bottom edges according to the direction of printing. If you select a special page size for Fine Art Paper in the printer driver, a limit is set to prevent printing in the 1.38 inches / 35 mm margin on the top and bottom edges of the paper. We recommend checking the printing area in the preview screen before printing.
For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
Canon genuine media is produced and managed to get optimal printing quality. We recommend using Canon genuine media.

Note

- Available only when printing from your computer.
- Feeding this paper from the Cassette can damage the machine. Always load in the Rear Tray.

For printing business documents:

- **High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>**

  - Media type settings -
  Printer driver: High Resolution Paper

  - Paper load limit -
  Rear Tray: 80 sheets

  - Paper Output Tray load limit -
  50 sheets

Note

- Available only when printing from your computer.
- Feeding this paper from the Cassette can damage the machine. Always load in the Rear Tray.

For creating your own prints:

- **T-Shirt Transfers <TR-301> *1**

  - Media type settings -
  Printer driver: T-Shirt Transfers

- **Photo Stickers <PS-101> *2**

  - Media type settings -
  Operation Panel: Glossy
  Printer driver: Glossy Photo Paper

  - Paper load limit -
  Rear Tray: 1 sheet

  - Paper Output Tray load limit -
  We recommend that you remove the previously printed sheet from the Paper Output Tray before continuously printing to avoid blurs and discoloration.

*1 Available only when printing from your computer.

*2 When scanning printed photos to print onto sticker paper, be sure to select Sticker print in Reprint from printed photo in Photo reprint. If Sticker print is selected, the type of paper cannot be selected.
See Printing Photos in Various Layouts .
When printing photos saved on a memory card or USB flash drive onto sticker paper, be sure to select Sticker print in Fun photo print. If Sticker print is selected, the type of paper cannot be selected.
See Functions in Fun photo print .
When printing photos scanned from a film onto sticker paper, be sure to select Sticker print in Reprint from film in Photo reprint.
See Printing Photos in Various Layouts .

When printing photos saved on your mobile phone onto sticker paper, select Stickers for the page size in Mobile phone print settings under Device settings in Setup.
Refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Note

- Feeding this paper from the Cassette can damage the machine. Always load in the Rear Tray.
- You can easily specify print settings with Easy-PhotoPrint EX provided on the *Setup CD-ROM*. Install it on your computer.

Page Sizes

You can use the following page sizes.

Note

- You can load plain paper of the following page sizes in the Cassette:
  A4, B5, A5, and Letter sizes
  Plain paper of other sizes cannot be loaded in the Cassette. Load them in the Rear Tray.

Standard sizes:

- Letter (8.50 x 11.00 inches / 215.9 x 279.4 mm)
- Legal (8.50 x 14.00 inches / 215.9 x 355.6 mm)
- A5 (5.83 x 8.27 inches / 148.0 x 210.0 mm)
- A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches / 210.0 x 297.0 mm)
- B5 (7.17 x 10.12 inches / 182.0 x 257.0 mm)
- 4" x 6" (4.00 x 6.00 inches / 10 x 15 cm)
- 4" x 8" (4.00 x 8.00 inches / 101.6 x 203.2 mm)
- 5" x 7" (5.00 x 7.00 inches / 13 x 18 cm)
- 8" x 10" (8.00 x 10.00 inches / 20 x 25 cm)
- L (3.50 x 5.00 inches / 89.0 x 127.0 mm)
- 2L (5.00 x 7.01 inches / 127.0 x 178.0 mm)
- Hagaki (3.94 x 5.83 inches / 100.0 x 148.0 mm)
- Hagaki 2 (7.87 x 5.83 inches / 200.0 x 148.0 mm)
- Comm. Env. #10 (4.12 x 9.50 inches / 104.6 x 241.3 mm)
- DL Env. (4.33 x 8.66 inches / 110.0 x 220.0 mm)
- Choukei 3 (4.72 x 9.25 inches / 120.0 x 235.0 mm)
- Choukei 4 (3.54 x 8.07 inches / 90.0 x 205.0 mm)
- Youkei 4 (4.13 x 9.25 inches / 105.0 x 235.0 mm)
- Youkei 6 (3.86 x 7.48 inches / 98.0 x 190.0 mm)
- Card (2.16 x 3.58 inches / 55.0 x 91.0 mm)
- Wide (4.00 x 7.10 inches / 101.6 x 180.6 mm)
- Fine Art Letter (8.50 x 11.00 inches / 215.9 x 279.4 mm)
- Fine Art A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches / 210.0 x 297.0 mm)

Non-standard sizes:

You can also specify a custom size within the following range.

- Minimum size: 2.17 x 3.58 inches / 55.0 x 91.0 mm (Rear Tray)
- Maximum size: 8.50 x 26.61 inches / 215.9 x 676.0 mm (Rear Tray)

Paper Weight

17 to 28 lb / 64 to 105 g/m ^{2} (except for Canon genuine paper)
Do not use heavier or lighter paper (except for Canon genuine paper), as it could jam in the machine.

Notes on Storing Paper

- Take out only the necessary number of paper from the package, just before printing.
- To avoid curling, when you do not print, put unused paper back into the package and keep it on a level surface. And also, store it avoiding heat, humidity, and direct sunlight.

Notes on Paper for Full-page Borderless Printing

- Duplex printing is not available for full-page borderless printing.
- You cannot use A5, B5, and Legal-sized paper, and envelopes for full-page borderless printing.
- You can use plain paper for full-page borderless printing only when printing from a computer.
  However, this may result in lower print quality. We recommend using plain paper for a trial print.



Page top

C076

■ Media Types You Cannot Use

Do not use the following types of paper. Using such paper will cause not only unsatisfactory results, but also the machine to jam or malfunction.

- Folded, curled, or wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper that is too thin (weighing less than 17 lb / 64 g/m ^{2})
- Paper that is too thick (weighing more than 28 lb / 105 g/m ^{2}, except for Canon genuine paper)
- Paper thinner than a postcard, including plain paper or notepad paper cut to a small size (when printing on paper smaller than A5)
- Picture postcards
- Postcards affixed with photos or stickers
- Envelopes with a double flap (or sticker flaps)
- Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
- Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive
- Any type of paper with holes
- Paper that is not rectangular
- Paper bound with staples or glue
- Paper with adhesives
- Paper decorated with glitter, etc.

Page top

C077

Loading Originals

This section describes the procedure to load originals on the Platen Glass.

Loading Originals
How to Load Originals for Each Function
Originals You Can Load

You may have to load the original in a different position depending on the function you selected in Copy, Photo reprint, or Scan. Load the original in the correct position according to the selected function. If you do not load the original correctly, it may not be scanned properly.

Important

- After loading the original on the Platen Glass, be sure to close the Document Cover before starting to copy or scan.

Note

- For details on loading films, see Loading the Films .

■ Loading Originals

You can load originals to copy or scan on the Platen Glass.

1. Load an original on the Platen Glass.

(1) Open the Document Cover.

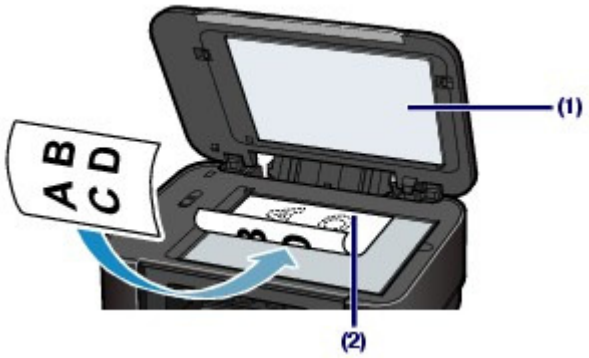
Important

- Do not place any object on the Document Cover. It will fall into the Rear Tray when the Document Cover is opened and cause the machine to malfunction.
- When opening or closing the Document Cover, do not touch the buttons on the Operation Panel. Doing so may result in an unexpected operation.

(2) Load the original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN on the Platen Glass.

Make sure of the proper position to load the original for each function.

See How to Load Originals for Each Function .



Important

- Be sure to observe the following when loading the original on the Platen Glass.
  - Do not place any objects weighing 4.4 lb / 2.0 kg or more on the Platen Glass.
  - Do not put any pressure of 4.4 lb / 2.0 kg or more on the Platen Glass, such as pressing down the original.

Failure to observe the above may cause the scanner to malfunction or the Platen Glass to break.

2. Close the Document Cover gently.



Page top

C078

■ How to Load Originals for Each Function

● Loading the Original to Be Aligned with the Alignment Mark

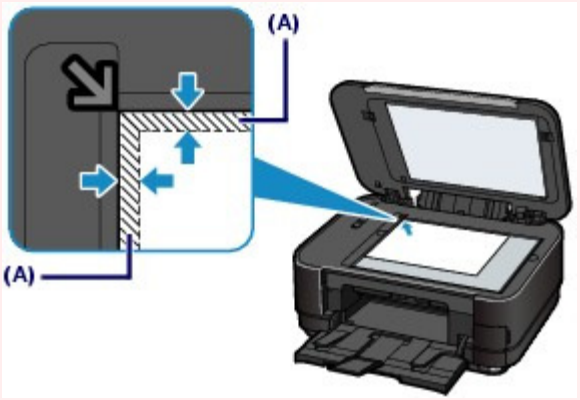
- **Load originals to copy**
- **In** Scan**,**
  - **select** Auto scan **for** Doc. type **to scan text documents, magazines, or newspapers**
  - **select** Document **or** Photo **for** Doc. type **and specify a standard size (A4, Letter, etc.) for** Scan size **to scan originals**
- **With a software application on a computer,**
  - **select documents, magazines, or texts in** Document Type
  - **select a standard size (A4, Letter, etc.) in** Document Size

Load the original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN and align it with the alignment mark .

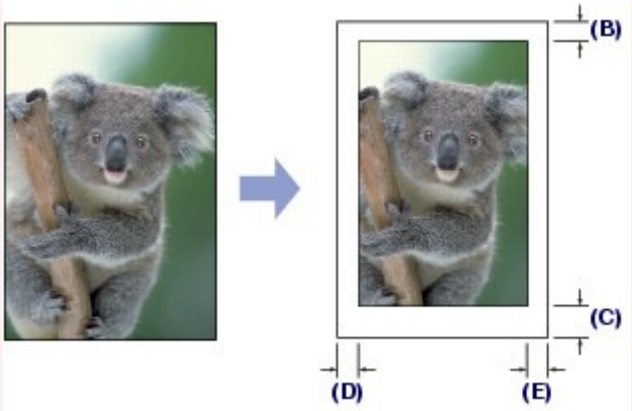


Important

- The machine cannot scan the shaded area (A) (0.04 inches / 1 mm from the edges of the Platen Glass).



- To ensure the best print quality, the machine allows a margin along each edge of media. The actual printable area will be the area inside these margins.

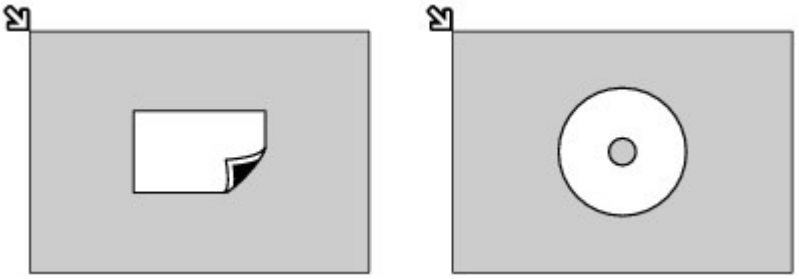


(B) 0.12 inches / 3.0 mm
(C) 0.20 inches / 5.0 mm
(D) 0.13 inches / 3.4 mm (0.25 inches / 6.4 mm for Letter and Legal-sized paper)
(E) 0.13 inches / 3.4 mm (0.25 inches / 6.3 mm for Letter and Legal-sized paper)

Loading Only One Original in the Center of the Platen Glass

- **Scan only one printed photo in** Photo reprint
- **In** Scan**,**
  - **select** Auto scan **for** Doc. type **to scan one printed photo, postcard, business card, or disc**
  - **select** Document **or** Photo **for** Doc. type **and specify** Auto crop **for** Scan size **to scan one original**
- **Scan one printed photo, postcard, business card, or disc with a software application on a computer**

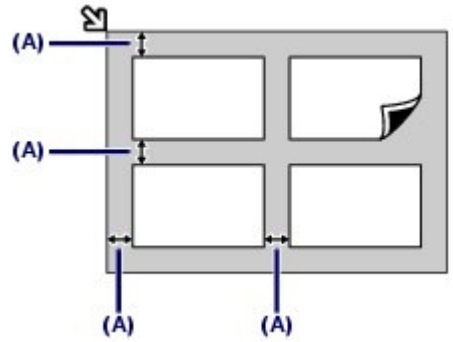
Load the original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN and place it at least 0.4 inches / 10 mm away from the edges of the Platen Glass.



Loading Two or More Originals on the Platen Glass

- **Scan two or more printed photos in** Photo reprint
- **In** Scan**,**
  - **select** Auto scan **for** Doc. type **to scan two or more printed photos, postcards, or business cards**
  - **select** Photo **for** Doc. type **and specify** Multi crop **for** Scan size **to scan two or more originals**
- **Scan two or more printed photos, postcards, or business cards with a software application on a computer**

Load two or more originals WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN and place them at least 0.4 inches / 10 mm away from the edges of the Platen Glass and at least 0.4 inches / 10 mm apart from each other.



(A) 0.4 inches / 10 mm

Note

- The Skew Correction function automatically compensates for the originals placed at an angle of up to approximately 10 degrees. Slanted photos with a long edge of 7.1 inches / 180 mm or more cannot be corrected.
- Non-rectangular or irregular shaped photos (such as cut out photos) may not be scanned properly.

Page top

C079

■ Originals You Can Load

You can copy or scan the following originals.

Types of originals:	Text document, magazine, or newspaper
	Printed photo, postcard, business card, or disc (BD/DVD/CD, etc.)
	Film (positive/negative 35 mm film strip and 35 mm mount film)
Size (W x L):	Max. 8.5 x 11.7 inches / 216 x 297 mm



Page top

Routine Maintenance

This section describes the procedure to replace ink tanks when they run out of ink, to clean the machine when the print result is faint, or to take an action when paper does not feed properly.

Replacing an Ink Tank

- Replacing Procedure
- Checking the Ink Status

When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect

- Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern
- Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern
- Cleaning the Print Head
- Cleaning the Print Head Deeply
- Aligning the Print Head

Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller

Cleaning the Pad in the Cassette

Page top

C091

Replacing an Ink Tank

When remaining ink cautions or errors occur, the message will appear to inform you of the error.
Refer to "An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD" in " Troubleshooting " of the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide*, and take an appropriate action.

Note

- For information on the compatible ink tanks, refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.
- If print results become faint or white streaks appear despite sufficient ink levels, see When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect .

■ Replacing Procedure

When you need to replace ink tanks, follow the procedure below.

Important

Handling ink

- If you remove an ink tank, replace it immediately. Do not leave the machine with ink tanks removed.
- Use new ink tanks for replacement. Installing used ink tanks may cause the nozzles to clog. Furthermore, with such ink tanks, the machine will not be able to inform you when to replace the ink tanks properly.
- Once an ink tank has been installed, do not remove it from the machine and leave it out in the open. This will cause the ink tank to dry out, and the machine may not operate properly when it is reinstalled. To maintain optimal printing quality, use an ink tank within six months of first use.

Note

- Color ink may be consumed even when printing a black-and-white document or when black-and-white printing is specified.
  Every ink is also consumed in the standard cleaning and deep cleaning of the Print Head, which may be necessary to maintain the machine's performance. When an ink tank is out of ink, replace it immediately with a new one.
  For details, see Tips on How to Use Your Machine .

1. Make sure that the power is turned on, and open the Paper Output Tray gently.

2. Lift the Scanning Unit (Cover) until it stops.

The Print Head Holder moves to the replacement position.



Caution

- Do not hold the Print Head Holder to stop or move it forcibly. Do not touch the Print Head Holder until it stops completely.

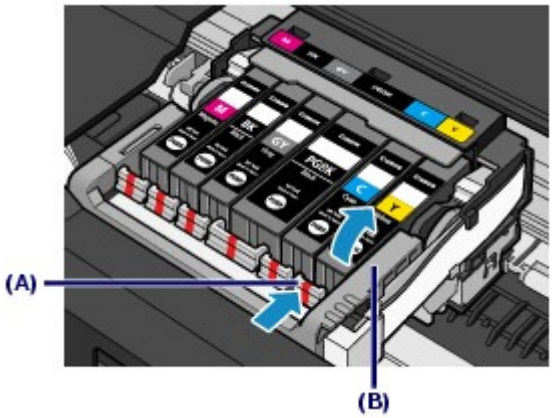
Important

- Do not place any object on the Document Cover. It will fall into the Rear Tray when the Document Cover is opened and cause the machine to malfunction.
- Be sure to lift the Scanning Unit (Cover) with the Document Cover closed.
- When opening or closing the Scanning Unit (Cover), do not touch the buttons on the Operation Panel. Doing so may result in an unexpected operation.
- Do not touch the metallic parts or other parts inside the machine.
- If the Scanning Unit (Cover) is left open for more than 10 minutes, the Print Head Holder moves to the right. In this case, close and reopen the Scanning Unit (Cover).

3. Remove the ink tank with the lamp flashing fast.

Push the tab (A) and lift the ink tank to remove.

Do not touch the Print Head Lock Lever (B).



Important

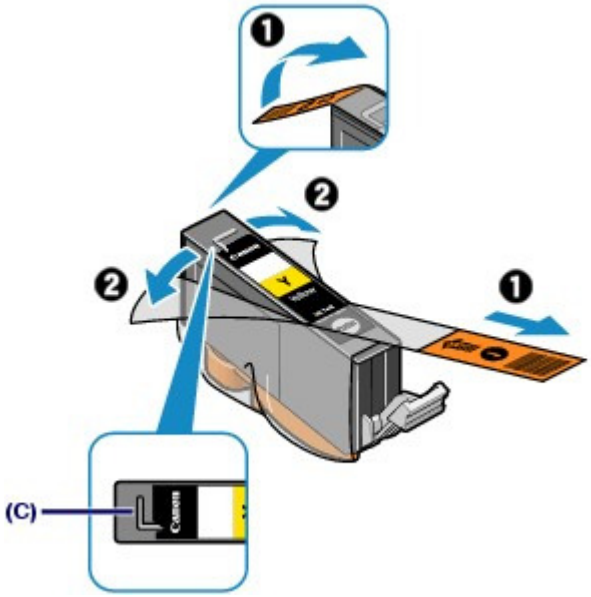
- Handle the ink tank carefully to avoid staining of clothing or the surrounding area.
- Discard the empty ink tank according to the local laws and regulations regarding disposal of consumables.

Note

- Do not remove two or more ink tanks at the same time. Be sure to replace ink tanks one by one when replacing two or more ink tanks.
- For details on ink lamp flashing speed, see Checking the Ink Status .

4. Prepare the new ink tank.

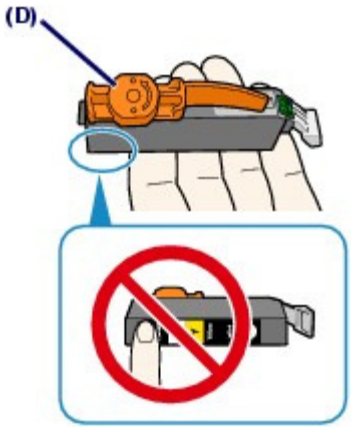
(1) Take a new ink tank out of its package, remove the orange tape (❶) completely, then remove the protective film (❷) completely.



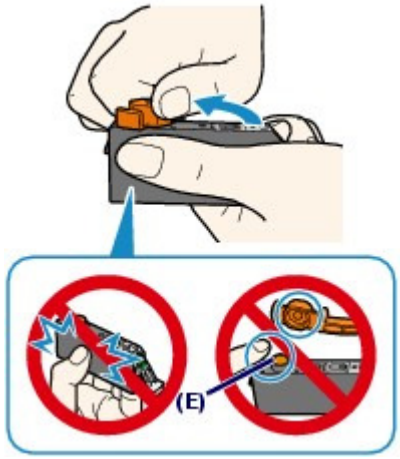
Important

- Handle the ink tanks carefully. Do not drop or apply excessive pressure to them.
- If the orange tape remains on the L-shape air hole (C), ink may splash or the machine may not print properly.

(2) Hold the ink tank with the orange protective cap (D) pointing up while being careful not to block the L-shape air hole (C).



(3) Slowly twist the orange protective cap (D) 90 degrees horizontally to remove it off.



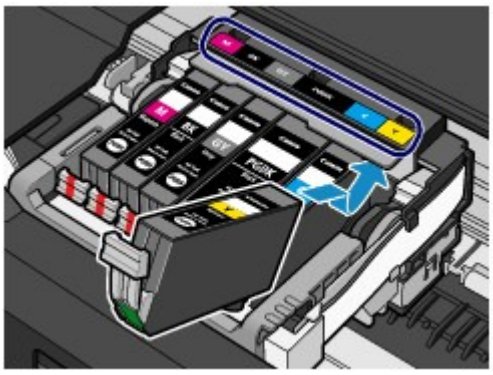
Important

- Do not push the sides of the ink tank. If you push the sides of the ink tank with the L-shape air hole (C) blocked, ink may splash.
- Do not touch the inside of the orange protective cap (D) or the open ink port (E). The ink may stain your hands if you touch them.
- Do not reattach the protective cap (D) once you have removed it. Discard it according to the local laws and regulations regarding disposal of consumables.

5. Install the new ink tank.

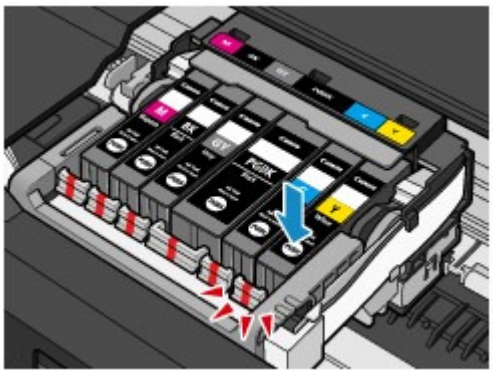
(1) Insert the front end of ink tank into the Print Head at a slant.

Make sure that the position of the ink tank matches the label.



(2) Press the mark (PUSH) (Push) on the ink tank until the ink tank snaps firmly into place.

Make sure that the ink lamp lights up red.



Important

- You cannot print if the ink tank is installed in the wrong position. Be sure to install the ink tank in the correct position according to the label on the Print Head Holder.
- You cannot print unless all the ink tanks are installed. Be sure to install all the ink tanks.

6. Close the Scanning Unit (Cover) gently.

Caution

- Be sure to hold the Scanning Unit (Cover) firmly using both hands, and be careful not to get your fingers caught.

Important

- When opening or closing the Scanning Unit (Cover), do not touch the buttons on the Operation Panel. Doing so may result in an unexpected operation.

Note

- If the error message appears after the Scanning Unit (Cover) is closed, refer to " Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

- When you start printing after replacing the ink tank, the machine starts cleaning the Print Head automatically. Do not perform any other operations until the machine completes the cleaning of the Print Head.
- If printed ruled lines are misaligned or the print head position is misaligned, adjust the print head position.
  See Aligning the Print Head .
- The machine may make noise during operation.



Page top

C092

■ Checking the Ink Status

You can check the ink status on the LCD or with the ink lamps.

● With the LCD on the Machine

(1) Make sure that the power is turned on, and touch the **HOME** button.

The HOME screen will appear.

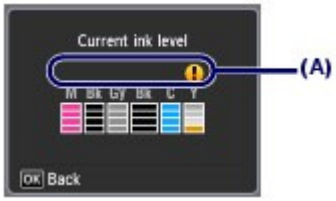
(2) Select Setup on the HOME screen.

See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The Setup menu screen will appear.

(3) Select Display remaining ink level, and touch the **OK** button.

A symbol appears in the area (A) if there is any information about the remaining ink level.



Example:

Ink tank is running low. Prepare a new ink tank.

Note

- You can also check the ink status on a screen of the LCD displayed while printing.

● With the Ink Lamps

(1) Make sure that the power is turned on, and open the Paper Output Tray gently.

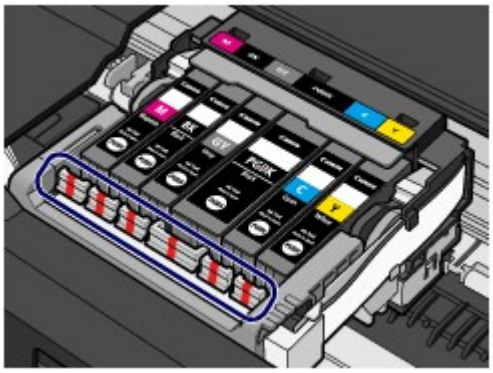
(2) Lift the Scanning Unit (Cover) until it stops.

See step 2 in Replacing Procedure .

(3) Check the ink lamps.

Close the Scanning Unit (Cover) after confirming the ink lamp status.

See step 6 in Replacing Procedure .



- **Ink lamp is on**

  The ink tank is correctly installed.

- **Ink lamp is flashing**

Flashing slowly (at around 3-second intervals)

 ..... Repeats

Ink tank is running low. Prepare a new ink tank.

Flashing fast (at around 1-second intervals)

 ..... Repeats

- The ink tank is installed in the wrong position.

Or

- The ink has run out.

Make sure that the ink tank is installed in the correct position as indicated by the label on the Print Head Holder. If the position is correct but the lamp flashes, there has been an error and the machine cannot print. Check the error message displayed on the LCD.

Refer to " Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

Ink lamp is off

The ink tank is not installed properly or the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled. If the ink tank is not installed properly, press the mark (Push) on the ink tank until the ink tank clicks into place. If it does not click into place, make sure that the orange protective cap has been removed from the bottom of the ink tank.

If the ink lamp is still off after reinstalling the ink tank, there has been an error and the machine cannot print. Check the error message displayed on the LCD.

Refer to " Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

Page top

C093

When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect

If print results are blurred or colors are not printed correctly, the print head nozzles are probably clogged. Follow the procedure below to print the nozzle check pattern, check the print head nozzle condition, then clean the Print Head.
If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, aligning the Print Head may improve print quality.

Important

- Do not rinse or wipe the Print Head and ink tanks. This can cause trouble with the Print Head and ink tanks.

Note

Before performing maintenance

- Make sure that the orange protective tape does not remain on the ink tank.
  Refer to "Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .
- Open the Scanning Unit (Cover) and make sure that all lamps on the ink tanks are lit red.
  If not, see Checking the Ink Status and take an appropriate action.
- Increasing the print quality in the printer driver settings may improve the print result.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

When the Print Results Are Blurred or Uneven:

Step 1

See Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern .

See Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern .

If there are missing lines or horizontal white streaks in the pattern:

Step 2

See Cleaning the Print Head .

If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Print Head twice:

Step 3

See Cleaning the Print Head Deeply .

After cleaning the Print Head, print and examine the nozzle check pattern.

Note

- When you have performed the procedure until step 3 and the problem has not been resolved, turn off the power and clean the Print Head deeply again after 24 hours.
  If the problem is still not resolved, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the service center.

When the Print Results Are Not Even such as the Ruled Lines Are Misaligned:

See Aligning the Print Head .

Note

- You can also perform the maintenance operations from your computer.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .



Page top

C094

■ Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Note

- If the remaining ink level is low, the nozzle check pattern will not be printed correctly. Replace the ink tank whose ink is low.
  See Replacing an Ink Tank .

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Make sure that one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

Important

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

4. Print the nozzle check pattern.

(1) Select Setup on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The Setup menu screen will appear.

(2) Select Maintenance , and touch the **OK** button.
The Maintenance screen will appear.

(3) Select Print nozzle check pattern, and touch the **OK** button.



The confirmation screen will appear.

(4) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.
The nozzle check pattern will be printed and two pattern confirmation screens will appear on the LCD.

5. Examine the nozzle check pattern.
See Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern .

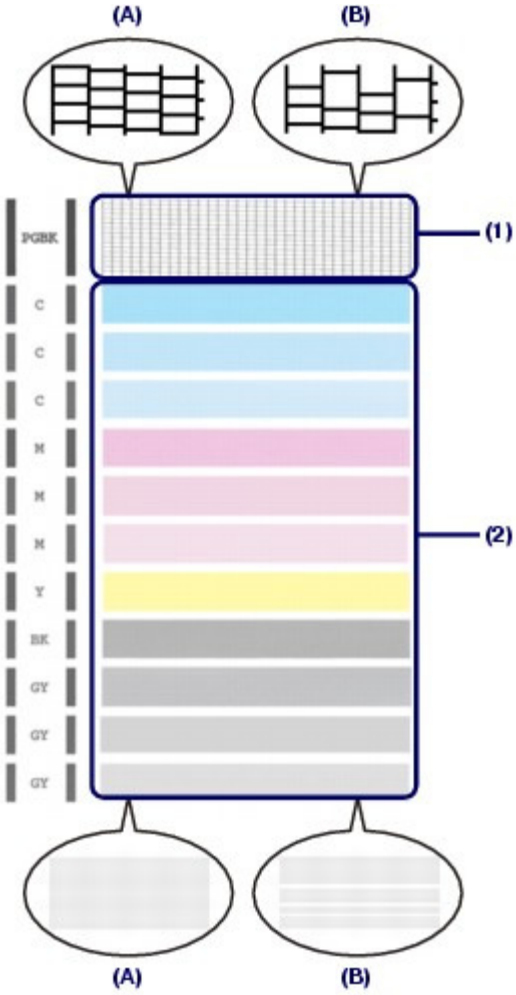
Page top

C095

■ Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern

Examine the nozzle check pattern, and clean the Print Head if necessary.

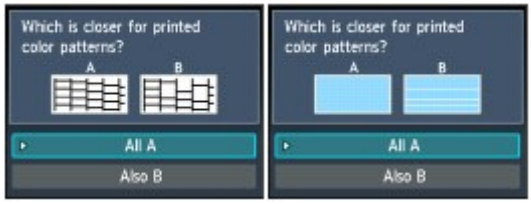
1. Check if there are missing lines in the pattern (1) or horizontal white streaks in the pattern (2).



(A) No missing lines/No horizontal white streaks

(B) Lines are missing/Horizontal white streaks are present

2. Select the pattern that is closer to the printed nozzle check pattern on the confirmation screen.



For (A) **(no missing lines or no horizontal white streaks) in both** (1) **and** (2):

(1) The cleaning is not required. Select All A and touch the **OK** button.

(2) Confirm the message and touch the **OK** button.
The screen will return to the Maintenance screen.

Note

- Touch the **HOME** button to exit Setup and display the HOME screen.

For (B) **(lines are missing or horizontal white streaks are present) in** (1) **or** (2)**, or in both** (1) **and** (2)**:**

(1) The cleaning is required. Select Also B and touch the **OK** button.
The cleaning confirmation screen will appear.

(2) Select Yes and touch the **OK** button.
The machine starts cleaning the Print Head.

See Cleaning the Print Head .

Page top

C096

■ Cleaning the Print Head

Clean the Print Head if lines are missing or if horizontal white streaks are present in the printed nozzle check pattern. Cleaning unclogs the nozzles and restores the print head condition. Cleaning the Print Head consumes ink, so clean the Print Head only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Make sure that one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

Important

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

4. Clean the Print Head.

(1) Select Setup on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The Setup menu screen will appear.

(2) Select Maintenance, and touch the **OK** button.
The Maintenance screen will appear.

(3) Select Cleaning, and touch the **OK** button.



The confirmation screen will appear.

(4) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.
The machine starts cleaning the Print Head.

Do not perform any other operations until the machine completes the cleaning of the Print Head. This takes about 1 minute.

The pattern print confirmation screen will appear.

(5) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.
The nozzle check pattern will be printed.

5. Examine the nozzle check pattern.
See Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern .

Note

- Touch the **HOME** button to exit Setup and display the HOME screen.

- If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Print Head twice, clean the Print Head deeply.
  See Cleaning the Print Head Deeply .



Page top

C097

■ Cleaning the Print Head Deeply

If print quality does not improve by the standard cleaning of the Print Head, clean the Print Head deeply. Cleaning the Print Head deeply consumes more ink than the standard cleaning of the Print Head, so clean the Print Head deeply only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Make sure that one or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper are loaded in the Cassette.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

Important

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

4. Clean the Print Head deeply.

(1) Select Setup on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The Setup menu screen will appear.

(2) Select Maintenance, and touch the **OK** button.
The Maintenance screen will appear.

(3) Select Deep cleaning, and touch the **OK** button.



The confirmation screen will appear.

(4) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.
The machine starts cleaning the Print Head deeply.

Do not perform any other operations until the machine completes the deep cleaning of the Print Head. This takes about 2 minutes 30 seconds.

The pattern print confirmation screen will appear.

(5) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.
The nozzle check pattern will be printed.

(6) When the completion message appears, touch the **OK** button.
The screen will return to the Maintenance screen.

5. Examine the nozzle check pattern.
See step 1 in Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern .

If a particular color is not printed properly, replace the ink tank of that color.
See Replacing an Ink Tank .

If the problem is not resolved, turn off the power and clean the Print Head deeply again after 24 hours.

If the problem is still not resolved, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the service center.

Note

- Touch the **HOME** button to exit Setup and display the HOME screen.

Page top

C098

■ Aligning the Print Head

If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized Canon Matte Photo Paper MP -101

Note

- If the remaining ink level is low, the print head alignment sheet will not be printed correctly. Replace the ink tank whose ink is low.
  See Replacing an Ink Tank .
- If you run out of the supplied paper (Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101) or the specified Canon genuine paper is not immediately available or obtainable, you can use plain paper and align the Print Head manually.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .
- The print head alignment pattern is printed in black and blue.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Load a sheet of supplied paper or A4 or Letter-sized Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101 in the Rear Tray.

Load the paper with the print side (whiter side) facing you in the Rear Tray.

Important

- You cannot use the Cassette to align the Print Head automatically. Be sure to load paper in the Rear Tray.

3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

Important

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

4. Adjust the print head position automatically.

(1) Select Setup on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The Setup menu screen will appear.

(2) Select Maintenance , and touch the **OK** button.
The Maintenance screen will appear.

(3) Select Auto head alignment, and touch the **OK** button.



The confirmation screen will appear.

(4) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.

The print head alignment sheet will be printed and the print head position will be adjusted automatically.

This takes about 4 minutes 30 seconds.

Note

- Touch the **HOME** button to exit Setup and display the HOME screen.
- If the automatic adjustment of the print head position has failed, the error message "Auto head align has failed." appears on the LCD.
  For details, refer to " Troubleshooting " in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .
- If the print results are still not satisfactory after adjusting the print head position as described above, adjust the print head position manually.
  For details, refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Page top

C099

Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller

If the Paper Feed Roller is dirty or paper powder is attached to it, paper may not be fed properly.
In this case, clean the Paper Feed Roller. Cleaning will wear out the Paper Feed Roller, so perform this only when necessary.

You need to prepare: three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.

2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.

Important

- If the Inner Cover is open, close it.

3. Select Roller cleaning.

(1) Select Setup on the HOME screen.
See Selecting Menus on the HOME Screen .

The Setup menu screen will appear.

(2) Select Maintenance , and touch the **OK** button.
The Maintenance screen will appear.

(3) Select Roller cleaning, and touch the **OK** button.



The confirmation screen will appear.

(4) Select Yes, and touch the **OK** button.

(5) Select the paper source to clean (Rear tray or Cassette), and touch the **OK** button.

4. Clean the Paper Feed Roller without paper.

(1) Follow the message to remove paper in the paper source you selected in (5) of step 3.

(2) Touch the **OK** button.
The Paper Feed Roller will rotate as it is cleaned.

5. Clean the Paper Feed Roller with paper.

(1) Make sure that the Paper Feed Roller has stopped rotating, then follow the message to load three or more sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the paper source you selected in (5) of step 3.

(2) Touch the **OK** button.
The machine starts cleaning. The cleaning will be completed after the paper is ejected.

(3) When the completion message appears, touch the **OK** button.
The screen will return to the Maintenance screen.

Note

- Touch the **HOME** button to exit Setup and display the HOME screen.

If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the Paper Feed Roller, contact the service center.

Page top

C100

Cleaning the Pad in the Cassette

If the Pad in the Cassette is smeared with paper powder or dirt, two or more sheets of paper may be ejected. Follow the procedure below to clean the Pad in the Cassette.

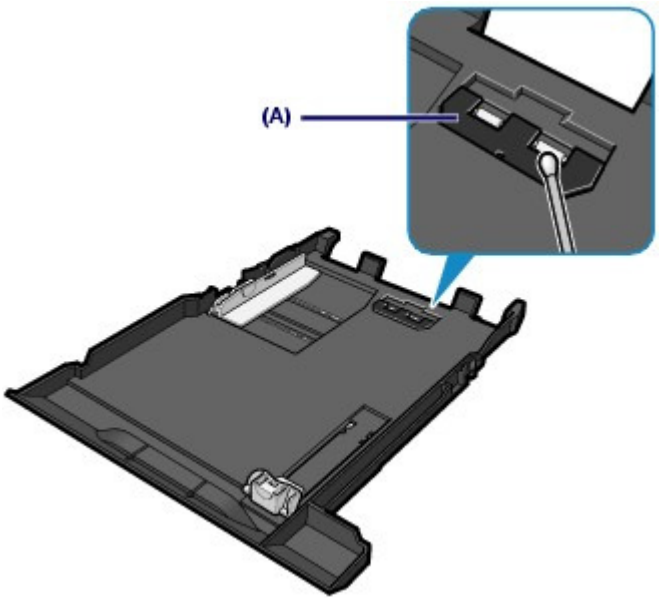
You need to prepare: cotton swab

1. Pull out the Cassette from the machine, and remove all the papers.

2. Clean the Pad (A) sideways with a moistened cotton swab.

Important

- After cleaning the smeared Pad, dry it completely.



If the problem is not resolved, contact the service center.

Appendix

Legal Limitations on Use of Your Product and Use of Images

Tips on How to Use Your Machine



Page top

Legal Limitations on Use of Your Product and Use of Images

It may be unlawful to make copies of, scan, print, or use reproductions of the following documents.
The list provided is non-exhaustive. When in doubt, check with a legal representative in your jurisdiction.

- Paper money
- Money orders
- Certificates of deposit
- Postage stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identifying badges or insignias
- Selective service or draft papers
- Checks or drafts issued by governmental agencies
- Motor vehicle licenses and certificates of title
- Traveler's checks
- Food stamps
- Passports
- Immigration papers
- Internal revenue stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Stock certificates
- Copyrighted works/works of art without permission of copyright owner



Page top

C112

Tips on How to Use Your Machine

This section introduces the tips on how to use your machine and for printing with optimal quality.

■ Ink is used for various purposes.

● How is ink used for various purposes other than printing?

Ink may be used for purposes other than printing. Ink is not only used for printing, but also for cleaning the Print Head to maintain the optimal printing quality.
The machine has the function to automatically clean the ink jet nozzles to prevent clogging. In the cleaning procedure, ink is pumped out from the nozzles. Used ink for nozzle cleaning is limited to a small amount.

● Does black-and-white printing use color ink?

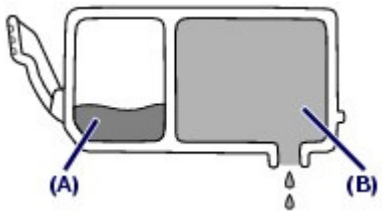
Black-and-white printing may use ink other than black ink depending on the type of printing paper or the settings of the printer driver. So, color ink is consumed even when printing in black-and-white.

● Why does the machine have two black ink tanks?

There are two kinds of black ink in the machine: dye ink (BK) and pigment ink (PGBK).
The dye ink is used mainly for printing photos, illustration, etc., and the pigment ink is used for text-based documents. Each has different purposes so that even if one runs out, another will not be used instead. If either of them runs out, the ink tank replacement is required.
These two inks are automatically used depending on the type of printing paper or the settings of the printer driver. You cannot change the usage of these inks yourself.

● Ink lamp indicates when ink is running low.

The inside of the ink tank consists of (A) the part where ink is preserved and (B) the sponge with absorbed ink.



When the ink (A) runs out, the ink lamp flashes slowly to indicate that the ink is running low.
Then, when the ink (B) runs out, the ink lamp flashes fast to indicate that the ink tank needs to be replaced with a new one.

See Replacing an Ink Tank .

■ Printing on special paper: How to print with optimal quality!?

● Tip!: Check the machine status before printing!

● Is the Print Head OK?

If print head nozzles are clogged, print will be faint and papers will be wasted. Print the nozzle check pattern to check the Print Head.

See When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect .

● Is the inside of the machine smeared with ink?

After printing large quantities of paper or performing borderless printing, the area where papers go through may get smeared with ink. Clean the inside of your machine with the Bottom Plate Cleaning.
Refer to the on-screen manual: Advanced Guide .

Tip!: Check how to load the paper correctly!

Is the paper loaded in the correct orientation?

When loading paper in the Rear Tray or Cassette, make sure the orientation of paper.



Rear Tray

- To load paper in the Rear Tray, load paper with the printing side facing you.



Cassette

- To load paper in the Cassette, load paper with the printing side facing down.

Is the paper curled?

The curled paper causes paper jam. Flatten the curled paper, then reload it.
Refer to "Troubleshooting" in the on-screen manual: *Advanced Guide* .

Tip!: After loading paper, be sure to specify the paper settings!

After loading paper, be sure to select the loaded paper for Type with the Operation Panel or Media Type with the printer driver. If the type of paper is not selected, you may not be able to get the satisfactory print result.
See Media Types You Can Use .

There are various types of paper: paper with special coating on the surface for printing photos with optimal quality and paper suitable for documents. Type of the Operation Panel or Media Type of the printer driver has different settings for each type of paper in advance (such as using ink, ejecting ink, or distance from nozzles) so that you can print on each paper with the optimal image quality. You can print with different settings in Type (or Media Type) suitable for each type of loaded paper.

Use the Stop button to cancel printing!

Tip!: Never press the ON button!

If you press the **ON** button while printing is in progress, the print data sent from the computer queues in the machine and you may not be able to continue to print.
Touch the **Stop** button to cancel printing.

Note

- If you cannot cancel printing by touching the **Stop** button while printing from a computer, open the printer driver setup window to delete the unnecessary print jobs from the printer status monitor.

Does the machine need to be handled with care when using or transporting?

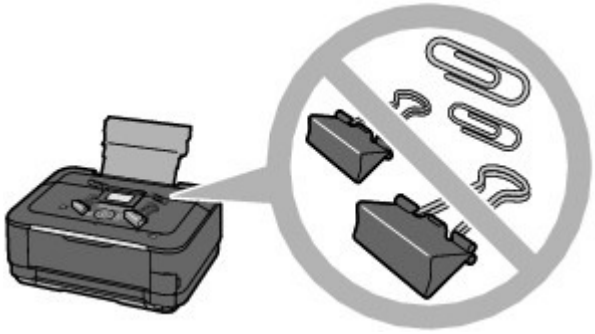
Tip!: Do not use or transport the machine vertically or slanted!

If the machine is used or transported vertically or slanted, the machine may become damaged or ink may leak from the machine.
Be sure not to use or transport the machine vertically or slanted.



Tip!: Do not place any object on the Document Cover!

Do not place any object on the Document Cover. It will fall into the Rear Tray when the Document Cover is opened and cause the machine to malfunction.
Also, place the machine where objects will not fall on it.



Tip!: Carefully choose the area to place the machine!

Note when you place the machine near other electrical appliances such as fluorescent lamps

Place the machine at least 5.91 inches / 15 cm away from other electrical appliances such as fluorescent lamps. If the machine is placed closer to those, it may not be able to work properly due to fluorescent noises.

Note when you use the machine on wireless LAN

Since the microwave oven and the wireless LAN system use the same frequency bandwidth, the microwave oven can be the potential source of interference when the microwave oven is on. Placing this machine close to microwave oven may result in the poor status of radio.

■ How to maintain the optimal printing quality?

The key to printing with the optimal printing quality is to prevent the Print Head from drying or clogging.
Always follow the following steps for optimal printing quality.

Follow the procedure below to disconnect the power plug.

1. Press the **ON** button on the machine to turn it off.

2. Make sure that the **POWER** lamp is not lit.

3. Disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

If you press the **ON** button to turn off the power, the machine caps the Print Head (nozzles) automatically to prevent from drying. If you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet before the **POWER** lamp is turned off, the Print Head will not be capped properly and this will cause drying or clogging.

To disconnect the power plug, be sure to follow this procedure.

- **Print periodically!**

  Just as the tip of a felt pen becomes dry and unusable if it has not been used for a long time, even if it is capped, the Print Head too, may become dried or clogged if the machine has not been used for a long time.
  We recommend you to use the machine at least once a month.

Note

- Depending on the type of paper, ink may blur if you trace the printed area with a highlight pen or paint-stick, or bleed if water or sweat comes in contact with the printed area.

■ Colors are uneven, and print results are blurred.

● Tip!: Print the nozzle check pattern to check if the nozzles are clogged.

If the print head nozzles are clogged, colors may become uneven or the print results may be blurred.



In this case

Print the nozzle check pattern

Check the printed check pattern to see if the nozzles are clogged.
See When Printing Becomes Faint or Colors Are Incorrect .

Page top



Printing
Scanning
Copying
Troubleshooting
How to Use This Manual
Printing This Manual
About Disc Label Printing
Maintenance
About Bluetooth Communication
Changing the Machine Settings
Appendix
About Network Communication

When you display this on-screen manual in a language environment other than English, some English descriptions may be displayed.

Printing

Printing from a Computer

Printing with the Bundled Application Software
What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?
Printing Photos
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selecting a Photo
Selecting the Paper
Printing
Creating an Album
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selecting the Paper and Layout
Selecting a Photo
Editing
Printing
Printing Labels on Discs
Printing Calendars
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selecting the Paper and Layout
Selecting a Photo
Editing
Printing
Printing Stickers
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selecting the Paper and Layout
Selecting a Photo
Editing
Printing
Printing Layout
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selecting the Paper and Layout
Selecting a Photo
Editing
Printing
Printing Premium Content
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selecting the Paper and Layout

- Selecting a Photo
- Editing
- Printing

Correcting and Enhancing Photos

- Using the Auto Photo Fix Function
- Using the Red-Eye Correction Function
- Using the Face Brightener Function
- Using the Face Sharpener Function
- Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function
- Using the Blemish Remover Function
- Adjusting Images
- Correct/Enhance Images Window

Creating Still Images from Videos

- Video Frame Capture/Movie Print Window

Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

- Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites Window

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- How Do I Print with Even Margins?
- What Is "C1" or "C4"?

Photo Print Settings

- Printing Labels on Discs Directly
- Printing Photos in Grayscale
- Printing Vivid Photos
- Reducing Photo Noise
- Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- Printing an Index
- Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- Printing Photo Information
- Saving Photos
- Opening Saved Files

Other Settings

- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

Saving
Setting Holidays
Setting Calendar Display
Opening Saved Files
What Is Easy-PhotoPrint Pro?
Printing Beautiful Photos
Printing with ICC Profiles (Adobe RGB, sRGB)
Printing with Canon's Unique Color Tones
Let's Start Printing with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro
Starting Easy-PhotoPrint Pro
Selecting a Photo
Selecting the Paper and Layout
Printing
Adjust the Colors of Photo
Printing Photos in Grayscale
Adjusting the Color Balance
Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns
Adjusting Brightness/Contrast
Adjusting Brightness/Contrast Using Sample Patterns
Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Settings
Printing Borderless Photos
Printing an Index
Printing Contact Sheets
Printing Advanced Information
Cropping Photos
Printing with Adjusted Print Size
Saving Print Settings
Printing with Other Application Software
Various Printing Methods
Printing with Easy Setup
Setting a Page Size and Orientation
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
Setting the Stapling Margin
Execute Borderless Printing
Fit-to-Page Printing
Scaled Printing
Page Layout Printing
Poster Printing
Booklet Printing
Duplex Printing
Stamp/Background Printing
Registering a Stamp
Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background
Printing an Envelope
Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose
Displaying the Print Results before Printing

Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)
Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data
Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
Adjusting Tone
Specifying Color Correction
Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
Printing with ICC Profiles
Adjusting Color Balance
Adjusting Brightness
Adjusting Intensity
Adjusting Contrast
Simulating an Illustration
Representing Image Data with a Single Color
Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
Smoothing Jagged Outlines
Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
Reducing Photo Noise
Overview of the Printer Driver
Printer Driver Operations
Canon IJ Printer Driver
XPS Printer Driver
How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
Maintenance Tab
Canon IJ Status Monitor
Canon IJ Preview

Printing Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

Printing Photographs Easily from a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Photo)
Printing Photographs Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive
Viewing and Printing Photos (Select photo print)
Printing All Photos Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Print all photos)
Setting Items
Using Useful Display Functions
Printing a Specified Area (Trimming mode)
Skipping Photos by the Number of Photos or the Shooting Date (Skip mode)
Using Fun Photo Printing Functions
How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu
Printing Several Photos on a Single Sheet of Paper (Layout print)
Printing on Stickers (Sticker print)
Printing a Photo Index (Photo index print)
Printing Photos According to the DPOF Settings (DPOF

print)
Printing Photos with Print Shooting Information (Captured info print)
Printing ID Photo (ID photo size print)
Creating a Calendar (Calendar print)
Printing Photo on the Disc Label
Using the Slide Show Function
How to use the Slide Show Function
Printing Documents (PDF File)
Printing Documents (PDF File) Saved on a Memory Card/ USB Flash Drive
Printing Photo from Printed Photo or Film (Photo reprint)
Printing from Printed Photo or Film
Setting Items
Printing a Specified Area (Trimming)
Using Photo Reprinting Functions
How to Select a Photo Reprinting Menu
Reprinting Photo on Stickers (Sticker print)
Reprinting All Photos (Print all photos)
Reprinting Photo on the Disc Label
Printing from Mobile Phone or Printing Template (Special print)
Printing from Mobile Phone via Infrared Communication
Printing from Mobile Phone via Bluetooth Communication
Printing through Bluetooth Communication
Changing the Bluetooth Settings
Printing Template Forms Such As Lined Paper or Graph Paper

Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device
Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device
About PictBridge Print Settings
Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device
Settings on the Machine
Printing Photographs on the Disc Label from a PictBridge Compliant Device
Specifying the PictBridge Print Settings on the Machine

Scanning

Scanning

Scanning Images
Scanning Images
Before Scanning
Placing Documents
Placing Film

Scanning with Using the Operation Panel of the Machine
Saving Scanned Data on the Memory Card/USB Flash Drive Using the Operation Panel of the Machine
Deleting Scanned Data on Memory Card/USB Flash Drive
Forwarding Scanned Data to the Computer Using the Operation Panel of the Machine
Attaching the Scanned Data Using the Operation Panel of the Machine to E-mail
Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine
Appendix: Various Scan Settings
Network Scan Settings
Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX
Scanning with the Bundled Application Software
What Is MP Navigator EX (Supplied Scanner Software)?
Let's Try Scanning
Starting MP Navigator EX
Easy Scanning with Auto Scan
Scanning Photos and Documents
Scanning Film
Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time
Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)
Easy Scanning with One-click
Useful MP Navigator EX Functions
Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically
Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually
Adjusting Images
Searching Images
Classifying Images into Categories
Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX
Saving
Saving as PDF Files
Creating/Editing PDF Files
Printing Documents
Printing Photos
Sending via E-mail
Editing Files
Setting Passwords for PDF Files
Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files
MP Navigator EX Screens
Navigation Mode Screen
Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab
View & Use Images on your Computer Tab
Custom Scan with One-click Tab
Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)
Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)

Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)
Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)
Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)
Scan Settings Dialog Box (Film)
Save Dialog Box
Save as PDF file Dialog Box
PDF Settings Dialog Box
Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)
View & Use Window
Create/Edit PDF file Window
Print Document Dialog Box
Print Photo Dialog Box
Send via E-mail Dialog Box
Correct/Enhance Images Window
One-click Mode Screen
Auto Scan Dialog Box
Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
Save Dialog Box
Exif Settings Dialog Box
PDF Dialog Box
Save as PDF file Dialog Box
Mail Dialog Box
Film Dialog Box
OCR Dialog Box
Custom Dialog Box
Preferences Dialog Box
General Tab
Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)
Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail)
Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)
Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images
Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
Opening Images Saved on a Computer
Scanning with Other Application Software
What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?
Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
Scanning in Basic Mode
Scanning in Advanced Mode
Scanning in Auto Scan Mode
Scanning Film in Advanced Mode
Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)
Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern
Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance
Adjusting Brightness and Contrast
Adjusting Histogram
Adjusting Tone Curve
Setting Threshold
ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens
Basic Mode Tab
Advanced Mode Tab
Input Settings
Output Settings
Image Settings
Color Adjustment Buttons
Auto Scan Mode Tab
Preferences Dialog Box
Scanner Tab
Preview Tab
Scan Tab
Color Settings Tab
Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning
Adjusting Cropping Frames
Resolution
File Formats
Color Matching
Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Screens
Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Menu and Setting Screen
Other Scanning Methods
Scanning with WIA Driver
Scanning Using the Control Panel (Windows XP Only)

Copying

Printing Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

Copying
Making Copies
Setting Items
Reducing or Enlarging a Copy
Displaying the Preview Screen
Using Useful Copy Functions
How to Select a Useful Copy Menu
Copying onto Both Sides of the Paper (Two-sided copy)
Copying Two Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (2-on-1 copy)
Copying Four Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (4-on-1 copy)
Copying without Borders (Borderless copy)

Copying Thick Originals Such as Books (Frame erase copy)

Copying the Label Side of Disc

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

If an Error Occurs

The Machine Cannot Be Powered On

An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD

LCD Cannot Be Seen At All

An Unintended Language Is Displayed on the LCD

Cannot Install the MP Drivers

Cannot Install the Application Program

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Does Not Start up or Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Menu Does Not Appear

Easy-WebPrint EX Does Not Start up or Easy-WebPrint EX Menu Does Not Appear

Cannot Connect to Computer with a USB Cable Properly

Printing or Scanning Speed Is Slow/Hi-Speed USB Connection Does Not Work/"This device can perform faster" Message Is Displayed

Print Results Not Satisfactory

Cannot Print to End of Job

Part of the Page Is Not Printed

No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks

Lines Are Misaligned

Line or Image Does Not Print or Prints Partially

Printed Paper Curls or Has Ink Blots

Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched

Back of the Paper Is Smudged

Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout

Colors Are Uneven or Streaked

Printing Does Not Start

Copying/Printing Stops Before It Is Completed

Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected

Printing Speed Is Not as Fast as Expected

Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for Replacing

Paper Does Not Feed Properly

Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the Printer Driver

Paper Jams

Paper Is Jammed in the Paper Output Slot or the Rear Tray

Paper Is Jammed inside the Machine at the Transport Unit

Jammed Paper Is Not Removed out When Automatic

- Duplex Printing
- In Other Cases

Message Appears on the Computer Screen

- Error Number: B200 A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Then contact the service center. Is Displayed
- Error Number: **** A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and then on again. If this doesn't clear the error, see the user's guide for more detail. Is Displayed
- Error Regarding Automatic Duplex Printing Is Displayed
- Error Regarding Automatic Print Head Alignment Is Displayed
- Error Regarding the Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed
- Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error
- Other Error Messages
- The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Screen Is Displayed

Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing

For Windows Users

- Printer Status Monitor Is Not Displayed
- Launching MP Navigator EX Whenever Touching the Color or Black Button on the Machine

Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

Cannot Print Properly from a Wireless Communication Device

Cannot Remove a Memory Card

Problems with Scanning

- Scanner Does Not Work
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start
- Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear
- Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor
- Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas
- Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time
- Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode
- Slow Scanning Speed
- "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- Computer Stops Operating during Scanning
- Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

Problems with Scanning/Printing Film

- Cannot Scan Film
- Scan Quality Is Poor or Colors Are Scanned Incorrectly
- Image Becomes Too Dark or Too Bright When a Cropping Frame Is Moved, Enlarged or Reduced
- Frames Are Not Detected Correctly
- Scanner Stops Operating during Scanning, or "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- Colors Are Different between the Film and the Printed Photos (Reddish/Bluish)

Software Problems

E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Scanned Image Does Not Open

MP Navigator EX Problems

Cannot Scan at the Correct Size

Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

Cannot Use the Contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM

If You Cannot Resolve the Problem

FAQs

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

General Notes (Scanner Driver)

Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using MP Navigator EX

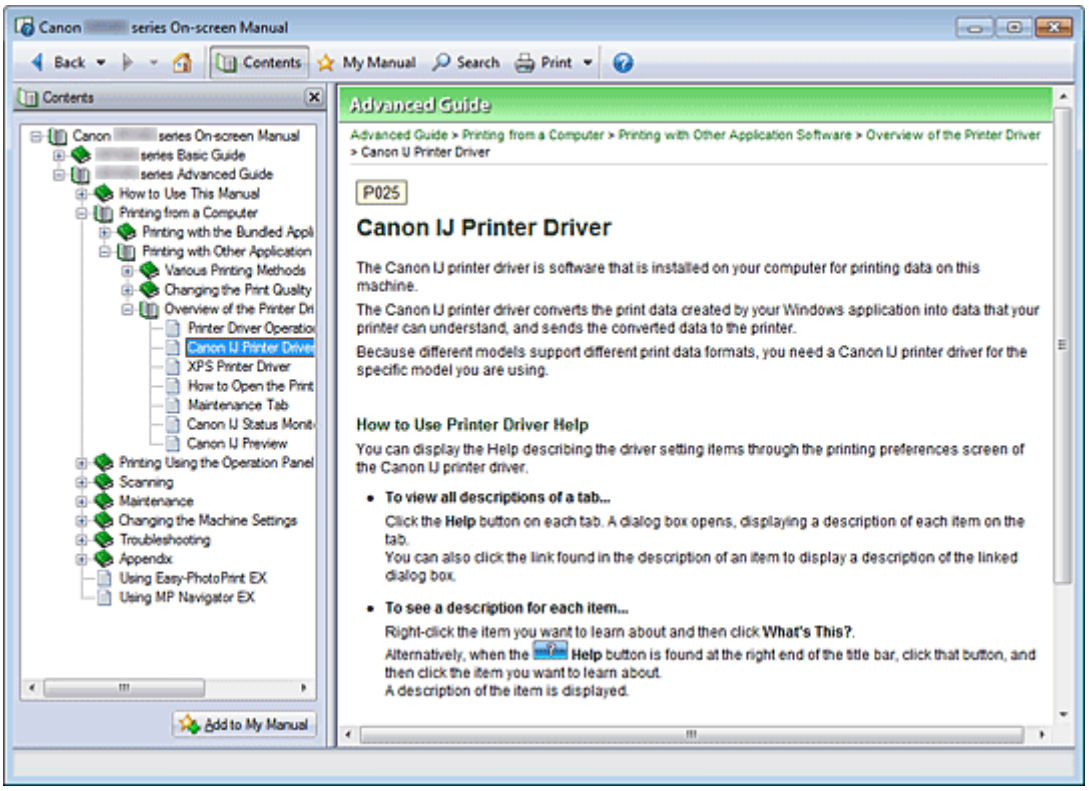
Advanced Guide

How to Use This Manual

- Operating the Contents Pane
- Operating the Explanation Window
- Printing This Manual
- Using Keywords to Find a Document
- Registering Documents to My Manual
- Symbols Used in This Document
- Trademarks and Licenses

Page top

Operating the Contents Pane



When you click a document title displayed in the contents pane found to the left of the on-screen manual, the documents of that title are displayed in the explanation window on the right side.

When you click ⊞ found to the left of , the document titles found in the lower hierarchies are displayed.

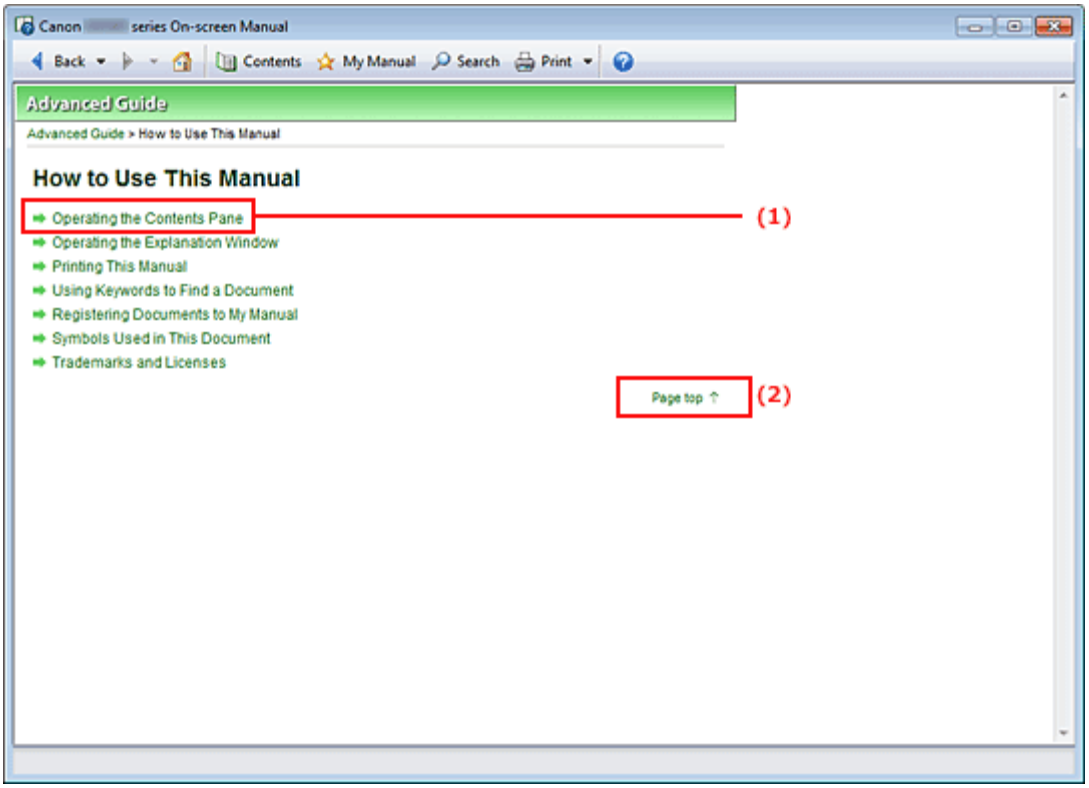
Note

- Click Contents to close or display the contents pane.

Page top

Operating the Explanation Window

Explanation Window



(1) Click the green characters to jump to the corresponding document.

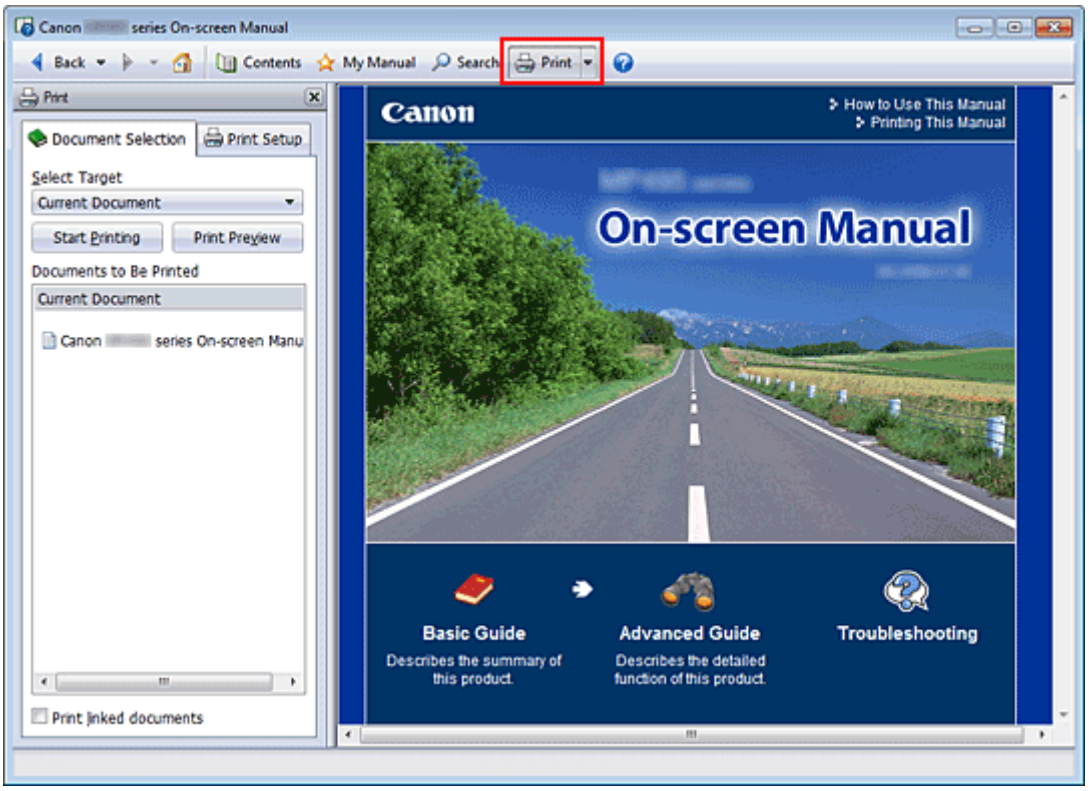
(2) The cursor jumps to the top of this document.

Window Used in Operation Explanation

This on-screen manual describes with a window displayed when the Windows 7 operating system Home Premium (called Windows 7 below) is used.

Page top

Printing This Manual



Click Print to display the print pane to the left of the on-screen manual.

Note

- Click Print to close or display the print pane.
- When you click and then click Page Setup, the Page Setup dialog box appears. You can then easily set up the paper to be used for printing.
- Click , and then click Print Settings to display the Print dialog box. When the dialog box is displayed, select the printer to be used for printing. The Print Setup tab also allows you to select the printer to be used.
  After selecting the printer to be used, click Properties... to specify the print settings.
- Click , and then click Option Settings to display the Option Settings dialog box. You can then set up the printing operation.
  - Print document title and page number
    When this check box is checked, the manual name and the page number are printed in the header (top of the document).
  - Print background color and images
    When this check box is checked, the background color and the image are printed. Some images are printed regardless of whether this check box is checked or not.
  - Check number of pages to be printed before printing
    When this check box is checked, the Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box is displayed before printing starts. This dialog box allows you to check how many pages will be printed.

On the Document Selection tab, select the method for printing the document. The following four methods of printing are available:

- Print Current Document
- Print Selected Documents
- Print My Manual

- Print All Documents

Note

- You can select the type to be printed, and then easily specify print settings on the Print Setup tab.

Print Current Document

You can print the currently displayed document.

1. From Select Target, select Current Document

The title of the currently displayed document is displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list.

Note

- By selecting Print linked documents, you can also print documents that are linked to the current document. The linked documents are added to the Documents to Be Printed list.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

2. Click Print Setup tab

On the Page Setup tab, select the printer to be used and specify simple print settings, as necessary.

3. Click Start Printing

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

4. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

The documents that are currently displayed are printed.

Print Selected Documents

You can select and print the documents that you want to print.

1. From Select Target, select Selected Documents

The titles of all documents are displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list.

2. Select the documents to be printed

From the Documents to Be Printed list, select and check the title check boxes of the documents to be printed.

Note

- When you select the Automatically select documents in lower hierarchies check box, the check boxes of all document titles found in the lower hierarchies are selected.
- Click Select All to select the check boxes of all document titles.
  Click Clear All to clear the check boxes of all document titles.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

3. Click Print Setup tab

On the Page Setup tab, select the printer to be used and specify simple print settings, as necessary.

4. Click Start Printing

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

5. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

All documents with selected check boxes are printed.

Print My Manual

You can select and print documents registered in My Manual.

For details about My Manual, see " Registering Documents to My Manual ."

1. From Select Target, select My Manual

The titles of the documents that have been registered to My Manual are displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list.

2. Select the documents to be printed

From the Documents to Be Printed list, select and check the title check boxes of the documents to be printed.

Note

- Click Select All to select the check boxes of all document titles.
  Click Clear All to clear the check boxes of all document titles.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

3. Click Print Setup tab

On the Page Setup tab, select the printer to be used and specify simple print settings, as necessary.

4. Click Start Printing

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

5. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

All documents with selected check boxes are printed.

Print All Documents

You can print all documents of the on-screen manual.

1. From Select Target, select All Documents

The titles of all documents are displayed in the Documents to Be Printed list, and the check boxes are automatically selected.

Note

- When you uncheck the check box of a document title, that document is not printed.
- Click Select All to select the check boxes of all document titles.
  Click Clear All to clear the check boxes of all document titles.
- Click Print Preview to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

2. Click Print Setup tab

On the Page Setup tab, select the printer to be used and specify simple print settings, as necessary.

3. Click Start Printing

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

4. Execute print

Confirm the number of pages to be printed, and then click Yes.

All documents are printed.

Important

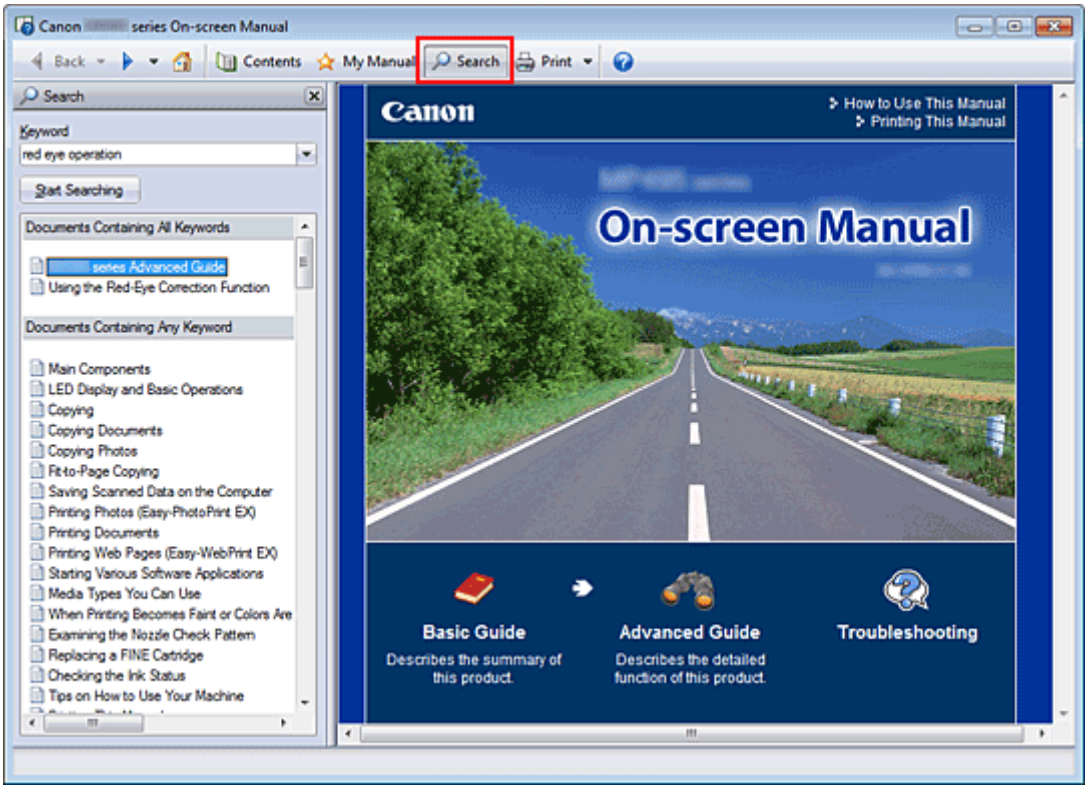
- A large amount of paper is necessary to print all documents. Before printing, be sure to check the number of print pages displayed in the Print Page Count Confirmation dialog box.
- The Print Preview dialog box allows you to scale the printing to the paper width or to set the zoom rate. However, if the print data extends outside the paper because of the new zoom rate, that portion of the document will not be printed on the paper.

Page top

Using Keywords to Find a Document

You can enter a keyword to search for a target document.

All documents in the currently displayed on-screen manual are searched.



1. Click Search

The search pane is displayed to the left of the on-screen manual.

Note

- Click Search to close or display the search pane.

2. Enter a keyword

In Keyword, enter a keyword for the item to be checked.

When you want to enter multiple keywords, insert a space between the keywords.

Note

- You can enter up to 10 search keywords or up to 255 characters.
- Uppercase and lowercase are not distinguished.
- The program can also search for keywords that contain spaces.
- A convenient way of quickly finding a document to be read is to enter keywords as described below.
  - To learn how to operate a function you are using:
    Enter the menu name displayed on the operation panel of this machine or on the computer (for example, frame erase copy).
  - To find an explanation of the operation for a specific purpose:
    Enter function + item to be printed (for example, print calendar).

3. Click Start Searching

The search is started, and the titles of documents containing the keyword are displayed in the search results list.

When you execute a search by entering multiple keywords, the search results are displayed as shown below.

[Documents Containing Perfect Match]
Documents containing the entire search character string (including spaces) exactly as entered (perfect match)

[Documents Containing All Keywords]
Documents containing all keywords that were entered

[Documents Containing Any Keyword]
Documents containing at least one of the keywords that were entered

4. Display the document that you want to read

From the search results list, double-click (or select and press Enter key) the title of the document you want to read.

When the documents of that title are displayed, the keywords found on those documents are highlighted.

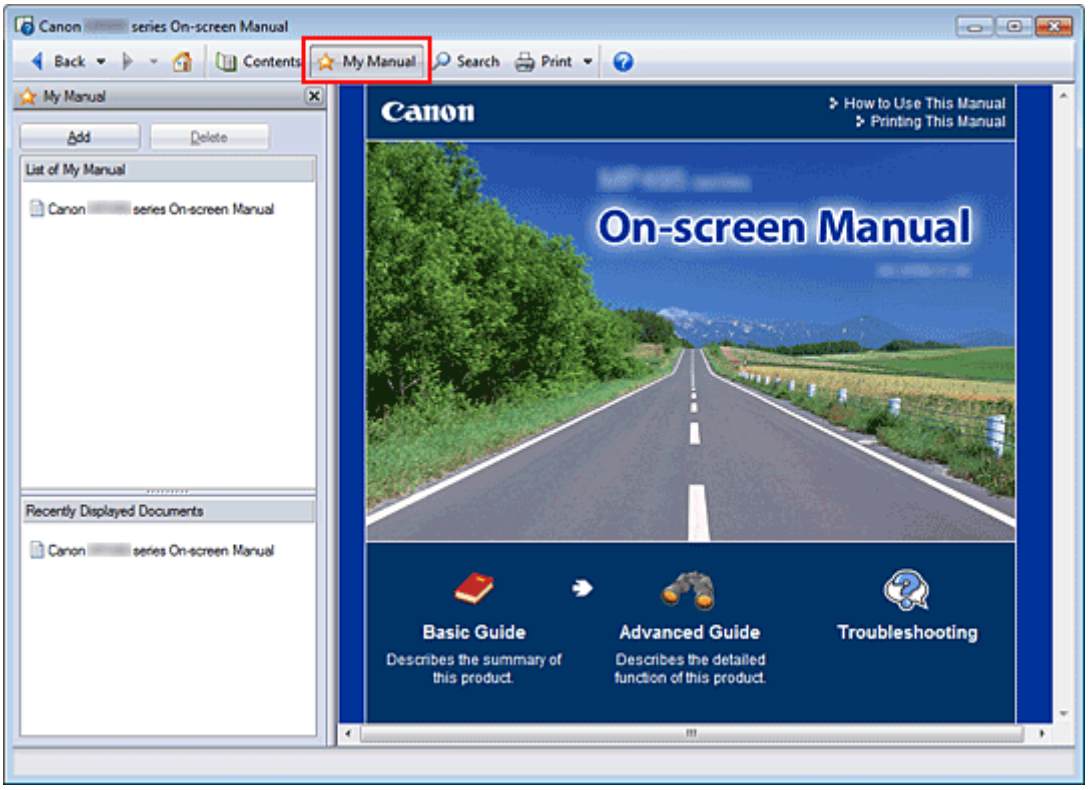
Note

- The search history remains when you modify the keyword entry and perform search multiple times. To delete the search history, click located at the right of Keyword, and select Clear History, which is displayed.

Page top

Registering Documents to My Manual

Register frequently read documents as My Manual documents so that you can refer to those documents easily at any time.



1. Display the document

Display the document to be added to My Manual.

2. Click My Manual

The My Manual pane is displayed to the left of the on-screen manual.

Note

- Click My Manual to close or display the My Manual pane.

3. Register the document to My Manual

Click Add.

The title of the currently displayed document is added to List of My Manual.

Note

- You can also add documents to My Manual by the following methods. If you add a document to My Manual, a ☆ mark is displayed in the document icons in the contents pane.
  - From the Recently Displayed Documents list, double-click the document title that you want to add to My Manual (or select the document and press Enter key) to display the title, and then click Add.
  - Right-click the document title displayed in the contents pane or right-click the explanation window, and then select Add to My Manual from the right-click menu.
  - In the contents pane, select the document title that you want to add to My Manual, and then click Add to My Manual at the bottom right of the pane.

4. Display My Manual

When you double-click (or select and press Enter key) a document title displayed in List of My Manual, that document is displayed in the explanation window.

Note

- To delete a document from List of My Manual, select that document title from the list, and then click Delete (or press Delete key).

Page top

Symbols Used in This Document

Warning
Instructions that, if ignored, could result in death or serious personal injury caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Caution
Instructions that, if ignored, could result in personal injury or material damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Important
Instructions including important information. Be sure to read these indications.

Note
Instructions include notes for operation and additional explanations.

Page top

Trademarks and Licenses

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Windows Vista is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Internet Explorer is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- This device incorporates exFAT technology licensed from Microsoft.
- Macintosh, Mac, and AirPort are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Bonjour is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Adobe, Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements, Adobe RGB and Adobe RGB (1998) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and /or other countries.
- Photo Rag is a trademark of Hahnemühle FineArt GmbH.
- Bluetooth is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.,U.S.A. and licensed to Canon Inc.
- Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Note

- The formal name of Windows Vista is Microsoft Windows Vista operating system.

Exif Print

This machine supports Exif Print.
Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers. By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, the camera's image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.

Page top

Printing from a Computer

Printing with the Bundled Application Software
Printing with Other Application Software

Page top

Printing with the Bundled Application Software

- What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?
- Printing Photos
- Creating an Album
- Printing Labels on Discs
- Printing Calendars
- Printing Stickers
- Printing Layout
- Printing Premium Content
- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Questions and Answers
- Photo Print Settings
- Other Settings
- What Is Easy-PhotoPrint Pro?
- Printing Beautiful Photos
- Let's Start Printing with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro
- Adjust the Colors of Photo
- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Settings

Page top

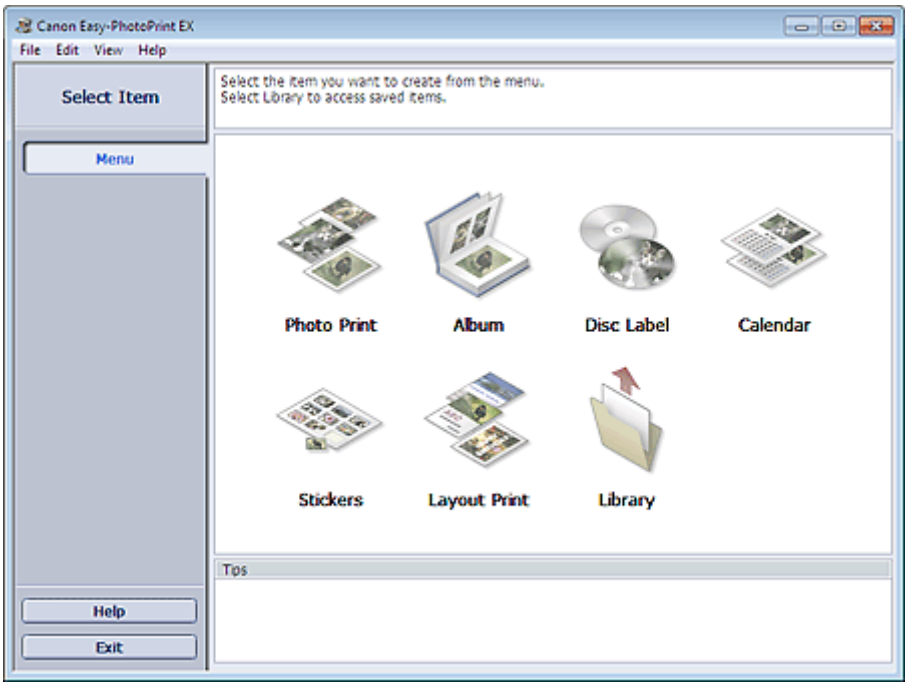
A000

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.



Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX can only be used with Canon inkjet printers. It does not support some Canon compact photo printers, including SELPHY CP series.
- If a printer that supports Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, you cannot print items you create.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed on a computer that already has Easy-LayoutPrint installed, Easy-LayoutPrint will be replaced by Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Note

- See Help of Easy-PhotoPrint EX for descriptions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX screens.
  Click Help in a screen or dialog box, or select Easy-PhotoPrint EX Help... from the Help menu. Help appears.

About Exif Print

Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports "Exif Print." Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers.

By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, the image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Other Applications

Easy-PhotoPrint EX can be started from other applications.

See the application's manual for details on the procedure for starting.

- MP Navigator EX Ver.1.00 or later supports the following functions.
  - Photo Print
  - Album
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.0 or later supports the following functions.
  - Photo Print
  - Album
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.5.8 or later supports the following function.
  - Album
- Digital Photo Professional Ver.3.2 or later supports the following function.
  - Photo Print

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX is subject to the following restrictions when started from Digital Photo Professional:
  - Menu and Open do not appear in the step button area on the left side of the screen.
  - Images cannot be corrected/enhanced.
  - Image display order cannot be changed.
  - Edited images cannot be saved.
  - Options other than Enable ICC Profile cannot be selected for Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. Therefore, you cannot use the Vivid Photo and Photo Noise Reduction functions.

- Solution Menu EX Ver.1.0.0 or later supports the following functions.
  - Photo Print
  - Album
  - Disc Label
  - Calendar
  - Layout Print
  - PREMIUM Contents Print

Important

- When Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started by selecting a function from Solution Menu EX, Menu does not appear in the step button area on the left side of the screen.
- PREMIUM Contents Print is not displayed in Menu of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
  To print premium content, start Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Solution Menu EX.
- Keep these points in mind when using PREMIUM Contents Print.
  - To print with Easy-PhotoPrint EX, you need to download and install the exclusive content.
    See "Downloading Premium Content " for details on how to download content.
  - You may only use the content downloaded or printed for personal purposes.
    You may not use the content for commercial purposes.

Supported Image/Video Data Formats (Extensions)

- BMP (.bmp)
- JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PICT (.pict, .pct)
- Easy-PhotoPrint image files (.epp)
- MOV (.mov)

Important

- Only MOV format videos recorded with Canon digital cameras are supported.
- When selecting an image, if there is a TIFF file in the selected folder, the image may not be displayed correctly or Easy-PhotoPrint EX may shut down depending on the TIFF format. In such cases, move the TIFF file to another folder or recreate the file in a different data format, and then select the folder again.

Note

- The thumbnails of files in unsupported formats are displayed as  (Question Mark).
- When Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from Digital Photo Professional, all image files supported by Digital Photo Professional will be displayed.

File Formats (Extensions) Supported by Easy-PhotoPrint EX

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX PREMIUM Contents file (.el7)
- CD-LabelPrint data (.cld)

Page top

A010

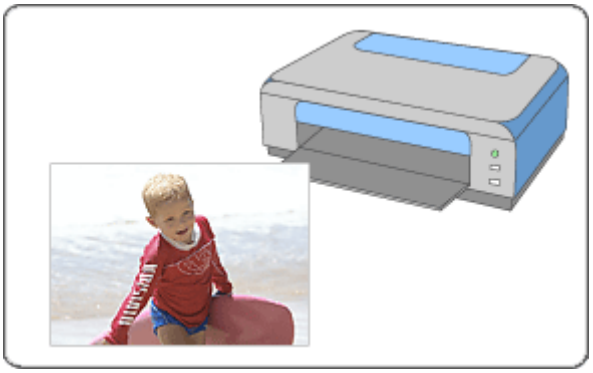
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Photos

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to print your favorite photos in a variety of layouts.

You can also create borderless photos easily.

Corrections suitable for photos can be applied automatically when printing.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting a Photo
3. Selecting the Paper
4. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Printing Labels on Discs Directly
- Printing Photos in Grayscale
- Printing Vivid Photos
- Reducing Photo Noise
- Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- Printing an Index
- Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- Printing Photo Information
- Saving Photos
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- How Do I Print with Even Margins?

Page top

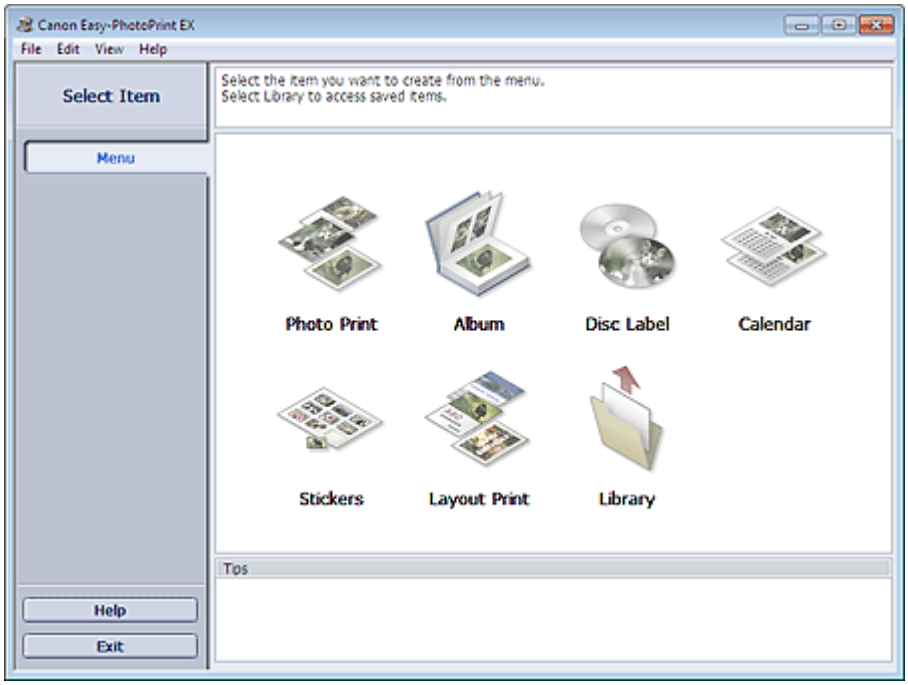
A011

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



Page top

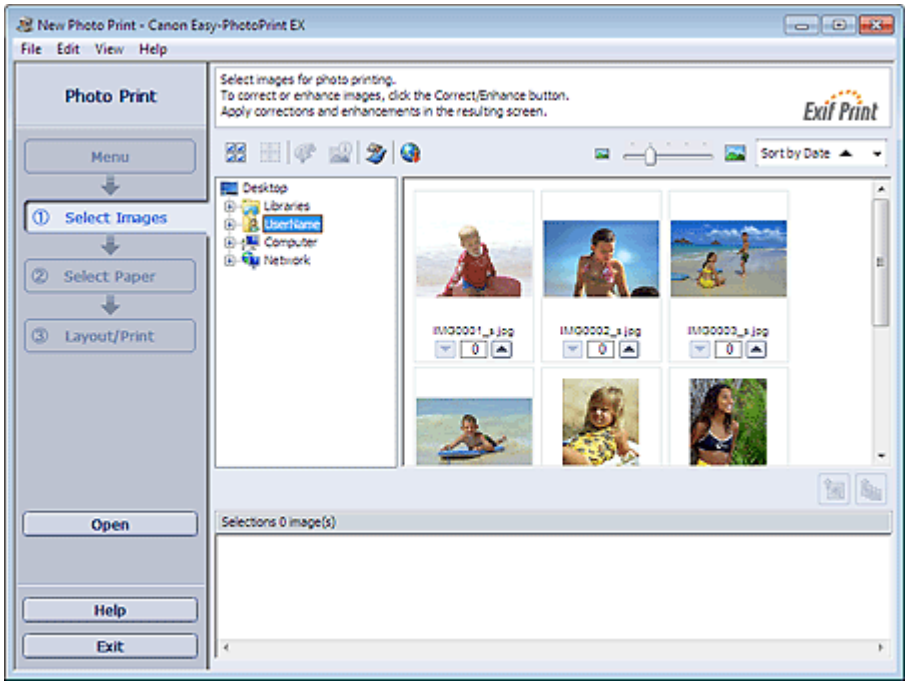
A012

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Photo Print from Menu.

The Select Images screen appears.



Important

- The thumbnails (reduced images) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
  - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
  - An edge of the image appears cropped.

  However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Important

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX, ZoomBrowser EX or Digital Photo Professional), the folder tree area will not be displayed.
  The images selected in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
  Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
  Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

3. Click the image you want to print.

The number of copies appears as "1" below the clicked image, while the selected image itself will appear in the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click  (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).
- To print two or more copies of an image, click  (Up arrow) until the number of copies you want is reached. To reduce the number of copies shown in the box, click  (Down arrow).
- You can change the order of photos using the list located at the top right corner of the screen. You can select the printing order from Sort by Date and Sort by Name.

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.



Page top

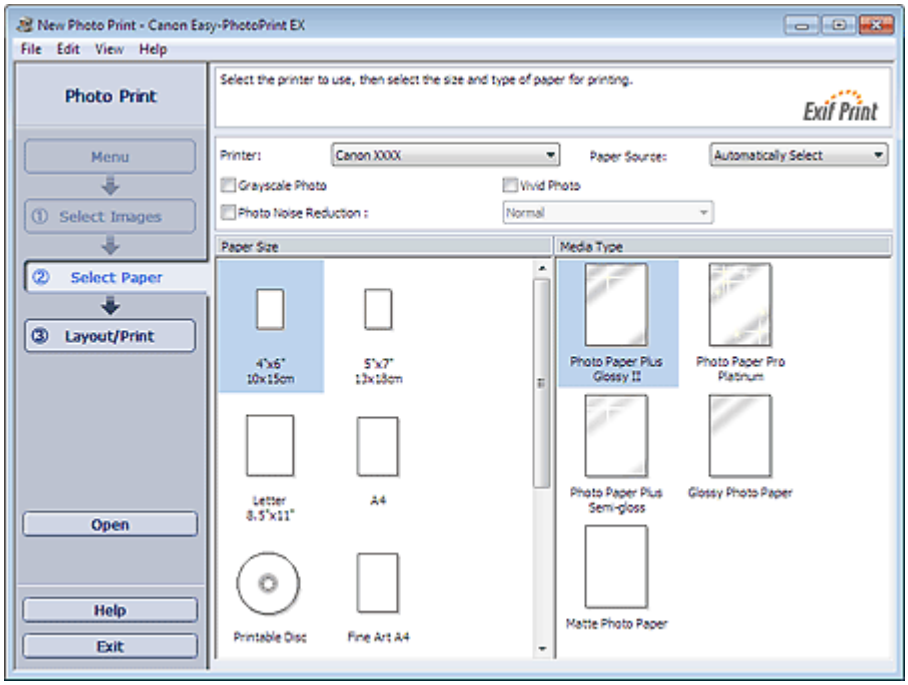
A013

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper

1. Click Select Paper.

The Select Paper screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Paper Source

Paper Size

Media Type

Note

- The paper sizes and media types may vary depending on the printer. See Help for details.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.

Important

- When Fine Art is selected for Paper Size, a 1.38 inches (35 mm) margin is automatically left at the top and bottom of the paper.
  It is recommended that you check the print range with the image shown in Preview before printing.

Note

- You can print directly on a printable disc by selecting Printable Disc for Paper Size.
  ➡ Printing Labels on Discs Directly
- You can print photos in grayscale.
  ➡ Printing Photos in Grayscale
- You can print photos with more vivid colors or you can reduce the photo noise.

- Printing Vivid Photos
- Reducing Photo Noise

- See Help for details on the Select Paper screen.



Page top

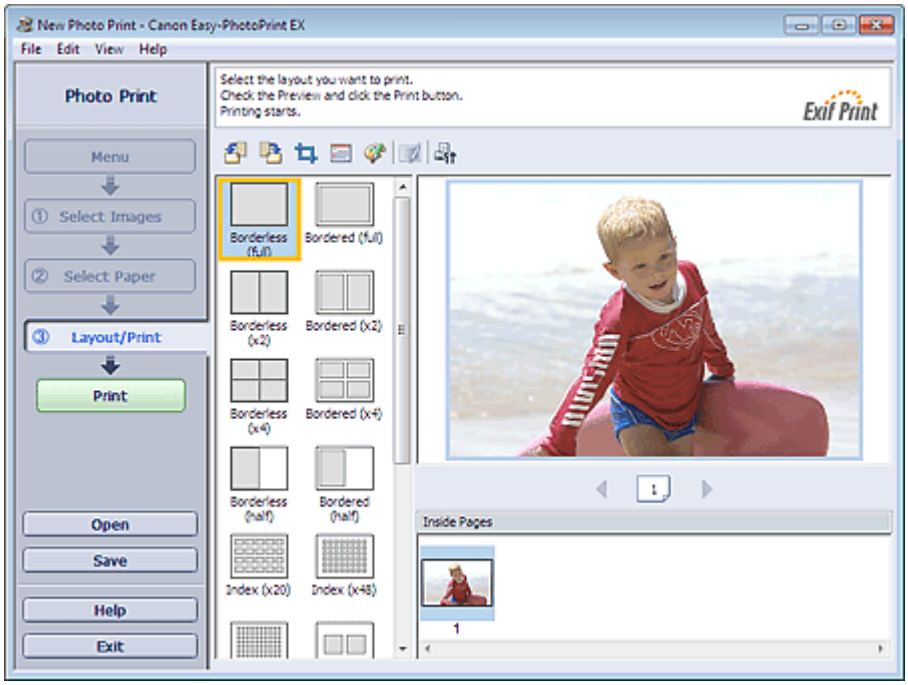
A014

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Layout/Print.

The Layout/Print screen appears.



Important

- The thumbnails (reduced images) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
  - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
  - An edge of the image appears cropped.

  However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select a layout you want to use.

Click a borderless layout to print borderless photos.

Note

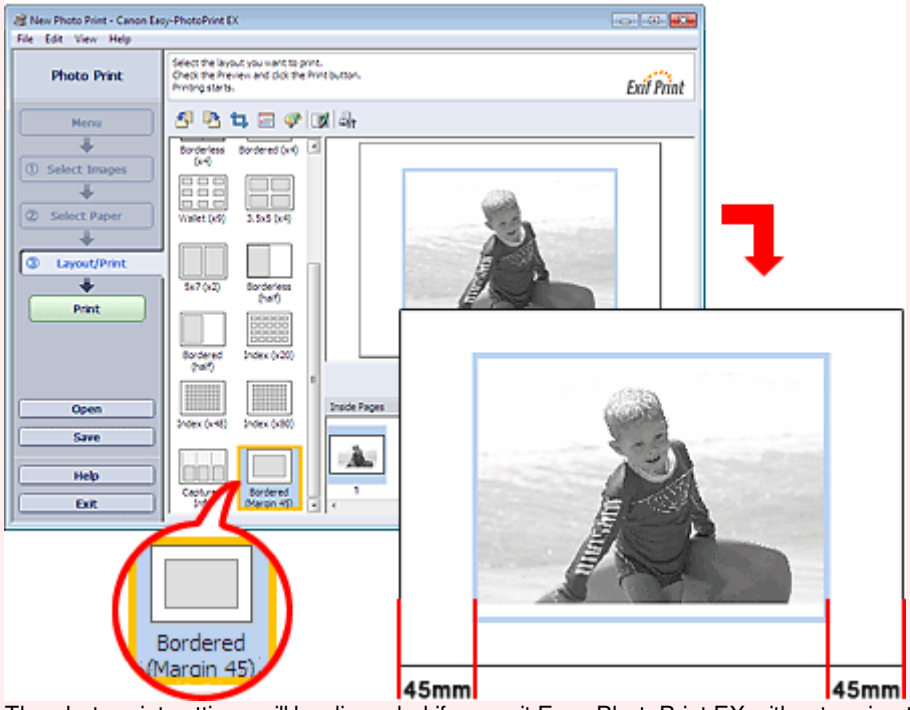
- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the printer, paper size, and media type.

3. Click Print.

Important

- When Fine Art is selected for Paper Size, a 1.38 inches (35 mm) margin is automatically left at the top and bottom of the paper.
  It is recommended that you check the print range with the image shown in Preview before printing.
- White streaks may appear at the top and bottom edges of grayscale photos. In that case, print with a 1.77 inches (45 mm) or more margin at the top and bottom edges.

If you select Bordered (Margin 45) from the layouts, images will be reduced when printing to allow a 1.77 inches (45 mm) margin at the top and bottom edges relative to the printing direction.



- The photo print settings will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the settings. It is recommended that you save the printed image if you want to print it again.
  Saving Photos
- When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other.
  How Do I Print with Even Margins?

Note

- You can crop images or print dates on photos.
  Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
  Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- You can print photos in grayscale.
  Printing Photos in Grayscale
- You can specify advanced Photo Print settings (number of copies, print quality, etc.) in the Preferences dialog box.

  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.
- See Help for details on the Layout/Print screen.

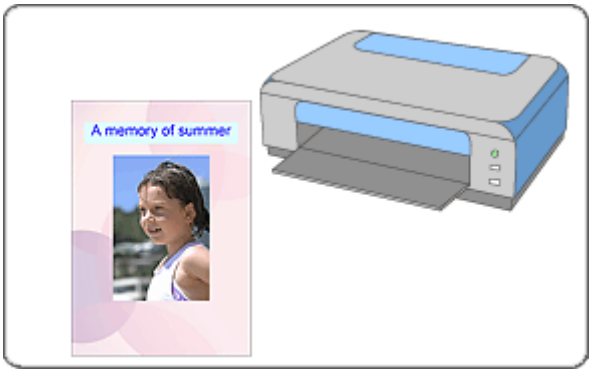
Page top

A020

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Creating an Album

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own personalized photo album.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- What Is "C1" or "C4"?

Page top

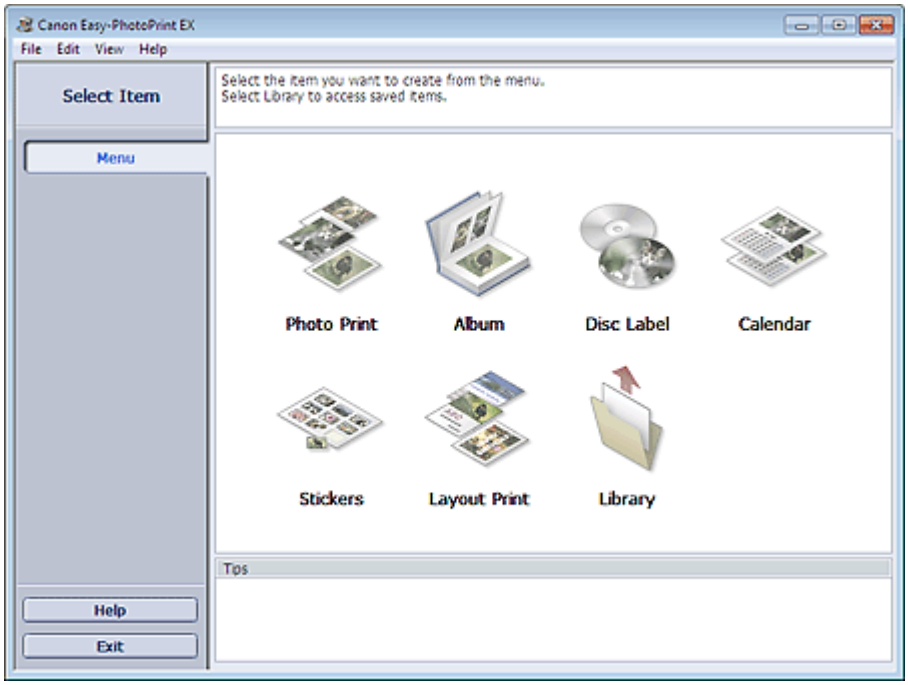
A021

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



Page top

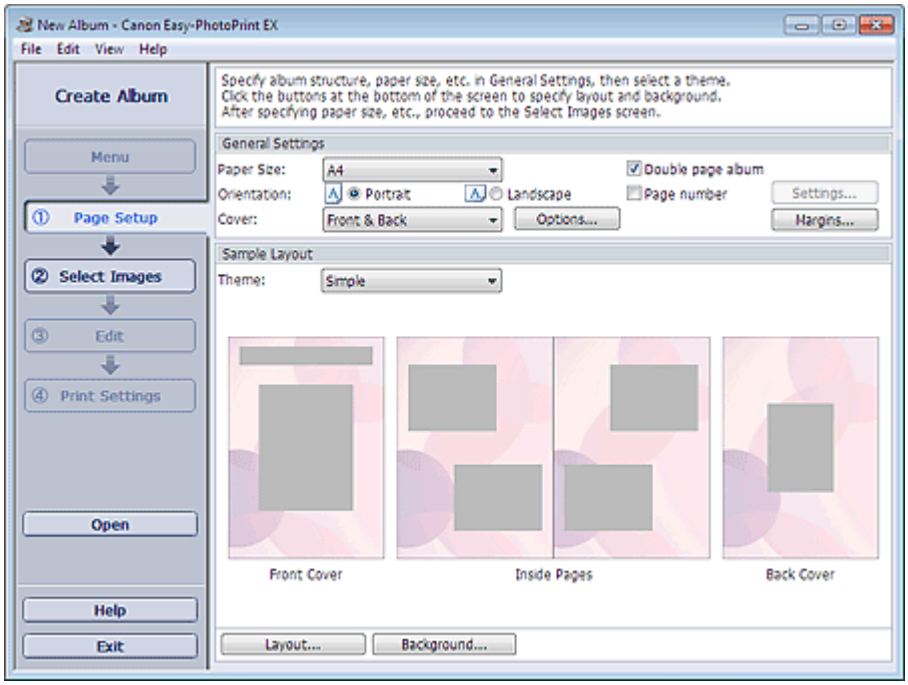
A022

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Album from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Cover

Double page album

Page number

Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can select whether to display images on the inside of the front and back covers in the Cover Options dialog box. To display the Cover Options dialog box, select Front or Front & Back for Cover and click Options....
- Select the Double page album checkbox to enable the spread page layout (consisting of two-page master). In a double-page album, you can arrange an image across the left and right pages.
- You can customize the page numbers (position, font size, etc.) in the Page Number Settings dialog box. To display the Page Number Settings dialog box, select the Page number checkbox and click Settings....
- You can customize the margins of the front cover, inside pages and back cover in the Margin Settings dialog box. To display the Margin Settings dialog box, click Margins....

3. Select the theme you want to use from Theme in Sample Layout.

4. If you want to change the layout, click Layout....

The Change Layout dialog box appears.

In the Change Layout dialog box, you can change the layout or select whether to print the date (on which the picture was taken) on the photo.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, Double page album, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox in the Change Layout dialog box and click Date Settings....

5. If you want to change the background, click Background....

The Change Background dialog box appears.

In the Change Background dialog box, you can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

Page top

A023

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Important

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX or ZoomBrowser EX), the folder tree area will not be displayed.
  The images selected in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
  Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
  Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

3. Select the image(s) you want to print, and click one of the buttons below.

To print on the front cover, click (Import to Front Cover).

To print on the inside pages, click (Import to Inside Pages).

To print on the back cover, click (Import to Back Cover).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click  (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

Page top

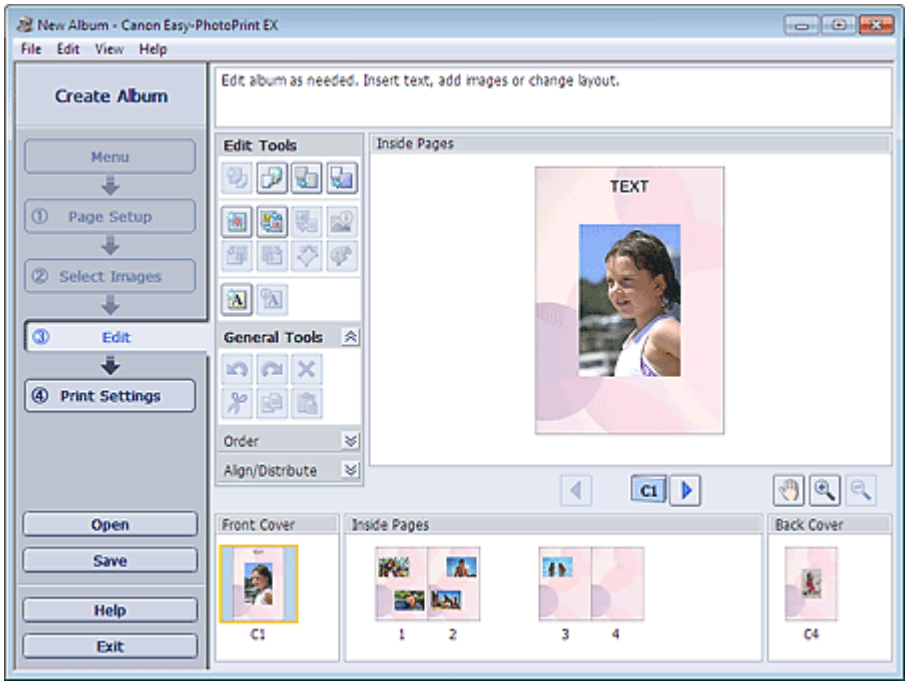
A024

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit your album if necessary.

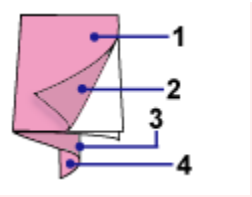
- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited album. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  The page numbers on the front and back covers of the album are displayed as follows:

  C1: Front cover

  C2: Inside the front cover



C3: Inside the back cover

C4: Back cover

- "C2"/"C3" appears only when the Leave the inside of front cover blank/Leave the inside of back cover blank checkbox is selected in the Cover Options dialog box.

➡Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

Page top

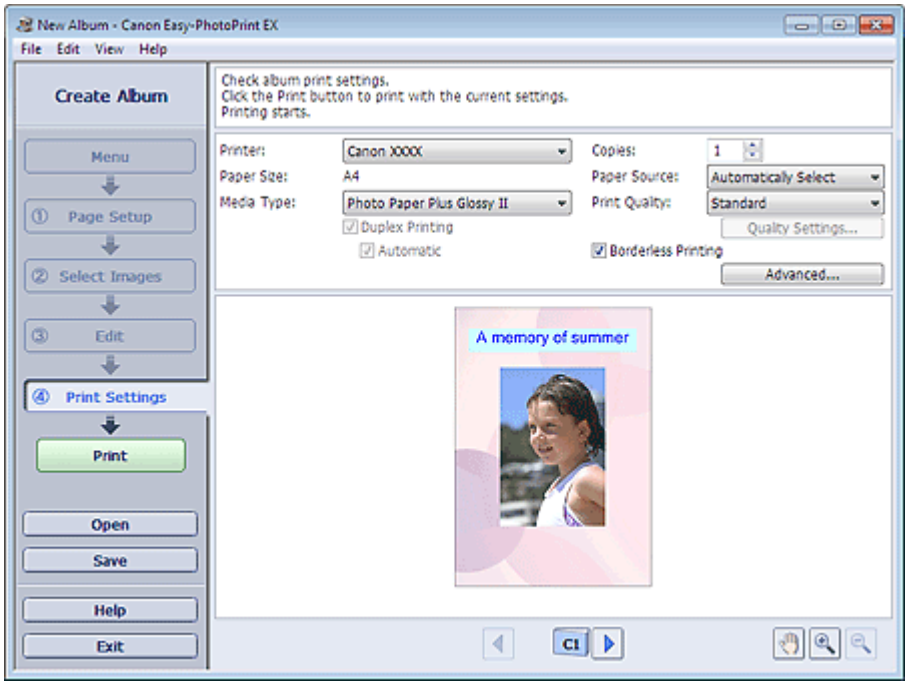
A025

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print each page of the album on a full page without borders.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

A004

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

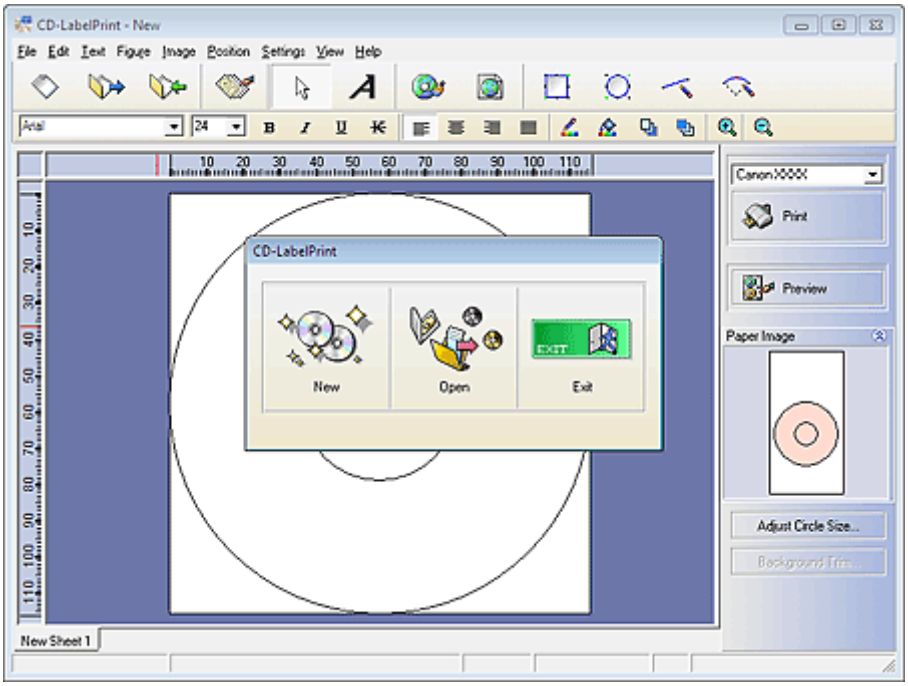
Printing Labels on Discs

Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX and select Disc Label in Menu to start CD-LabelPrint. CD-LabelPrint allows you to print labels on printable discs (BDs, DVDs, CDs, etc.) easily.

For details on how to use CD-LabelPrint, install CD-LabelPrint and refer to the application's manual as follows. From the Start menu, select All Programs > CD-LabelPrint > Manual.

Important

- Disc Label is not displayed in Menu if CD-LabelPrint is not installed on your computer.



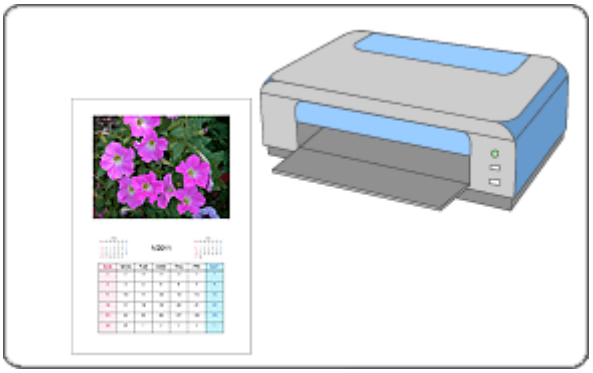
Page top

A040

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Calendars

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own calendar using your favorite photos.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Setting Calendar Display
- Setting Holidays
- Saving

Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Page top

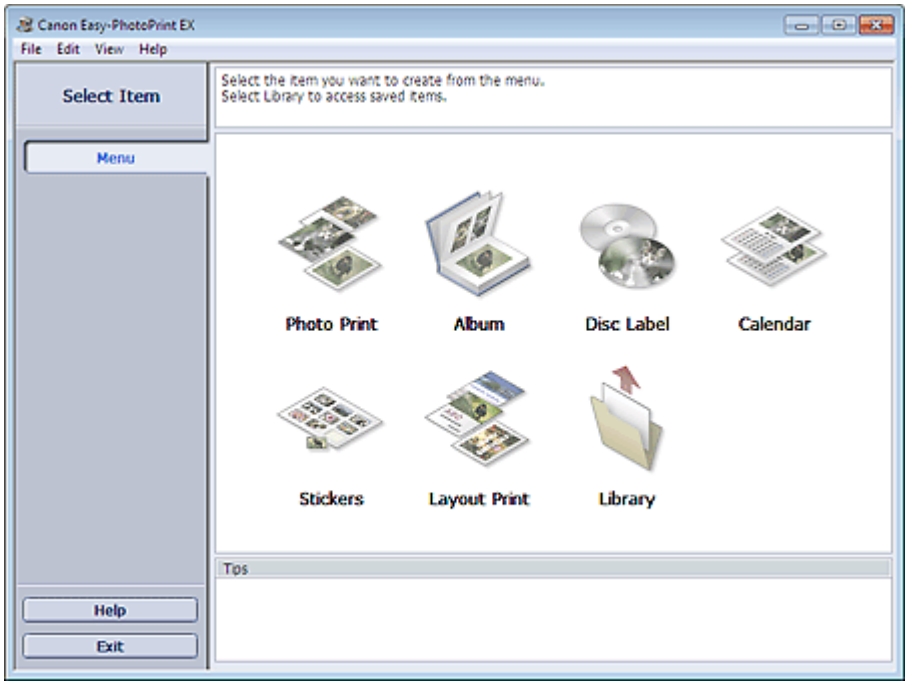
A041

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



Page top

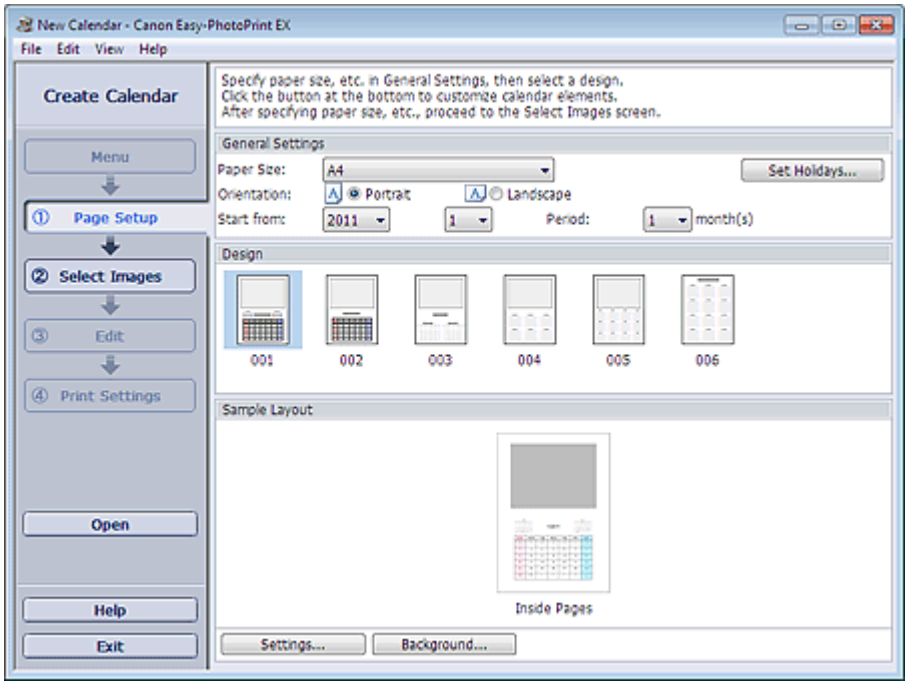
A042

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Calendar from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Start from

Period

Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can add holidays to your calendar.
  - Setting Holidays

3. Select a layout for Design.

If necessary, make advanced settings on the calendar and set the background.

Note

- You can customize the calendar display (font colors of the dates and days of the week, position and size of the calendar, etc.).
  - Setting Calendar Display
- You can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it in the Change Background dialog box. To display the Change Background dialog box, click Background....

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

Page top

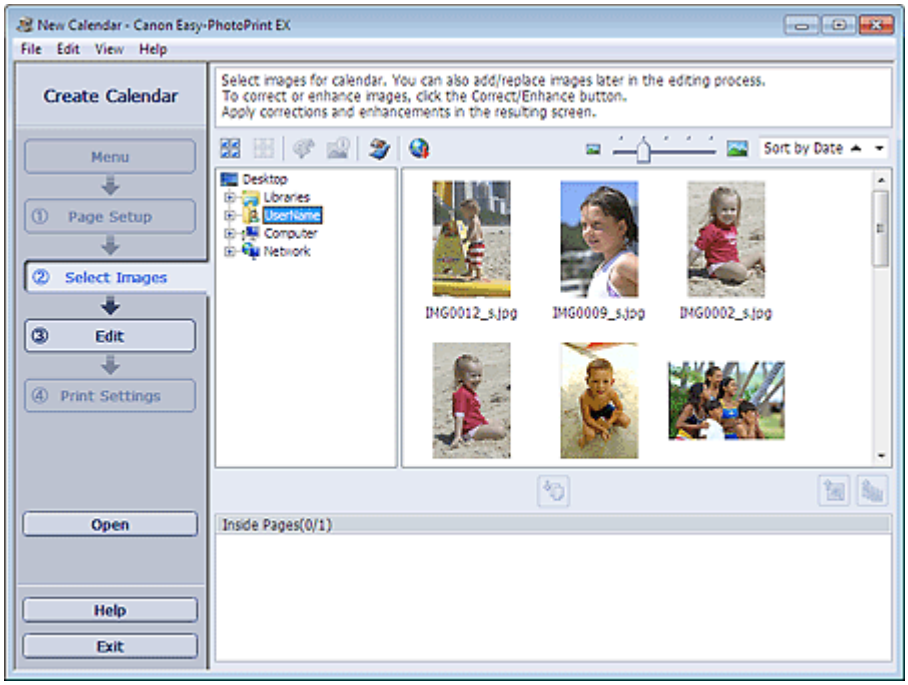
A043

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
  - Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
  - Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

Page top

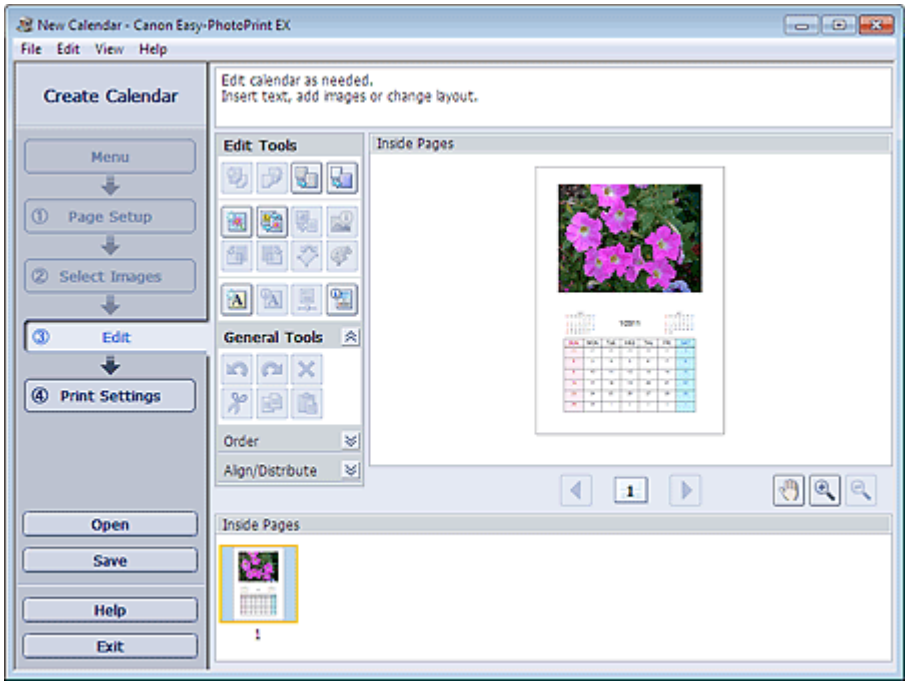
A044

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the calendar if necessary.

- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Setting Calendar Display
- Setting Holidays

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited calendar. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  - Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



Page top

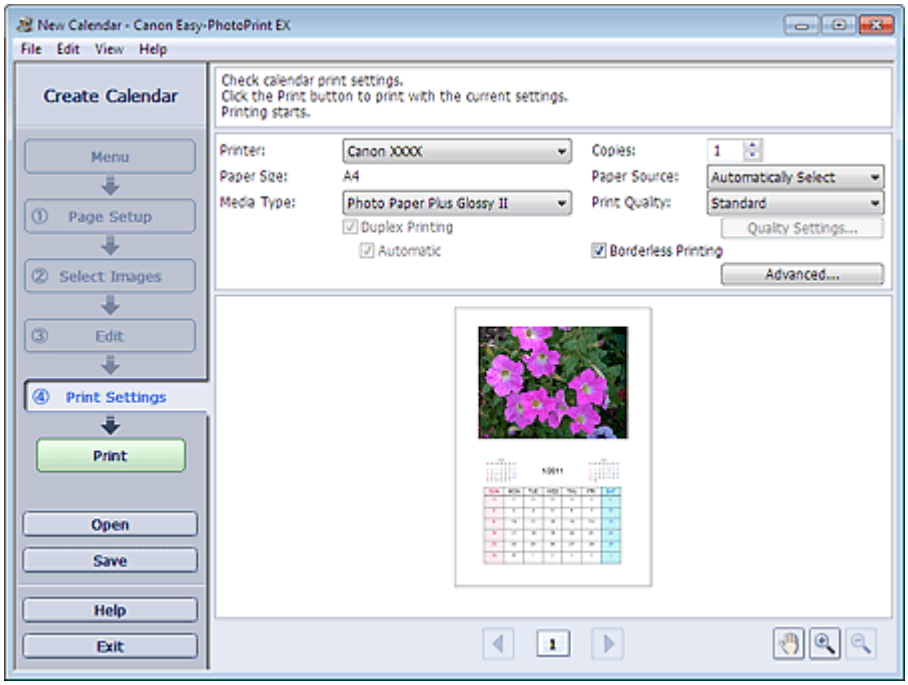
A045

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

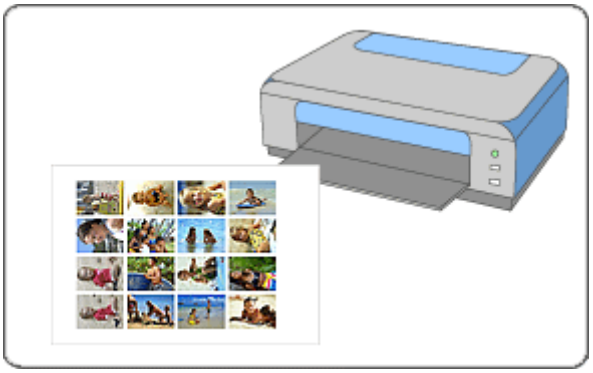
Page top

A050

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Stickers

You can print your favorite photos on compatible sticker sheets.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Page top

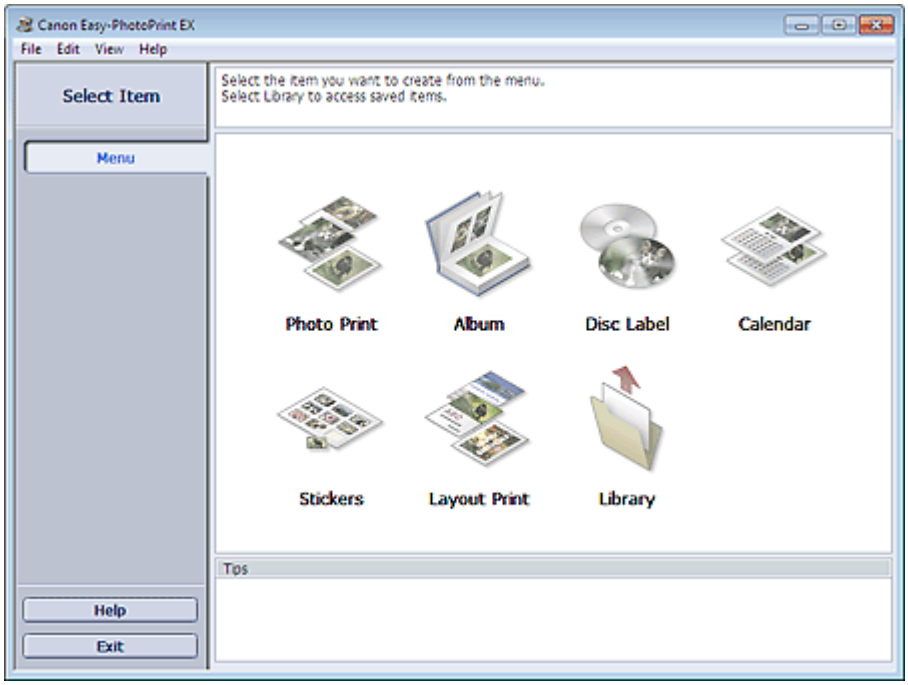
A051

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



Page top

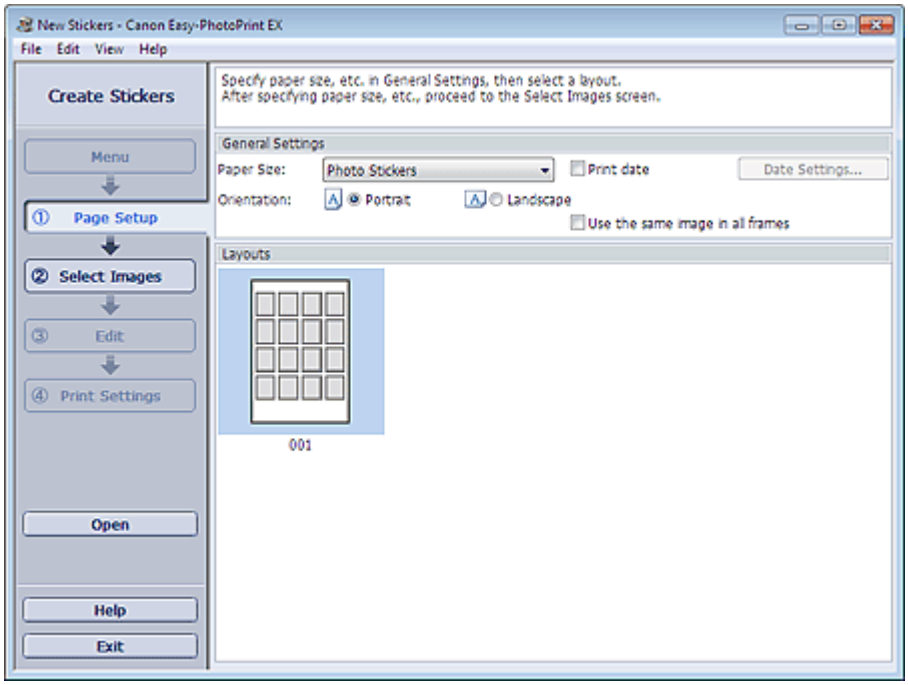
A052

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Stickers from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date

Use the same image in all frames

Note

- Paper sizes other than Photo Stickers cannot be selected.
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....
- Select the Use the same image in all frames checkbox to use the same image in all the frames on the page.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

Page top

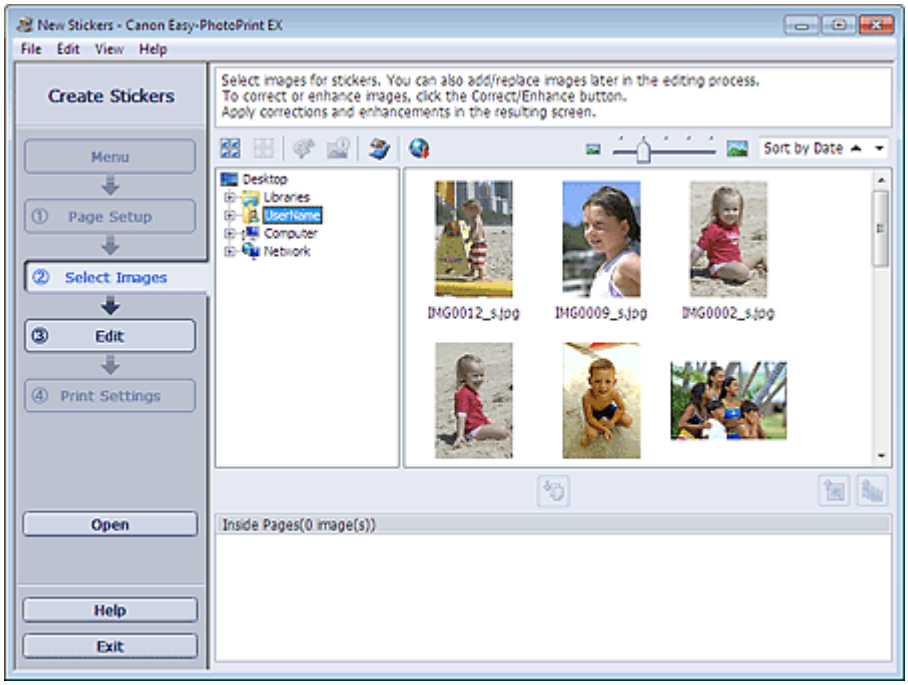
A053

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
  Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
  Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

Page top

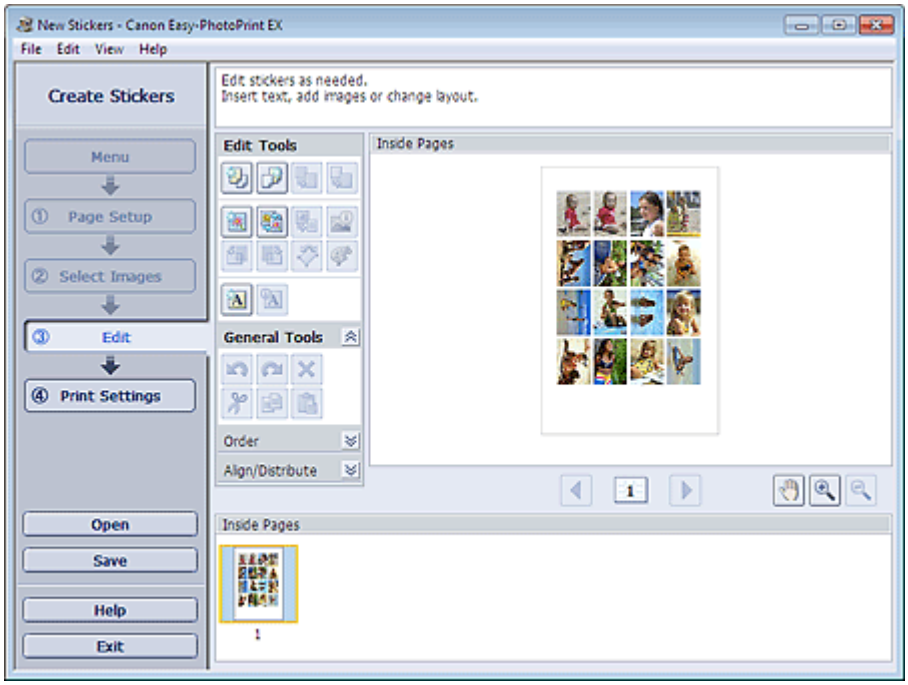
A054

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the stickers if necessary.

- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited stickers. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  - Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

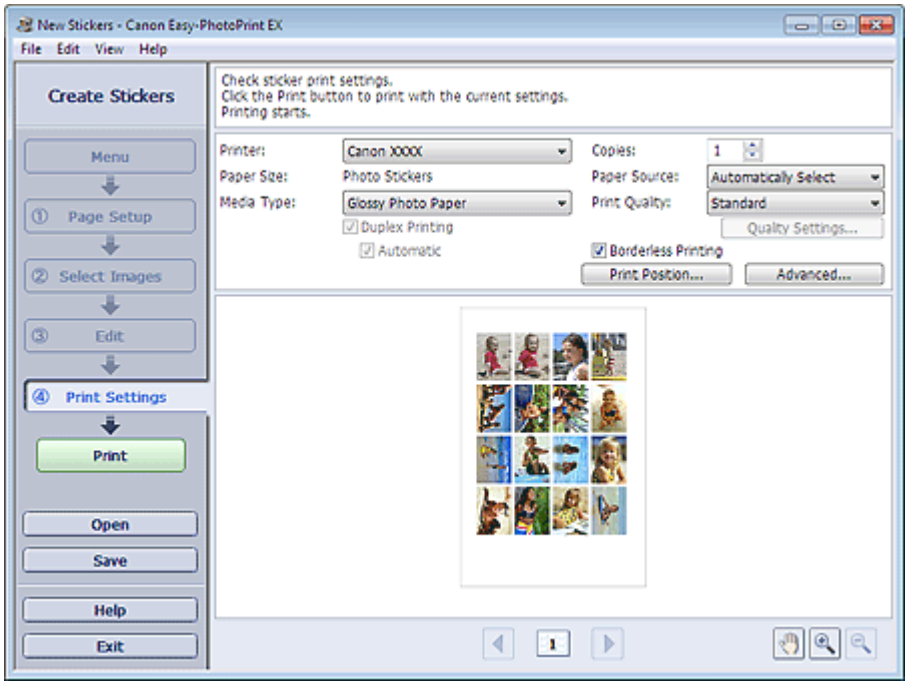
A055

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can adjust the printing position in the Adjust Print Position dialog box. To display the Adjust Print Position dialog box, click Print Position....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



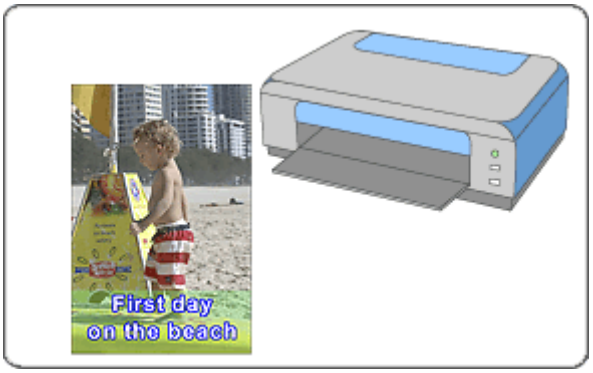
Page top

A150

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Layout

You can add text to your favorite photos and print them in a variety of layouts.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Changing Layout
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Page top

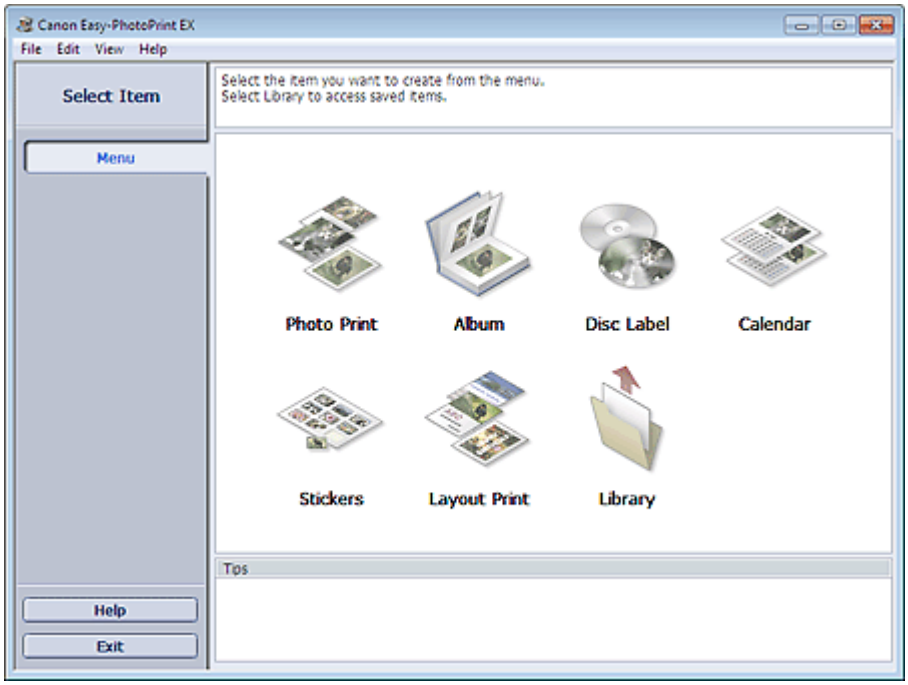
A151

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



Page top

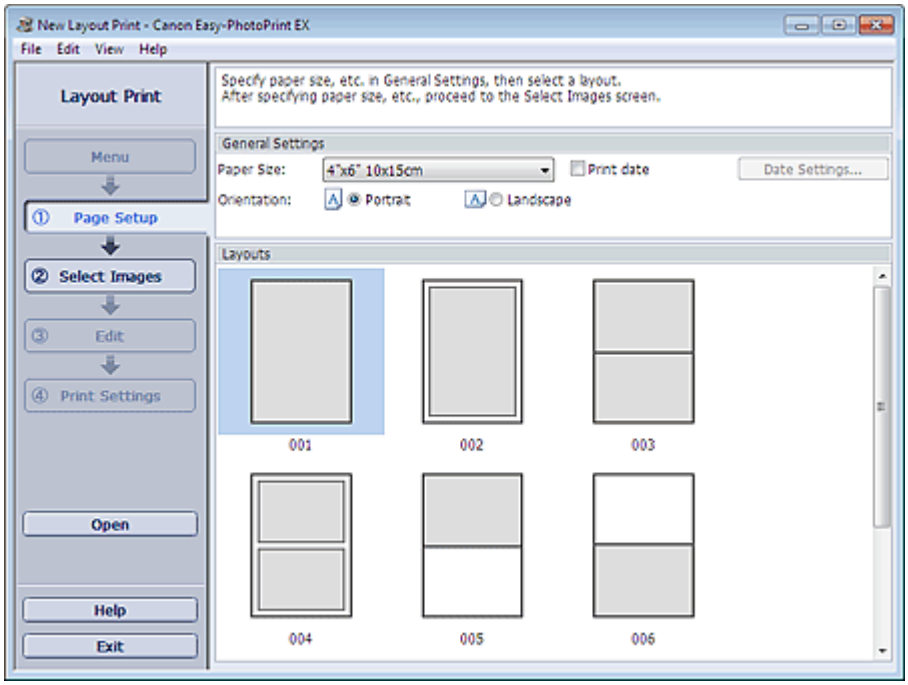
A152

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Layout Print from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date

Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....

3. Select a layout from Layouts.

Note

- The layouts may vary depending on the Orientation.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

Page top

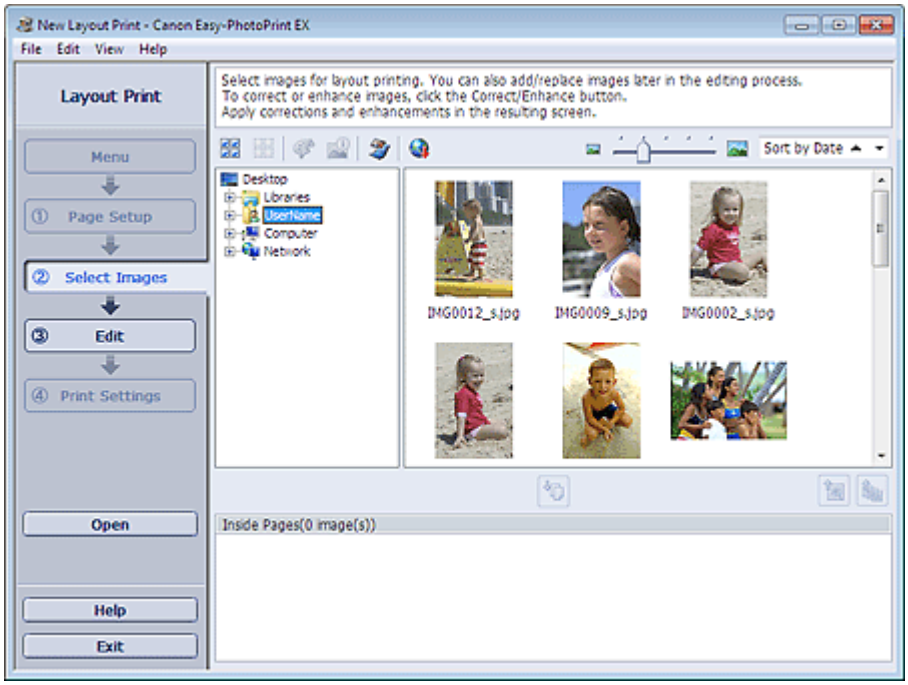
A153

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
  - Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
  - Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

Page top

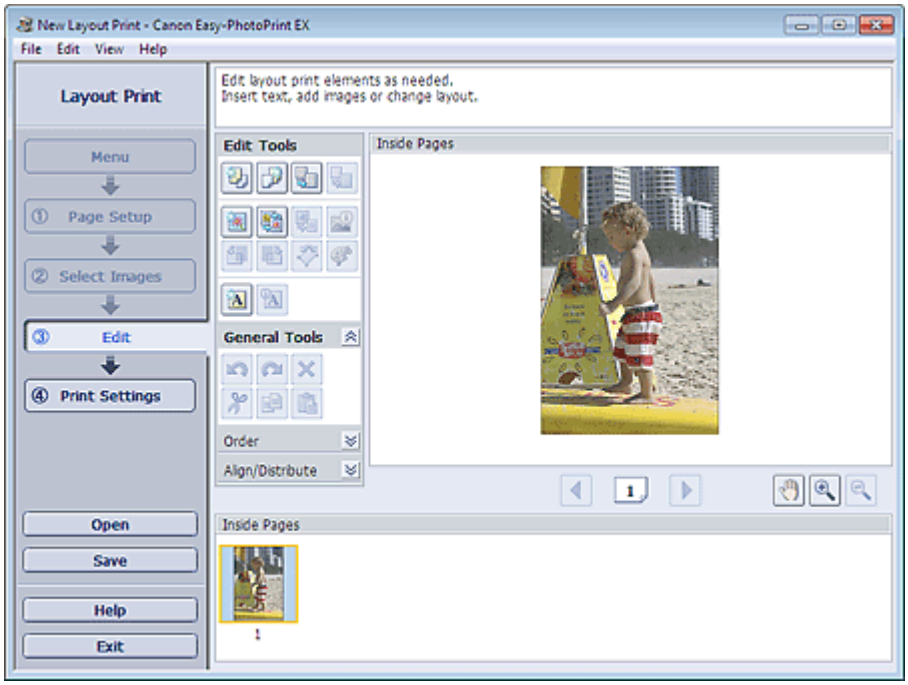
A154

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the layout if necessary.

- Changing Layout
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited layout.
  It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  - Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

Page top

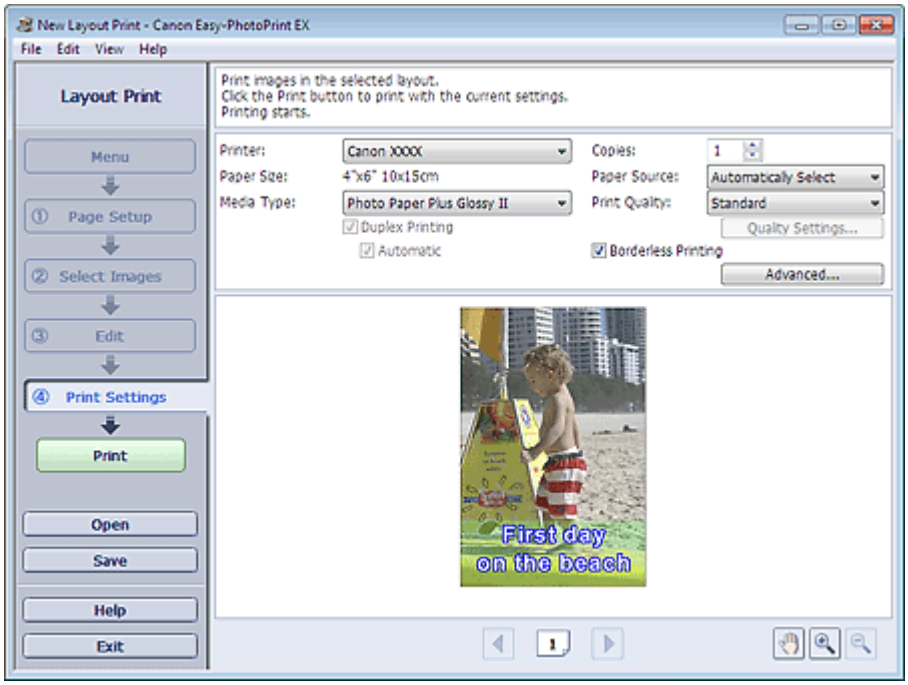
A155

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print borderless photos.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

A180

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Premium Content

Use Easy-PhotoPrint EX to edit and print content downloaded from the Canon website.

Important

- This function is supported under Windows XP or later.
- Keep these points in mind when using PREMIUM Contents Print.
  - To print with Easy-PhotoPrint EX, you need to download and install the exclusive content.
    See "Downloading Premium Content " for details on how to download content.
  - You may only use the content downloaded or printed for personal purposes.
    You may not use the content for commercial purposes.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Creating Still Images from Videos
- Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Page top

A181

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

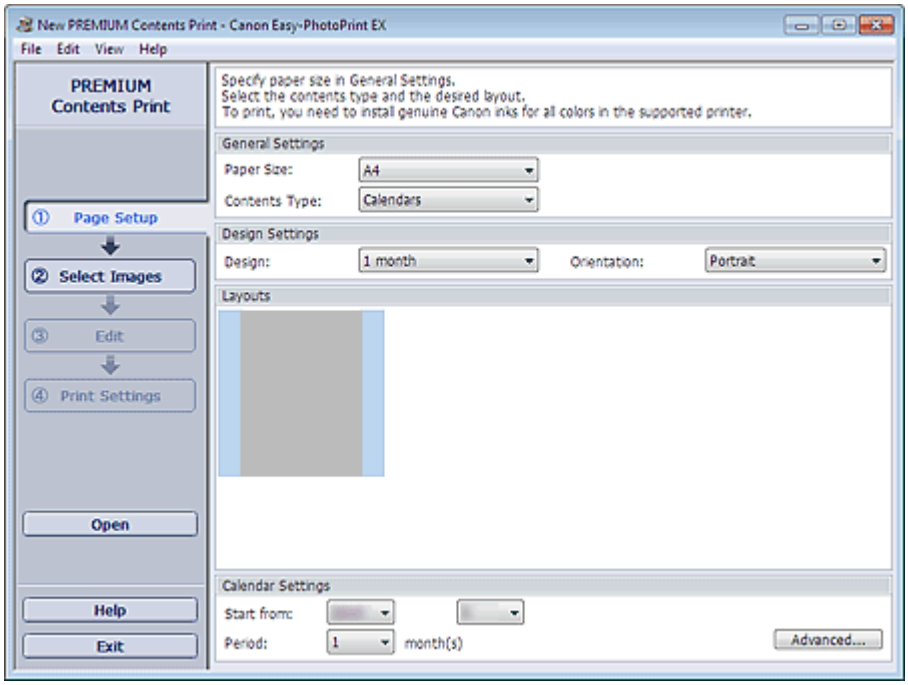
1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Solution Menu EX, then click Solution Menu EX.

   Solution Menu EX starts.



2. Select Photo Print, then click the PREMIUM Contents Print icon.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and the Page Setup screen of PREMIUM Contents Print appears.



Note

- In the actual screen, layouts for the selected Contents Type are displayed instead of the gray area shown above.
- Alternatively, select Canon Web Service of Solution Menu EX and click the PREMIUM Contents Print icon to start Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Important

- PREMIUM Contents Print is not displayed in Menu of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
  To print premium content, start Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Solution Menu EX following the steps above.
- Keep these points in mind when using PREMIUM Contents Print.
  - To print with Easy-PhotoPrint EX, you need to download and install the exclusive content.
    See "Downloading Premium Content " for details on how to download content.

Page top

A182

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Set the following items in the General Settings section of the Page Setup screen.

   Paper Size

   Contents Type

When Content Other than Calendars is Selected for Contents Type

2. Select a layout from Layouts.

Important

- The layout does not appear if the allowed number of print copies was exceeded or the usage period has elapsed.

Note

- (Cannot print) appears on the bottom right of the thumbnails (reduced images) of layouts that do not support the selected paper size. When you click such a thumbnail, a dialog box in which you can change the paper size appears.
- Right-click a thumbnail and select Properties... from the displayed menu to check the allowed number of print copies, usage period, supported paper sizes, etc. of the selected layout.

When Calendars is Selected for Contents Type

2. Set the following items in the Design Settings section.

   Design

   Orientation

3. Select a layout from Layouts.

Important

- The layout does not appear if the allowed number of print copies was exceeded or the usage period has elapsed.

Note

- The layouts displayed vary depending on the Design and Orientation.
- (Cannot print) appears on the bottom right of the thumbnails (reduced images) of layouts that do not support the selected paper size. When you click such a thumbnail, a dialog box in which you can change the paper size appears.
- Right-click a thumbnail and select Properties... from the displayed menu to check the allowed number of print copies, usage period, supported paper sizes, etc. of the selected layout.

4. Set the following items in the Calendar Settings section.

   Start from

   Period

Note

- You can specify the display style of the days of the week in the Calendar Settings dialog box. To display the Calendar Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



Page top

A183

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

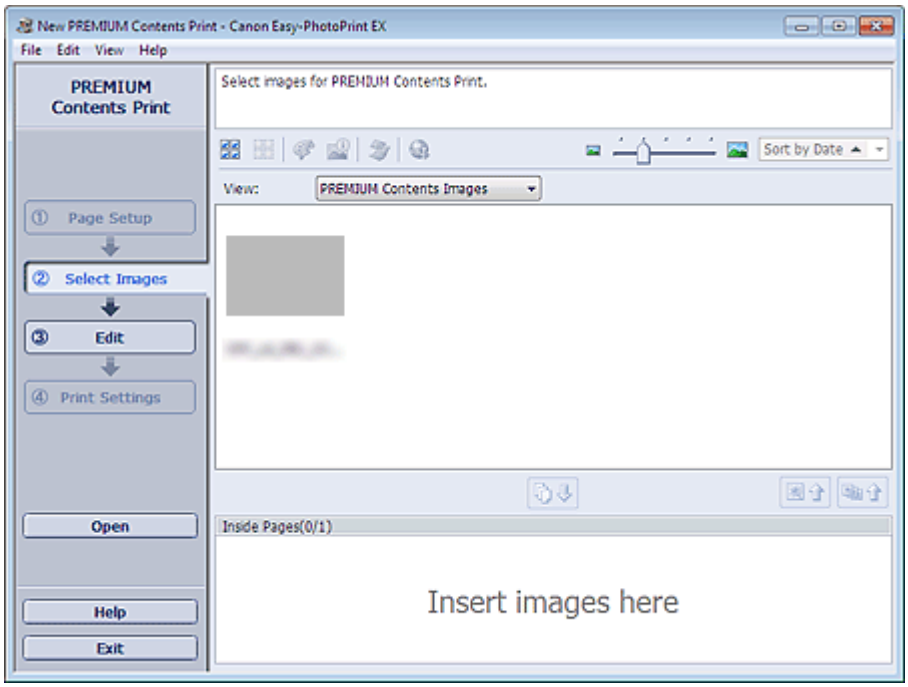
Selecting a Photo

Important

- The Select Images screen is not displayed depending on the selected content. In that case, skip ahead to "Editing."

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



Note

- In the actual screen, images are displayed instead of the gray area shown above.

2. Select PREMIUM Contents Images or Local Images for View.

Note

- View does not appear depending on the selected content.

3. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- The folder tree area is displayed only when Local Images are available.
- You can also use still images captured from videos, depending on the selected content.
  ➡ Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet, depending on the selected content.
  ➡ Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

4. Select the image(s) you want to print and click  (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click  (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing, depending on the selected content.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

Page top

A184

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

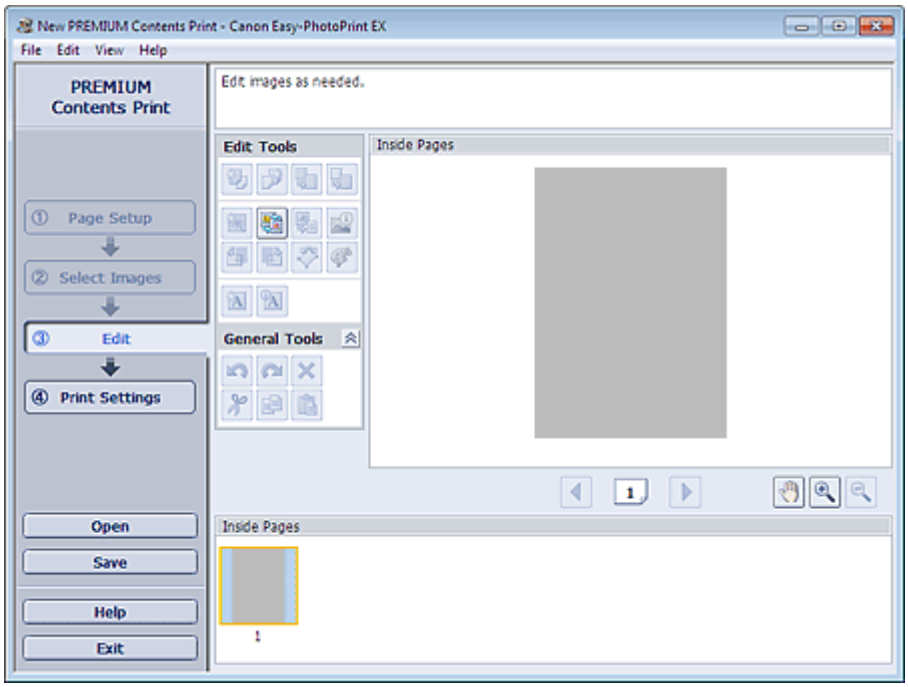
Editing

Important

- The Edit screen is not displayed depending on the selected content. In that case, skip ahead to " Printing ."

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



Note

- In the actual screen, the content you are creating is displayed instead of the gray areas shown above.

2. Edit the content if necessary.

Note

- Available editing functions vary depending on the selected content.

Adding Photos
Swapping Positions of Photos
Replacing Photos
Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
Cropping Photos
Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited item.
  It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

Page top

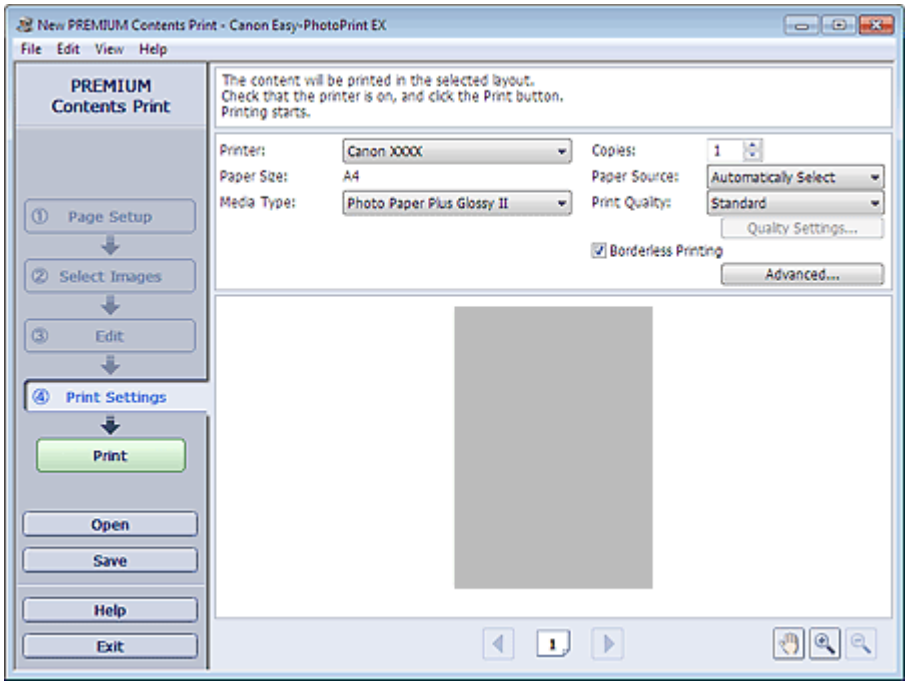
A185

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



Note

- In the actual screen, the content you created is displayed instead of the gray area shown above.

2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types displayed may vary depending on the selected content, printer and paper size.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print each page of the item on a full page without borders.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

A060

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Correcting and Enhancing Photos

You can correct and enhance images.

Click  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print. You can make the following corrections and enhancements in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Important

- For Photo Print, if you select Enable ICC Profile in the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box, you cannot correct/enhance images.

Note

- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Auto Photo Fix

This function will automatically analyze the captured scene and apply suitable corrections.

➡ Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

➡ Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

Face Brightener Function

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

➡ Using the Face Brightener Function

Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

➡ Using the Face Sharpener Function

Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

➡ Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

➡ Using the Blemish Remover Function

Image Adjustment

You can adjust brightness and contrast or sharpen the entire image.

You can also blur the outline of the subjects or remove the base color.

Adjusting Images

Page top

A066

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

This function will automatically analyze the captured scene and apply suitable corrections.

Important

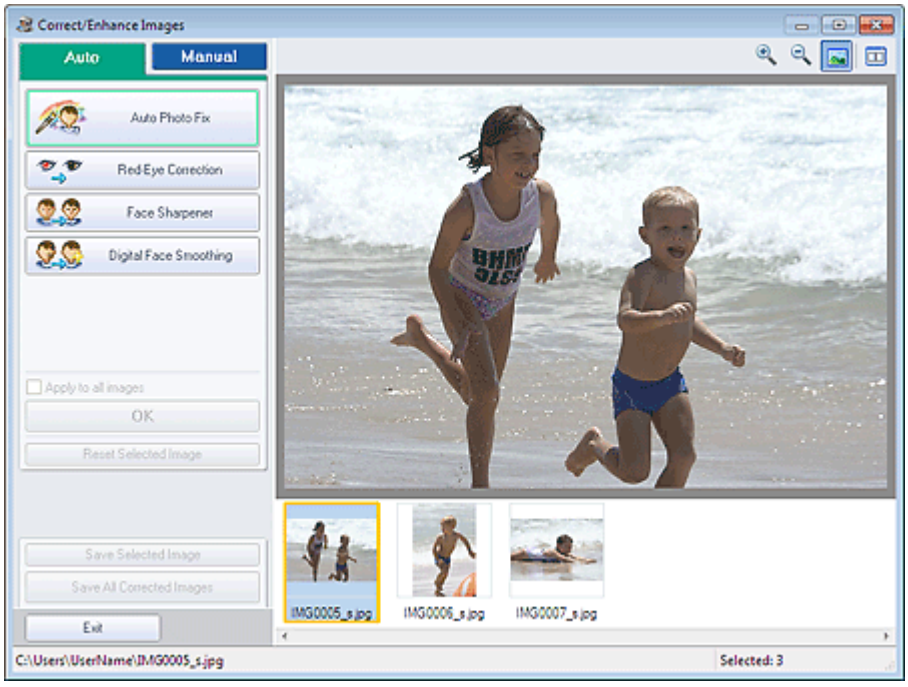
- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing, by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.
- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix.

  Also, Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

   The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Auto Photo Fix, then click OK.

The entire photo is corrected automatically and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.
- Select the Prioritize Exif Info checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
  Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

6. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

A061

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

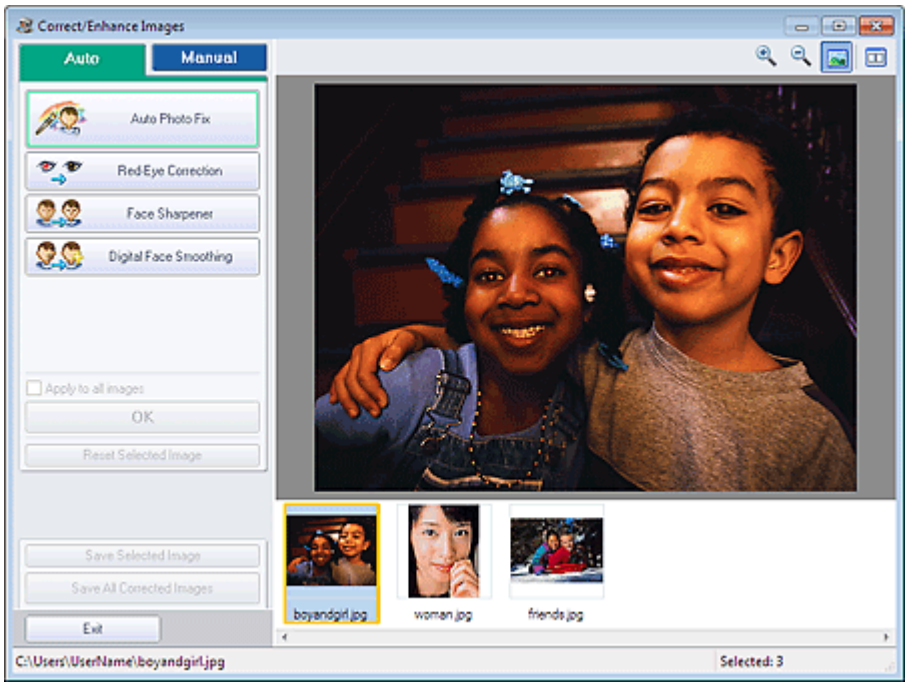
You can perform the Red-Eye Correction function either automatically or manually.

Note

- Photo Print allows you to automatically correct red eyes when printing. To correct automatically, select Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and select the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Red-Eye Correction.

5. Click OK.

   Red eyes are corrected and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Important

- Areas other than the eyes may be corrected depending on the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

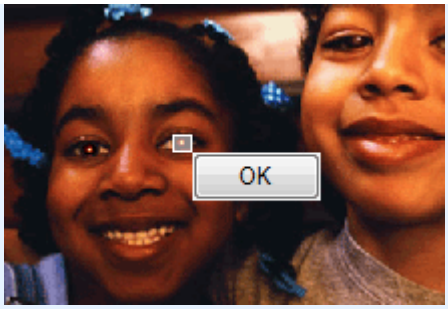
4. Click Red-Eye Correction.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Red-Eye Correction.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to (Paintbrush).

5. Drag to select the red area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



Red eye is corrected and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

A062

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Face Brightener Function

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

Note

- You can brighten dark photos caused by bright background automatically by selecting Auto Photo Fix.
  If the correction had not been made sufficiently, applying Face Brightener function is recommended.
  Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

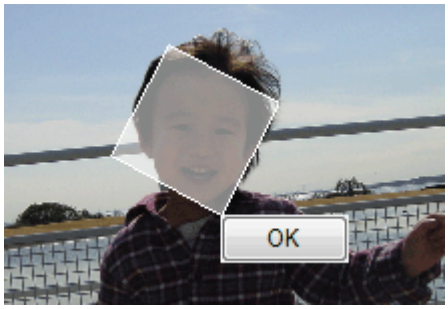
4. Click Face Brightener.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Brightener.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to + (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The entire image is corrected so that the selected area containing the face becomes brighter, and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

A063

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

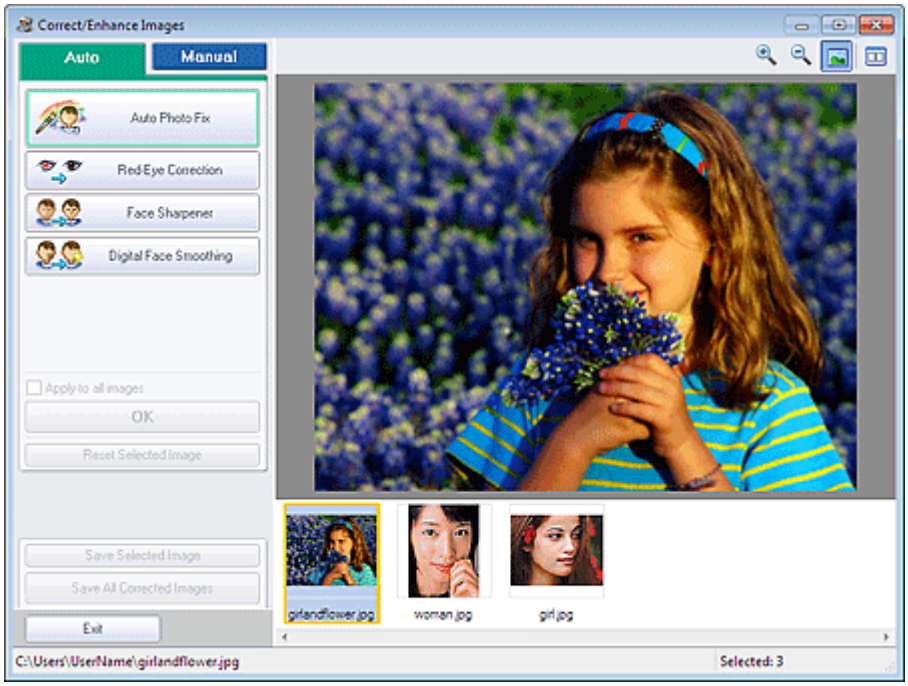
Using the Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

You can perform the Face Sharpener function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Face Sharpener.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.

5. Click OK.

The face is sharpened and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Face Sharpener.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The facial area in and around the selected area is sharpened and the (Correction/ Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

A064

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can perform the Digital Face Smoothing function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

Auto Enhancement

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.

5. Click OK.

Skin is enhanced beautifully and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the enhancement operation.
- If you want to apply the enhancement to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Enhancement

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

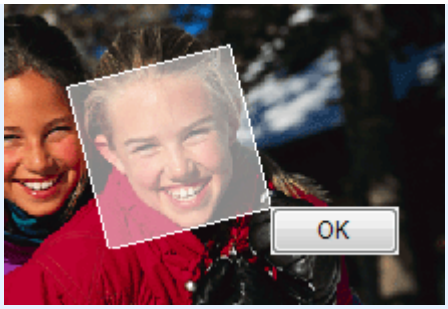
4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Skin in and around the selected area is enhanced beautifully and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

Page top

A065

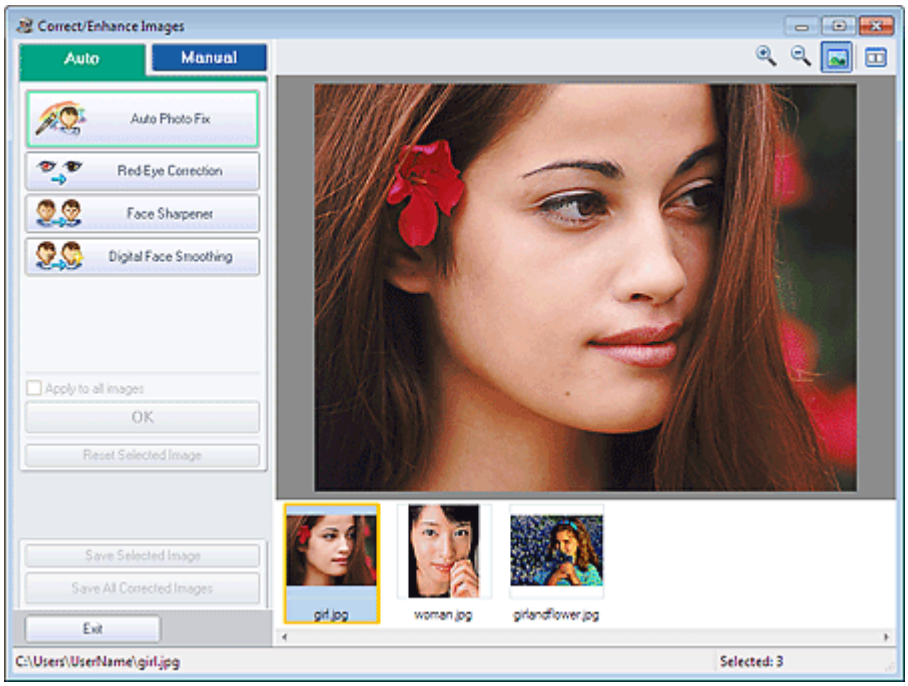
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

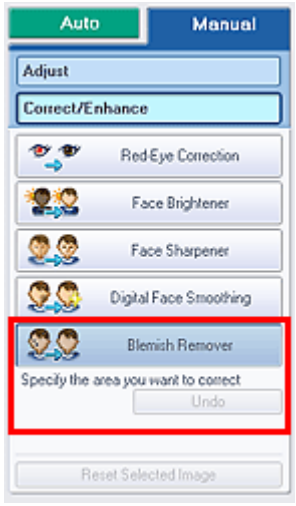
The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

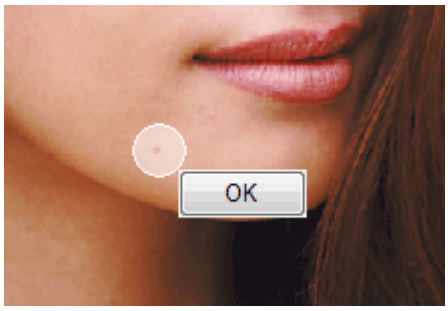
4. Click Blemish Remover.



Note

- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to + (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Moles in and around the selected area are removed and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

Page top

A067

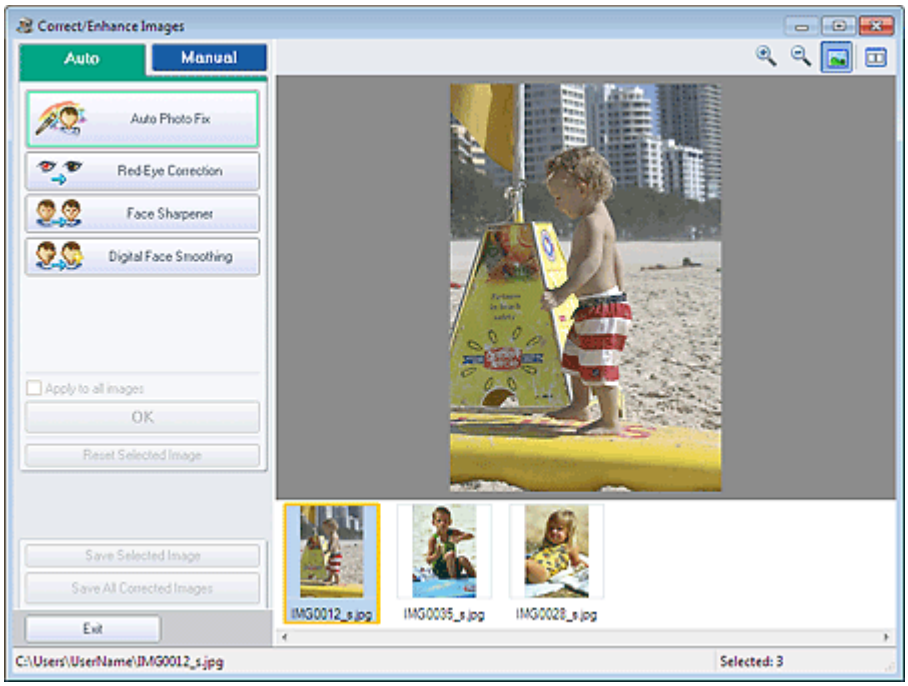
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Adjusting Images

You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be adjusted.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to adjust from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Adjust.

4. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

The following adjustments are available:

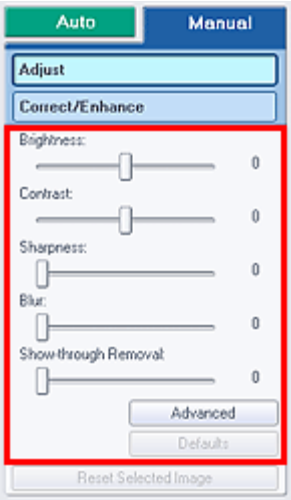
Brightness

Contrast

Sharpness

Blur

Show-through Removal



Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the adjustment side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Advanced to make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone. See " Advanced " in the descriptions of the Correct/Enhance Images window for details.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for adjusted images.

6. Click Exit.

Important

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

Page top

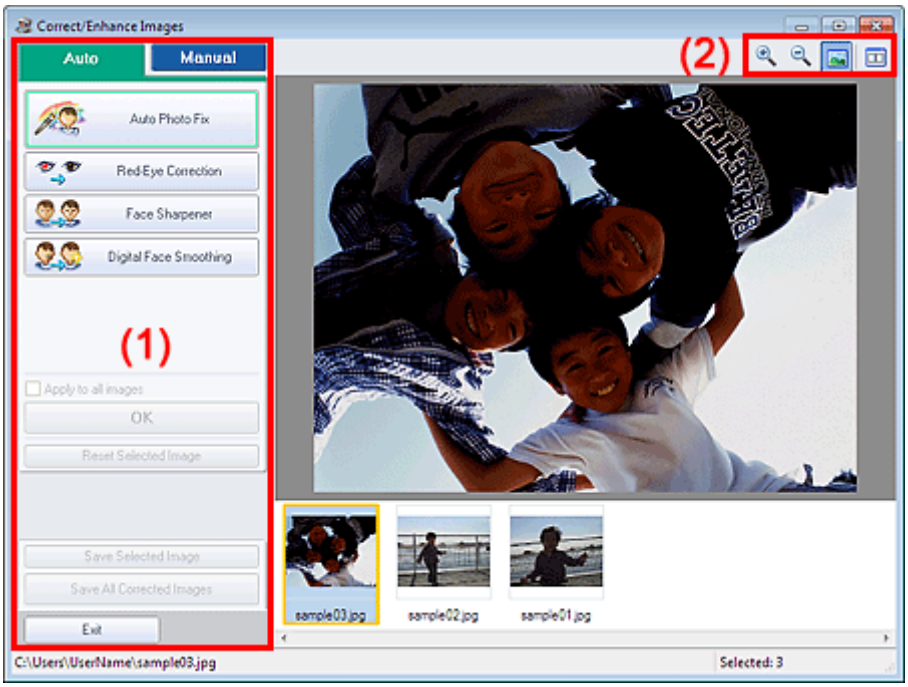
A068

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Correct/Enhance Images Window

You can correct/enhance images in this window.

To display the Correct/Enhance Images window, click (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print.



(1) Task Area

(2) Toolbar

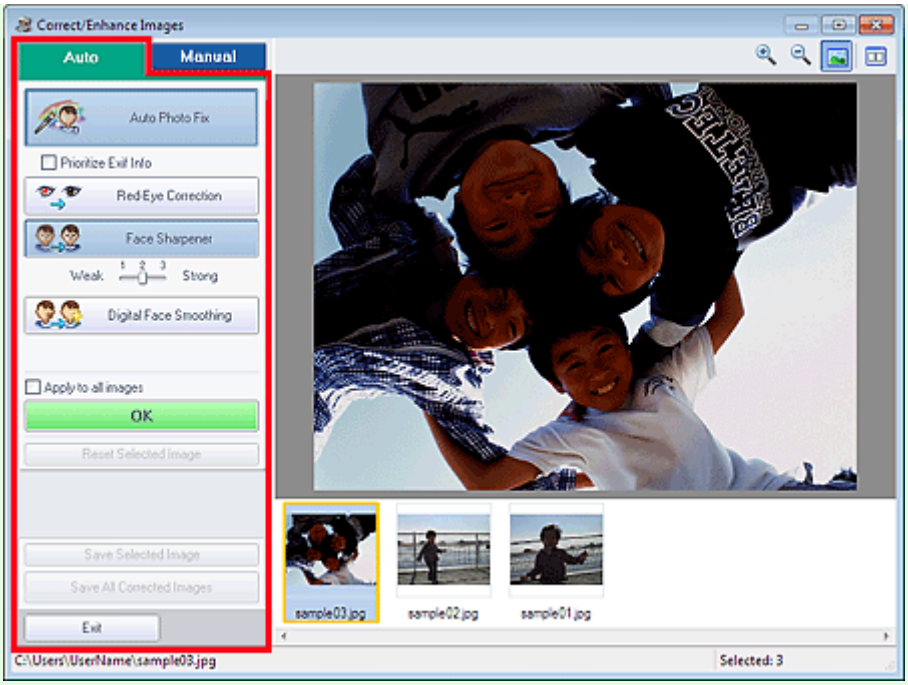
(1) Task Area

Available tasks and settings may vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click the Auto or Manual tab to display the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Use the functions in the Auto tab to apply corrections and enhancements to the entire image.



Auto Photo Fix

Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.

Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing, by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Prioritize Exif Info

Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

Note

- Exif is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).
- For Photo Print, you can apply suitable corrections based on Exif information automatically by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Prioritize Exif Info checkbox.

Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes.

Note

- For Photo Print, you can also automatically correct red eyes by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Apply to all images

Automatically corrects/enhances all images displayed in the thumbnail list.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the corrected/enhanced image (the selected one).

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the corrected/enhanced images displayed in the thumbnail list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

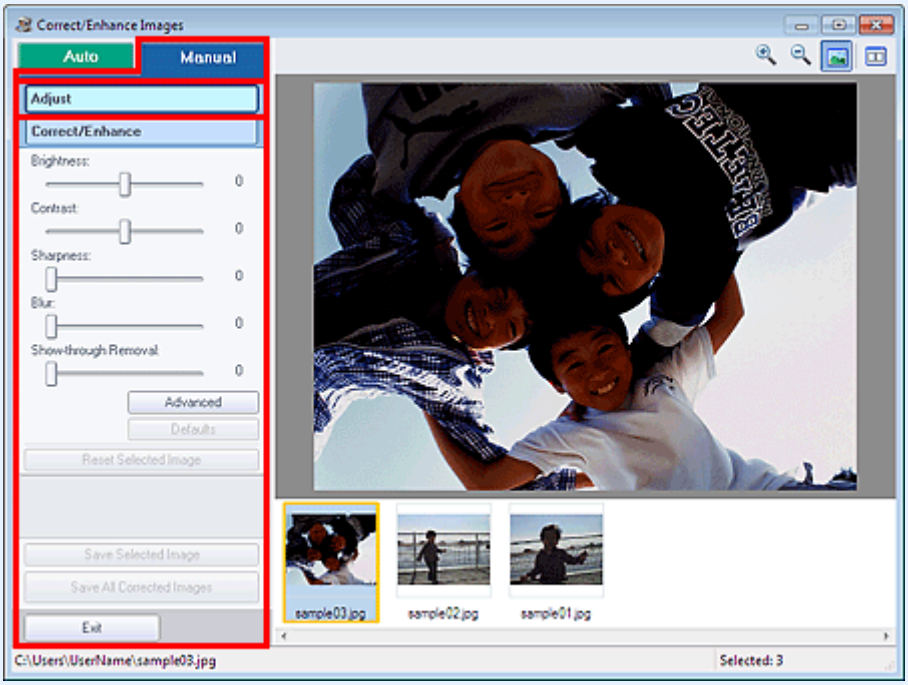
Manual Tab

There are two menus on the Manual tab: Adjust and Correct/Enhance.

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

Adjust



Brightness

Adjusts the overall image brightness.
Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.
Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Sharpness

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.
Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

Blur

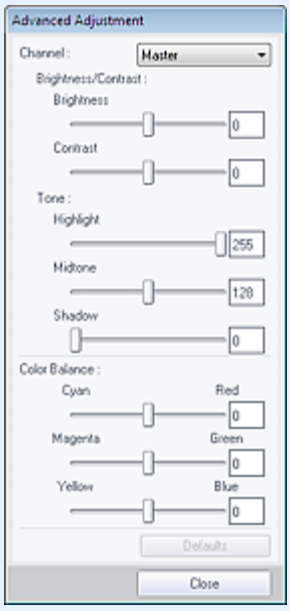
Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.
Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

Show-through Removal

Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.
Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

Advanced

Opens the Advanced Adjustment dialog box in which you can make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone.
For Brightness/Contrast and Tone, select a color in Channel to adjust either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to adjust three colors together.



Brightness/Contrast

Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image.
Move the Brightness slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.
Move the Contrast slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Tone

Adjust the brightness balance by specifying Highlight (the brightest level), Shadow (the darkest level) and Midtone (the color in the middle of Highlight and Shadow).
Move the Highlight slider to the left to brighten the image.
Move the Midtone slider to the left to brighten and right to darken the image.
Move the Shadow slider to the right to darken the image.

Color Balance

Adjust the vividness and color tone of the image.
Move the Color Balance slider to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

Note

- These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color. Colorcast is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.
- It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

Defaults

Resets all adjustments.

Close

Closes the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.

Note

- The Brightness and Contrast values set in Adjust do not change even if the brightness and

color tone are adjusted in the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.

Defaults

Resets each adjustment (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the corrected/enhanced/adjusted image (the selected one).

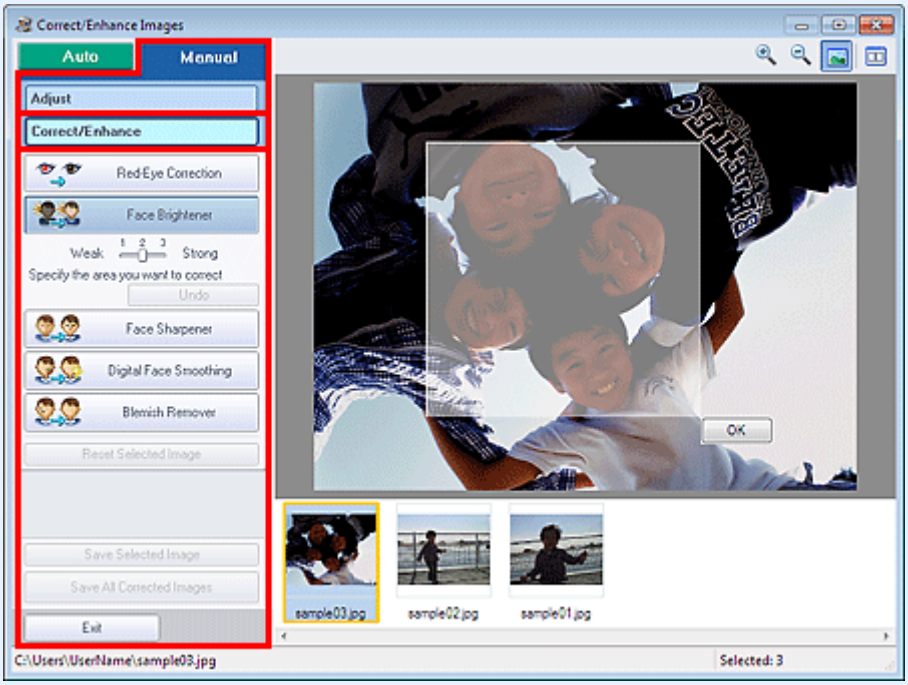
Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the corrected/enhanced/adjusted images displayed in the thumbnail list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correct/Enhance



Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes in the selected area.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Note

- For Photo Print, red eyes are automatically corrected when printing by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox. To correct manually, deselect the checkbox.

Face Brightener

Corrects the entire image to brighten the facial area in and around the selected area.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Face Sharpener

Corrects the entire image to sharpen the facial area in and around the selected area.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles in the selected area.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Blemish Remover

Removes moles in the selected area.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the specified area.

Undo

Cancels the latest correction/enhancement.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the corrected/enhanced/adjusted image (the selected one).

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the corrected/enhanced/adjusted images displayed in the thumbnail list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

(2) Toolbar

Toolbar

 **(Zoom In/Zoom Out)**

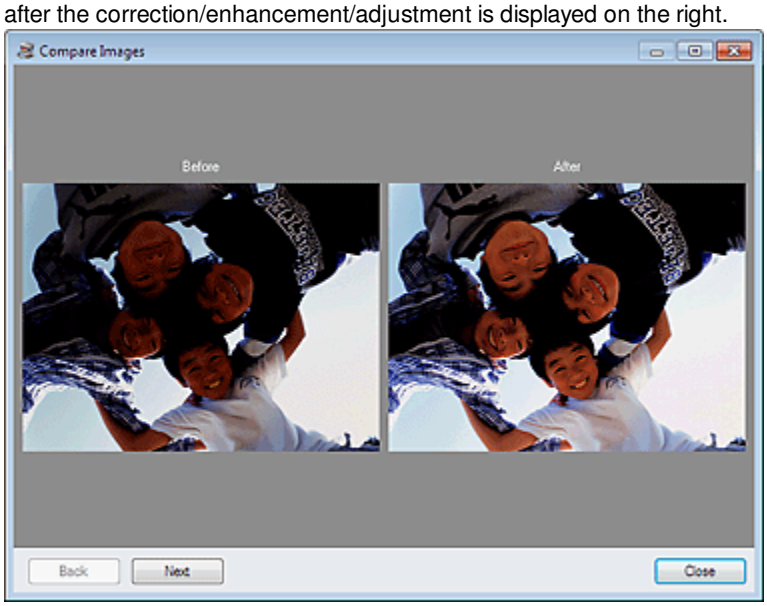
Displays the enlarged or reduced preview of the image.

 **(Full Screen)**

Displays the entire image in Preview.

 **(Compare)**

Displays the Compare Images window. You can compare the images before and after the correction/enhancement/adjustment side by side.
The image before the correction/enhancement/adjustment is displayed on the left, and the image after the correction/enhancement/adjustment is displayed on the right.



Page top

A160

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Creating Still Images from Videos

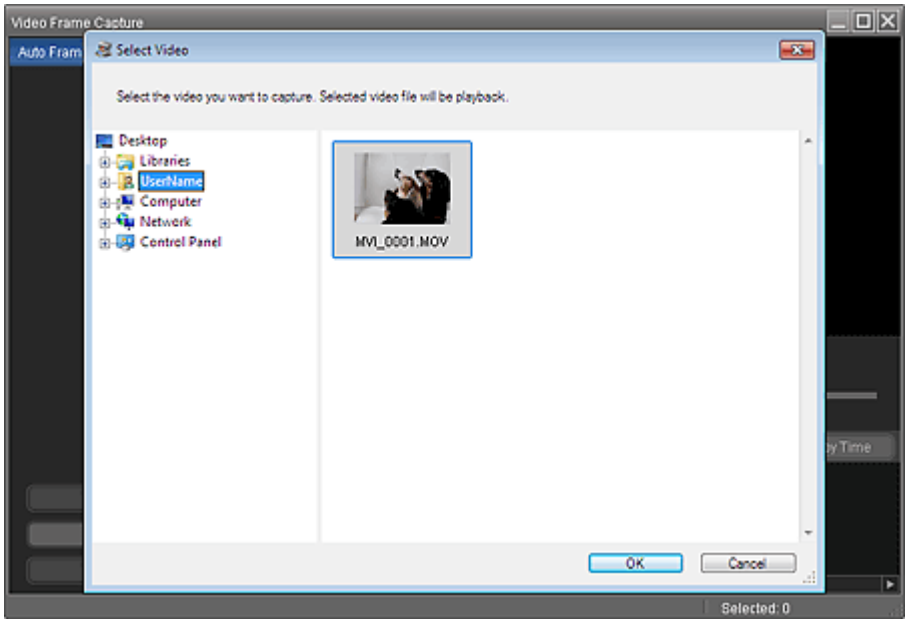
You can capture video frames and create still images.

Important

- This function is supported under Windows XP SP2 or later. However, it is not supported under the 64-bit editions of Windows XP.
- This function is not available when ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.5 or later (supplied with Canon digital cameras supporting MOV format video recording) is not installed.
- Videos may not play smoothly depending on your environment.
- When the color tone of a video is changed via the settings of the graphic driver (video card) or its utility, such a change is not reflected in still images captured from the video. Therefore, color tones may differ between videos and captured still images.

1. In the Select Images screen, click (Capture frames from video).

The Video Frame Capture window and Select Video dialog box appear.



Note

- You can also display the Video Frame Capture window by clicking (Capture frames from video) in the Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click (Add Image).
- See "Video Frame Capture/Movie Print Window " for details on the Video Frame Capture window.

2. In the Select Video dialog box, select the folder containing the video from which you want to capture still images.

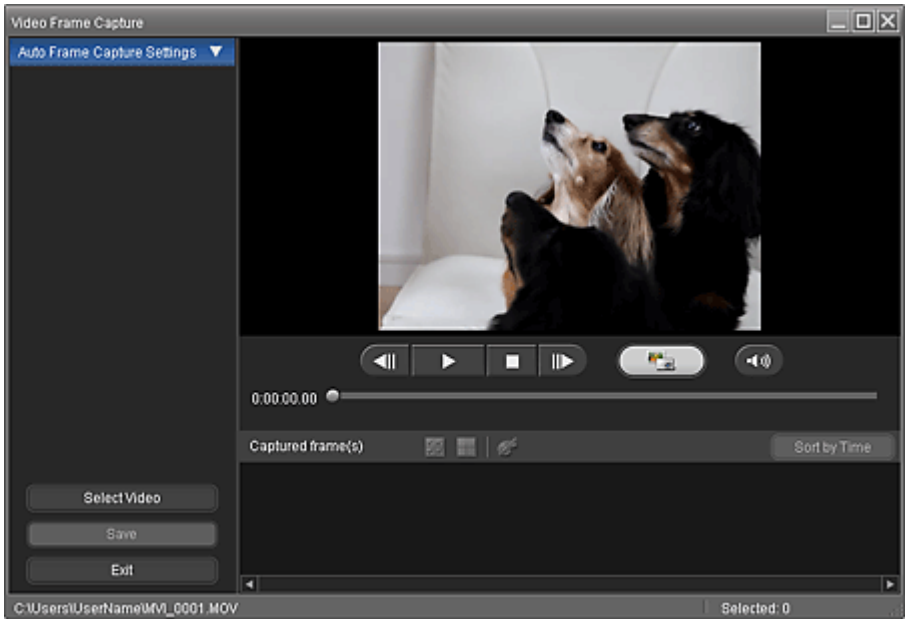
The videos in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- Only MOV format videos recorded with Canon digital cameras are displayed.
- The selected video plays.

3. Select the video from which you want to capture still images and click OK.

The selected video plays in Preview of the Video Frame Capture window.



Note

- (Pause) appears while a video plays, and (Playback) appears while a video is stopped.
- Use (Pause) and (Frame backward/Frame advance) to display the frame you want to capture.

4. Display the frame you want to capture and click (Capture).

The captured still image is displayed in the Captured frame(s) area.

Important

- You can capture up to 150 frames from one video.

5. Select the image(s) you want to save and click Save.

When the Save dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Note

- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for saving created still images.

6. Click Exit.

Important

- The captured still images will be deleted if you exit before saving them.

Note

- You can automatically capture multiple still images from a video.

Display the Auto Frame Capture Settings area, then use  (Set start time/Set end time) in the Preview area to specify the time range. In the Auto Frame Capture Settings area, select a capture method and click Capture.

- You can correct the captured still images in the Correct Captured Frames window. To display the Correct Captured Frames window, select the image(s) you want to correct in the Captured frame(s) area, then click  (Correct image).
- When the Movie Print window is displayed via Solution Menu EX, you can print the captured still images.

  To print, specify the printer and media in the Print area, then click Print.
  - When you print from the Movie Print window, images are automatically cropped. Therefore, images will be printed with the left and right sides cut off.
  - If you want to adjust the cropping area before printing, save the captured still image and print it from a function of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
- The saved still images can be used along with other images to create albums, calendars, etc. in Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Page top

A161

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Video Frame Capture/Movie Print Window

You can capture video frames and create still images in these windows.

In the Movie Print window, you can print the captured still images.

Important

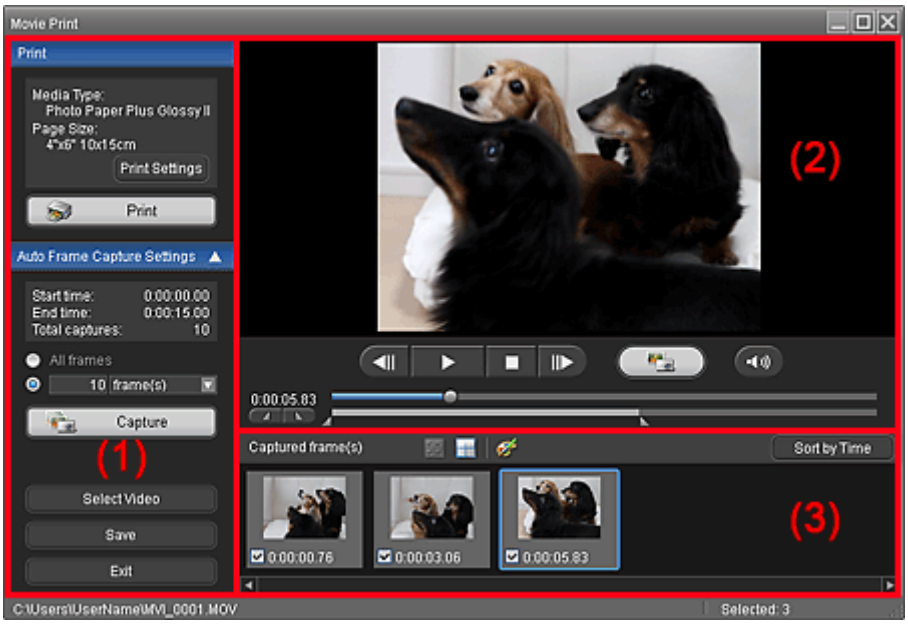
- This function is supported under Windows XP SP2 or later. However, it is not supported under the 64-bit editions of Windows XP.
- This function is not available when ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.5 or later (supplied with Canon digital cameras supporting MOV format video recording) is not installed.
- When the color tone of a video is changed via the settings of the graphic driver (video card) or its utility, such a change is not reflected in still images captured from the video. Therefore, color tones may differ between videos and captured still images.

To display the Video Frame Capture window, click (Capture frames from video) in the Select Images screen or Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click (Add Image).

To display the Movie Print window, select Photo Print in Solution Menu EX and click the Movie Print icon.

Note

- The Movie Print window displayed via Solution Menu EX is used as an example in the following descriptions. The window displayed varies depending on how Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

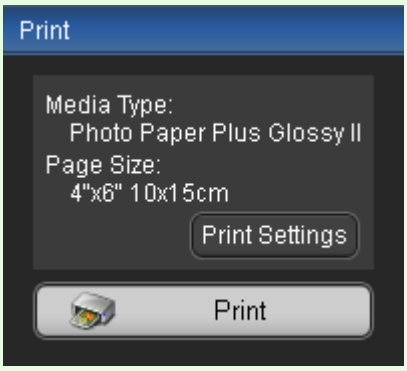
(2) Preview Area

(3) Captured Frame(s) Area

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

Print Area

You can print the captured still images.



Note

- This function is available only when the Movie Print window is displayed via Solution Menu EX.

Media Type

Displays the media type specified in the Print Settings dialog box.

Page Size

Displays the paper size specified in the Print Settings dialog box.

Print Settings

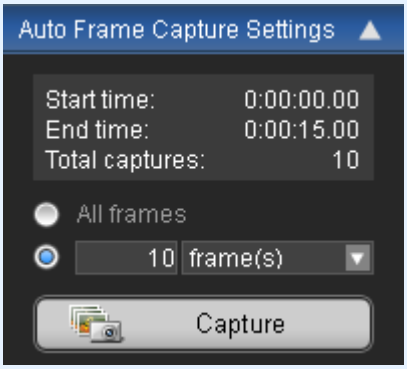
Displays the Print Settings dialog box in which you can make the basic print settings (select printer/ media, etc.).

Print

Starts printing the still images selected in the Captured frame(s) area.

Auto Frame Capture Settings Area

You can capture multiple still images according to the settings.



Note

- Use (Down arrow/Up arrow) to show/hide the Auto Frame Capture Settings area.

Start time/End time

Displays the start/end time of the time range from which to capture still images.

Total captures

Displays the number of still images to be captured.

Capture Method

Select from All frames, frame(s), sec. int. and frame int..

Capture

Captures still images according to the settings.
You can capture up to 150 frames at a time from one video.

Select Video

Displays the Select Video dialog box.
Select a folder, then select the video from which you want to capture still images.

Save

Saves the still images selected in the Captured frame(s) area.

Exit

Click to close the Video Frame Capture/Movie Print window.

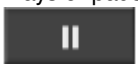
(2) Preview Area

The video selected in the Select Video dialog box appears in Preview.

 **(Frame backward/Frame advance)**

Click to reverse/advance one frame and pause.
You can also click during playback to reverse/advance one frame and pause.

 **(Playback/Pause)**

Plays or pauses the video.
 (Pause) appears while a video plays, and  (Playback) appears while a video is stopped.

 **(Stop)**

Stops the video.

 **(Capture)**

Captures the current frame and displays the still image in the Captured frame(s) area.
You can also capture during playback.

 **(Mute/Clear mute)**

Switches audio OFF/ON.

 **Playback Slider**

Displays the video playback progress.
Current playback time is displayed to the left of the slider.

 **(Set start time/Set end time)**

Set the start/end time of the time range from which to capture still images automatically.

Note

- These buttons are displayed only when the Auto Frame Capture Settings area is displayed.

 **Time Range Slider**

Displays the time range set with  (Set start time/Set end time).
You can also set the start/end time by moving  (Start/End point) located below the slider.

Note

- This slider is displayed only when the Auto Frame Capture Settings area is displayed.

(3) Captured Frame(s) Area

Displays the thumbnails of the captured still images.

Double-click a thumbnail image to display the Zoom In window in which you can check the details of the image.

 **(Select all frames)**

Selects all the images displayed in the Captured frame(s) area.

When you select an image, a checkmark appears in its checkbox.

(Clear all check-marks)

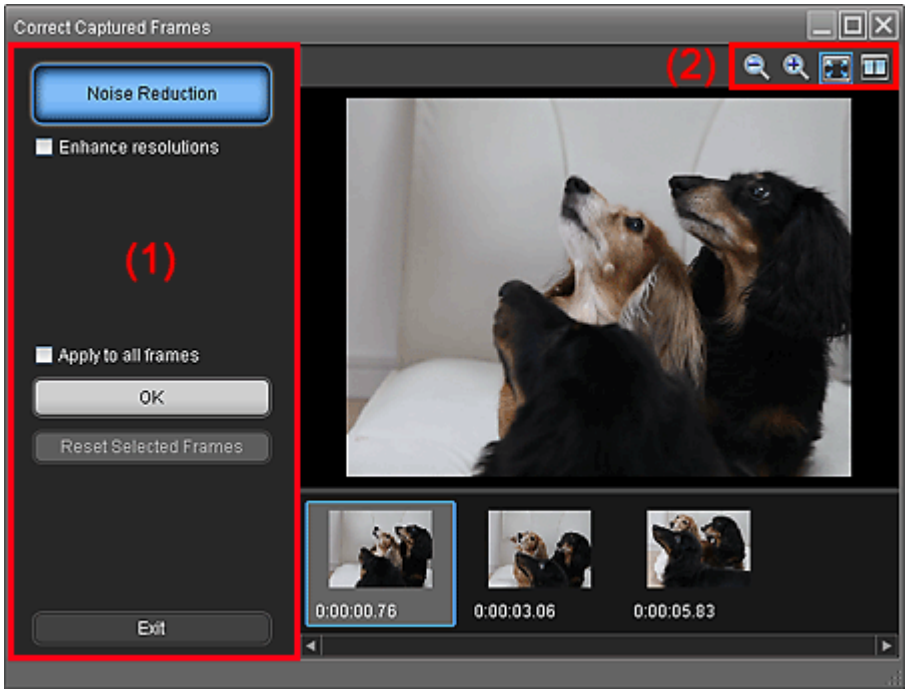
Cancels all image selections in the Captured frame(s) area.

(Correct image)

Displays the Correct Captured Frames window in which you can correct all the images selected in the Captured frame(s) area.

Note

- When a frame in which the subject or camera has moved significantly is captured, the image may not be corrected properly.



(1) Task Area

Noise Reduction

Reduces noise (tonal variation that may appear in images taken in dark locations such as night scenes using a digital camera).

Enhance resolutions

Select this checkbox to reduce the jaggies (roughness) in images.

Apply to all frames

Select this checkbox to correct all the images displayed in the thumbnail list.

OK

Applies Noise Reduction to the selected images or all images. Noise will be reduced to make the images more vivid.

Note

- Correction may take time depending on your environment.
- When the Enhance resolutions checkbox is selected, Noise Reduction and Enhance resolutions are applied simultaneously.

Reset Selected Frames

Cancels all corrections applied to the selected images.

Exit

Closes the Correct Captured Frames window and returns to the Video Frame Capture or Movie Print window.
Source images will be overwritten by the corrected ones.

(2) Toolbar

 **(Reduce/Enlarge frame)**

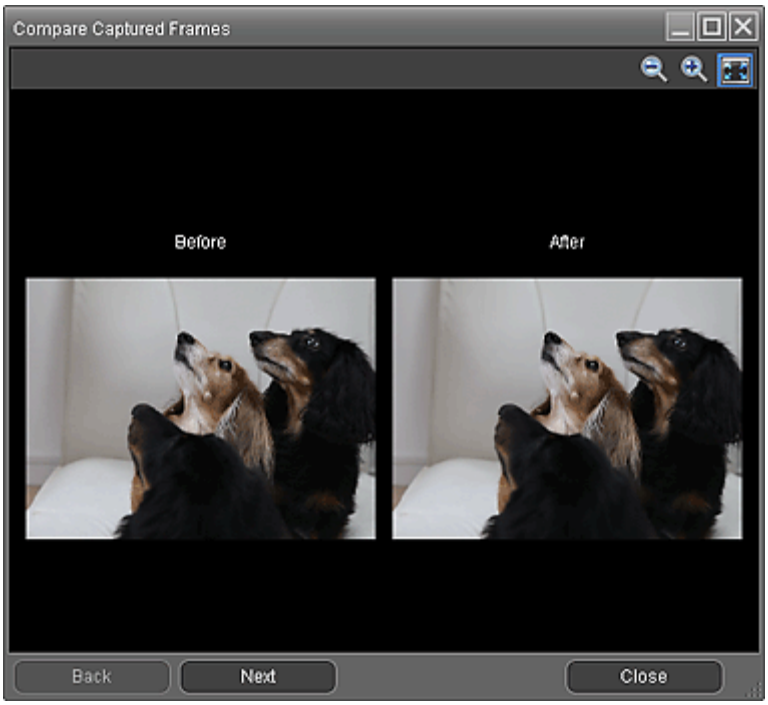
Reduces or enlarges the displayed image.

 **(Whole frame)**

Displays the entire image in Preview.

 **(Compare)**

Displays the Compare Captured Frames window. You can compare the images before and after the correction side by side.
The image before the correction is displayed on the left, and the image after the correction is displayed on the right of the window.



Sort by Time

Displays the captured still images in the order of the time code.

Note

- See "Creating Still Images from Videos " for details on how to create still images from videos.

Page top

A170

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

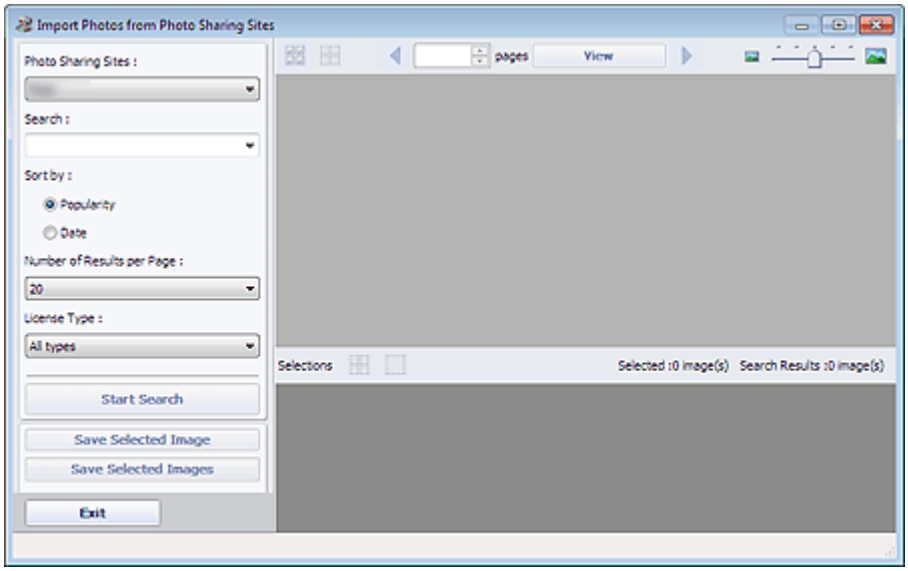
You can search for images on photo sharing sites on the Internet and download the images you want to print.

Important

- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.
- For the purpose of using this function, your product name, OS information, regional information and information that you have clicked (Import photos from photo sharing sites) will be collected and sent to Canon.
- This function may not be available in some regions.
- It is unlawful to reproduce or edit the copyrighted work of another person without permission from the copyright holder, except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright.
  Additionally, reproducing or editing photographs of people may infringe on portrait rights.
- You may be required permission of way to use the work from copyright holder when using the work of others except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright. Please check the details carefully of the web page of work in the photo sharing site.
  Please also check terms of service in the photo sharing site before using the work of others.
  Canon is not responsible for the any copyright problems by using this function.
- This function is supported under Windows XP or later.
- This product uses the Flickr API but is not endorsed or certified by Flickr.

1. In the Select Images screen, click (Import photos from photo sharing sites).

   The Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window by clicking (Import photos from photo sharing sites) in the Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click

 (Add Image).

- When you click  (Import photos from photo sharing sites), a message about created works and personality rights appear.
  To hide the message, select the Do not show this message again checkbox.
- See "Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites Window " for details on the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window.

2. Enter the search text in Search.

3. Set Sort by, Number of Results per Page and License Type.

4. Click Start Search.

Search starts, then the images that match the search text appear in the Thumbnail window.

Important

- Some images, such as images in formats other than JPEG, do not appear.

Note

- Click  (Back to the previous page) to display the previous page. Click  (Go to the next page) to display the next page.
  Alternatively, enter a page number in the page number entry box and click View to display the page.
- The number of search results (images) may be small depending on the language of the search text. In that case, entering English search text may increase search results.

5. Select the image(s) you want to download.

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the Selections area.

Note

- You can select up to 300 images.
- Click  (Cancel all image selections) to cancel all image selections in the Selections area.
  Click  (Cancel image selection) to cancel the selection of images selected in the Selections area.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save Selected Images.

When the Save Selected Image/Save Selected Images dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

The selected images are saved.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them in the Selections area and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save Selected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for saving downloaded images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The search results (images) will be deleted if you exit before saving them.

Page top

A171

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

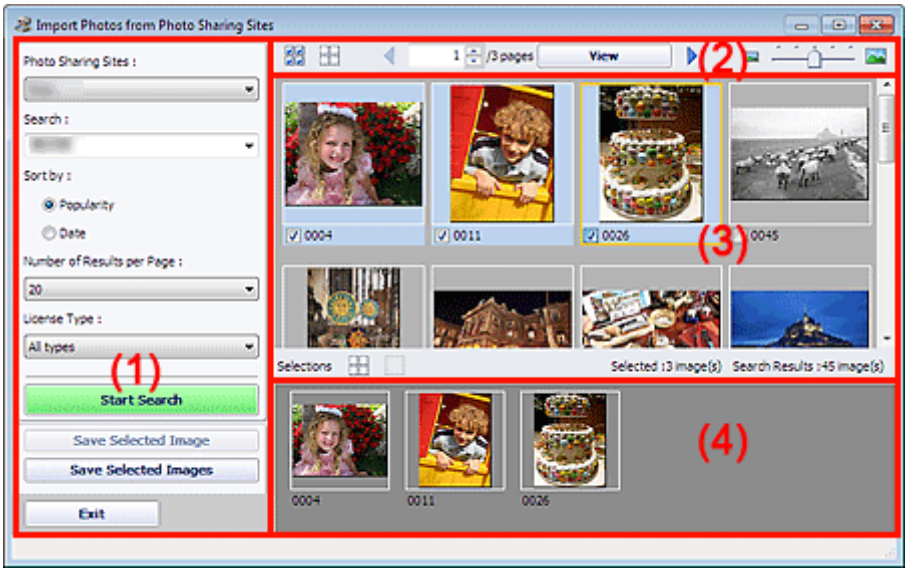
Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites Window

In this window, you can search for images on photo sharing sites on the Internet and download the images you want to print.

Important

- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.
- This function is supported under Windows XP or later.
- This product uses the Flickr API but is not endorsed or certified by Flickr.

To display the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window, click (Import photos from photo sharing sites) in the Select Images screen or Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click (Add Image).



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selections Area

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

Photo Sharing Sites

Displays the name of the photo sharing site.

Search

Enter the search text.

Note

- Alternatively, click (Down arrow) to display up to 20 search history records and select among them.
- When you want to enter multiple keywords, insert a space between the keywords.

Sort by

Select how to sort the search results in the Thumbnail window. Select Popularity or Date.
You cannot change the setting after a search.

Number of Results per Page

Select the number of images displayed in the Thumbnail window, from 10, 20 and 30.
You cannot change the setting after a search.

License Type

Select the license type of images to search for, from All types, CC license (Non-Commercial) and CC license (Others).
Select All types to display all images regardless of license type.
Select CC license (Non-Commercial) to display CC licensed images that can be used for non-commercial purposes only. Select CC license (Others) to display other CC licensed images.

Note

- License type varies by image. Point to an image to display a tooltip in which you can check the license type.

License Type	License Type	Usage Precautions/Conditions (Comply with the following conditions when using CC licensed images except for personal use or use within the home.)
All types	All Rights Reserved	Unauthorized copying of images is illegal except for personal/home use or for use within such limited scope. Copying portraits (photographs of persons) may infringe personality rights.
	Attribution Non-Commercial (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes.
	Attribution Non-Commercial No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Non-Commercial Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
	Attribution (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation.
	Attribution No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
CC license (Non-Commercial)	Attribution Non-Commercial (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes.
	Attribution Non-Commercial No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Non-	- You must show the title and licensor of the original

	Commercial Share Alike (CC license)	work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
CC license (Others)	Attribution (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation.
	Attribution No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.

Start Search

Starts searching for images, and displays the images that match the search text in the Thumbnail window.

Important

- Some images, such as images in formats other than JPEG, do not appear.

Save Selected Image

Saves the image selected in the Selections area.

Save Selected Images

Saves all the images displayed in the Selections area.

Exit

Click to close the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window.

(2) Toolbar

(Select all images)

Selects all the images in the page displayed in the Thumbnail window.
When you select an image, a checkmark appears in its checkbox.

Note

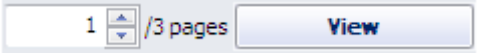
- You can select up to 300 images.

(Clear all check-marks)

Cancels all image selections in the page displayed in the Thumbnail window.

(Back to the previous page/Go to the next page)

Displays the previous/next page.



Page number entry box/Total pages/View

Enter a page number and click View to display the page.



Thumbnail Size Slider

Resizes the images in the Thumbnail window.
Move the slider to the right to enlarge and left to reduce the images.

(3) Thumbnail Window

Displays the thumbnails (miniatures) of the search results (images). The title is displayed under each

thumbnail.

To select an image, click the thumbnail or checkbox.

Important

- Due to limitations of photo sharing sites, if the search results exceed 4,000 images, the same images as those displayed in the page containing the 4,001st image will be displayed in all the subsequent pages.
  For example, when Number of Results per Page is set to 20, the images displayed in page 201 are the same as those displayed in page 202 and subsequent pages.

Note

- Point to a thumbnail to display its title, license type and other information.
- Right-click a thumbnail and select Open web page of work from the displayed menu to start a browser and display the page of a photo sharing site on which the image is posted.

(4) Selections Area

Thumbnails of the images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed, along with the number of images (number of selected images/number of search results).

(Cancel all image selections)

Cancels all image selections in the Selections area.

(Cancel image selection)

Cancels the selection of images selected in the Selections area.

Note

- See "Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites " for details on how to download images from photo sharing sites.

Page top

A200

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- How Do I Print with Even Margins?
- What Is "C1" or "C4"?

Page top

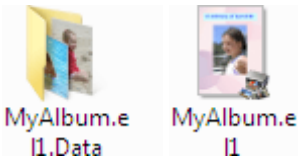
A095

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

If you want to move (or copy) a file created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX from one folder to another, you need to move (or copy) the folder that was automatically created when originally saving that file as well.

For example, when you save a file named "MyAlbum.el1," a folder named "MyAlbum.el1.Data" is automatically created in the same folder that contains the "MyAlbum.el1" file. If you want to move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.el1" file to another folder, move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.el1.Data" folder as well. The "MyAlbum.el1.Data" folder contains the photos used in the album.



Note

- The icons may vary depending on the items.

Important

- Do not change the Data folder name; otherwise you will not be able to display the photos you edited with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
- For PREMIUM Contents Print using premium content images, if you save the file and move it to another computer, you will not be able to open the file.

Page top

A096

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

As shown below, printing starts from the left side of the image displayed in the Layout/Print screen.



Outputs the paper in the direction as the arrow indicates.

See your printer manual for details on how to load paper (to print on the front/back, etc.).

Page top

A097

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

How Do I Print with Even Margins?

When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other, depending on the image and printer.

To always print with even margins, select the Always crop images when selecting a layout with margins checkbox on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Crop the photo to apply even margins individually.

Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Note

- This setting is available only when Photo Print is selected.

Page top

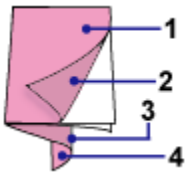
A098

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

What Is "C1" or "C4"?

When an album is printed, labels such as "C1" and "C4" are printed as page numbers.

The "C1" and "C4" represent the front cover and back cover, respectively.



C1: Front cover

C2: Inside the front cover

C3: Inside the back cover

C4: Back cover

Note

- "C2"/"C3" appears only when the Leave the inside of front cover blank/Leave the inside of back cover blank checkbox is selected in the Cover Options dialog box.

Page top

A101

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Photo Print Settings

Printing Labels on Discs Directly
Printing Photos in Grayscale
Printing Vivid Photos
Reducing Photo Noise
Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
Printing an Index
Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
Printing Photo Information
Saving Photos
Opening Saved Files

Page top

A070

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Labels on Discs Directly

You can print labels on printable discs using Photo Print.

If you want to edit the details, return to Menu and select Disc Label and edit/print using CD-LabelPrint.
See "Printing Labels on Discs" for details.

Note

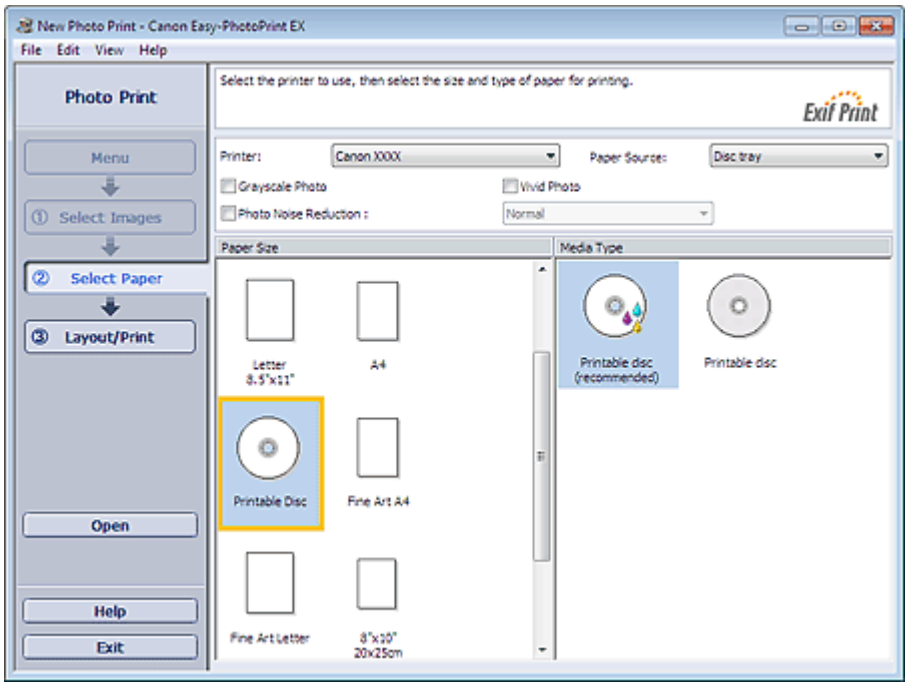
- See "Selecting a Photo " to complete operations in the Select Images screen first.

Important

- Do not set the disc tray until a message prompting you to load a printable disc appears. Loading a printable disc while the machine is operating may damage the machine.

1. Select Printable Disc for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen.

Set the Printer and Media Type according to the printer and printable disc to be used.

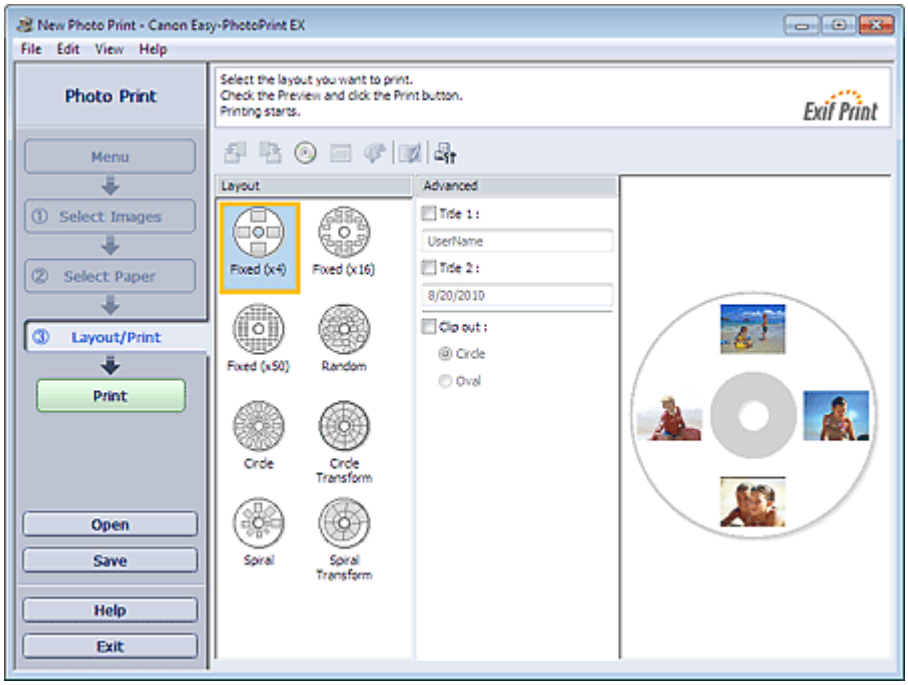


Note

- When Printable Disc is selected for Paper Size, only Disc tray will be selectable for Paper Source.

2. Click Layout/Print.

The Layout/Print screen appears.



3. Select a layout you want to use.

4. Enter the title(s) and specify the details of the layout in Advanced.

Note

- Items that can be set may vary depending on the selected layout.

5. Click Print.

Follow the message to load a printable disc, then start printing.

Printing starts from the top of the image displayed in Preview.

Note

- You can adjust the printing position on the printable disc in the Adjust dialog box. To display the Adjust dialog box, click (Adjust Print Area/Print Position).
- You can specify advanced Photo Print settings (number of copies, print quality, etc.) in the Preferences dialog box. To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

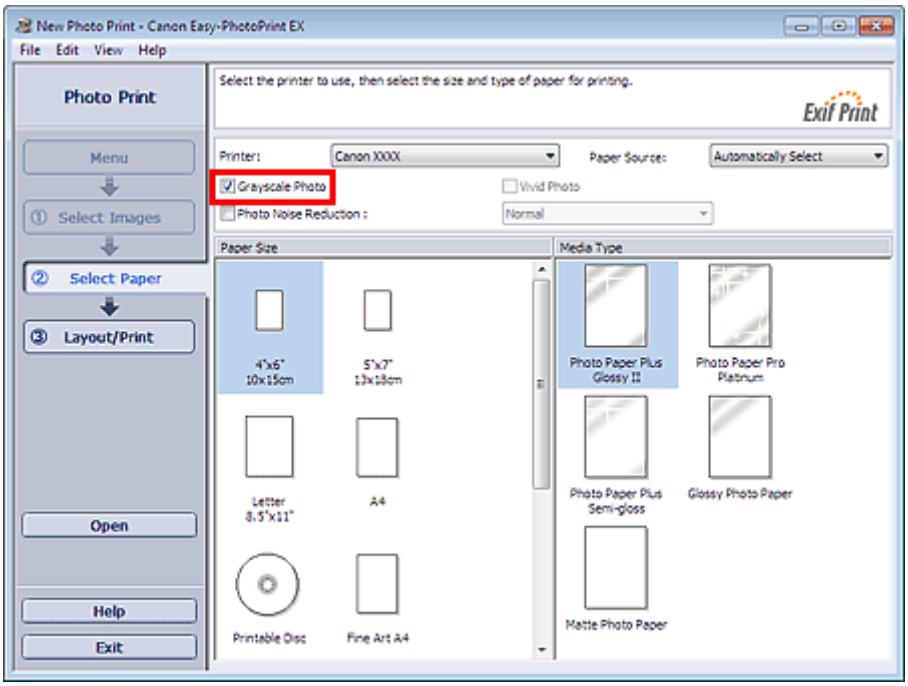
Page top

A094

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

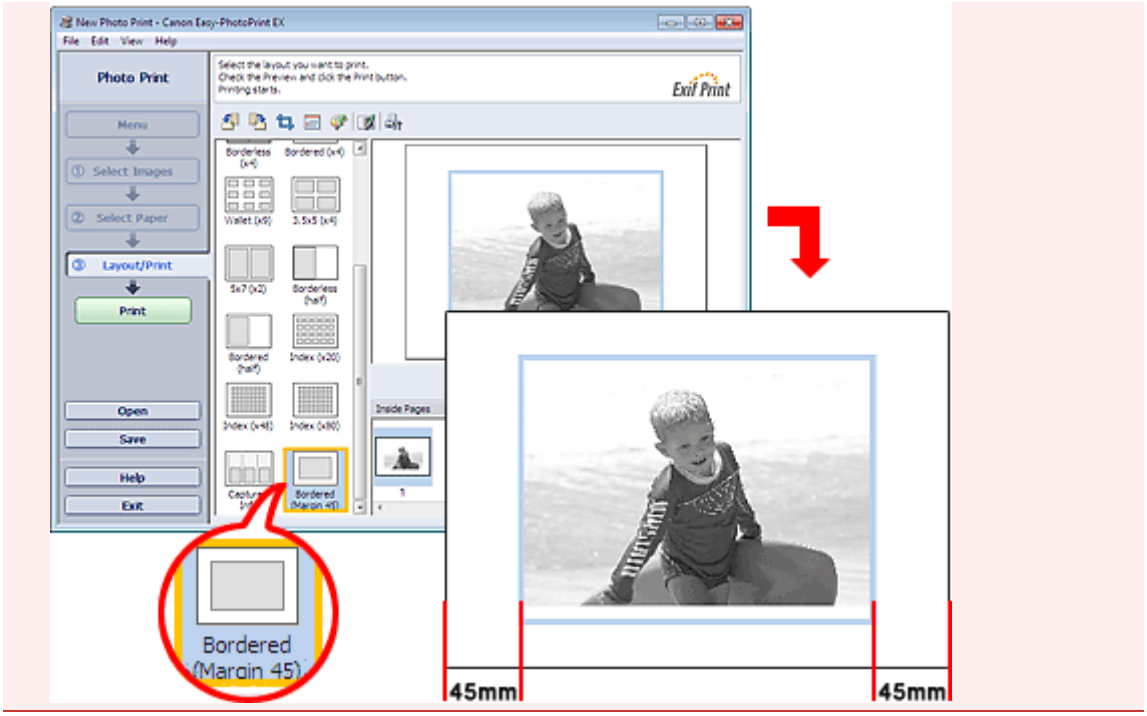
Printing Photos in Grayscale

Select the Grayscale Photo checkbox in the Select Paper screen to print photos in grayscale.



Important

- Vivid Photo is not available when the Grayscale Photo checkbox is selected.
- White streaks may appear at the top and bottom edges of grayscale photos. In that case, print with a 1.77 inches (45 mm) or more margin at the top and bottom edges.
  If you select Bordered (Margin 45) from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen, images will be reduced when printing to allow a 1.77 inches (45 mm) margin at the top and bottom edges relative to the printing direction.



Note

- When the Grayscale Photo checkbox is selected, preview images appear in grayscale in the Layout/Print screen. However, they appear in color in the Correct/Enhance Images window.
- In the Adjust Grayscale window, you can adjust the black color tone of grayscale photos.
  To display the Adjust Grayscale window , select the Grayscale Photo checkbox in the Select Paper screen and click (Adjust Grayscale) in the Layout/Print screen. See Help for details.

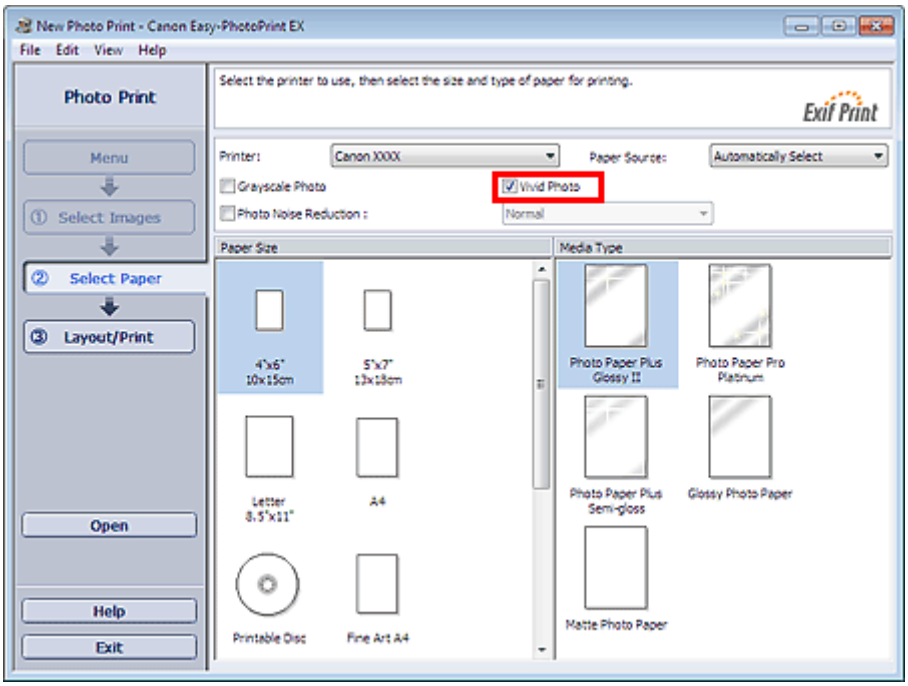
Page top

A071

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Vivid Photos

Select the Vivid Photo checkbox in the Select Paper screen to boost the colors in a photo before printing.



Important

- This function is available only with a printer that supports Vivid Photo.
- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Even if you select the Vivid Photo checkbox, this effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

Page top

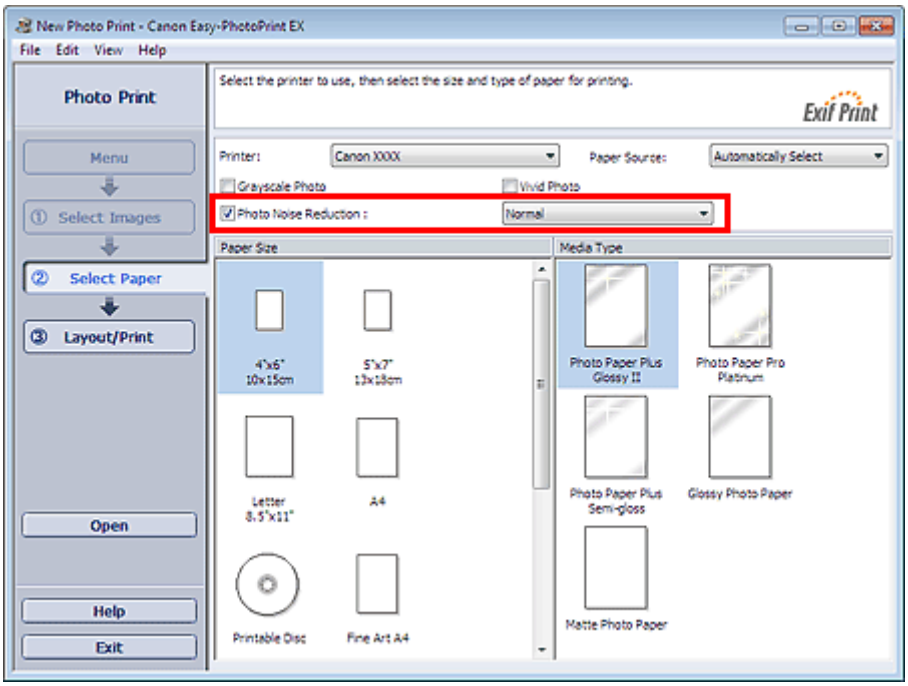
A072

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Reducing Photo Noise

When a photo is taken in a dark location such as night scene using digital camera, noise may appear in the image.

Select the Photo Noise Reduction checkbox in the Select Paper screen to reduce noise in the image and make the printed photos more vivid.



Important

- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- When the noise is severe, change Normal to Strong.
- The noise reduction effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

Page top

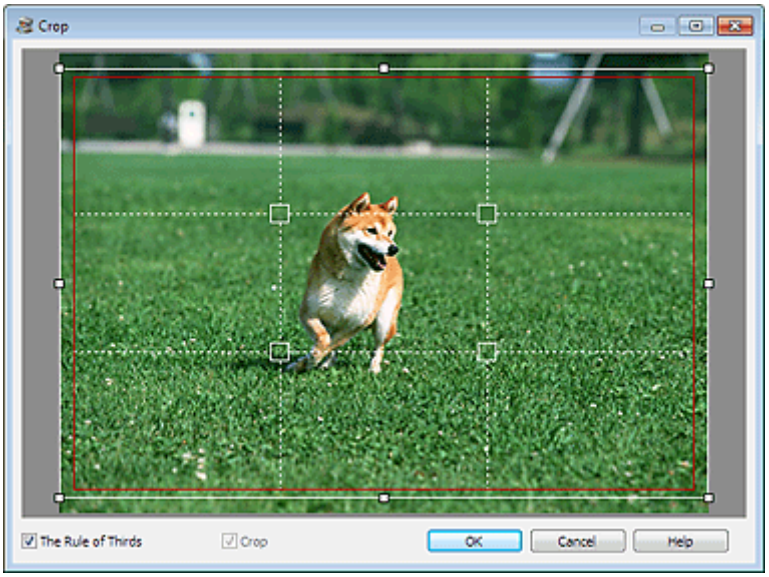
A073

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Cropping a photo is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the photo by selecting the necessary portions.

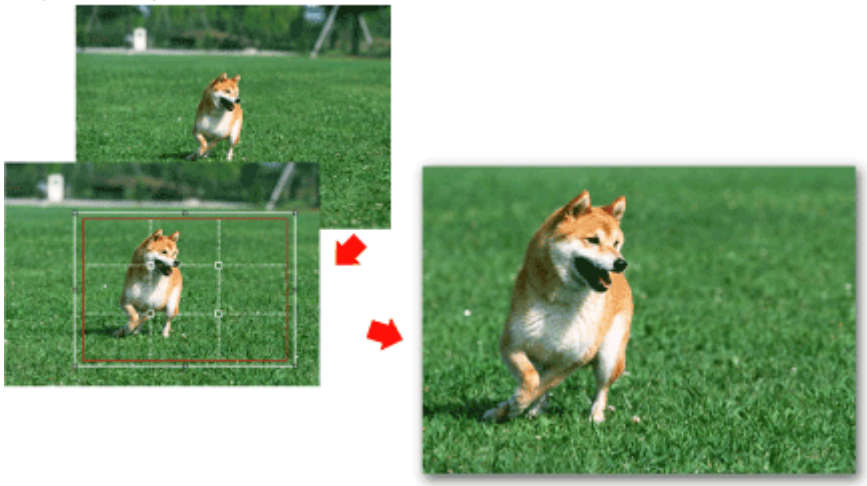
Click (Crop Image) in the Layout/Print screen or double-click the preview image.



Drag the white squares on the image to adjust the area to be cropped and click OK.

Note

- To move the cropping area, place the cursor within the white frame and drag it. Drag the white lines to enlarge/reduce the cropping area.
- Select the The Rule of Thirds checkbox to display white broken lines. To create a balanced composition, drag any of the intersecting points (white squares) or white broken lines over the main subject of the photo.



- The cropping effect applies only to the print result. The original image will not be cropped.
- See Help for details on the Crop window.

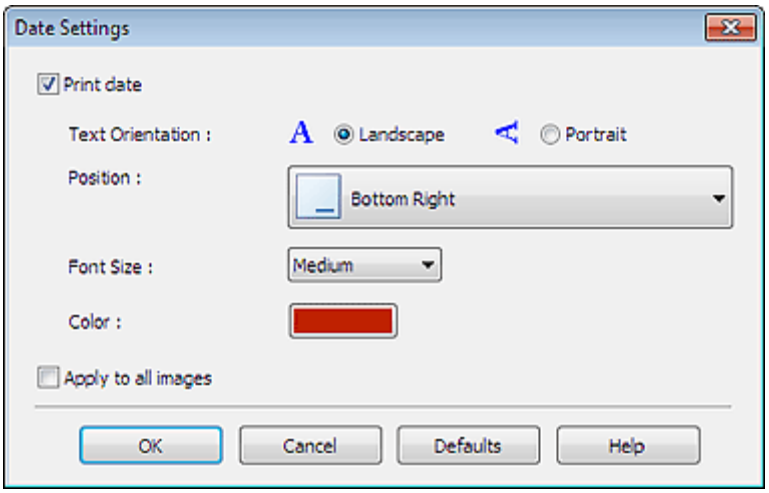
Page top

A074

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

To print the date the photo was taken on the photo, click (Date Settings) in the Layout/Print screen, then select the Print date checkbox in the Date Settings dialog box.



Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

Page top

A076

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

You can print multiple photos on one page by selecting a multiple-photo layout in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- The available number of photos and layout may vary depending on the media type.
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
  Example: Borderless (x4)

1	3
2	4

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Page top

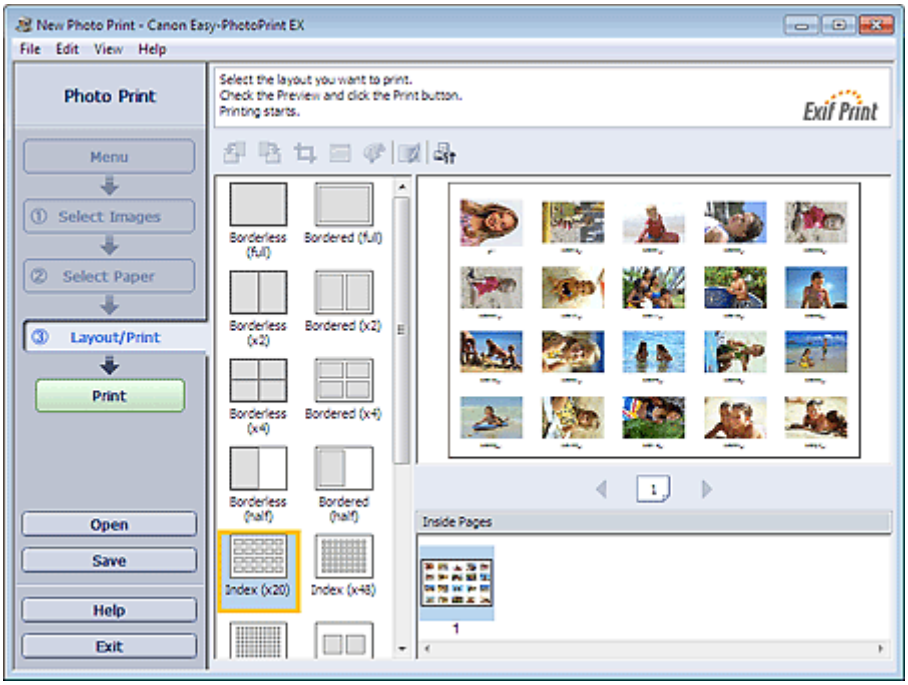
A077

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing an Index

You can print an index of selected photos. An index print shows the thumbnails of the photos in one page. It is convenient for managing your photos.

To print an index, select Index from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Important

- Index cannot be printed if you select any of the following paper sizes.
  - Credit Card
  - Fine Art A4
  - Fine Art Letter
  - Printable Disc
- You can print up to 80 images on one page.

Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
  Example: Index (x20)



- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Page top

A078

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

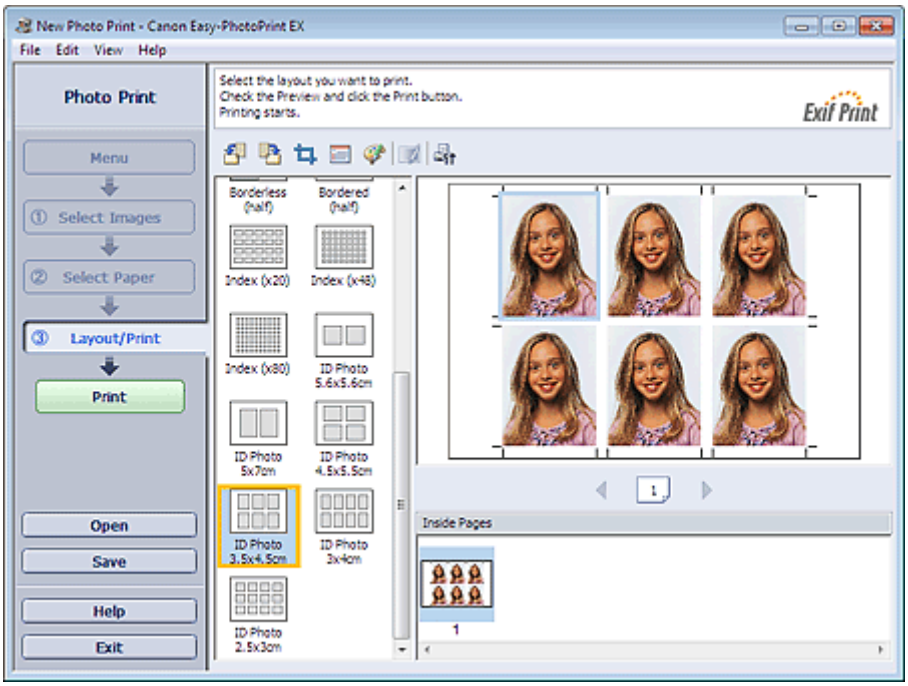
Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

You can print a variety of ID photos.

Important

- The photo may not qualify as an official ID photo depending on its use.
  For details, contact the party to whom you will be submitting the photo.

To print ID photos, select 4"x6" 10x15cm for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select a layout of the ID photo from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- The number of frames per page varies depending on the size of the ID photo to create. Check the number of frames in the layouts displayed in the Layout/Print screen, then specify the number of copies in the Select Images screen.
  You can select two or more images and print different types of ID photos on one page.
- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
  Example: ID Photo 3.5x4.5cm



- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- ID photos can only be printed on 4"x6" 10x15cm paper.

Page top

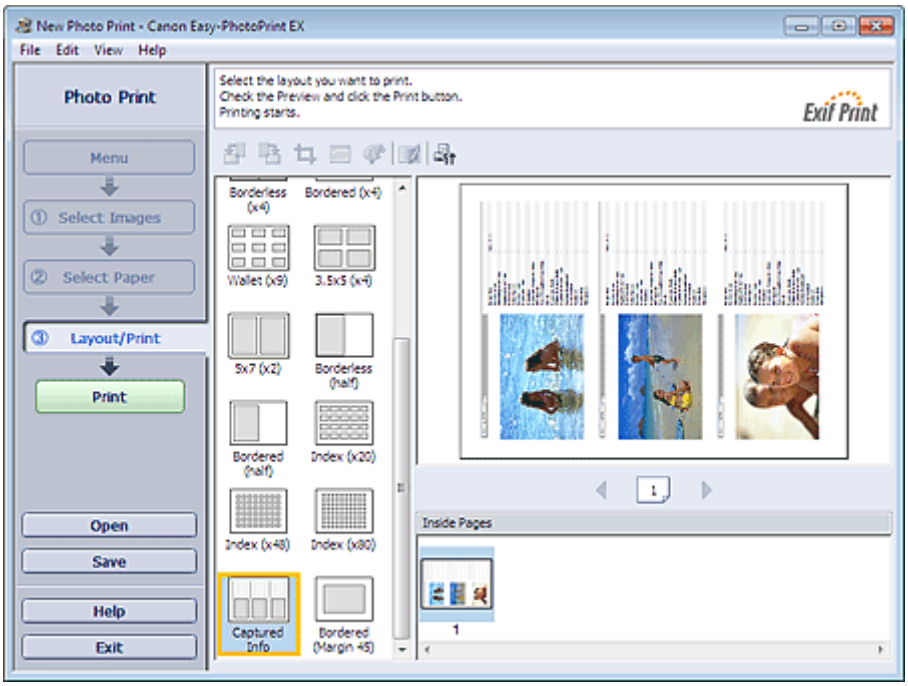
A079

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Photo Information

You can print the photo and the Exif information side by side.

To print them, select Letter 8.5"x11" or A4 for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select Captured Info from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  - Selecting a Photo
- This function is available only on paper sizes Letter 8.5"x11" and A4.

Page top

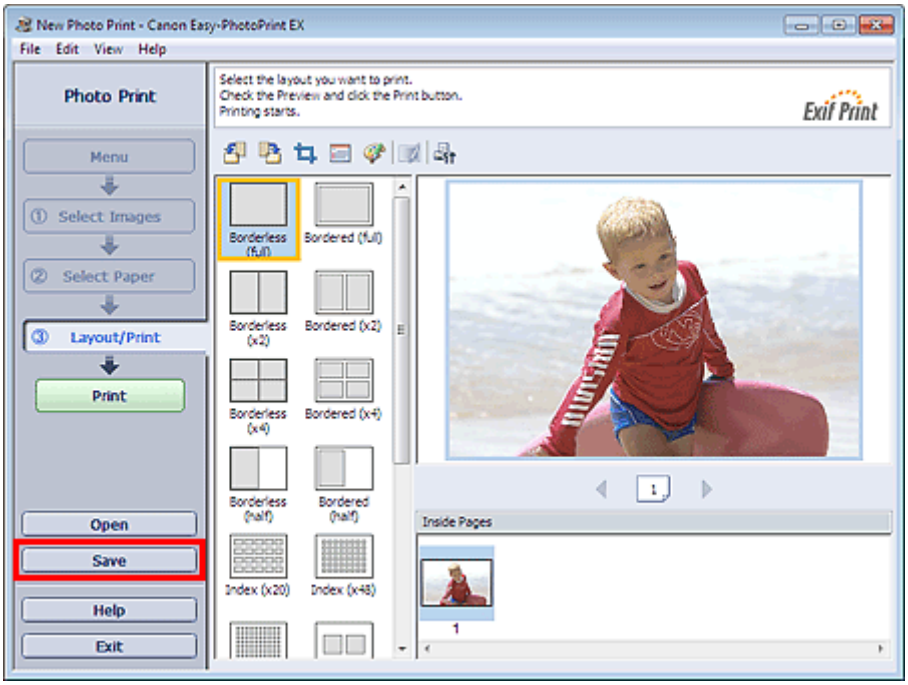
A092

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Saving Photos

You can save edited photos. The information of cropping and layout can be saved.

Click Save in the Layout/Print screen.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
  To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.

Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Select Images or Select Paper screen.

Page top

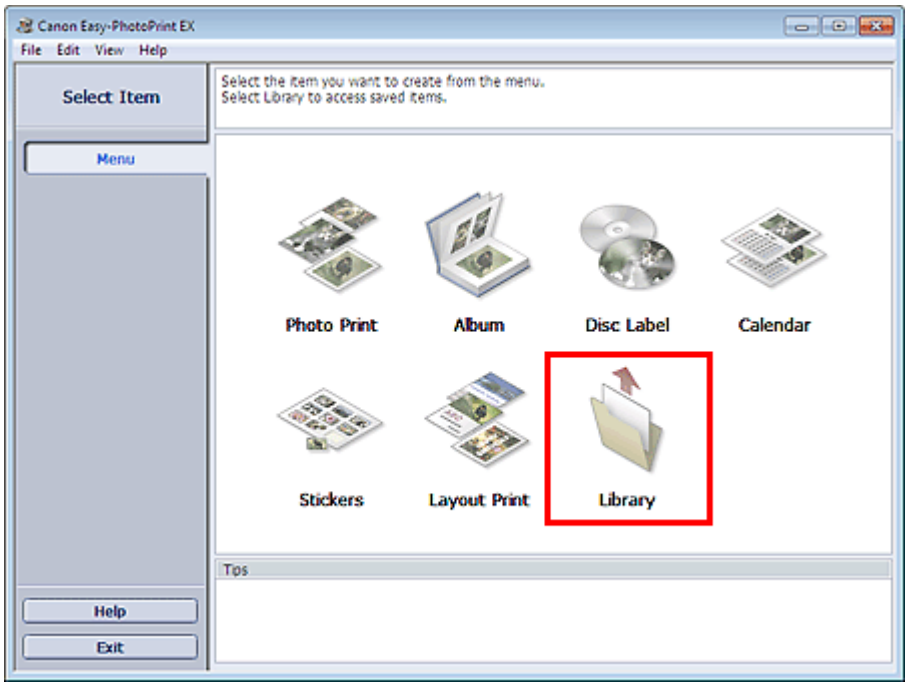
A093

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.
You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX in icon view (only for Windows 7/ Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64-bit editions of Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Layout/Print screen appears.

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file format (extension).
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
- You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
  - Click Open in the step button area of each screen, then select the file you want to edit.
  - Double-click the file.
  - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.
- You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.

Page top

A102

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Other Settings

- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Setting Holidays
- Setting Calendar Display
- Opening Saved Files

Page top

A080

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Changing Layout

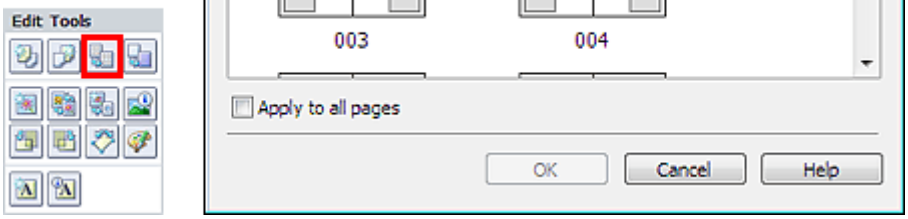
You can change the layout of each page separately.

Important

- For PREMIUM Contents Print, you cannot change the layouts.

Select the page you want to change the layout of in the Edit screen, then click (Change Layout).
Select the layout you want to use in the Change Layout dialog box and click OK.

Album



Important

- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

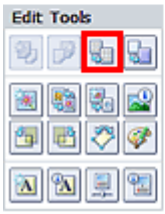
  If the number of layout frames is increased : Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.

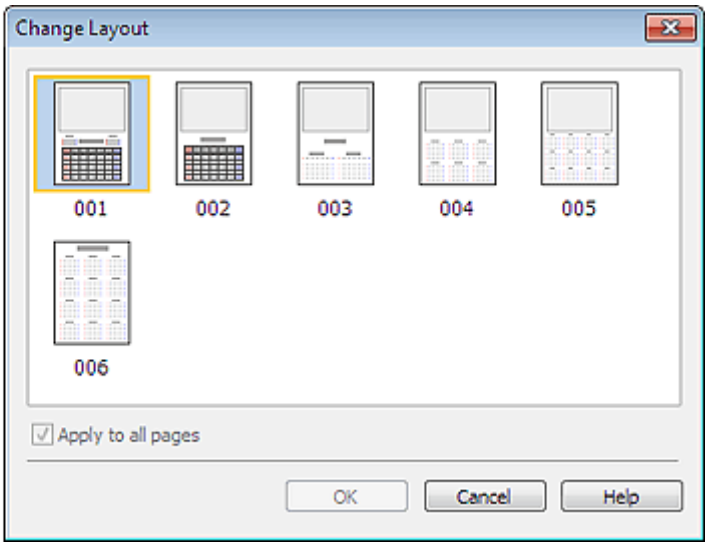
  If the number of layout frames is decreased : Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.
- If you change the current layout for the front or back cover to one that has fewer layout frames, any image that does not fit in the new layout will be deleted, starting with the last image that was added to the former layout page.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Calendar





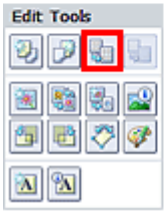
Important

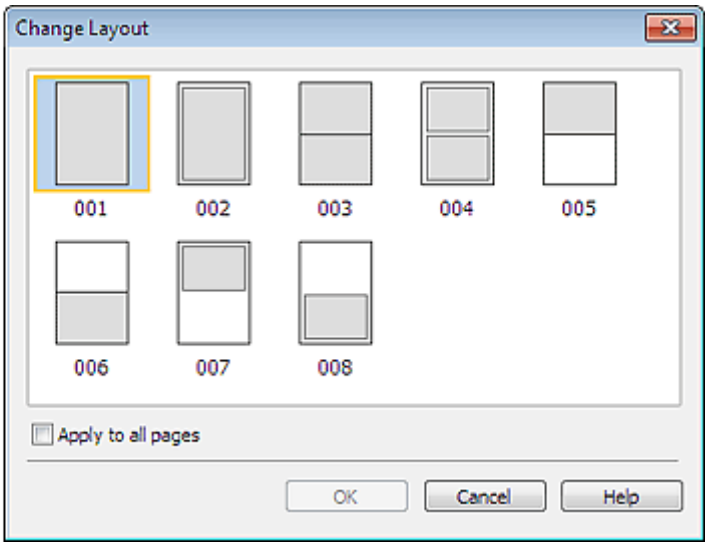
- The layouts of all pages are changed to the selected layout.
- All images that do not fit in the new layout will be collected on the last page.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.

Layout Print





Important

- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

If the number of layout frames is increased	: Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.
If the number of layout frames is decreased	: Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.
- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Page top

A081

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Changing Background

You can change the background of each page.

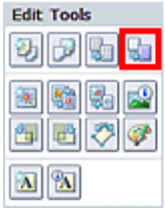
Important

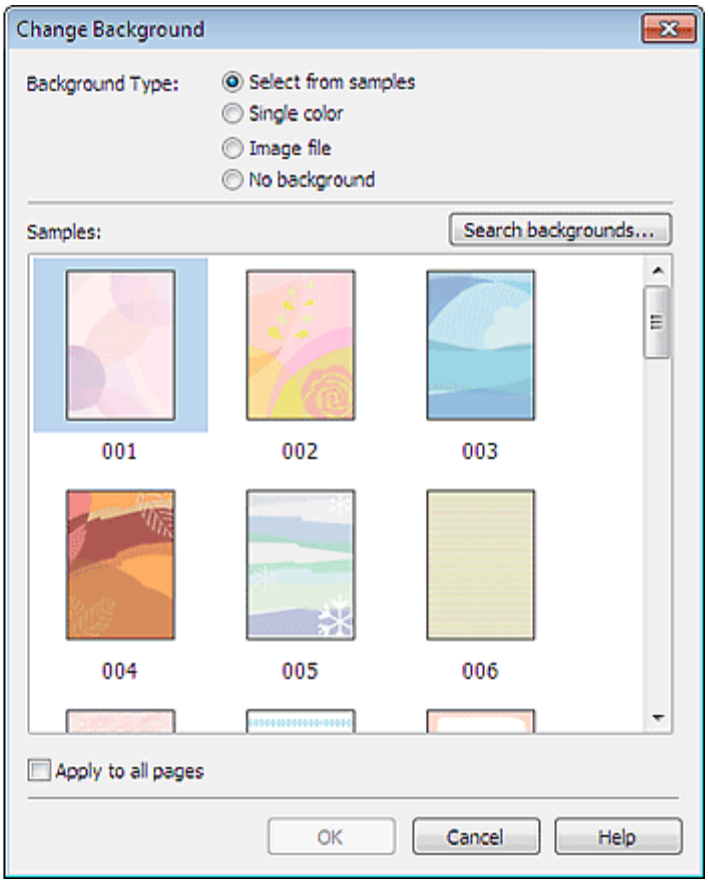
- You cannot change the background of the Stickers, Layout Print and PREMIUM Contents Print.

Click Background... in the Page Setup screen or select the page you want to change the background of in the Edit screen, then click (Change Background).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.





Select the type of background you want to use in the Change Background dialog box.

When Select from samples Is Selected

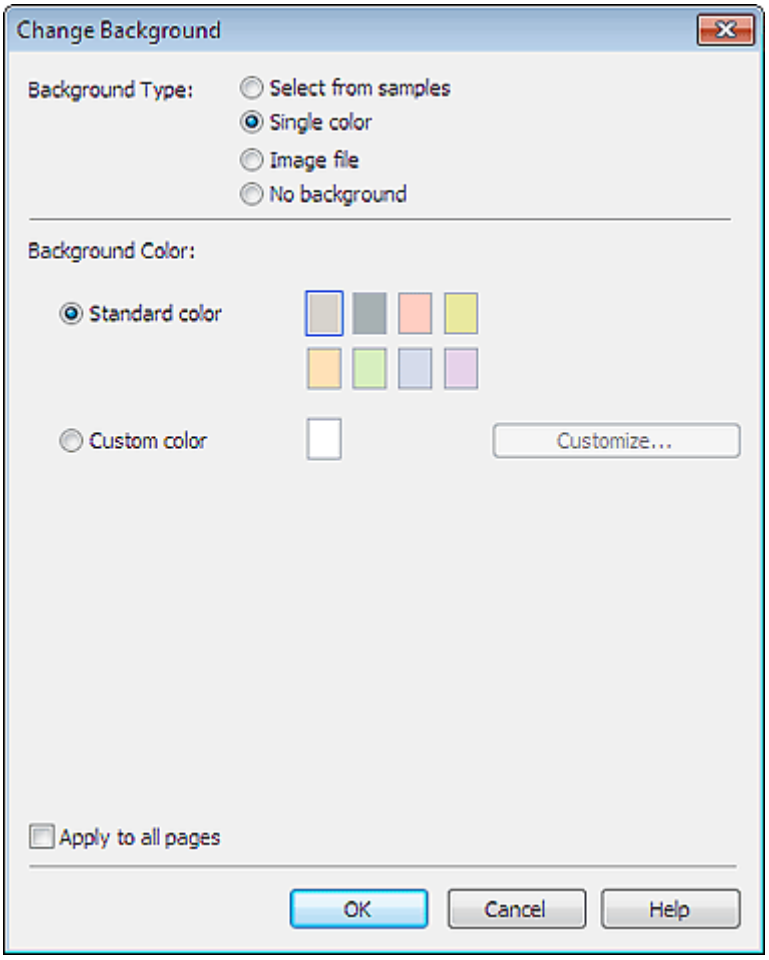
Select the image you want to use from Samples and click OK.

Note

- Select from samples will be displayed only if Album has been selected.
- Various backgrounds are available on our website besides those saved in the application.
  Click Search backgrounds... to access the Canon website from which you can download additional materials for free.
  - Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.
  - Exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX before installing backgrounds.

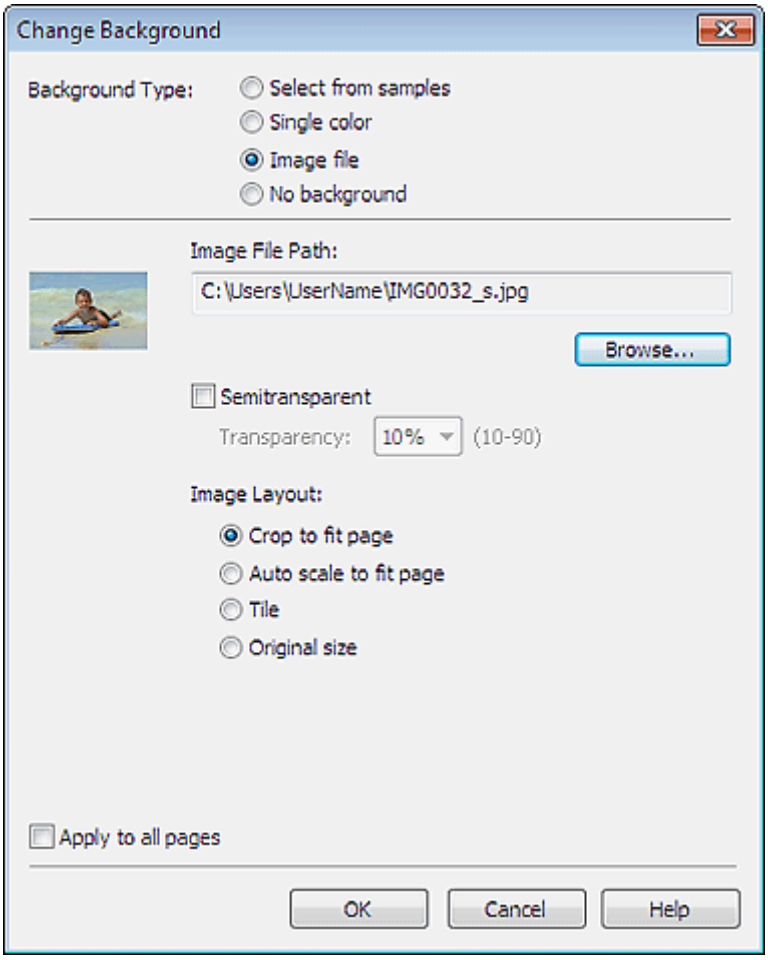
When Single color Is Selected

Select the color you want to use from Standard color or Custom color and click OK.



When Image file Is Selected

Set Image File Path and Image Layout, then click OK.



Note

- See Help for details on how to set the background in the Change Background dialog box.

Page top

A082

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

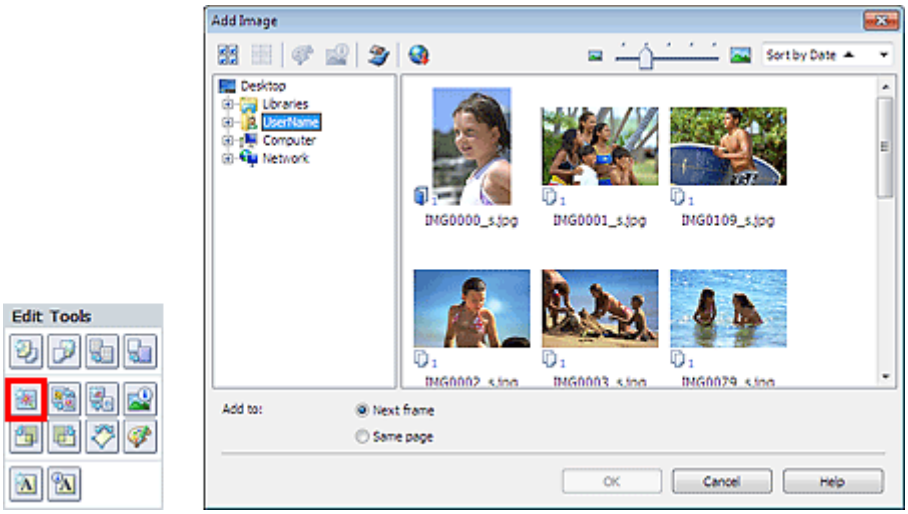
Adding Photos

You can add images to pages.

Select the page you want to add photos to in the Edit screen, then click (Add Image).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the folder containing the image you want to add from the folder tree area on the left of the Add Image dialog box, and select the image you want to add from the thumbnail window on the right.

Note

- Click an image to select it (background turns blue) or deselect it (background turns white). You can also select multiple images.
- You can also use still images captured from videos.
  Creating Still Images from Videos
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
  Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, View appears depending on the selected content. You can set to select images from PREMIUM Contents Images or Local Images.
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, the folder tree area is not displayed when Local Images are not available for the selected content.

Select an option for Add to and click OK.

Important

- You can add up to 20 images at one time.
- You cannot add two or more of the same image at one time. Add it one at a time.
- Up to 99 of the same images can be added to all pages combined.
- When the number of pages increases due to added images, you cannot add images beyond page 400.
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, images cannot be added when there is no unused layout frame in the selected layout.

Note

- In the Add Image dialog box, you can select all images at one time or change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

Page top

A083

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

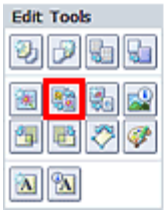
Swapping Positions of Photos

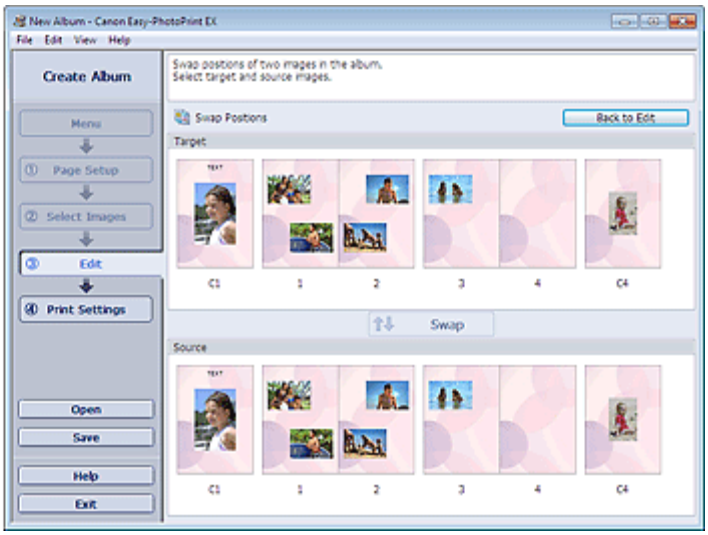
You can swap the positions of images.

Click  (Swap Image Positions) in the Edit screen.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.





Select the target and source images you want to swap, then click Swap.

When you finish swapping all images you want to swap, click Back to Edit.

Page top

A084

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

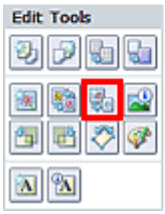
Replacing Photos

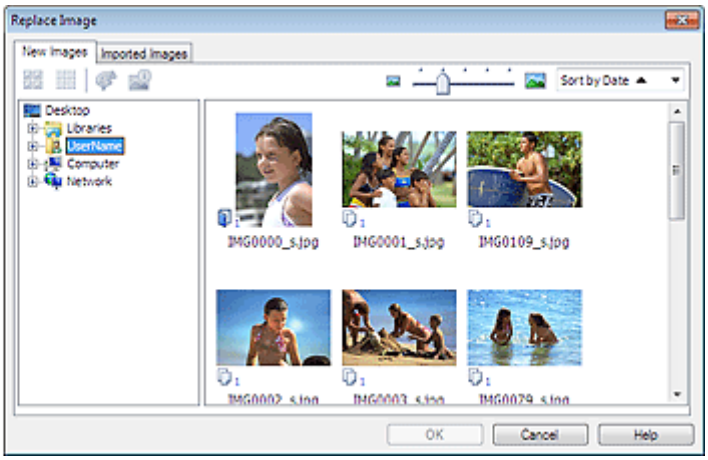
You can replace an image with another image.

Select the image you want to replace in the Edit screen, then click (Replace Selected Image).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.





Select the folder containing the image you want to replace with from the folder tree area on the left of the Replace Image dialog box. Select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window on the right of the screen and click OK.

If you want to select from the images already imported, click the Imported Images tab and select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window and click OK.

Important

- You cannot select multiple images in the Replace Image dialog box.

Note

- If you select multiple images in the Edit screen and use the replacement function, all the images selected in the Edit screen will be replaced with the image selected in the Replace Image dialog box.
- When images are replaced, the following settings of the old image are inherited to the new image.
  - Position
  - Size
  - Frame
  - Position and size of the date

  The cropping information and image orientation are not inherited.
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, View appears depending on the selected content. You can set to select images from PREMIUM Contents Images or Local Images.
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, the folder tree area is not displayed when Local Images are not available for the selected content.
- In the Replace Image dialog box, you can change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

Page top

A085

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

You can adjust the position, angle and size of images.

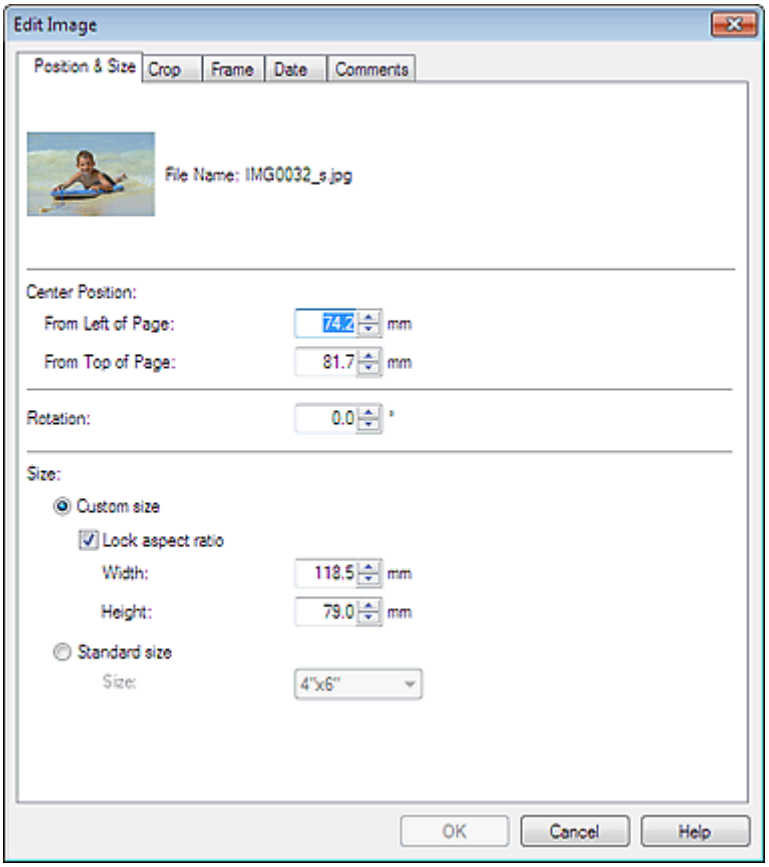
Important

- For PREMIUM Contents Print using premium content images, this function may not be available depending on the selected image.

Select the image of which you want to change the position or size in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Set the Center Position, Rotation and Size, then click OK.

Note

- You can also change the position and size of an image by dragging it in the Edit screen.
- Select an image in the Edit screen, then click (Free Rotate) and drag a corner of the image to rotate it.

- For PREMIUM Contents Print, you cannot use  (Free Rotate).
- See Help for details on the position and size of images.

Page top

A086

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Cropping Photos

Cropping an image is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the image by selecting the necessary portions.

Important

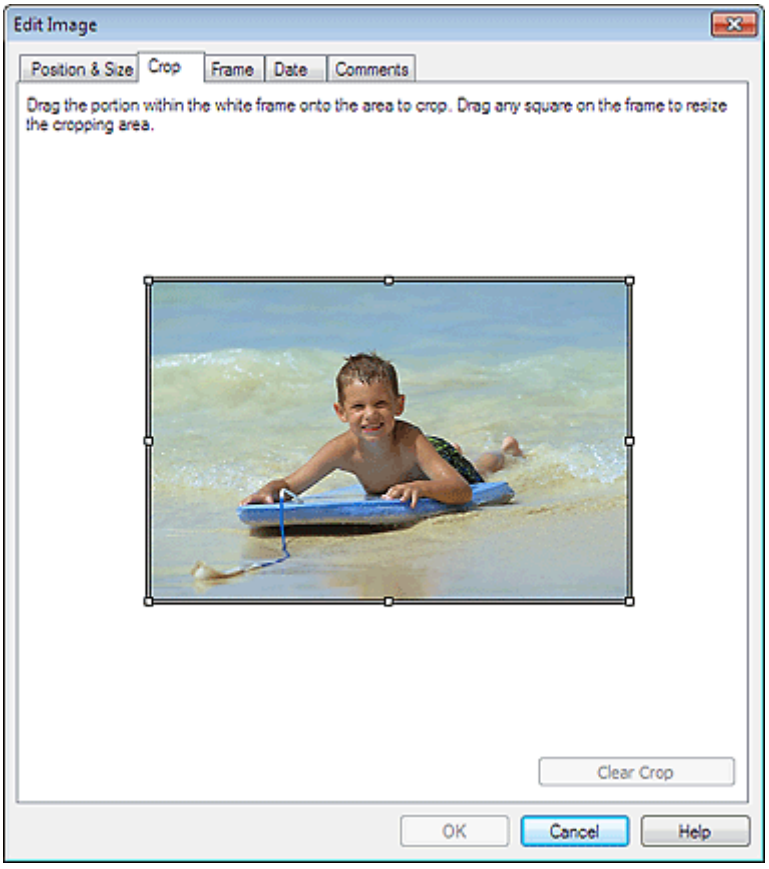
- For PREMIUM Contents Print using premium content images, this function may not be available depending on the selected image.

Select the image you want to crop in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Crop tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Drag the white squares on the image to adjust the area to be cropped and click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on cropping.

Page top

A087

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Framing Photos

You can add frames to images.

Important

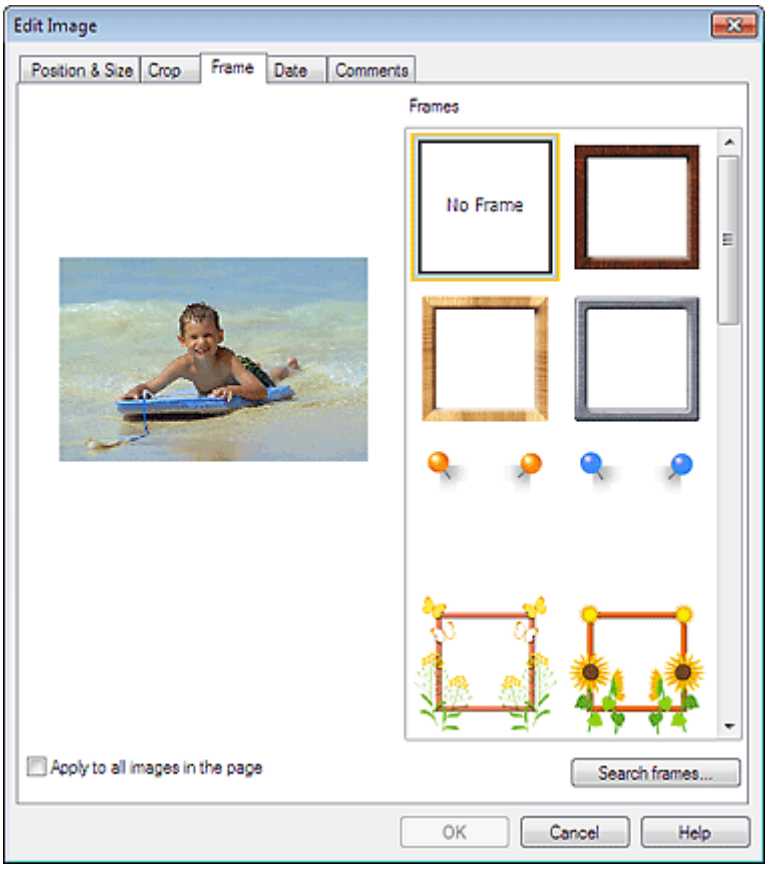
- You cannot add frames to images in Stickers, Layout Print and PREMIUM Contents Print.

Select the image you want to frame in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Frame tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the frame you want to use from Frames and click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed photos.

Note

- Select the Apply to all images in the page checkbox to add the same frame to all the images on a selected page at one time.
- Various frames are available on our website besides those saved in the application.
  Click Search frames... to access the Canon website from which you can download additional materials for free.
  - Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.
  - Exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX before installing frames.
  - Search frames... will be displayed only if Album has been selected.
- See Help for details on frames.

Page top

A088

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Dates on Photos

You can print dates on images.

Important

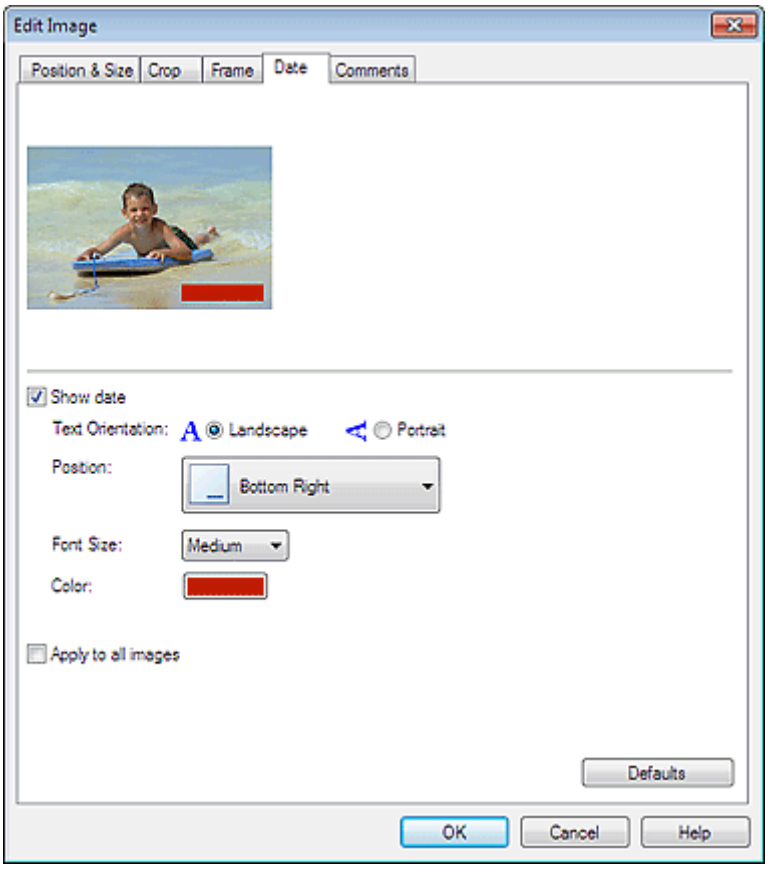
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, you cannot print dates.

Select the image you want to print the date on in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Date tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Show date checkbox.

Set the Text Orientation, Position, Font Size and Color, then click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed images.

Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

Page top

A089

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Attaching Comments to Photos

You can attach comments to images and display them in your album. The photo name, shooting date and comments are displayed (from top to bottom) in a comment box.



Important

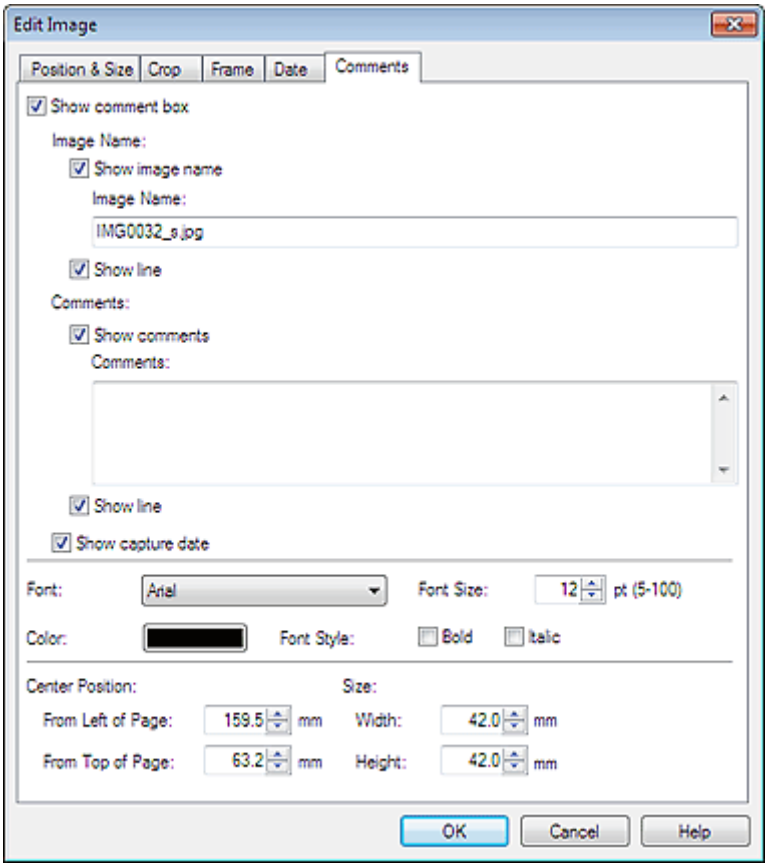
- You cannot attach comments to Calendar, Stickers, Layout Print and PREMIUM Contents Print.

Select the image you want to attach comments to in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Comments tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Show comment box checkbox.

Select the checkboxes of the items you want to display, and enter comments.

Set the size and color of font, and position of the comments, etc., then click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on comments.

Page top

A090

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Adding Text to Photos

You can add text to photos.

Important

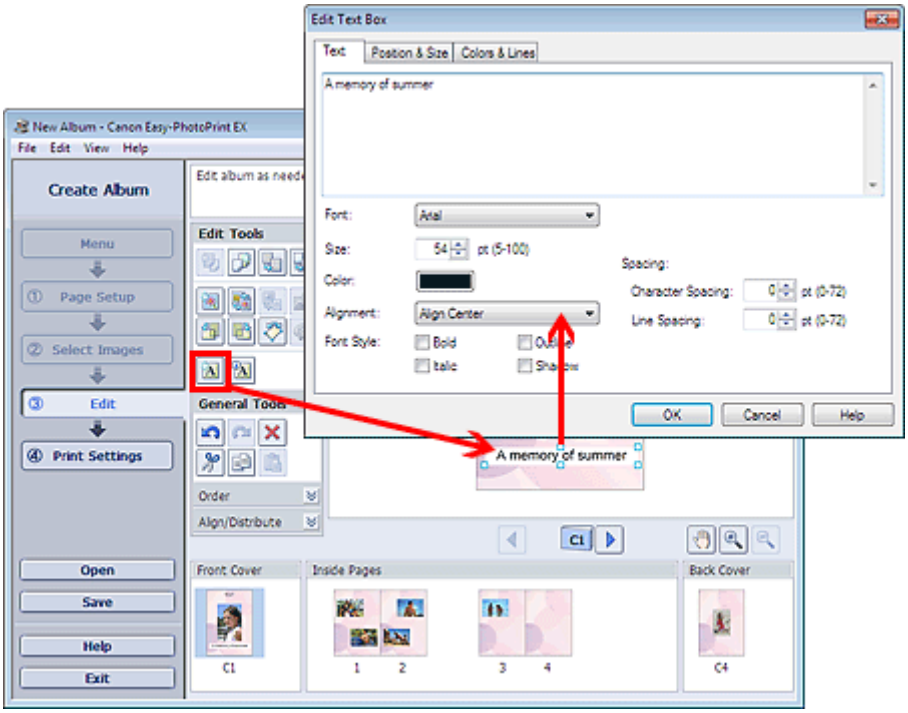
- For PREMIUM Contents Print, you cannot enter text in the following cases.
  - There is no text box in the selected layout.
  - (Add Text) is disabled.

Click (Add Text) in the Edit screen and drag the mouse over the area in which you want to add text.

For PREMIUM Contents Print, if you want to enter text in a preset text box, select it and click (Edit Text Box).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Text tab in the Edit Text Box dialog box and enter text, then click OK.

Note

- In the Edit Text Box dialog box, you can change the position, angle and size of the text. You can also set the color and line of the text box. See Help for details.
- To change the entered text, select the text box and click (Edit Text Box). The Edit Text Box dialog box appears. You can change the text.

Page top

A091

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

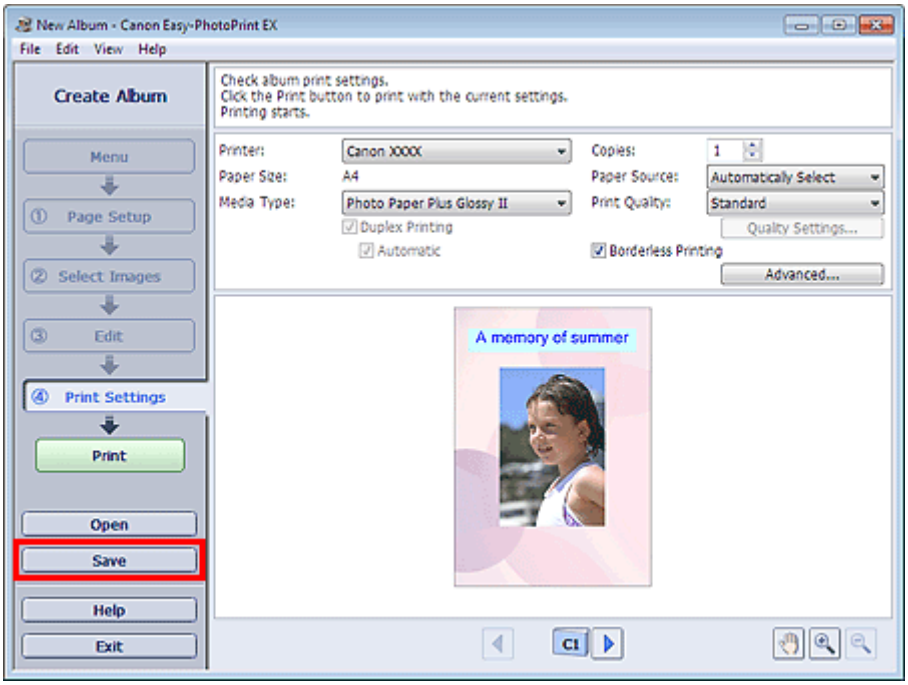
Saving

You can save edited items.

Click Save in the Edit or Print Settings screen.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
  To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.

Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Page Setup or Select Images screen.

Page top

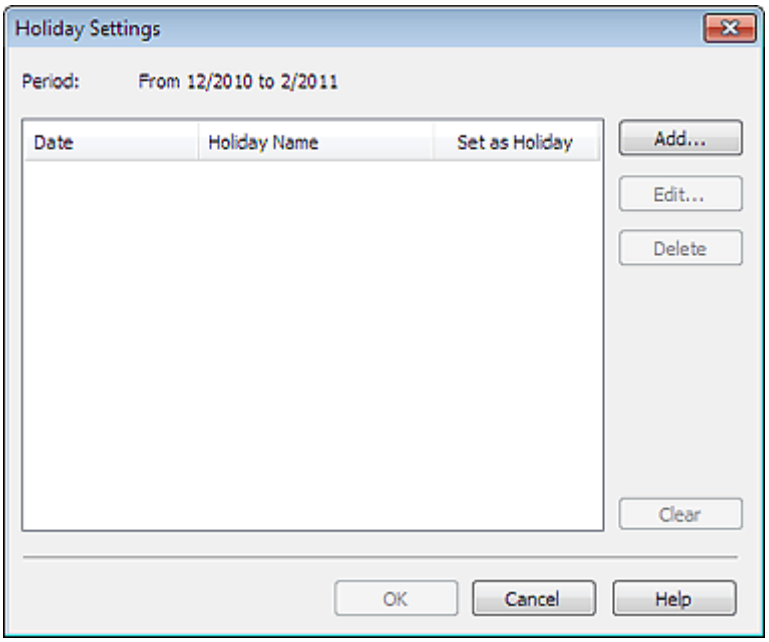
A099

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Setting Holidays

You can add holidays to your calendar.

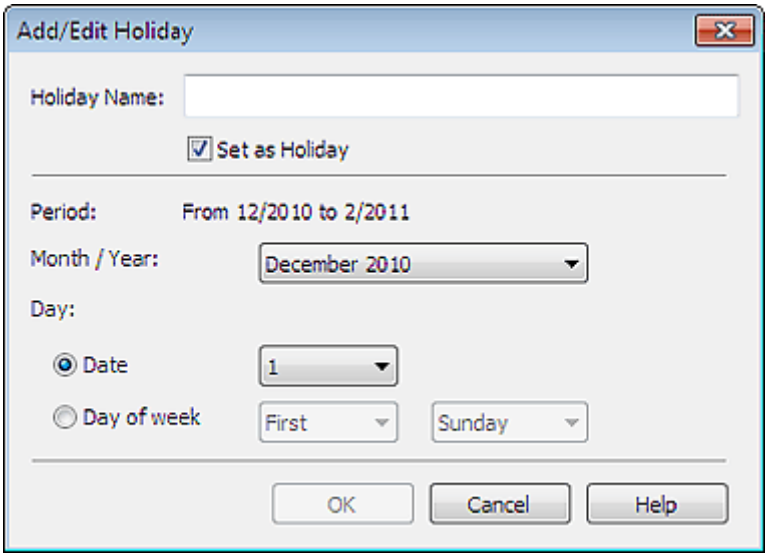
Click Set Holidays... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or click (Setup Period/Holiday) in the Edit screen and click Set Holidays... in the Calendar General Settings dialog box to display the Holiday Settings dialog box.



To add a holiday, click Add.... The Add/Edit Holiday dialog box appears. To edit a saved holiday, select it and click Edit....

To delete a holiday, select it and click Delete. To delete all the saved holidays within your calendar period, click Clear.

In the Add/Edit Holiday dialog box that appears by clicking Add... or Edit..., you can specify the name and date of the holiday.



Enter the name in Holiday Name and specify the date.

Select the Set as Holiday checkbox to display that day as a holiday in your calendar.

Note

- See Help for details on each dialog box.

Page top

A100

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

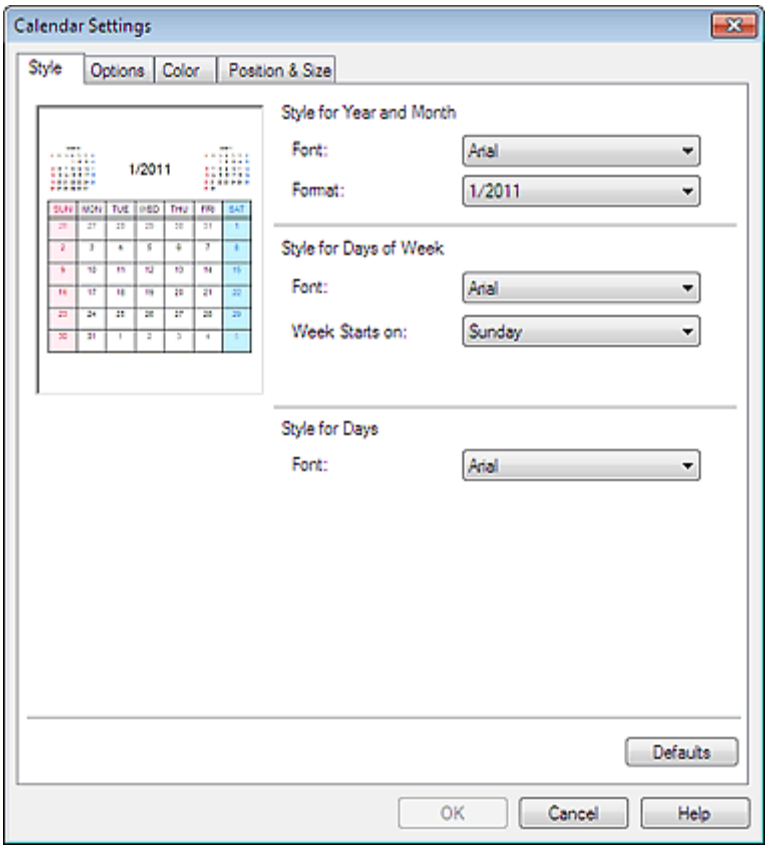
Setting Calendar Display

You can customize the calendar display (fonts, lines, colors, position, size, etc.).

Click Settings... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or select a calendar in the Edit screen and click (Setup Calendar) to display the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Important

- The Position & Size tab is displayed only when the Calendar Settings dialog box is displayed from the Edit screen.



Note

- See Help for details on the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Page top

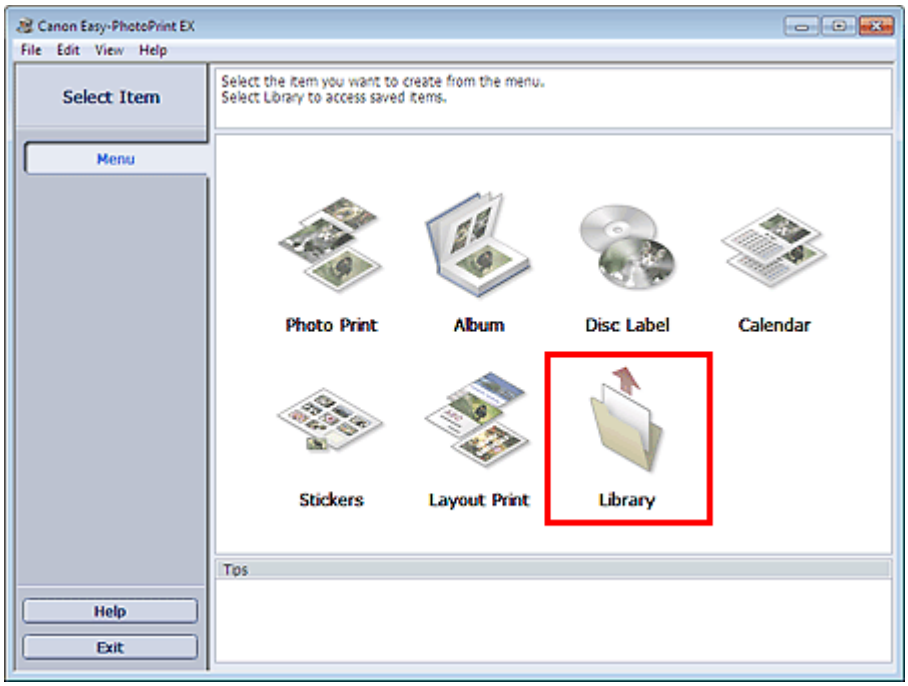
A103

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.
You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX in icon view (only for Windows 7/ Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64-bit editions of Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Edit screen appears.

Important

- Files saved from PREMIUM Contents Print cannot be opened from Library.

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- See the following sections for details on the editing procedures.
  - Editing Album
  - Editing Calendar
  - Editing Stickers

Editing Layout Print

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file formats (extensions).
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX PREMIUM Contents file (.el7)
  - CD-LabelPrint data (.cld)
- You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
  - Click Open in the step button area of each screen, then select the file you want to edit.
  - Double-click the file.
  - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.
- You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.

Page top

A500

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

What Is Easy-PhotoPrint Pro?

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro is a plug-in for Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements and Digital Photo Professional, an application to process RAW image for Canon digital cameras. Easy-PhotoPrint Pro allows you to print photos easily in various styles, including borderless full-page, index, grayscale, and Adobe RGB mode.



Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro supports Adobe Photoshop CS, Photoshop CS2, Photoshop CS3, Photoshop CS4, Adobe Photoshop Elements 6, Adobe Photoshop Elements 7, Adobe Photoshop Elements 8 and Digital Photo Professional Ver.2.1 or later only.
  For updated compatibility, visit our website.
- If a printer that supports Easy-PhotoPrint Pro is not installed, you cannot start Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.
- Although compatibility with Windows 7, Windows Vista and Windows XP has been confirmed, Easy-PhotoPrint Pro does not support the Fast User Switching feature of Windows 7, Windows Vista and Windows XP. It is recommended that you exit Easy-PhotoPrint Pro before using Fast User Switching.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint Pro does not appear in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements's menu even after installing Easy-PhotoPrint Pro, follow these steps to install the Photoshop Plug-In.
  1. Exit Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.
  2. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint Pro > Photoshop Plug-In Installer.
  3. Follow the on-screen instructions to install.

Note

- See Help of Easy-PhotoPrint Pro for descriptions of Easy-PhotoPrint Pro screens.
  Click Help in a dialog box, or select Help Topics from the Help menu. Help appears.
- In Windows 7 and Windows Vista, using the XPS printer driver enables you to print in the High Dynamic Range (full 16-bit workflow).
  See "XPS Printer Driver " for details on the XPS printer driver.

Supported Data Formats

- One color (8 or 16 bits) per pixel RGB data formats supported by Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements
- One color (8 or 16 bits) per pixel RGB data formats supported by Digital Photo Professional

General Note

- The color tone of the image displayed on the display is different from the print result.

Page top

A501

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

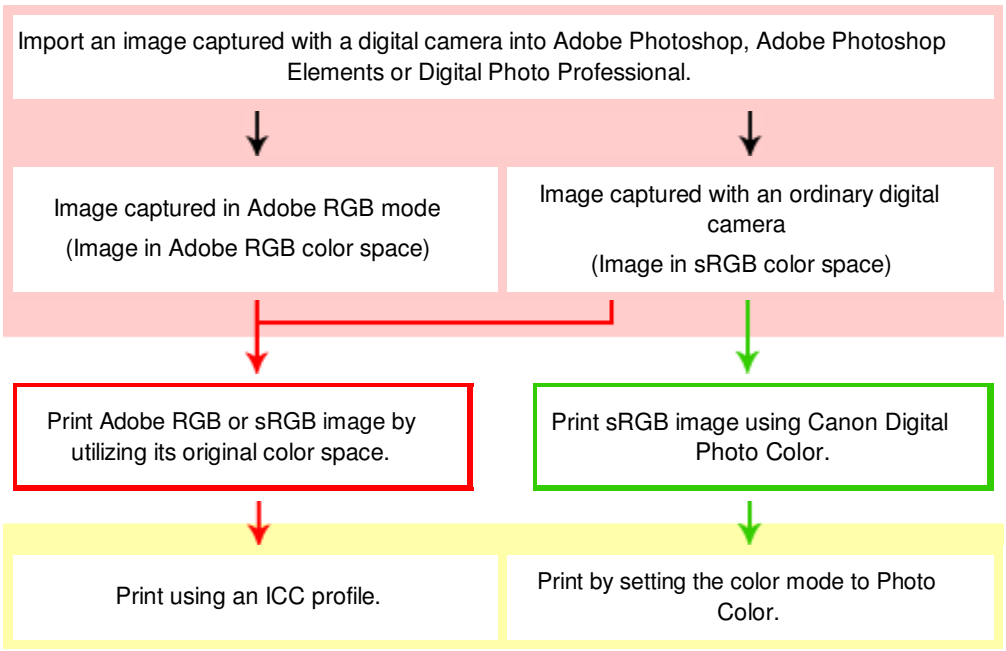
Printing Beautiful Photos

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro allows you to print images captured in Adobe RGB or sRGB mode, in colors that are close to their original colors by using ICC profiles. You can also print sRGB images with Canon's unique color tones (Canon Digital Photo Color).

By applying the suitable printing method, you can produce photos that meet your expectations.

The diagram below shows the flow of digital imaging from importing captured photo into Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements or Digital Photo Professional to printing.

Operation varies depending on the purpose. Check the operational flow in the following diagram.



: Operations with Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements or Digital Photo Professional

: Operations with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Detailed Operations

: Printing an Adobe RGB or sRGB image by utilizing its original color space

➡ Printing with ICC Profiles (Adobe RGB, sRGB)

: Printing an sRGB image using Canon Digital Photo Color

➡ Printing with Canon's Unique Color Tones

Color Management Terms

- **What is an ICC Profile?**

  ICC profile is a data file that describes the color reproduction characteristics of individual devices to match the colors between input devices (digital cameras and scanners) and output devices (displays and printers).

- **What is Adobe RGB?**

  Adobe RGB is a color space (which defines the range of colors) that is larger than sRGB. In printing, Adobe RGB can represent the range of colors between green and cyan that cannot be represented

by sRGB.

- **What is sRGB?**

  sRGB is an international standard color space, developed for the purpose of unifying the colors of input devices and output devices.

- **What is Canon Digital Photo Color?**

  Canon Digital Photo Color is Canon's unique image processing technology. This technology allows you to print images in popular, beautiful color tones by producing high contrast with sharp, three-dimensional feel while reproducing the genuine colors of the original image.

Page top

A502

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing with ICC Profiles (Adobe RGB, sRGB)

By specifying an ICC profile, you can print an image captured in Adobe RGB or sRGB mode by utilizing its original color space, or print in colors that are close to those corrected with Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements or Digital Photo Professional.

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro supports ICC profile Ver.2.0.0 to 2.4.0. Other versions of ICC profiles cannot be used.

1. Start Easy-PhotoPrint Pro and select the photo you want to print.

   The photo appears in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

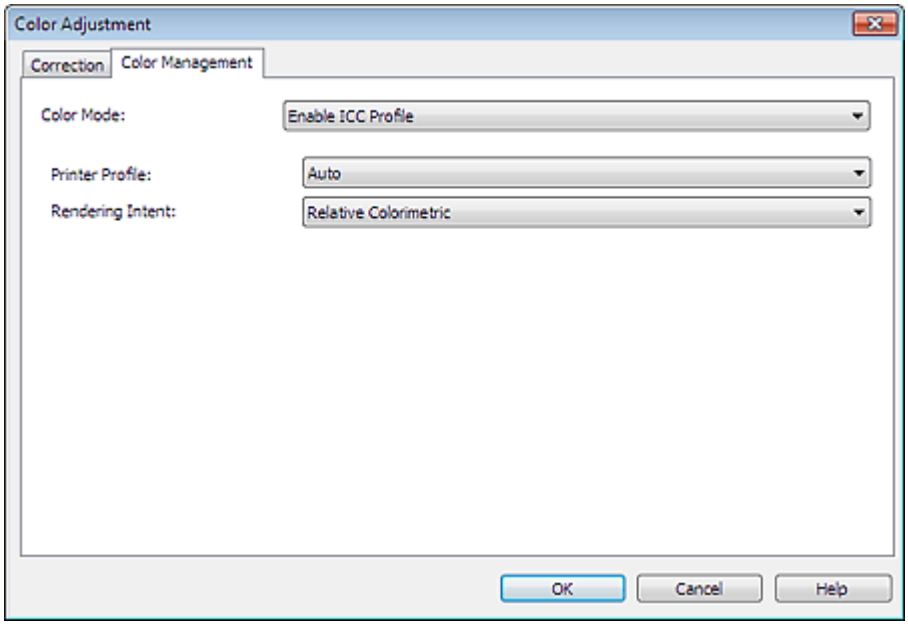
   Note

   - See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

2. In the Printer Settings window, click Color Adjustment....

   The Color Adjustment dialog box appears.

3. Click the Color Management tab.



4. Select Enable ICC Profile for Color Mode.

5. Select Auto for Printer Profile.

   Note

   - For Auto, the most suitable profile is selected automatically based on the selected printer, paper and print quality.

- You can also select a specific ICC profile.

6. Select the desired matching method from Rendering Intent.

Note

- Relative Colorimetric: Converts the image to the printer color space in a way that the source colors within the color gamut of the target space are reproduced to the nearest level. Select this when you want to print in colors that are close to the original image.
- Perceptual: Reproduces the image focusing on the use of popular color tones. Select this when you want to print the photo.

7. Click OK.

8. Click Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

9. Click OK.

Note

- You can also change the color balance, brightness and contrast of the image.
  - Adjusting the Color Balance
  - Adjusting Brightness/Contrast

Page top

A504

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing with Canon's Unique Color Tones

You can print sRGB images using Canon Digital Photo Color.

Note

- Canon Digital Photo Color is Canon's unique image processing technology.
  This technology allows you to print images in popular, beautiful color tones by producing high contrast with sharp, three-dimensional feel while reproducing the genuine colors of the original image.

1. Start Easy-PhotoPrint Pro and select the photo you want to print.

The photo appears in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

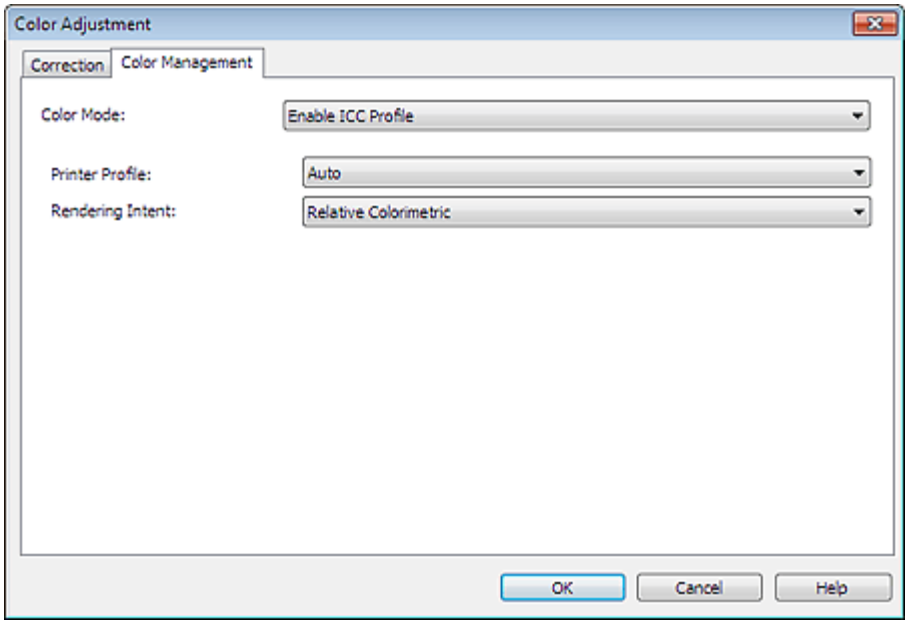
Note

- See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

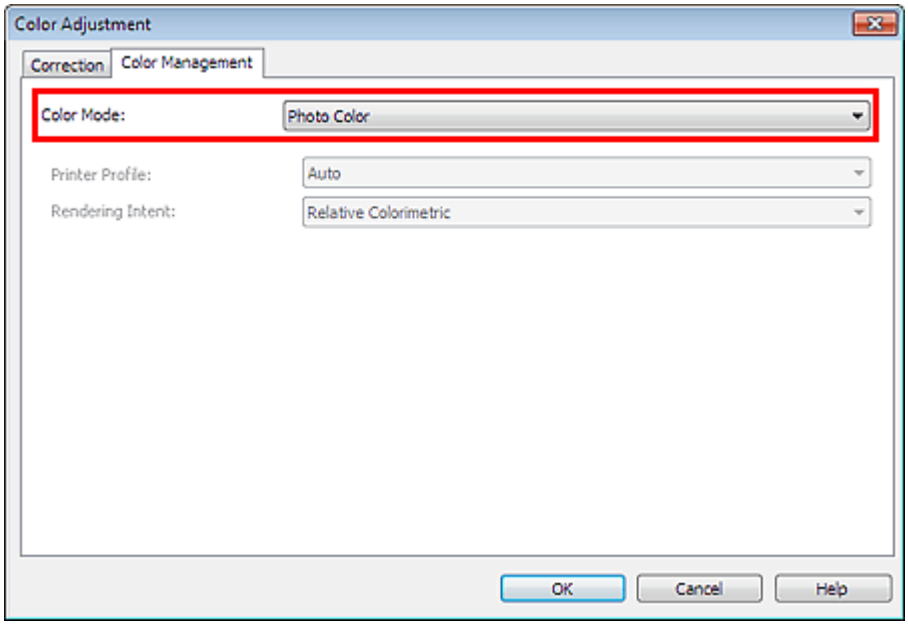
2. In the Printer Settings window, click Color Adjustment....

The Color Adjustment dialog box appears.

3. Click the Color Management tab.



4. Select Photo Color for Color Mode.



5. Click OK.

6. Click Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

7. Click OK.

Note

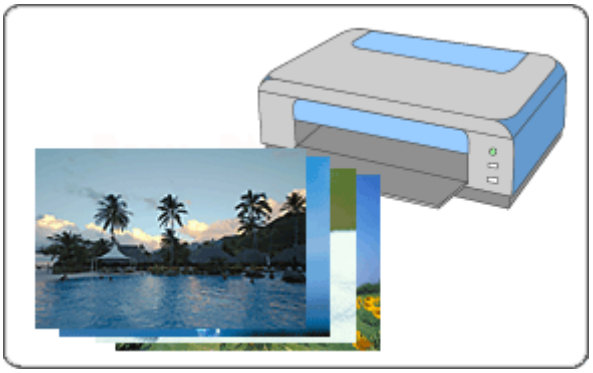
- You can also change the color balance, brightness and contrast of the image.
  - Adjusting the Color Balance
  - Adjusting Brightness/Contrast

Page top

A510

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Let's Start Printing with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint Pro
2. Selecting a Photo
3. Selecting the Paper and Layout
4. Printing

Adjust the Colors of Photo

- Printing Photos in Grayscale
- Adjusting the Color Balance
- Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns
- Adjusting Brightness/Contrast
- Adjusting Brightness/Contrast Using Sample Patterns

Try This

- Printing Borderless Photos
- Printing an Index
- Printing Contact Sheets
- Printing Advanced Information
- Cropping Photos
- Printing with Adjusted Print Size
- Saving Print Settings

Page top

A511

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro can be started from Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements or Digital Photo Professional.

Starting from Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements

1. From the File menu of Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements, select Automate > Canon Easy-PhotoPrint Pro....

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro starts.



Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro cannot be started when no image is displayed in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint Pro does not appear in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements's menu even after installing Easy-PhotoPrint Pro, follow these steps to install the Photoshop Plug-In.
  1. Exit Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.
  2. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint Pro > Photoshop Plug-In Installer.
  3. Follow the on-screen instructions to install.
- If you create or edit an image in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements using the layer function, the image may not be displayed in Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.
  In this case, combine the image and the layer in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements.

Note

- The images displayed in Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements appear in Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.

Starting from Digital Photo Professional

1. From the File menu of Digital Photo Professional, select Plug-in printing > Print with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.

   Easy-PhotoPrint Pro starts.

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint Pro cannot be started when no image is displayed in Digital Photo Professional.

Note

- The images displayed in Digital Photo Professional appear in Easy-PhotoPrint Pro.



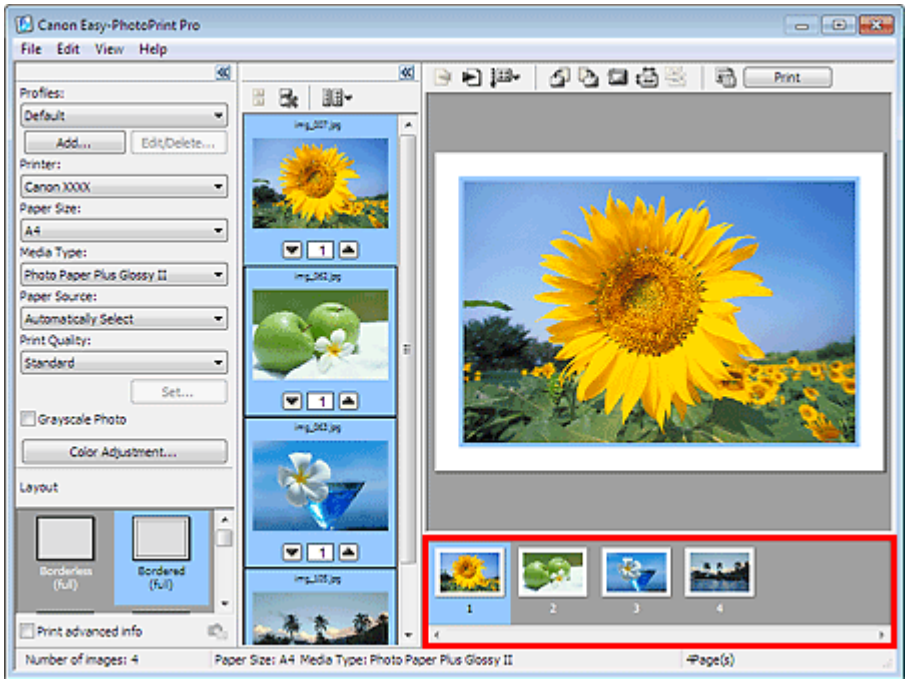
Page top

A512

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Selecting a Photo

1. Check that the photo you want to print is displayed in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.



Note

- To increase the number of copies, click (Up arrow) below the thumbnail in the center of the screen until the number of copies you want is reached. To reduce the number of copies shown in the box, click (Down arrow).
- You can select up to 99 copies per one image and 1,000 copies in total.
- You can change the printing order by clicking (Specify Print Order) in the Print Preview window.
- You can resize the thumbnails by clicking (Specify Thumbnail Size) in the thumbnail window.
- Click (Clear Image Selection) to cancel all selections.

Page top

A513

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Selecting the Paper and Layout

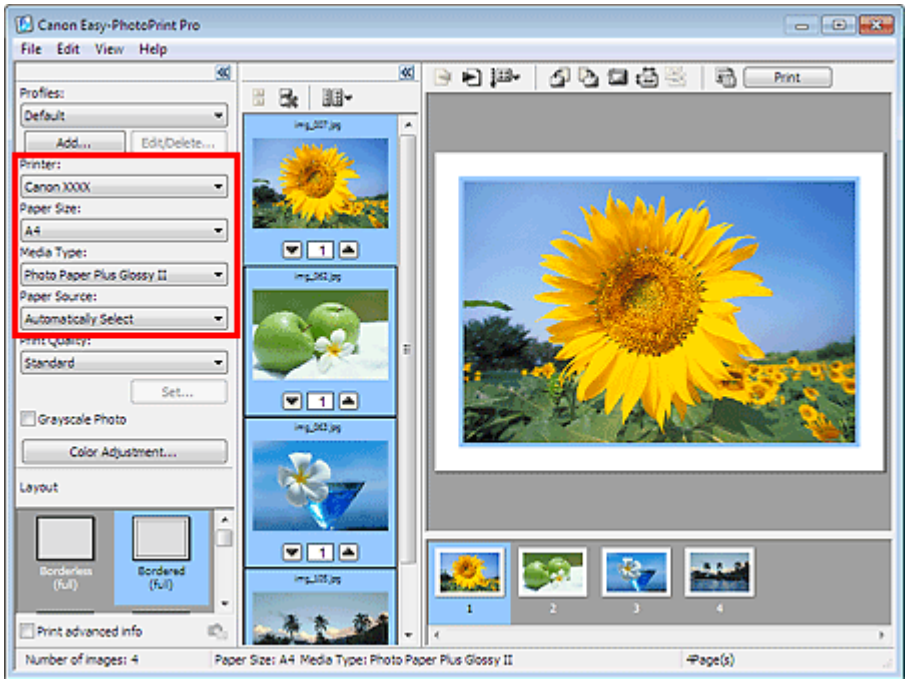
1. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Paper Size

Media Type

Paper Source



Important

- When Fine Art is selected for Paper Size, a 1.38 inches (35 mm) margin is automatically left at the top and bottom of the paper.
  It is recommended that you check the print range with the image shown in Preview before printing.

Note

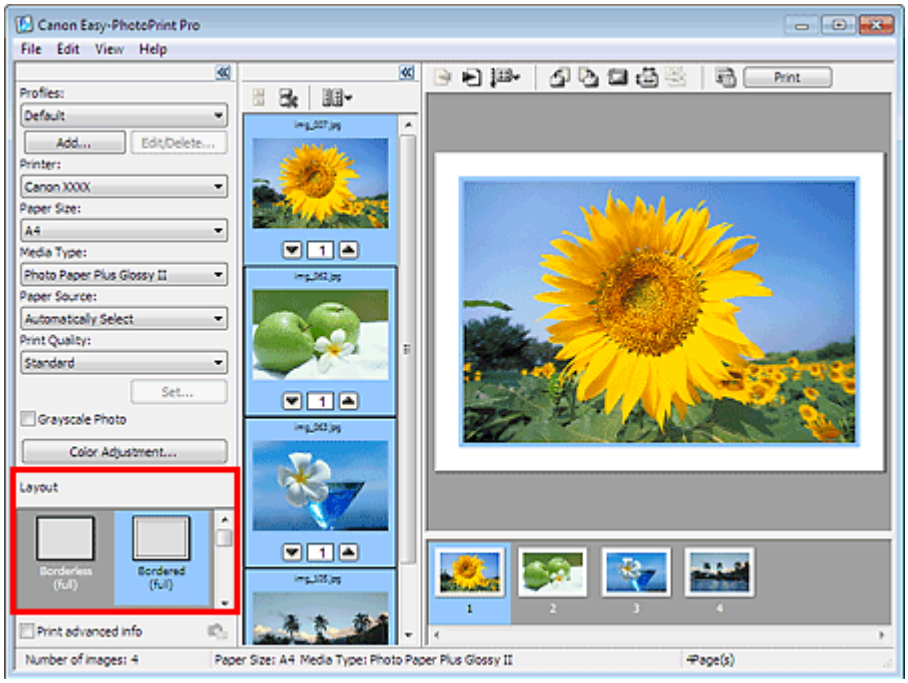
- The paper sizes and media types may vary depending on the printer.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- Select the XPS printer driver ("Your model name XPS") for Printer to print in the High Dynamic Range (full 16-bit workflow).
  See "XPS Printer Driver " for details on the XPS printer driver.

2. Select a print quality from Print Quality.

Note

- The available print quality options may vary depending on the printer and media type.

3. Select a layout from Layout.



Important

- When Plain Paper is selected for Media Type, the print result may be soft. In that case, change Media Type and print again.

Note

- The layouts may vary depending on the printer, paper size, and media type.

Note

- For borderless photos and index prints, you can make advanced settings such as the amount of extension and the arrangement of images. After selecting a layout, click Set... that appears to the right of Layout.
- When you select Bordered (full) for Layout, you can specify the print size and amount of margin.
  Printing with Adjusted Print Size
- You can also change the color balance, brightness and contrast of the image.
  Adjusting the Color Balance
  Adjusting Brightness/Contrast

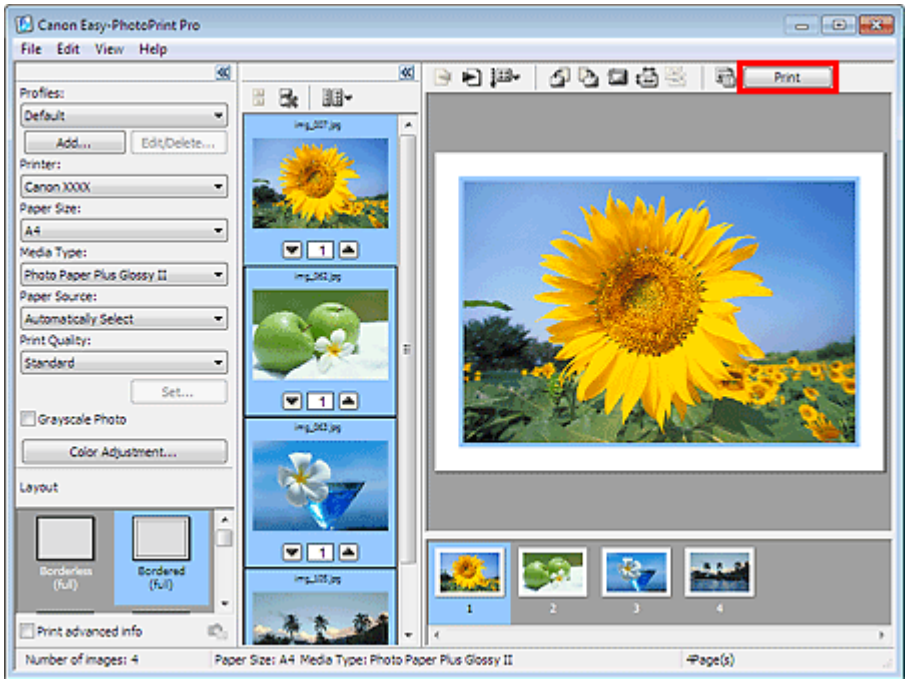
Page top

A514

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing

1. Click Print.



The Print dialog box appears.

Note

- You can change the printing order by clicking (Specify Print Order) in the Print Preview window.

2. Click OK.

Important

- If "An error occurred during printing. Memory may be insufficient for printing." appears while printing with Easy-PhotoPrint Pro started from Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements, increasing the memory allocation for Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Photoshop Elements may solve the problem.

Note

- Select the XPS printer driver for Printer to print in the High Dynamic Range (full 16-bit workflow). See "XPS Printer Driver " for details on the XPS printer driver.
- You can print photos in grayscale or crop photos. You can also print in various styles including index prints and contact sheets.
  - Printing Photos in Grayscale
  - Printing Borderless Photos
  - Cropping Photos
  - Printing an Index
  - Printing Contact Sheets
  - Printing Advanced Information



Page top

A520

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Adjust the Colors of Photo

- Printing Photos in Grayscale
- Adjusting the Color Balance
- Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns
- Adjusting Brightness/Contrast
- Adjusting Brightness/Contrast Using Sample Patterns

Page top

A521

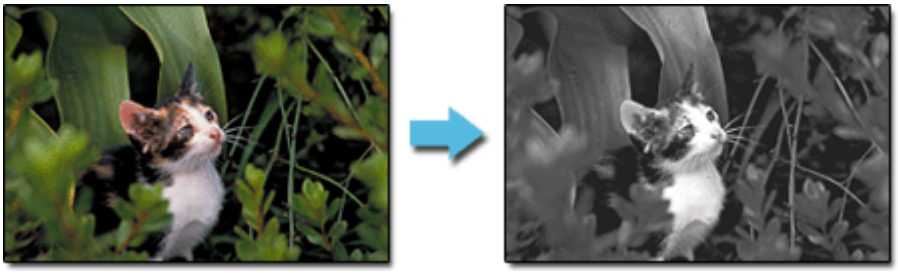
Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing Photos in Grayscale

You can print color photos in grayscale photos.

Important

- You may not be able to print with this setting depending on the printer type.

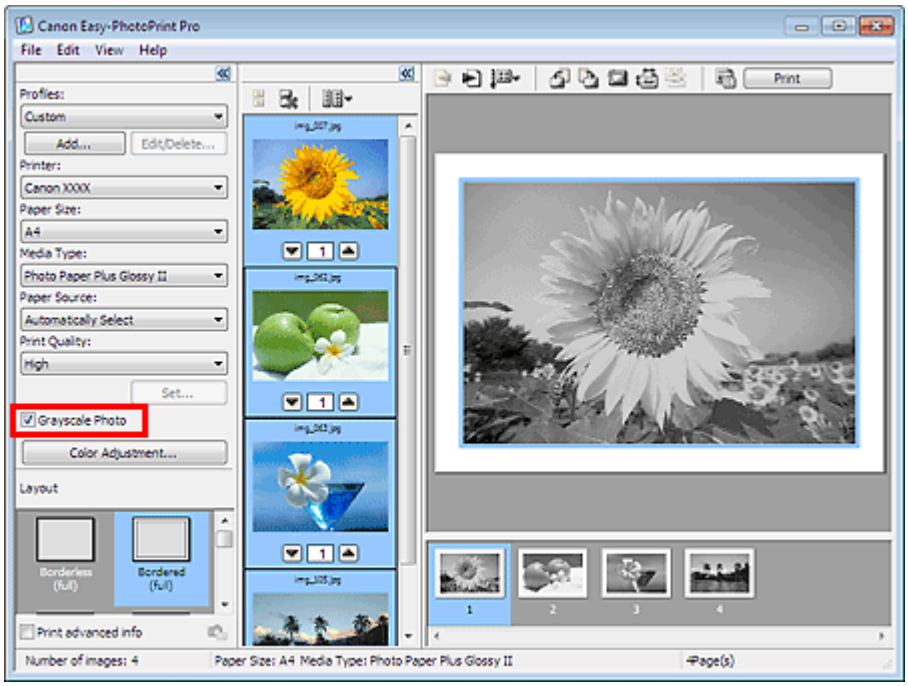


1. Check that the photo you want to print is displayed in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

Note

- See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

2. Select the Grayscale Photo checkbox in the Printer Settings window.



Important

- When you select the Grayscale Photo checkbox, all the selected images will be printed in grayscale.

Note

- You can adjust the black color tone in the Color Adjustment dialog box.
  To display the Color Adjustment dialog box, select the Grayscale Photo checkbox in the Printer Settings window and click Color Adjustment.... See Help for details.

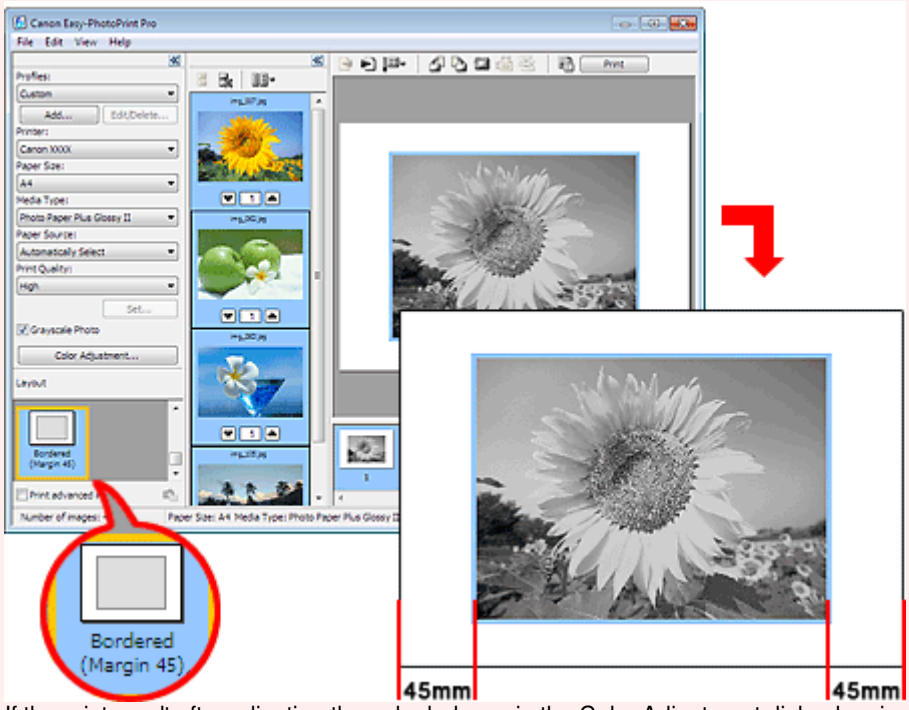
3. Click Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

4. Click OK.

Important

- White streaks may appear at the top and bottom edges of grayscale photos. In that case, print with a 1.77 inches (45 mm) or more margin at the top and bottom edges.
  If you select Bordered (Margin 45) for Layout, images will be reduced when printing to allow a 1.77 inches (45 mm) margin at the top and bottom edges relative to the printing direction.



- If the print result after adjusting the color balance in the Color Adjustment dialog box is different from the preview image, print a color pattern and adjust the colors again based on the pattern.
  Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns
- When the Print the background in black checkbox is selected in the Set dialog box and Brightness in the Color Adjustment dialog box is adjusted with the Grayscale Photo checkbox selected, the black background will be printed with the adjusted Brightness as well.

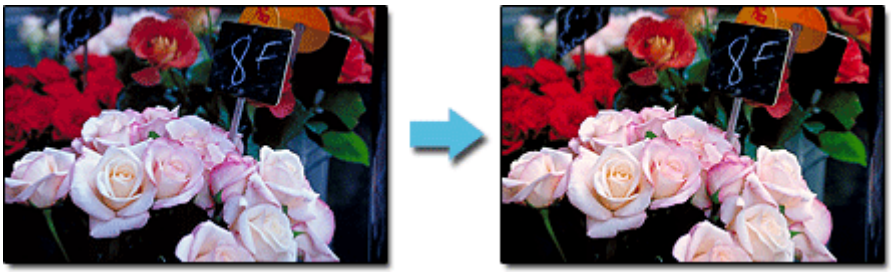
Page top

A522

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Adjusting the Color Balance

You can adjust the color balance of an image.

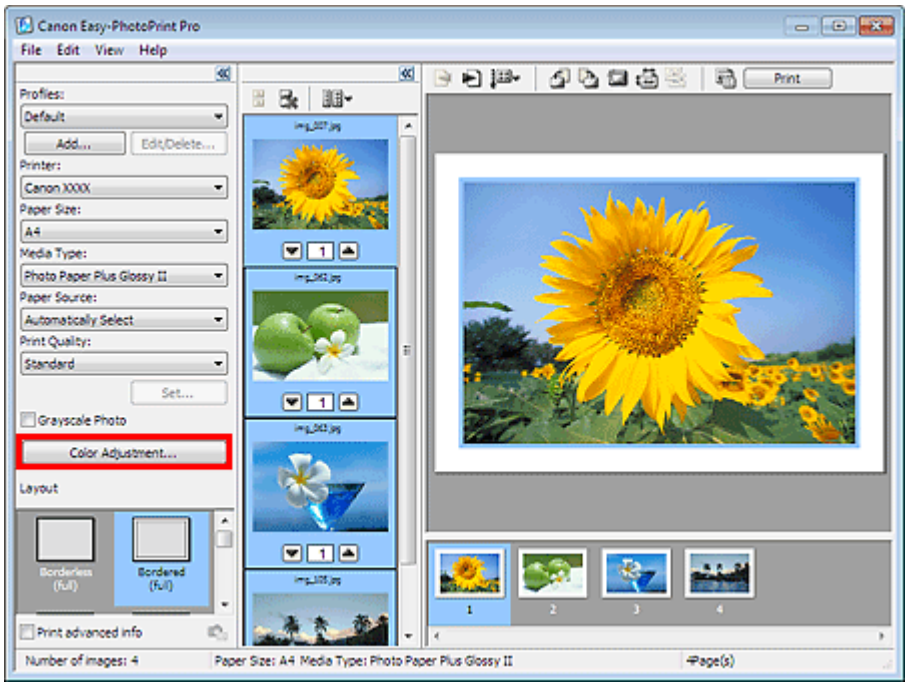


1. Check that the photo you want to print is displayed in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

Note

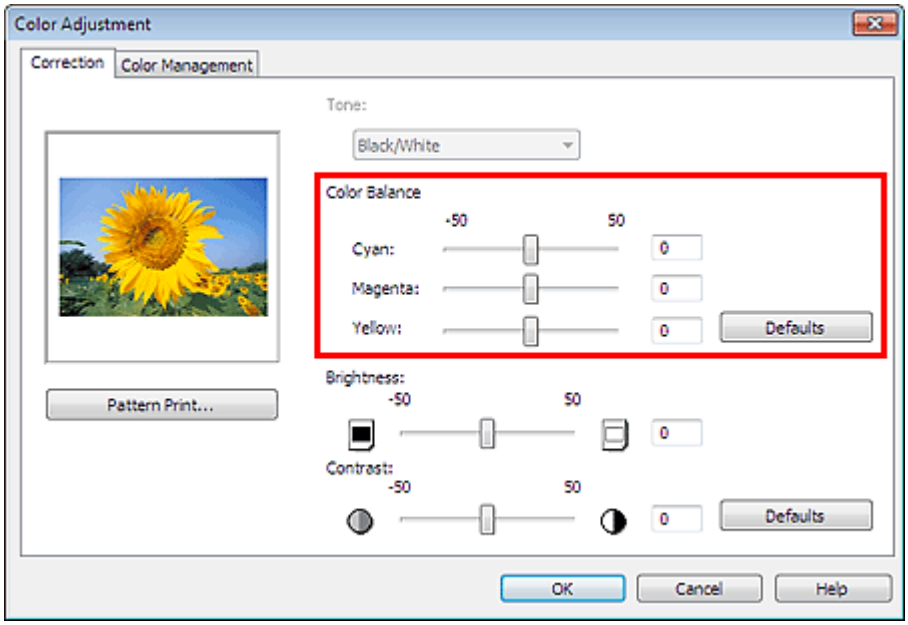
- See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

2. Click Color Adjustment... in the Printer Settings window.



The Color Adjustment dialog box appears.

3. Adjust the intensity for Cyan, Magenta and Yellow in Color Balance.



Important

- If the print result after adjusting the color balance is different from the preview image, print a color pattern and adjust the colors again based on the pattern.
  Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns
- The color balance adjustment applies to all images to print.

Note

- Move the slider to the right to increase and left to reduce intensity.

4. Click OK.

Page top

A523

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns

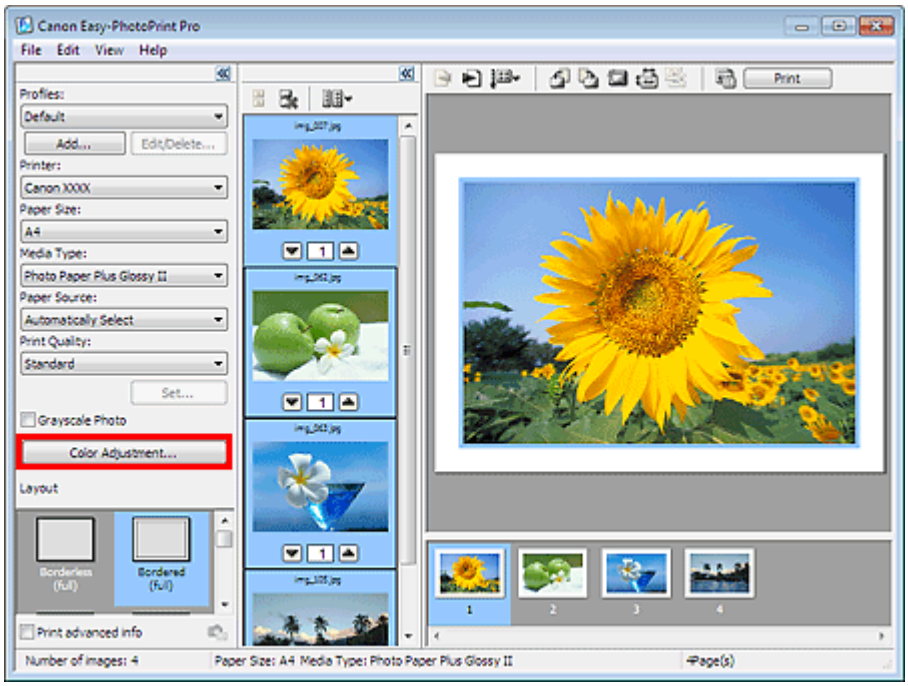
You can print a pattern of an image and adjust the color balance of the image based on the pattern.

1. Check that the photo you want to print is displayed in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

Note

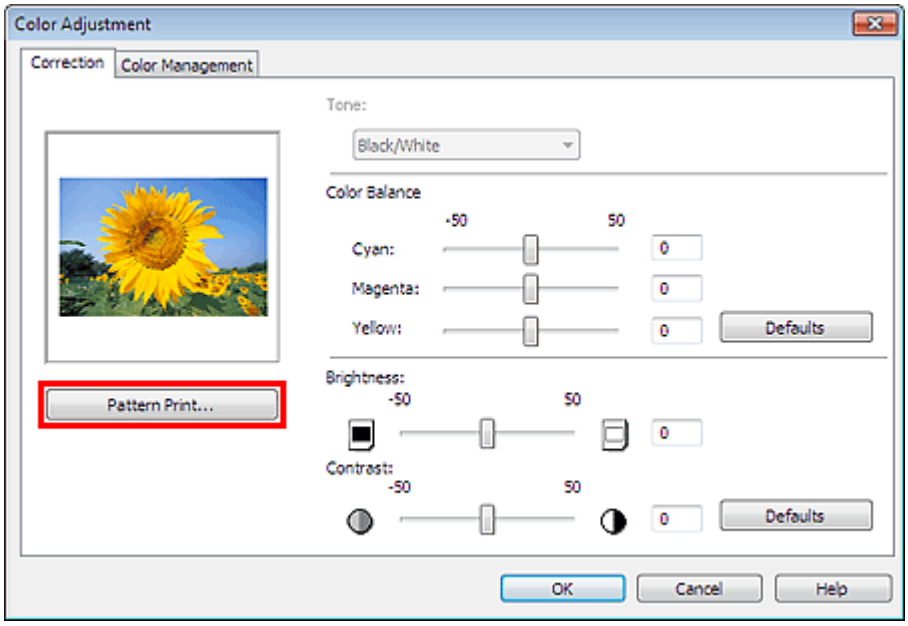
- See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

2. Click Color Adjustment... in the Printer Settings window.



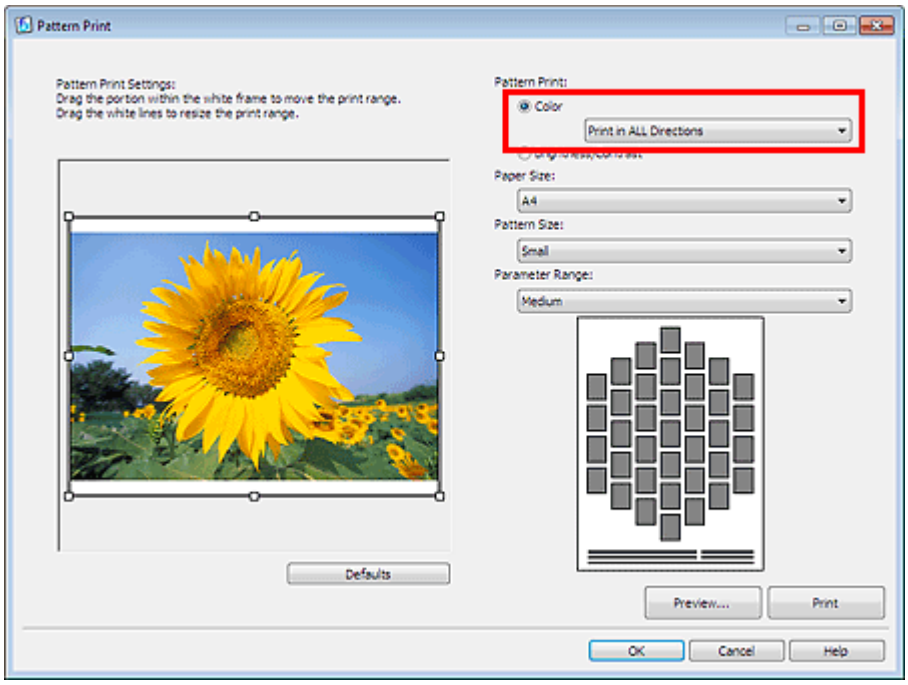
The Color Adjustment dialog box appears.

3. Click Pattern Print....



The Pattern Print window appears.

4. Select Color for Pattern Print, then select the color direction in which you want to adjust.



Note

- Select Print in ALL Directions to print a pattern of the image adjusted in the following six directions. (The image with the current color balance values is printed in the center.) Use the pattern to determine the color direction in which you want to adjust the color balance.

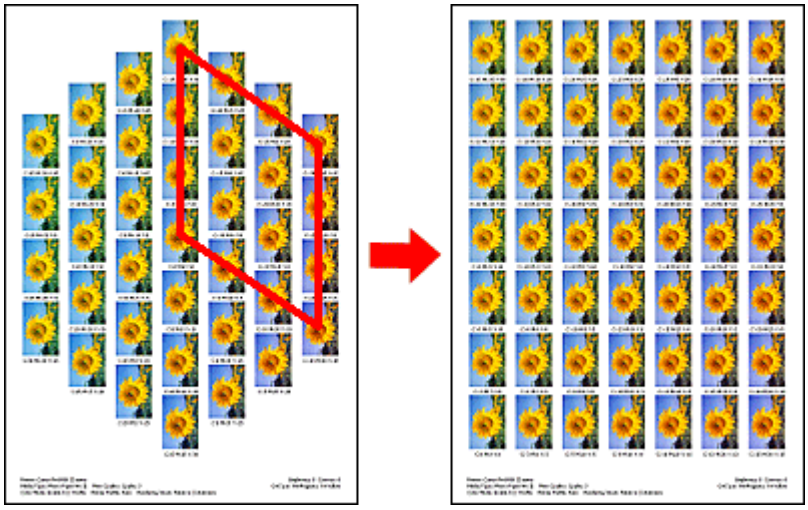
Print in Direction R (upper right)	: Red
Print in Direction Y (up)	: Yellow
Print in Direction G (upper left)	: Green
Print in Direction C (lower left)	: Cyan



Print in Direction B (down) : Blue

Print in Direction M (lower right) : Magenta

- Select a specific direction such as Print in Direction R to print a pattern of the image adjusted in the selected direction. (The image with the current color balance values is printed at the bottom left.) For example, select Print in Direction R to print a more detailed pattern of the portion in the R direction of the pattern for all directions (the portion outlined in red in the figure below). This allows you to check more variations than in all directions.



5. Select Paper Size, Pattern Size and Parameter Range.

Note

- You can crop the image before printing the pattern. Move the white frame in Preview to change the cropping area.
- Click Preview... to display the print preview in a different window in which you can check the settings before printing.
- See Help for details on the Pattern Print window.

6. Click Print.

The pattern is printed.

7. Click OK.

8. Select the image with the desired color balance from the printed pattern and enter the values indicated below the image into Color Balance.

9. Click OK.

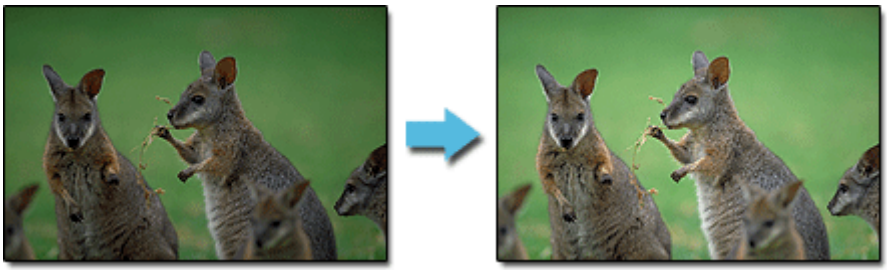
Page top

A524

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Adjusting Brightness/Contrast

You can adjust the brightness and contrast of an image.

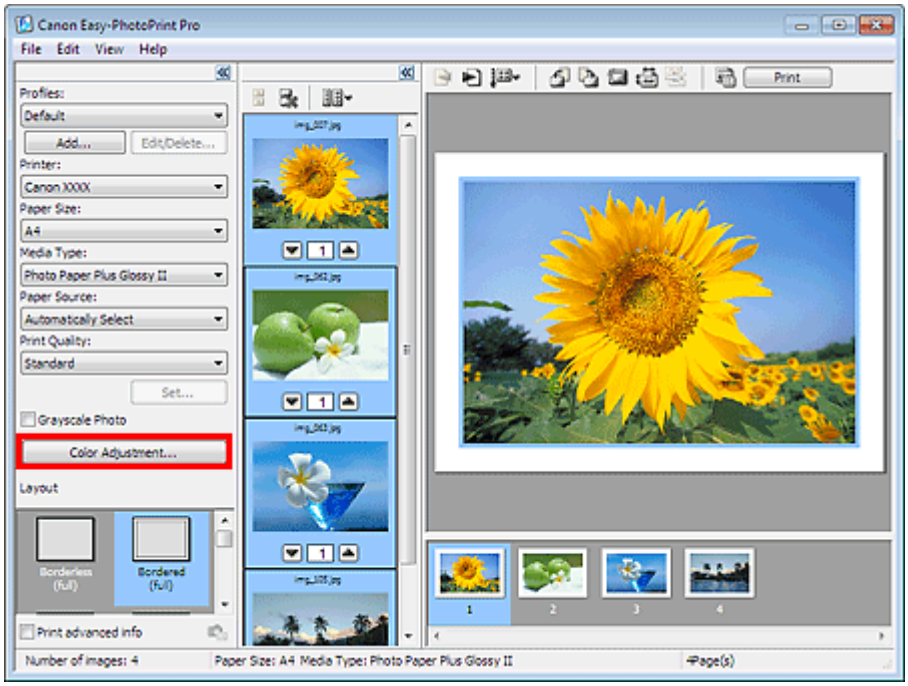


1. Check that the photo you want to print is displayed in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

Note

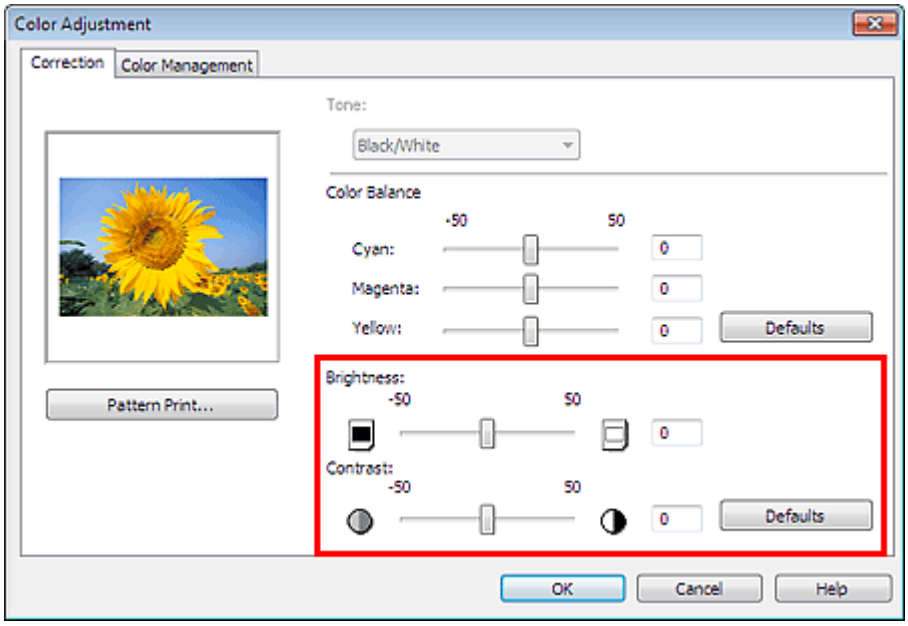
- See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

2. Click Color Adjustment... in the Printer Settings window.



The Color Adjustment dialog box appears.

3. Adjust Brightness and Contrast.



Important

- If the print result after adjusting the brightness and contrast is different from the preview image, print a color pattern and adjust the colors again based on the pattern.
  ➡ Adjusting Brightness/Contrast Using Sample Patterns
- The brightness/contrast adjustment applies to all images to print.

Note

- For Brightness, move the slider to the right to brighten and left to darken the image.
- For Contrast, move the slider to the right to increase and left to reduce the contrast of the image.

4. Click OK.

Page top

A525

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Adjusting Brightness/Contrast Using Sample Patterns

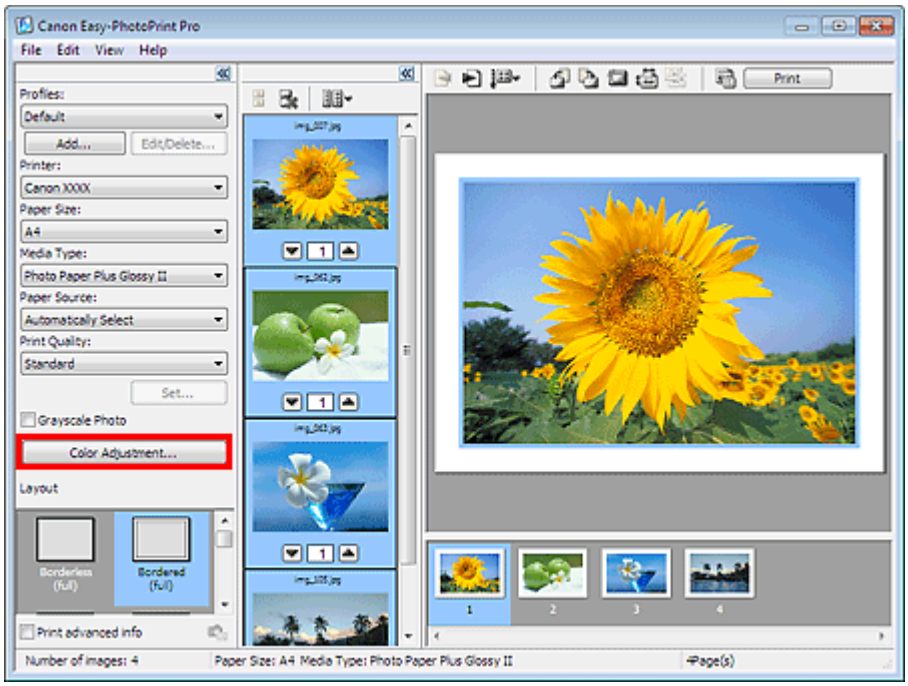
You can print a pattern of an image and adjust the brightness/contrast of the image based on the pattern.

1. Check that the photo you want to print is displayed in the page list at the bottom right of the screen.

Note

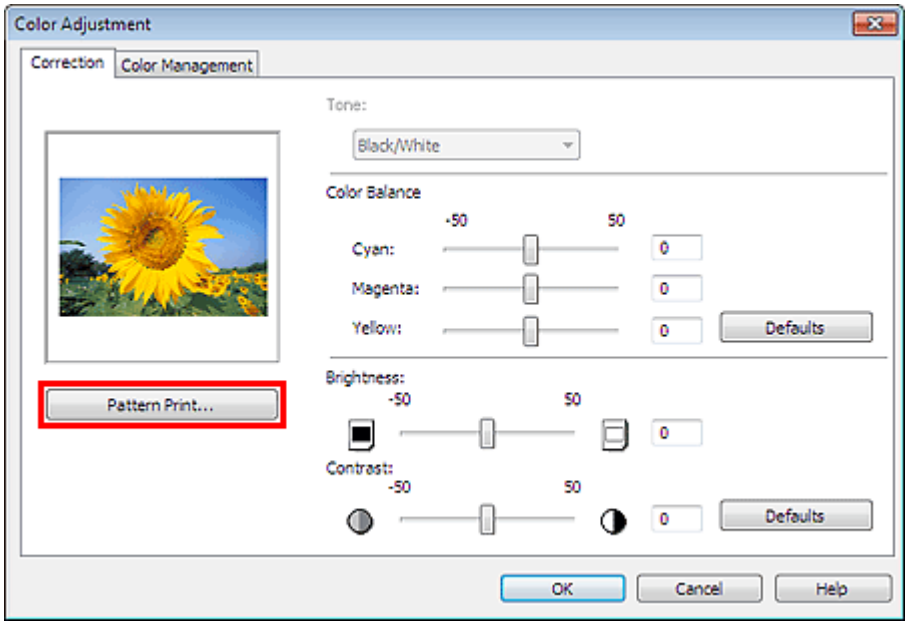
- See "Selecting a Photo " for details on how to select photos.

2. Click Color Adjustment... in the Printer Settings window.



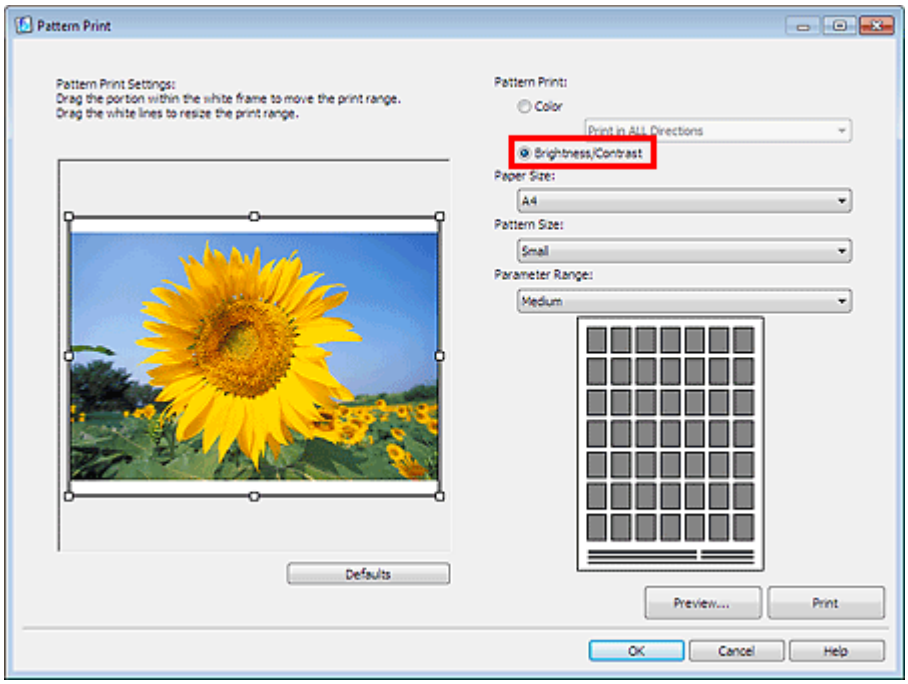
The Color Adjustment dialog box appears.

3. Click Pattern Print....



The Pattern Print window appears.

4. Select Brightness/Contrast for Pattern Print.



5. Select Paper Size, Pattern Size and Parameter Range.

Note

- You can crop the image before printing the pattern. Move the white frame in Preview to change the cropping area.
- Click Preview... to display the print preview in a different window in which you can check the settings before printing.
- See Help for details on the Pattern Print window.

6. Click Print.

The pattern is printed.

Note

- The source image is printed in the center. Brightness increases from bottom to top. Contrast increases from left to right.

7. Click OK.

8. Select the image with the desired brightness/contrast from the printed pattern and enter the values indicated below the image into Brightness and Contrast.

9. Click OK.

Page top

A530

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Settings

- Printing Borderless Photos
- Printing an Index
- Printing Contact Sheets
- Printing Advanced Information
- Cropping Photos
- Printing with Adjusted Print Size
- Saving Print Settings

Page top

A531

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing Borderless Photos

You can print borderless photos by selecting a borderless layout from Layout in the Printer Settings window.



Note

- Select a borderless layout and click Set... that appears to the right of Layout to display the Set Amount of Extension of Borderless Printing dialog box in which you can specify the amount of extension. See Help for details.

Page top

A532

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing an Index

You can print an index of selected photos. An index print shows the thumbnails of the photos in one page. It is convenient for managing your photos.

To print an index, select Index for Layout in the Printer Settings window.



Important

- You can print up to 80 images on one page.

Note

- Index prints can only be printed on Letter 8.5"x11" and A4 paper.
- Select Index and click Set... that appears to the right of Layout to change the number of columns and rows, or add a header/footer.

Page top

A533

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing Contact Sheets

You can print an index of photos with a design that looks like negative film strips.

To print a contact sheet, select Contact Sheet for Layout in the Printer Settings window.



Note

- Contact sheets can only be printed on Letter 8.5"x11" and A4 paper.

Page top

A534

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing Advanced Information

Select the Print advanced info checkbox in the Printer Settings window to print the photo with photo information or color correction information side by side.



Note

- Displayed photo information items may vary depending on the application from which Easy-PhotoPrint Pro is started.
- Click (Advanced Information Settings) to customize the information display (print position, item, etc.). See Help for details.
- The following combinations of layout and paper size are available for printing photo information or color correction information.

Layout	Paper Size
Bordered (full)	A4, Letter 8.5"x11", Fine Art A4, Fine Art Letter, 4"x6" 10x15cm, 5"x7" 13x18cm, 4"x8" 101.6x203.2mm, 8"x10" 20x25cm
Bordered (x2) Bordered (x4)	A4, Letter 8.5"x11", Fine Art A4, Fine Art Letter, 8"x10" 20x25cm
Index (*)	A4, Letter 8.5"x11"

*When Index is selected for Layout, only photo information is printed.
*When Index is selected for Layout, image arrangement is automatically changed to four columns and five rows.

- To change the print position of photo information for each image, select an image and click (Change the photo information position for the image.).

A535

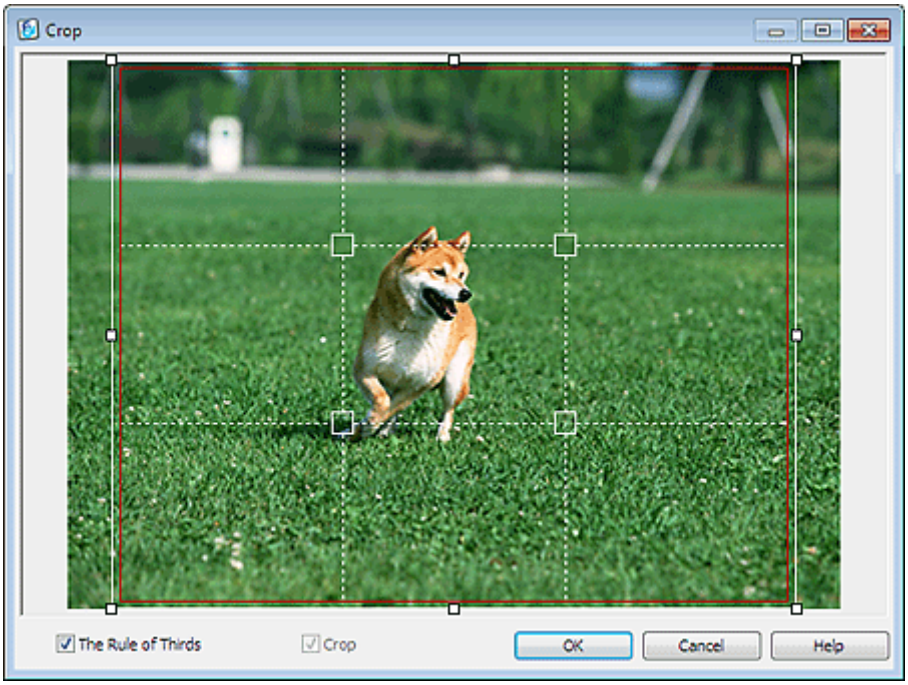
Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Cropping Photos

Cropping a photo is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the photo by selecting the necessary portions.

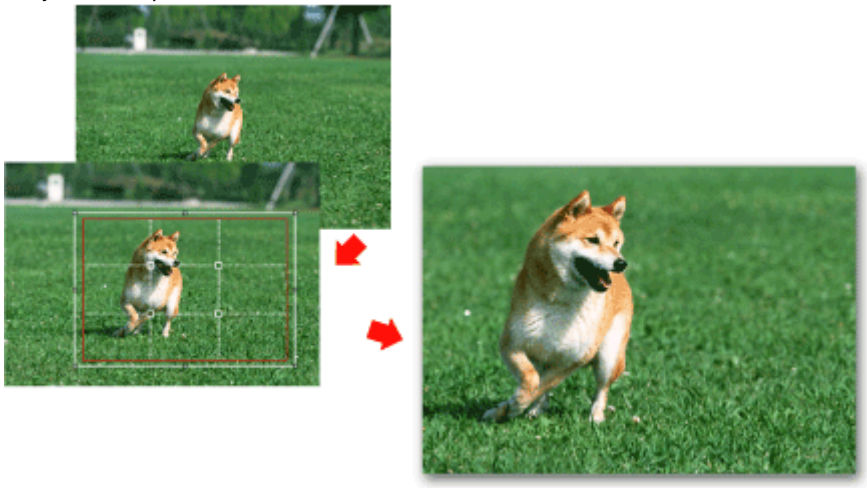
Click (Crop) in the Print Preview window or double-click the preview image.

Drag the white squares on the image to adjust the area to be cropped and click OK.



Note

- To move the cropping area, place the cursor within the white frame and drag it. Drag the white lines to enlarge/reduce the cropping area.
- Select the The Rule of Thirds checkbox to display white broken lines. To create a balanced composition, drag any of the intersecting points (white squares) or white broken lines over the main subject of the photo.



- The cropping effect applies only to the print result. The original image will not be cropped.

- See Help for details on the Crop window.

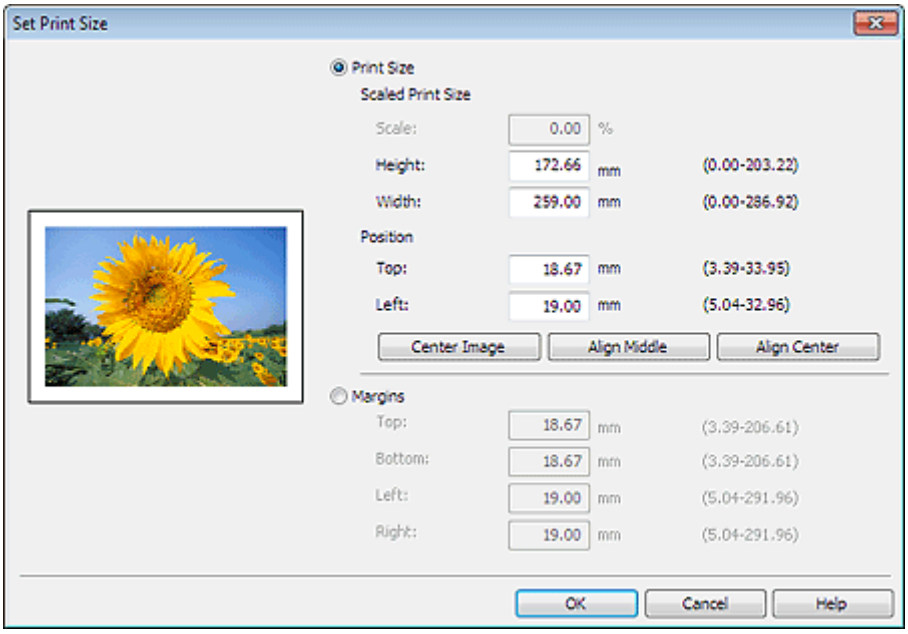
Page top

A536

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Printing with Adjusted Print Size

Click (Specify Print Size) in the Print Preview window to adjust the print size and amount of margin before printing.



Important

- Set Printer, Paper Size and Layout before changing the values in Scale, Height, etc. in the Set Print Size dialog box. If you change Printer, Paper Size or Layout after changing the values, the original values return.
- To return the Scale, Height and other values in the Set Print Size dialog box to the original values, set the number of copies below the thumbnail to 0, then specify the number again.

Note

- Print size can be adjusted only when Bordered (full) is selected for Layout.
- Margins can be adjusted only when the image is cropped.
- See Help for details on the Set Print Size dialog box.

Page top

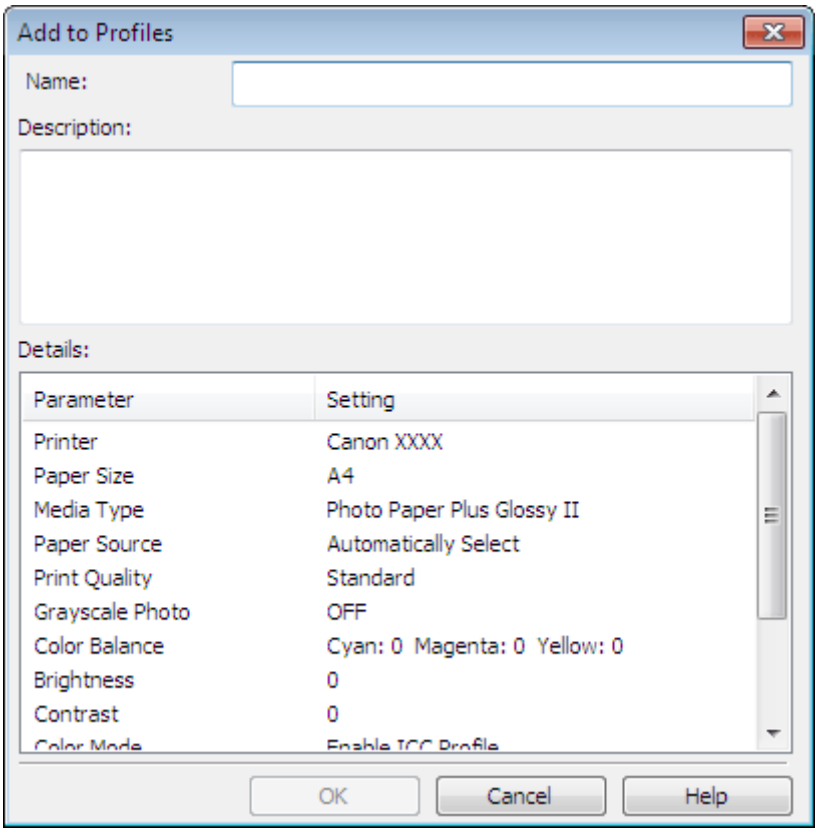
A537

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro

Saving Print Settings

You can save frequently used combinations of paper size, media type, color adjustment, etc. as custom profiles. Saved profiles can be loaded from a list. This allows you to print photos instantly with your favorite settings.

Click Add... in the Printer Settings window to display the Add to Profiles dialog box. Enter Name and Description, then click OK.



Important

- Enter up to 64 characters in Name.
- "Default" or "Custom" cannot be used for Name.
- Enter up to 256 characters in Description.

Note

- Click Edit/Delete... in the Printer Settings window to edit names and descriptions or delete profiles.
- See Help for details on the Add to Profiles dialog box.

Page top

Printing with Other Application Software

Various Printing Methods
Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data
Overview of the Printer Driver

Page top

Various Printing Methods

- Printing with Easy Setup
- Setting a Page Size and Orientation
- Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
- Setting the Stapling Margin
- Execute Borderless Printing
- Fit-to-Page Printing
- Scaled Printing
- Page Layout Printing
- Poster Printing
- Booklet Printing
- Duplex Printing
- Stamp/Background Printing
- Registering a Stamp
- Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background
- Printing an Envelope
- Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing
- Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

Page top

P000

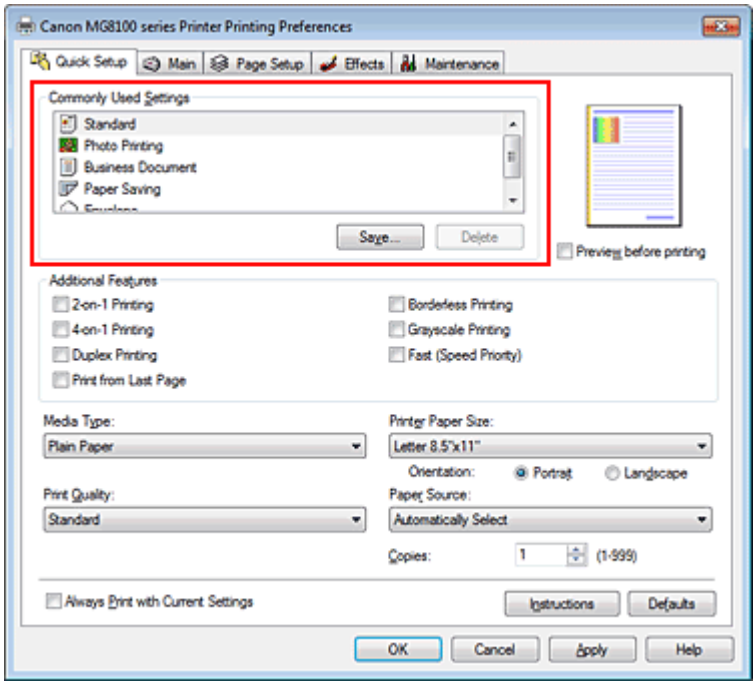
Printing with Easy Setup

The simple setup procedure for carrying out appropriate printing on this machine, is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select a frequently used profile

In Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab, select a printing profile suited for the purpose. When you select a printing profile, the Additional Features, Media Type, and Printer Paper Size settings are automatically switched to the values that were preset.



3. Select the print quality

For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Select the paper source

Select Automatically Select, Rear Tray, Cassette, Continuous Autofeed, or Paper Allocation that matches your purpose for Paper Source.

Important

- The paper source settings that can be selected may differ depending on the paper type and size.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the document is printed with settings that matches your purpose.

Important

- When you select the Always Print with Current Settings check box, all settings specified on the

Quick Setup, Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs are saved, and you can print with the same settings from the next time as well. (Effects tab cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.)

- Click Save... to register the specified settings. For instructions on registering settings, see "Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile ."

Page top

P400

Setting a Page Size and Orientation

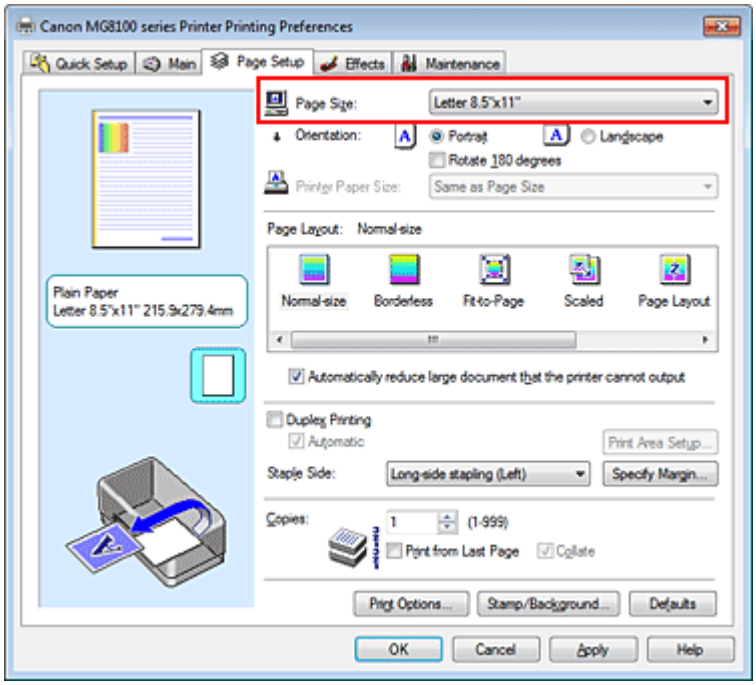
The paper size and orientation are essentially determined by the application. When the page size and orientation set for Page Size and Orientation on the Page Setup tab are same as those set with the application, you do not need to select them on the Page Setup tab.

When you are not able to specify them with the application, the procedure for selecting a page size and orientation is as follows:
You can also set page size and Orientation on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the paper size

Select a page size from the Page Size list on the Page Setup tab.



3. Set Orientation

Select Portrait or Landscape for Orientation. Check Rotate 180 degrees check box when you want to perform printing with the original being rotated 180 degrees.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the document will be printed with the selected page size and the orientation.

Note

- If Normal-size is selected for Page Layout, then Automatically reduce large document that the printer cannot output is displayed.
  Normally, you can leave the Automatically reduce large document that the printer cannot output check box checked. During printing, if you do not want to reduce large documents that cannot be printed on the printer, uncheck the check box.

Page top

P001

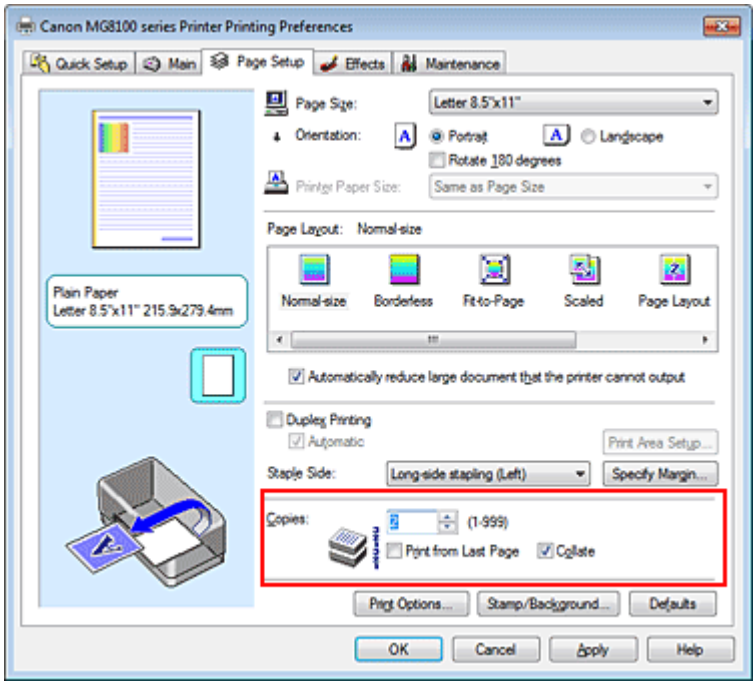
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

The procedure for specifying the number of copies and printing order is as follows:
You can also set the number of copies on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

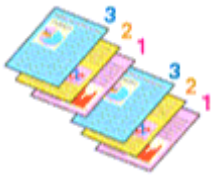
For Copies on the Page Setup tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.



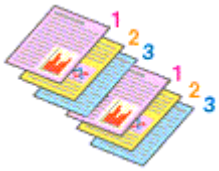
3. Specify the print order

Check the Print from Last Page check box when you want to print from the last page in order, and uncheck the check box when you want to print from the first page.
Check the Collate check box when you are printing multiple copies of a document and want to print out all pages in each copy together. Uncheck this check box when you want to print all pages with the same page number together.

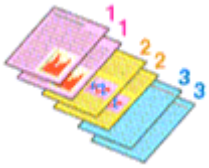
- Print from Last Page: ☐ /Collate: ☑



- Print from Last Page: ☑ /Collate: ☑



- Print from Last Page: ☑ /Collate: ☐



- Print from Last Page: ☐ /Collate: ☐



4. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.
- Print from Last Page and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable when Booklet is selected for Page Layout.
- Print from Last Page appears grayed out and is unavailable when Poster is selected for Page Layout.

Note

- By setting both Print from Last Page and Collate, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page.
  These settings can be used in combination with Normal-size, Borderless, Fit-to-Page, Scaled, Page Layout, and Duplex Printing.

Page top

P002

Setting the Stapling Margin

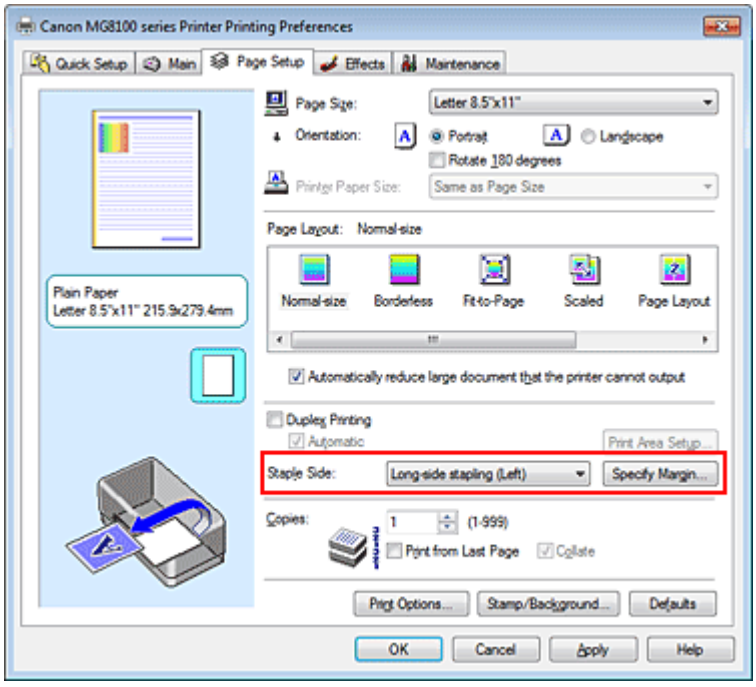


The procedure for setting the staple side and the margin width is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

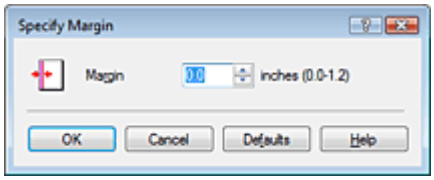
2. Specify the side to be stapled

Check the position of the stapling margin from Staple Side on the Page Setup tab.
The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best staple position. When you want to change the setting, select from the list.



3. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.



Note

- The printer automatically reduces the print area depending on the staple position margin.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified staple side and margin width.

Important

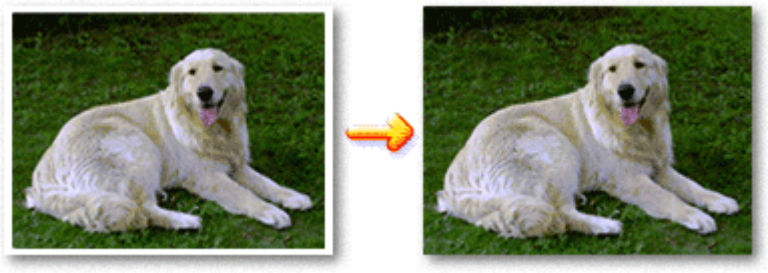
- Staple Side and Specify Margin... appear grayed out and are unavailable when:
  - Borderless, Poster, or Booklet is selected for Page Layout.
  - Scaled is selected for Page Layout (When Duplex Printing is also selected, only Staple Side can be specified).

Page top

P003

Execute Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. Without the borderless printing function, a margin is provided around the printed data. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, set borderless printing.



The procedure for performing borderless printing is as follows:

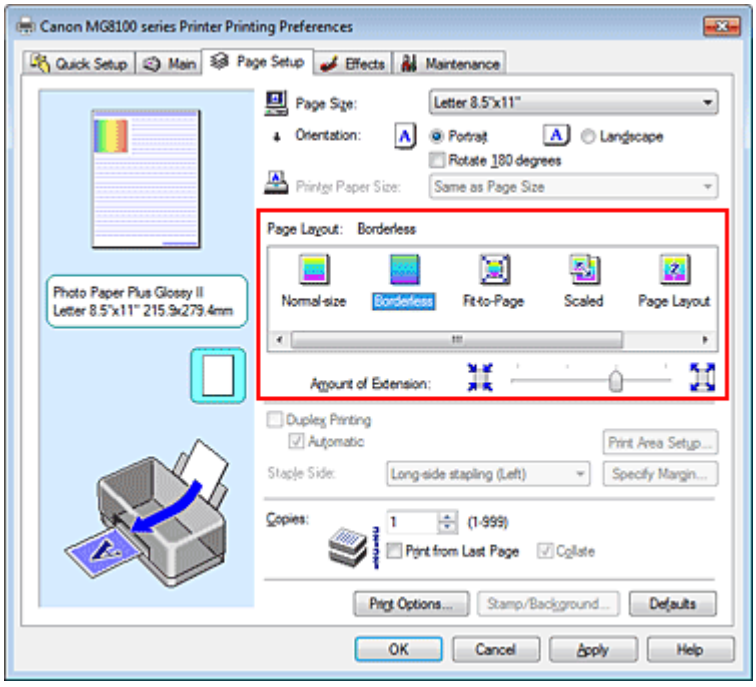
You can also set borderless printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set borderless printing

   Select Borderless from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
When a message prompting you to change the media type appears, select a media type from the list and click OK.

3. Check the paper size

Check the Page Size list. When you want to change, select another page size from the list. The list displays only sizes that can be used for borderless printing.

4. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

If necessary, adjust the amount of extension using the Amount of Extension slider.
Moving the slider to the right increases the amount extending off the paper, and moving the slider to the left decreases the amount.
It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.



Important

- When you set the slider at the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the data is printed without any margins on the paper.

Important

- When a page size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected, the size is automatically changed to the valid page sizes for borderless printing.
- When High Resolution Paper, Fine Art "Photo Rag", Other Fine Art Paper, T-Shirt Transfers, or Envelope is selected from the Media Type list on the Main tab, you cannot perform borderless printing.
- When Borderless is selected, the Printer Paper Size, Duplex Printing, Staple Side settings, and the Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) button on the Page Setup tab appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Depending on the type of the media used during borderless printing, the print quality may deteriorate at the top and bottom of the sheet or stains may form.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
  In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.

Note

- When Plain Paper is selected for Media Type on the Main tab, borderless printing is not recommended, and therefore the message for media selection appears.
  When you are using plain paper for test printing, select Plain Paper, and click OK.

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Setting a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document extending off the paper range will not be printed. Subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

Try borderless printing once. When you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount decreases as the Amount of Extension slider is moved to the left.

Important

- When the amount of extension is decreased, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

Note

- When the Amount of Extension slider is set to the leftmost position, image data will be printed in the full size.

- When Preview before printing is checked on the Main tab, you can confirm whether there will be no border before printing.

Page top

P004

Fit-to-Page Printing

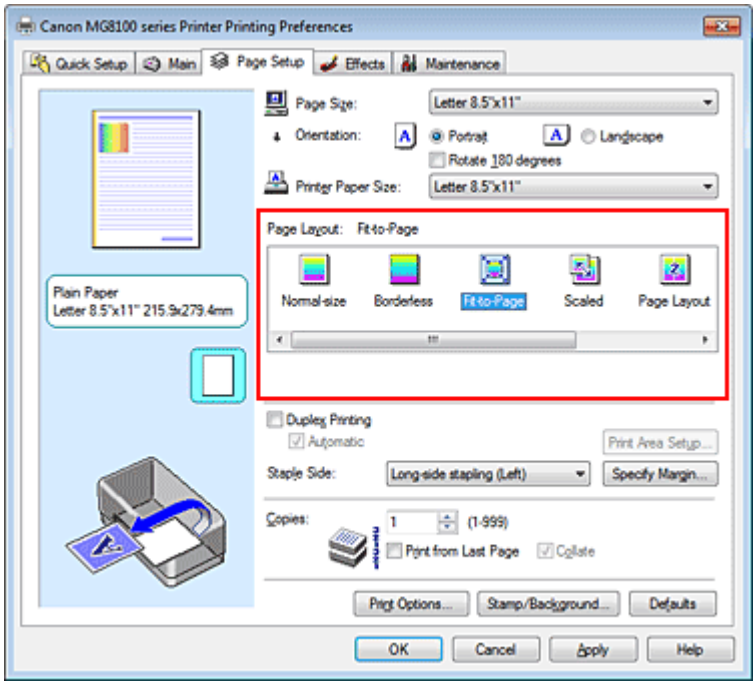


The procedure for printing a document that is automatically enlarged or reduced to fit the page size to be used is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set fit-to-page printing

Select Fit-to-Page from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



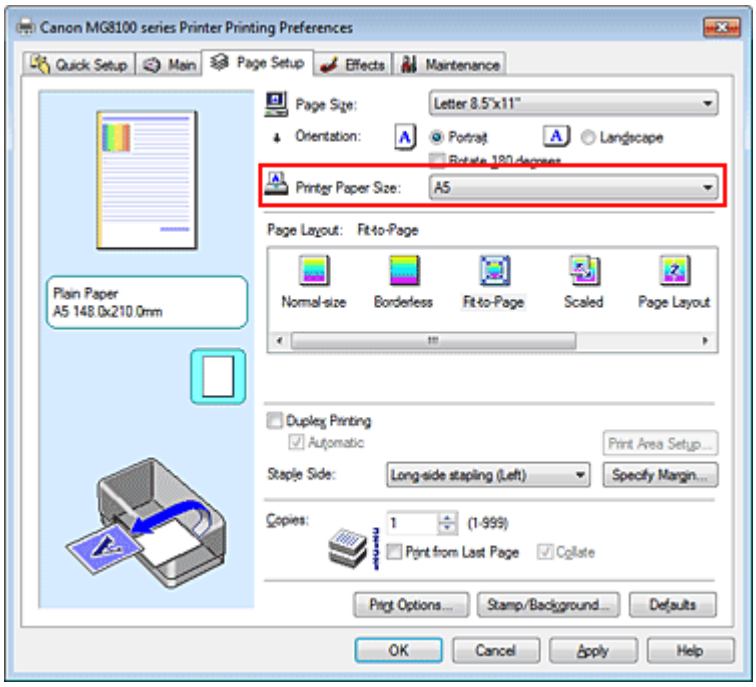
3. Select the paper size for the data

Using Page Size, select the page size that is set with your application.

4. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.
When the Printer Paper Size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced. When the Printer Paper Size is larger than the Page Size, the page image will be enlarged.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



5. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the document will be enlarged or reduced to fit to the page size.

Page top

P005

Scaled Printing

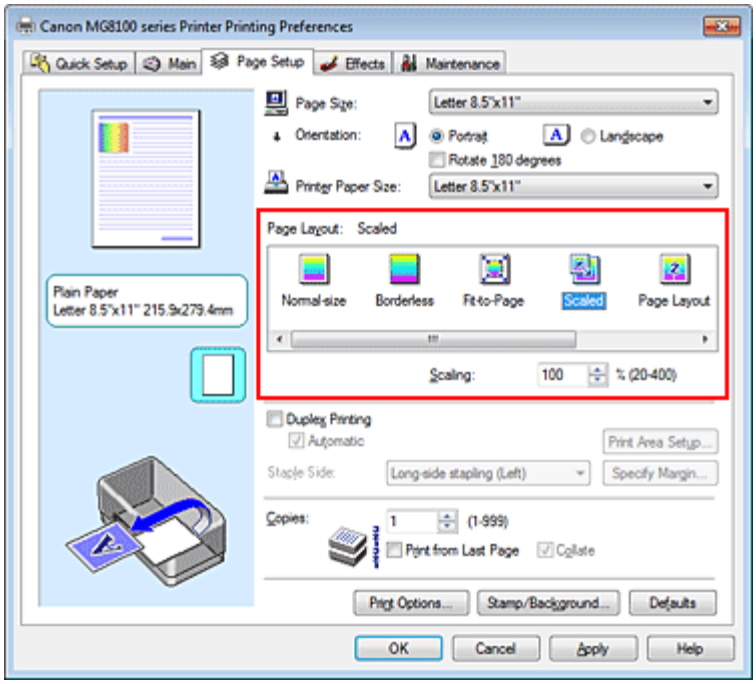


The procedure for printing a document with pages enlarged or reduced is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set scaled printing

   Select Scaled from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



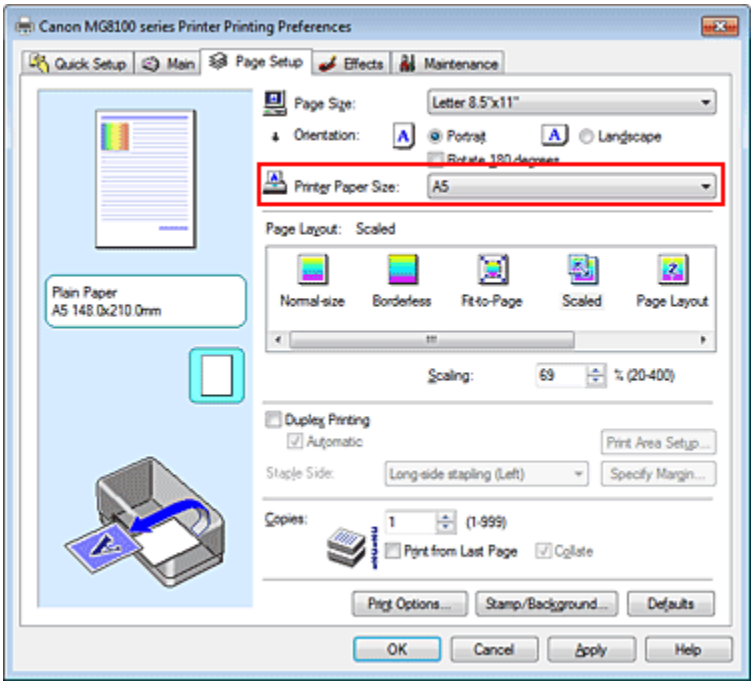
3. Select the paper size for the data

   Using Page Size, select the page size that is set with your application.

4. Set the scaling rate by using one of the following methods:

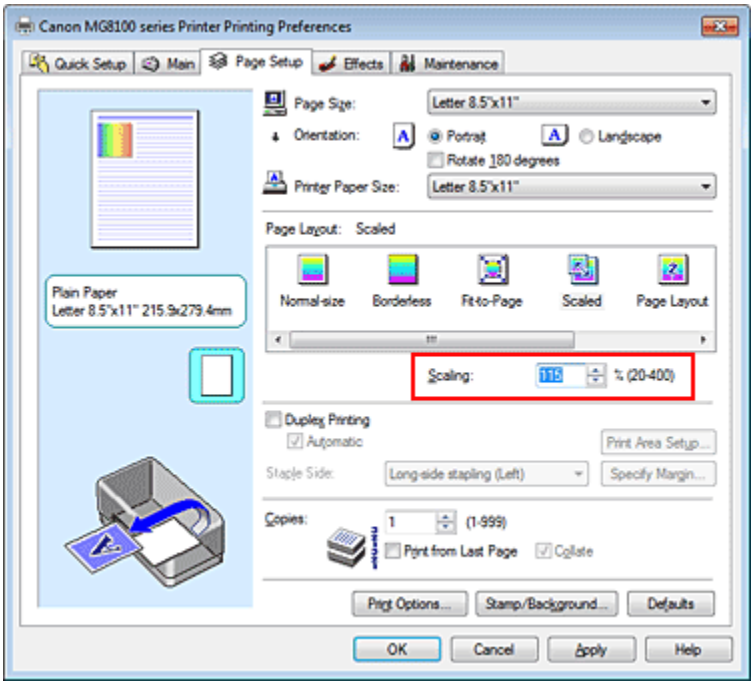
   - **Select a Printer Paper Size**

     When the printer paper size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced.
     When the printer paper size is larger than the Page Size, the page image will be enlarged.



- **Specify a scaling factor**

  Directly type in a value into the Scaling box.



The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the specified scale.

Important

- When the application software which you created the original has the scaled printing function, configure the settings on your application software. You do not need to configure the same setting in the printer driver.
- When Scaled is selected, the Staple Side list box appears grayed out and is unavailable (when Duplex Printing is not selected).

Note

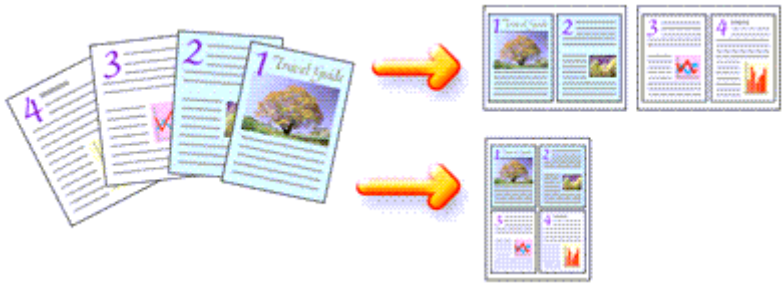
- Selecting Scaled changes the printable area of the document.

Page top

P006

Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.

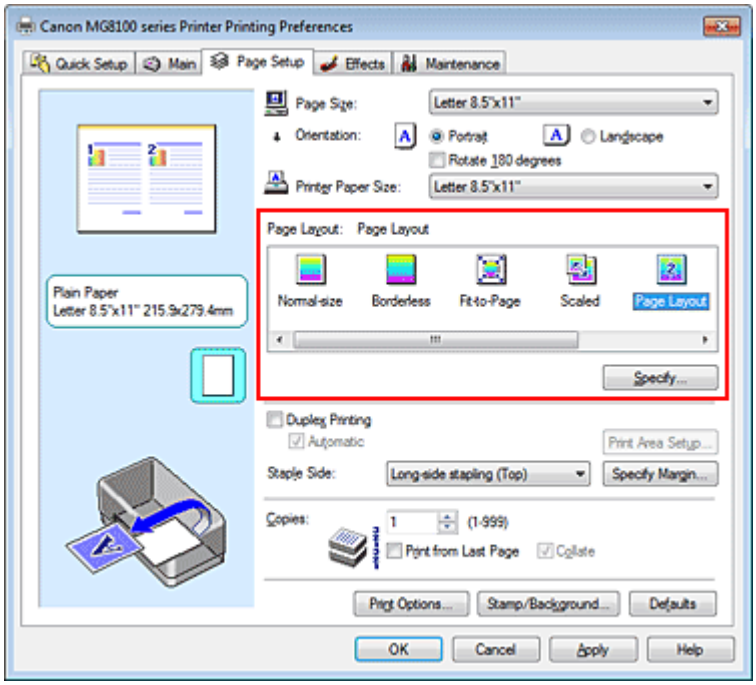


The procedure for performing page layout printing is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set page layout printing

Select Page Layout from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

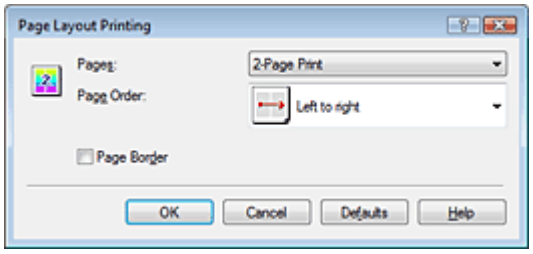


3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.
Setting the layout of two pages of the document from left to right is complete.

4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page order

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Page Layout Printing dialog box, and click OK.



Pages
To change the number of pages to be printed on a single sheet of paper, select the number of pages from the list.
You can also set 2-Page Print or 4-Page Print on the Quick Setup tab.

Page Order
To change the page arrangement order, select an icon from the list to change the page placement order.

Page Border
To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

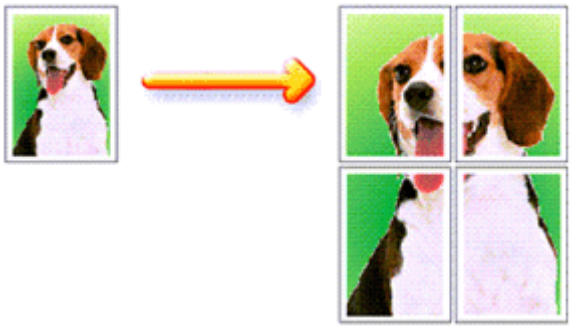
Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

Page top

P401

Poster Printing

The poster printing function allows you to enlarge image data, divide it into several pages, and print these pages on separate sheets of paper. When the pages are pasted together, they form a large print like a poster.



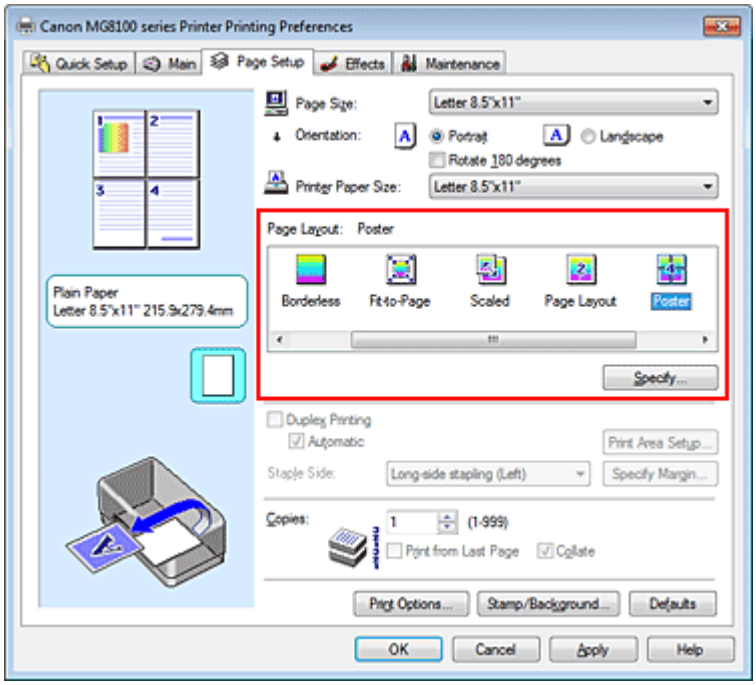
The procedure for performing poster printing is as follows:

Setting Poster Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set poster printing

   Select Poster from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Select the print paper size

   Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.
   Setting 2 by 2-page poster printing is complete.

4. Set the number of image divisions and the pages to be printed

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Poster Printing dialog box, and then click OK.

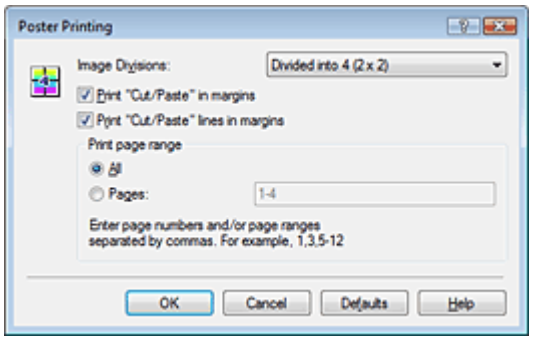


Image Divisions
Select the number of divisions (vertical x horizontal). As the number of divisions increases, the number of sheets used for printing increases, allowing you to create a larger poster.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins
To leave out words "Cut" and "Paste", uncheck this check box.

Note

- This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins
To leave out cut lines, uncheck this check box.

Print page range
Specifies the printing range. Select All under normal circumstances.
To reprint only a specific page, select Pages and enter the page number you want to print. To specify multiple pages, enter the page numbers by separating them with commas or by entering a hyphen between the page numbers.

Note

- You can also specify the print range by clicking the pages in the settings preview.

5. Complete the setup

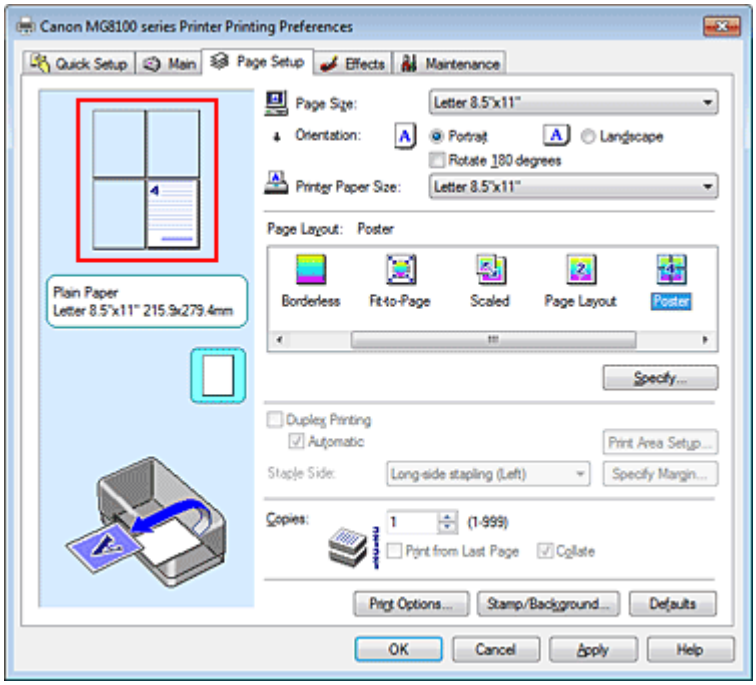
Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the document will be divided into several pages during printing.
After all poster pages have been printed, paste the pages together to create a poster.

Printing Only Specific Pages

If ink becomes faint or runs out during printing, you can reprint only the specific pages by following the procedure below:

1. Set the print range

In the settings preview on the left of the Page Setup tab, click the pages that do not need to be printed.
The pages that were clicked are deleted, and only the pages to be printed are displayed.



Note

- Click the deleted pages to display them again.
- Right-click the settings preview to select Print all pages or Delete all pages.

2. Complete the setup

After completing the page selection, click OK.
When you execute print, only specified pages will be printed.

Important

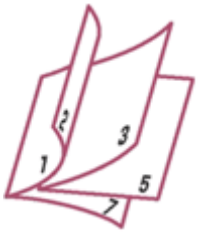
- When Poster is selected, the Duplex Printing, Staple Side and Print from Last Page appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Since poster printing enlarges the document when printing it, the print results may become coarse.

Page top

P402

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

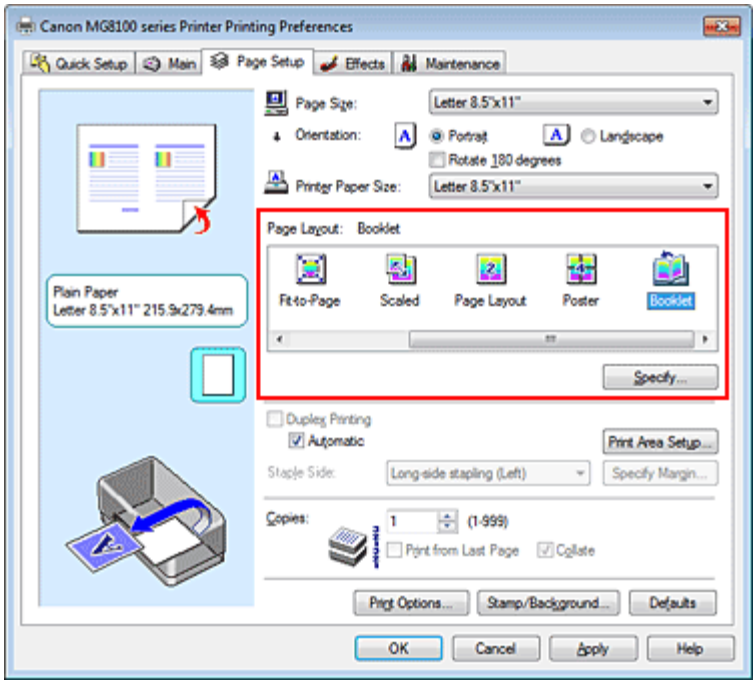


The procedure for performing booklet printing is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set booklet printing

Select Booklet from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the window.

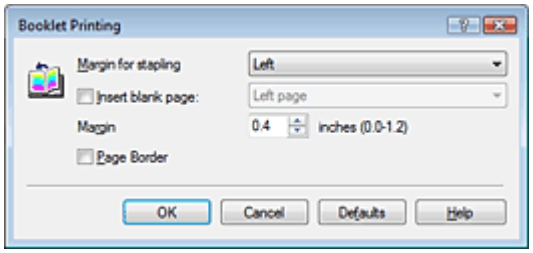


3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.

4. Set the margin for stapling and the margin width

Click Specify... and specify the following settings in the Booklet Printing dialog box, and then click OK.



Margin for stapling
Select which side should the stapling margin be on when the booklet is completed.

Insert blank page
To leave one side of a sheet blank, check the check box, and select the page to be left blank.

Margin
Enter the margin width. The specified width from the center of the sheet becomes the margin width for one page.

Page Border
To print a page border around each document page, check the check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document is automatically printed first on one side of a sheet of paper and then on the opposite side.
When the printing is complete, fold the paper at the center of the margin and make a booklet.

Important

- Booklet cannot be selected when a media type other than Plain Paper, Hagaki A or Hagaki is selected for Media Type on the Main tab.
- When Booklet is selected, Duplex Printing, Staple Side, Print from Last Page, and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable.

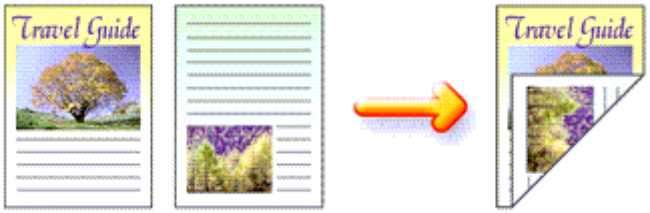
Note

- The stamp and background are not printed on the inserted blank sheets with the Insert blank page function of booklet printing.

Page top

P007

Duplex Printing



The procedure for printing data on both sides of a sheet of paper is as follows:
You can also set duplex printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

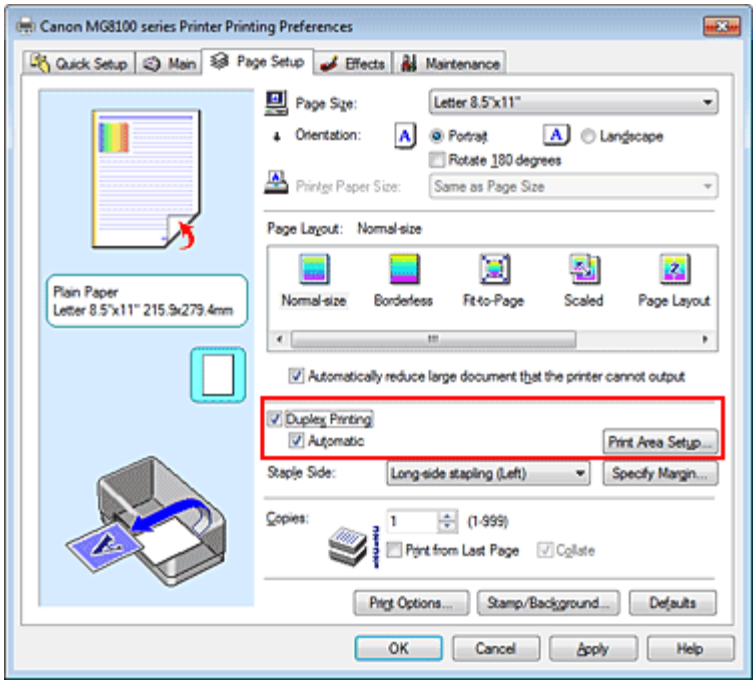
Performing Automatic Duplex Printing

You can perform the duplex printing without having to turn over the paper.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set automatic duplex printing

   Check the Duplex Printing check box on the Page Setup tab and confirm that Automatic is checked.

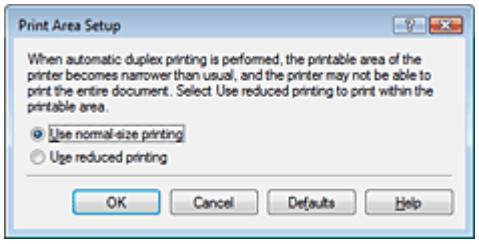


3. Select the layout

   Select Normal-size (or Fit-to-Page, Scaled or Page Layout) from the Page Layout list.

4. Set the print area

   When you perform duplex printing, the print area of the document becomes slightly narrower than usual and the document may not fit on one page.
   Click Print Area Setup..., and select one of the following processing methods.



Use normal-size printing
Print without reducing the page.

Use reduced printing
Reduce the page slightly during printing.

5. Specify the side to be stapled

The machine analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best Staple Side. When you want to change the setting, select another value from the list.

6. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, duplex printing will be started.

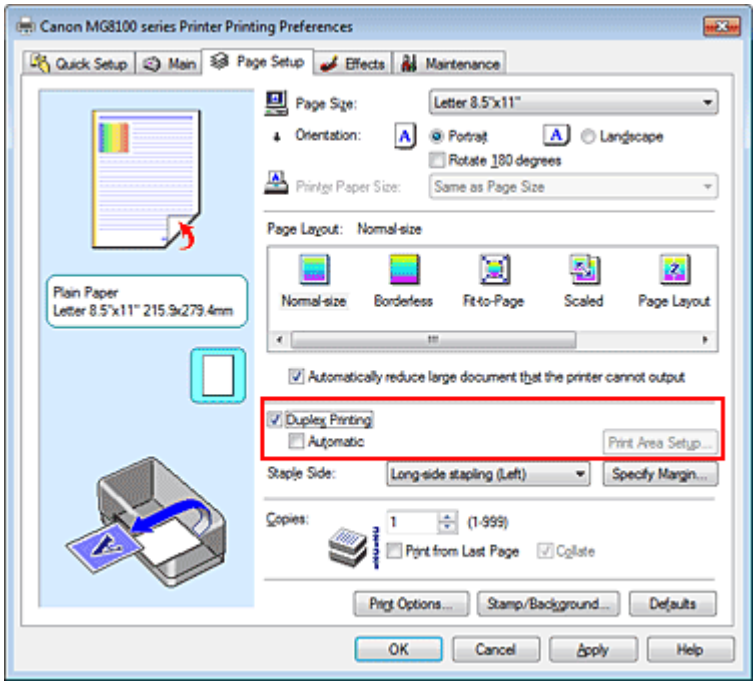
Performing Duplex Printing Manually

You can perform the duplex printing manually.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set duplex printing

Check the Duplex Printing check box and uncheck the Automatic check box on the Page Setup tab.



3. Select the layout

Select Normal-size (or Fit-to-Page, Scaled or Page Layout) from the Page Layout list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

The machine analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best Staple Side. When you want to change the setting, select another value from the list.

5. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document is first printed on one side of a sheet of paper. After one side is printed, reload the paper correctly according to the message.
Then click OK to print the opposite side.

Important

- When a media type other than Plain Paper, Hagaki A or Hagaki is selected from the Media Type list, Duplex Printing appears grayed out and is unavailable.
- When Borderless, Poster or Booklet is selected from the Page Layout list, Duplex Printing and Staple Side appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- After printing the front page, there is an ink drying wait time before starting to print the back page (Operation stops temporarily). Do not touch the paper during the time. You can change the ink drying wait time at Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab.
- When you perform the automatic duplex printing for Hagaki, print an address first and then print your message.

Note

- When performing the automatic duplex printing, do not use any plain paper smaller than A5. Also, do not select any type of paper other than Plain Paper, Hagaki A or Hagaki at Media Type.
- If the back side of the paper becomes smudged during duplex printing, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning in the Maintenance tab.

Related Topic

Cleaning Inside the Machine

Page top

P403

Stamp/Background Printing

Stamp or Background may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

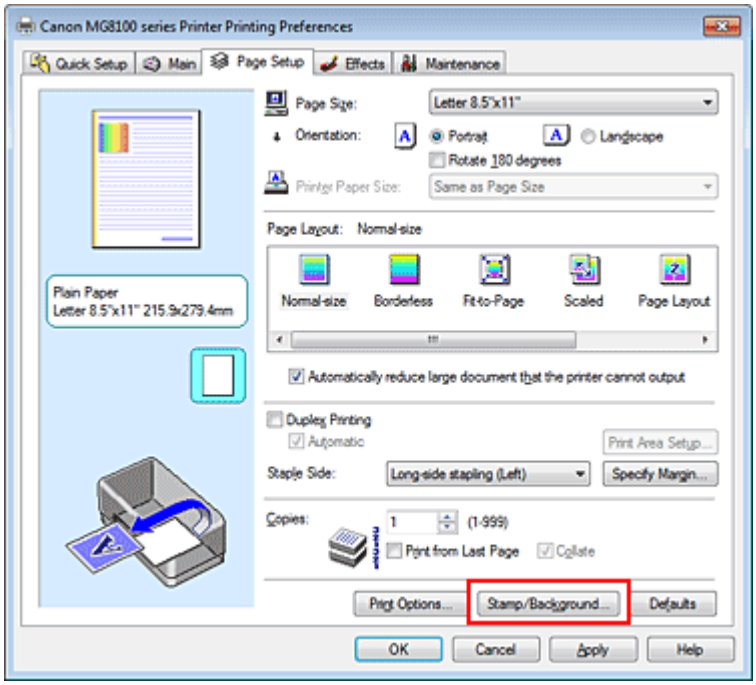
The Stamp function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. It also allows you to print date, time and user name. The Background function allows you to print a light illustration behind the document data.

The procedure for performing stamp/background printing is as follows:

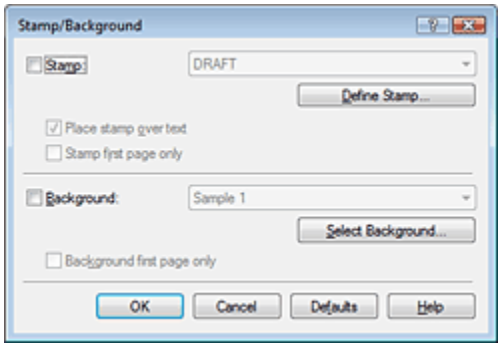
Printing a Stamp

"CONFIDENTIAL," "IMPORTANT," and other stamps that are used often in companies are pre-registered.

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens.



Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the Stamp/Background... button has become the Stamp... button and only the stamp function can be used.

3. Select a stamp

Check the Stamp check box, and select the stamp to be used from the list.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the stamp details

If necessary, specify the following settings, and then click OK.

Define Stamp... button
To change the stamp text, bitmap, or position, click this (see "Registering a Stamp ").

Place stamp over text
To print the stamp on the front of the document, check this check box.

Note

- The stamp is given priority because the stamp is printed over the document data in the sections where the stamp and the document data overlap. When this check box is unchecked, the stamp is printed behind the document data and may be hidden in the overlapping sections depending on the application used.
- Place stamp over text cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.
  When the XPS printer driver is used, the stamp is normally printed in the foreground of the document.

Print semitransparent stamp
Check this check box to print a semi-transparent stamp on the document.
This function is available only when the XPS printer driver is used.

Stamp first page only
To print the stamp only on the first page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified stamp.

Printing a Background

Two bitmap files are pre-registered as samples.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.

3. Select the background

Check the Background check box, and select the background to be used from the list.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the background details

If necessary, complete the following settings, and then click OK.

Select Background... button
To use another background or change the layout or density of a background, click this (see "Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background ").

Background first page only
To print the background only on the first page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified background.

Important

- When Borderless is selected, the Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) button appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Note

- The stamp and background are not printed on blank sheets inserted with the Insert blank page function of booklet printing.

Related Topics

Registering a Stamp
Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background

Page top

P404

Registering a Stamp

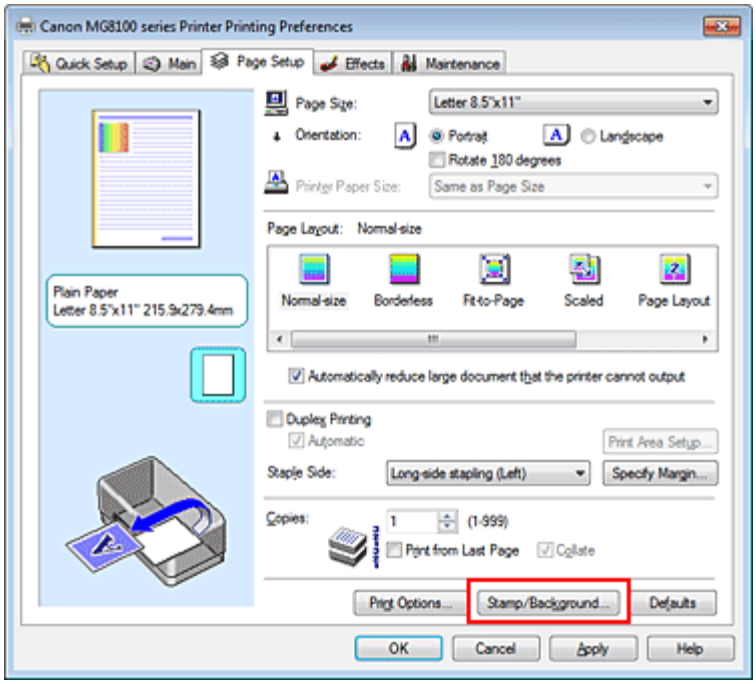
This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

You can create and register a new stamp. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing stamp. Unnecessary stamps can be deleted at any time.

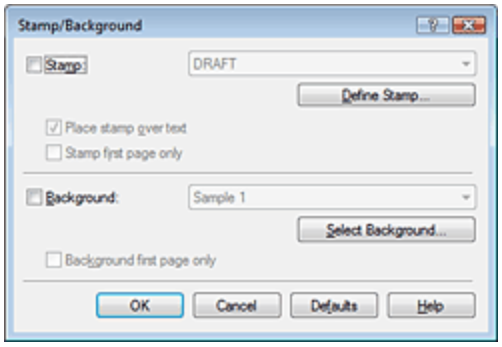
The procedure for registering a new stamp is as follows:

Registering a New Stamp

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens.

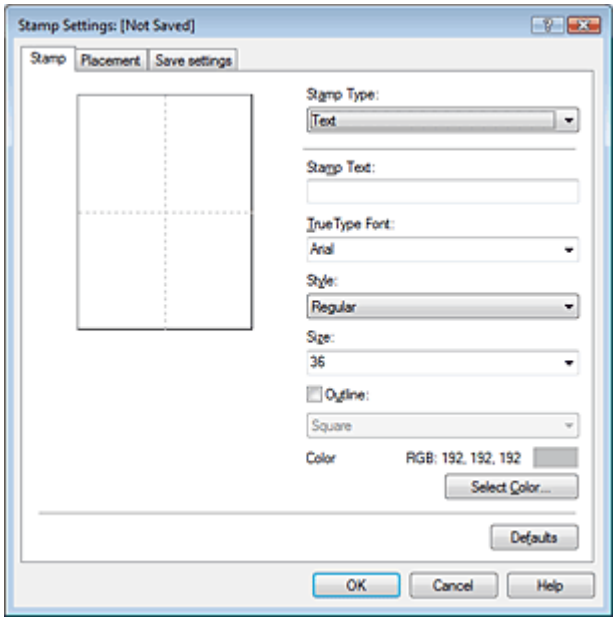


Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the Stamp/Background... button has become the Stamp... button and only the stamp function can be used.

3. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.



4. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

- **Stamp tab**

  Select Text, Bitmap, or Date/Time/User Name that matches your purpose for Stamp Type.

  - For Text registration, the characters must already be entered in Stamp Text. If necessary, change the TrueType Font, Style, Size, and Outline settings. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color....
  - For Bitmap, click Select File... and select the bitmap file (.bmp) to be used. If necessary, change the settings of the Size and Transparent white area.
  - For Date/Time/User Name, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in Stamp Text. If necessary, change the settings of TrueType Font, Style, Size, and Outline. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color....

  Important

  - Stamp Text appears grayed out and is unavailable when Date/Time/User Name is selected.

- **Placement tab**

  Select the stamp position from the Position list. You can also select Custom from the Position list and specify coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.
  You can also change the stamp position by dragging the stamp in the preview window.
  To change the stamp position angle, type a value in the Orientation box directly.

5. Save the stamp

Click the Save settings tab and enter a title in the Title box, and then click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Changing and Registering Some of Stamp Settings

1. Select the stamp for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Stamp check box in the Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box, and then select the title of the stamp to be changed from the Stamp list.

2. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

3. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

4. Overwrite save the stamp

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab.
When you want to save the stamp with a different title, type a new title in the Title box and click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Deleting an Unnecessary Stamp

1. Click Define Stamp... in the Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the stamp to be deleted

Select the title of the stamp you want to delete from the Stamps list on the Save settings tab. Then click Delete.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens again.

Page top

P405

Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background

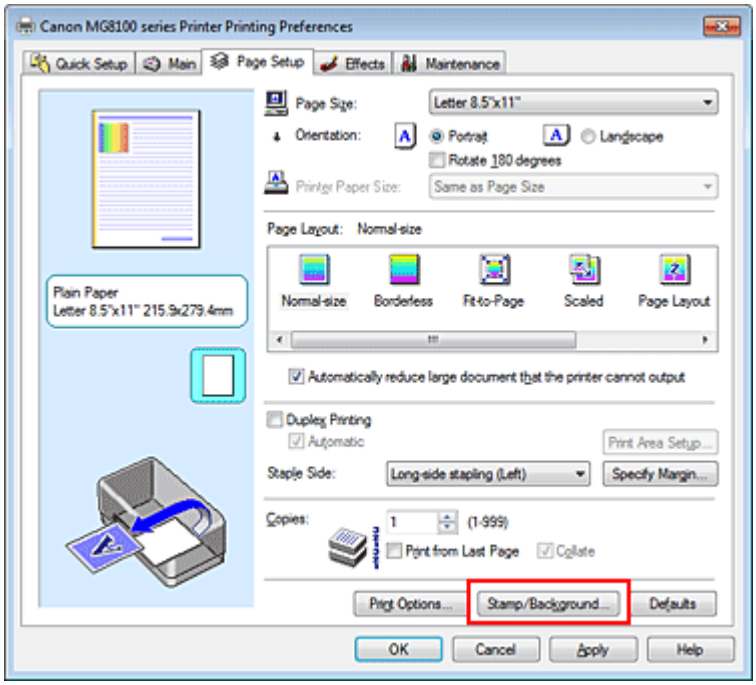
This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

You can select a bitmap file (.bmp) and register it as a new background. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing background. An unnecessary background can be deleted at any time.

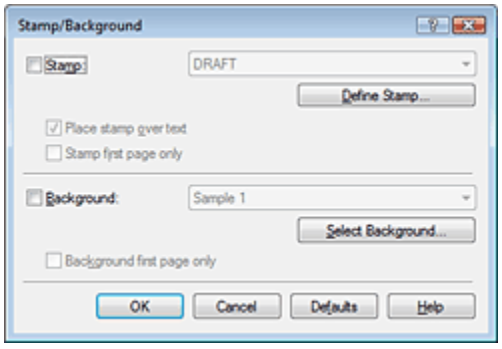
The procedure for registering image data to be used as a background is as follows:

Registering New Background

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



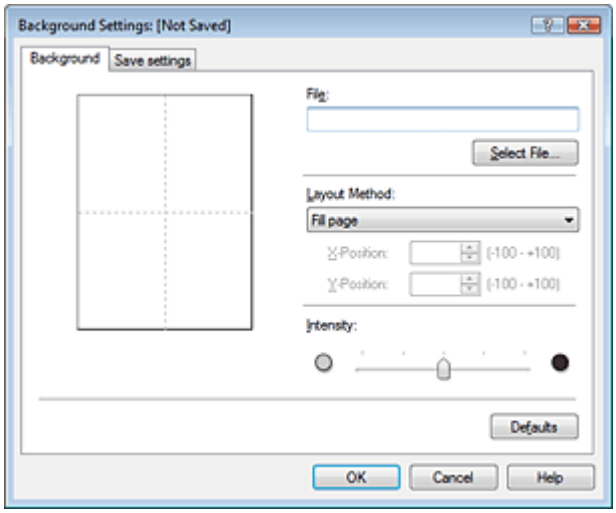
Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the Stamp/Background... button has become the Stamp... button

and Background cannot be used.

3. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.



4. Select the image data to be registered to the background

Click Select File.... Select the target bitmap file (.bmp), and then click Open.

5. Specify the following settings while viewing the preview window

Layout Method
Select how the background image data is to be placed.
When Custom is selected, you can set coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.
You can also change the background position by dragging the image in the preview window.

Intensity
Set the intensity of the background image data with the Intensity slider. To lighten the background, move the slider to the left. To darken the background, move the slider to the right. To print the background at the original bitmap intensity, move the slider to the rightmost position.

6. Save the background

Click the Save settings tab and enter a title in the Title box, and then click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Background list.

Changing and Registering Some Background Settings

1. Select the background for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Background check box in the Stamp/Background dialog box, and then select the title of the background you want to change from the Background list.

2. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

3. Specify the items on the Background tab while viewing the preview window

4. Save the background

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab. When you want to save the background with a different title, enter a new title in the Title box and click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Background list.

Deleting an Unnecessary Background

1. Click Select Background... in the Stamp/Background dialog box

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the background to be deleted

Select the title of the background you want to delete from the Backgrounds list on the Save settings tab, and then click Delete.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.



Page top

P406

Printing an Envelope

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

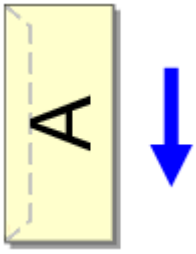
For details on how to load an envelope into the machine, refer to "Loading Paper" in the manual: Basic Guide.

The procedure for performing envelope printing is as follows:

1. Load an envelope into the machine

Fold down the envelope flap.

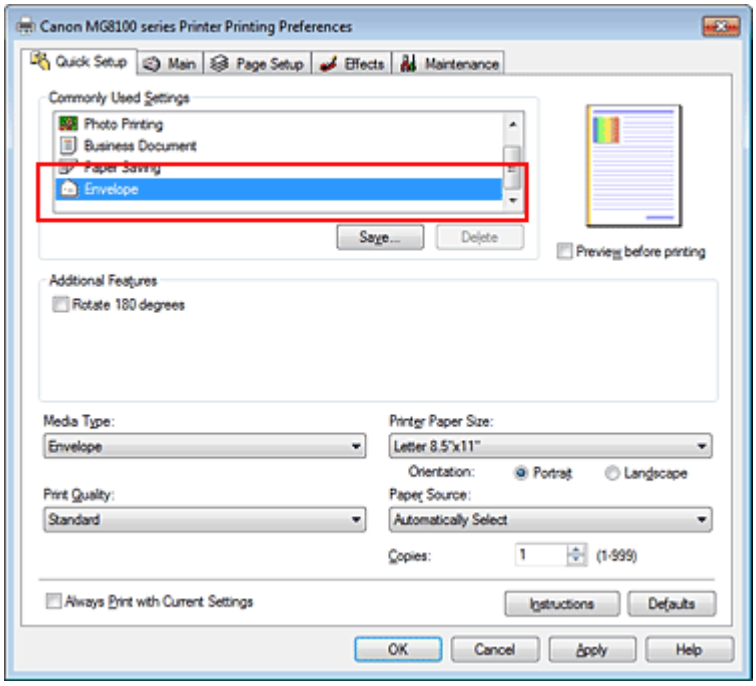
Orient the envelope so that the address side is on top and the flap is on the left, and then load the envelope vertically in the rear tray.



2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Select the media type

Select Envelope from Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab.



4. Select the paper size

When the Envelope Size Setting dialog box is displayed, select Comm.Env. #10, DL Env., Youkei 4

105x235mm, or Youkei 6 98x190mm, and then click OK.

5. Set the orientation

To print the addressee horizontally, select Landscape for Orientation.

6. Select the print quality

Select High or Standard that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the information is printed on the envelope.

Important

- When you execute envelope printing, guide messages are displayed.
  To hide the guide messages, check the Do not show this message again. check box.
  To show the guide again, click the View Printer Status... button on the Maintenance tab, and start the Canon IJ Status Monitor.
  Then click Envelope Printing from Display Guide Message of the Option menu, and change the setting to on.

Page top

P008

Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose

In this machine, there are two paper sources, a rear tray and a cassette.
You can facilitate printing by selecting a paper source setting that matches your print conditions or purpose.

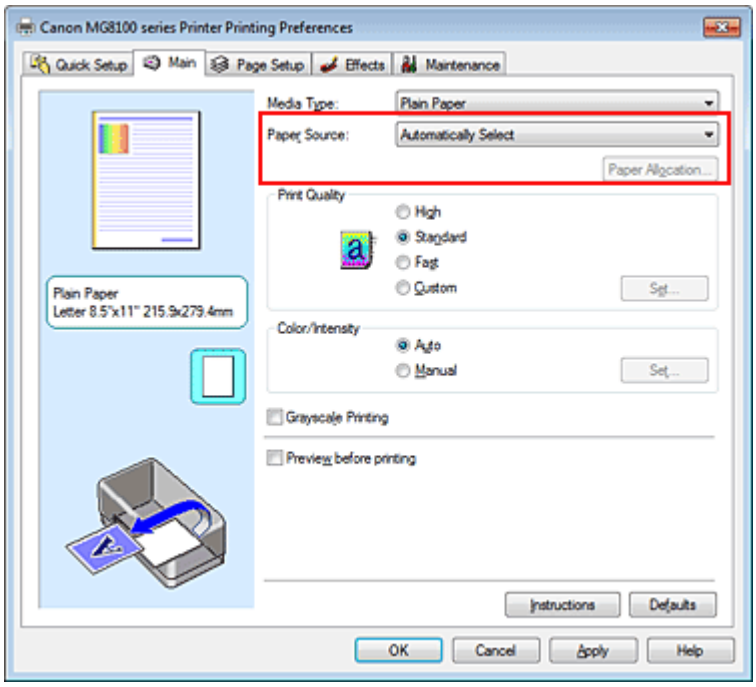
The procedure for setting paper source is as follows:

You can also set the paper source on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the paper source

From the Paper Source list on the Main tab, select the paper source that matches your purpose.



Automatically Select
Plain paper whose Page Size is Letter 8.5"x11", A5, A4, or B5 is fed from the cassette. Other sizes of plain paper and paper types other than plain paper are fed from the rear tray.

Rear Tray
Paper is always fed from the rear tray.

Cassette
Paper is always fed from the cassette.

Important

- Plain paper that is not Letter 8.5"x11", A5, A4, or B5 and paper types other than plain paper cannot be fed from the cassette.

Continuous Autofeed
When plain paper runs out in the specified paper source, the printer automatically switches the paper source.

When printing a large volume of data, load plain paper of the same size in both the rear tray and the cassette. The printer then automatically switches the paper source when paper runs out in one paper source, thus reducing the work of reloading paper.

Important

- Continuous Autofeed is unavailable when paper other than Plain Paper is selected for Media Type.
- Since the printer feeds paper from the paper source that was being used the last time Continuous Autofeed was selected and printing ended, load the same paper in both the rear tray and the cassette.

Paper Allocation
When the media type for the print data is plain paper and the paper size matches the paper allocation setting, the printer automatically feeds paper from the cassette. If not, the printer feeds paper from the rear tray.

To change the paper allocation settings, click Paper Allocation..., specify the Paper Size to be loaded in the cassette, and then click OK.

When you load frequently used plain paper in the cassette, the printer feeds other types of paper from the rear tray, thus reducing the work of reloading paper.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the printer uses the specified paper source to print the data.

Page top

P009

Displaying the Print Results before Printing

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

You can display and check the print result before printing.

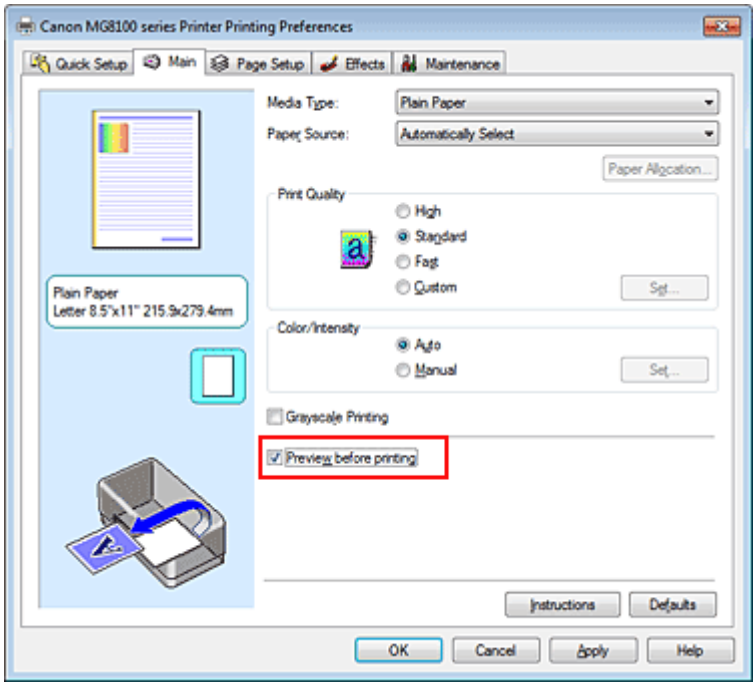
The procedure for displaying the print result before printing is as follows:

You can also set the print results display on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the preview

Check the Preview before printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the Canon IJ Preview opens and displays the print results.

Related Topic

Canon IJ Preview

Page top

P010

Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

You can specify the height and width of paper when its size cannot be selected from the Page Size. Such a paper size is called "custom size."

The procedure for specifying a custom size is as follows:

You can also set a custom size in Printer Paper Size on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Set the custom size in the application software

On your application's paper size feature, specify the custom size.

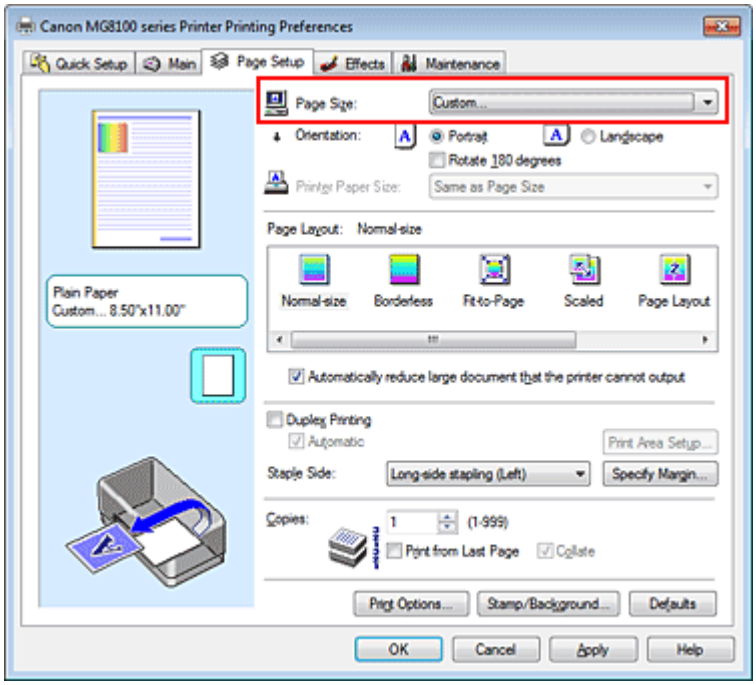
Important

- When the application software that created the document has a function for specifying the height and width values, use the application software to set the values. When the application software does not have such a function or if the document does not print correctly, use the printer driver to set the values.

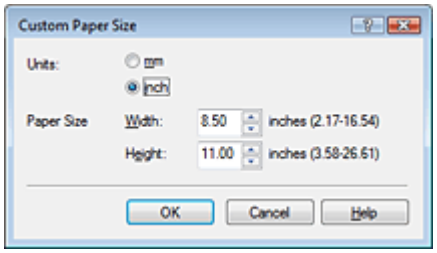
2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Select the paper size

Select Custom... for Page Size on the Page Setup tab.



The Custom Paper Size dialog box opens.



4. Set the custom paper size

Specify Units, and enter the Width and Height of the paper to be used. Then click OK.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified paper size.

Page top

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Adjusting Tone
- Specifying Color Correction
- Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
- Interpreting the ICC Profile
- Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
- Printing with ICC Profiles
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast
- Simulating an Illustration
- Representing Image Data with a Single Color
- Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
- Smoothing Jagged Outlines
- Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
- Reducing Photo Noise

Page top

P011

Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method

You can individually set the combined representation method for the print quality level and the halftoning method.

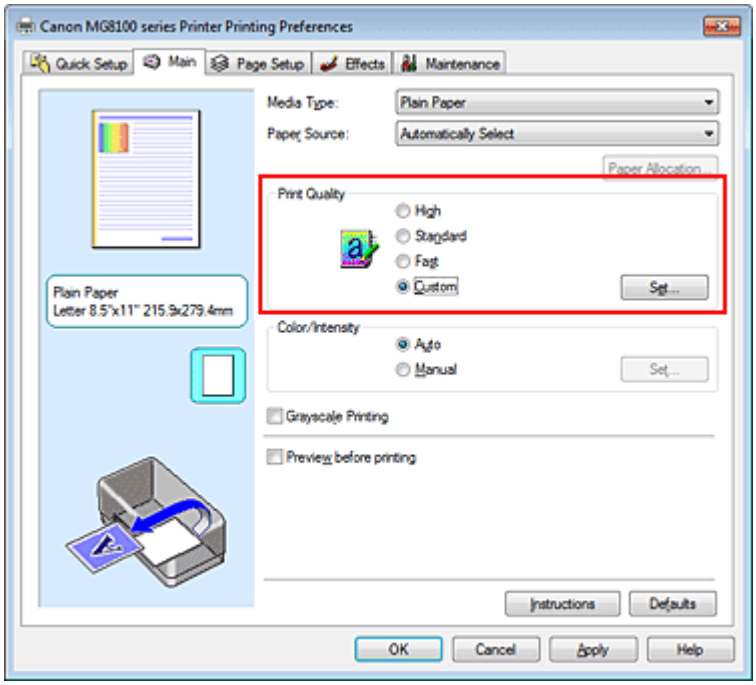


The procedure for setting the print quality level and the halftoning method is as follows:

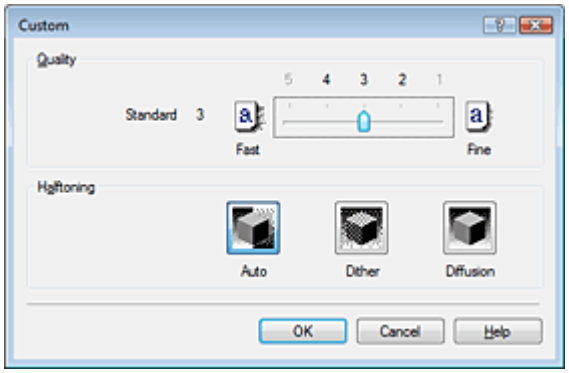
1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the print quality

   Select Custom for Print Quality on the Main tab, and click Set....



   The Custom dialog box opens.



3. Setting the print quality and halftone expression method

Move the Quality slider to select the quality level.
Select the expression method in Halftoning and click OK.

Note

- Halftones refer to color shades between the darkest color and the brightest color.
  The printer replaces the color shades with a collection of small dots to express the halftones.
  When you select Auto, the data is printed with the optimal halftoning method for the selected print quality. Dither arranges the dots according to fixed rules to express the halftones.
  Diffusion places the dots randomly to express the halftones.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the image data is printed with the selected print quality level and halftoning method.

Important

- Certain quality levels and halftoning methods cannot be selected depending on the settings of Media Type.

Note

- If part of an object is not printed, selecting Diffusion for Halftoning may solve the problem.

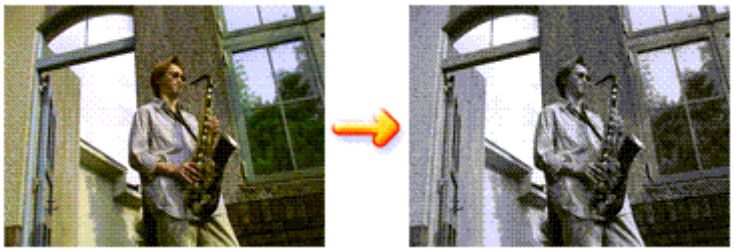
Related Topics

- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

P012

Printing a Color Document in Monochrome



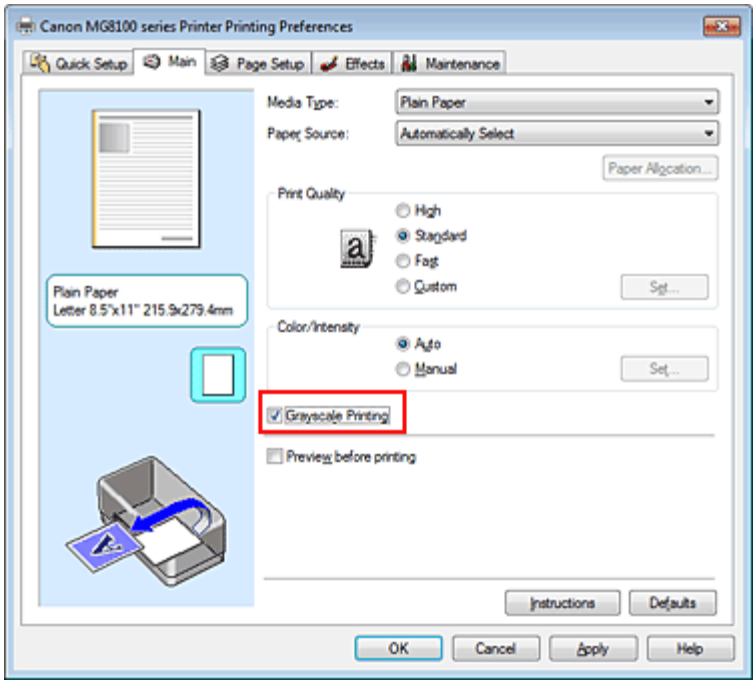
The procedure for printing a color document in monochrome is as follows:

You can also set a grayscale printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set grayscale printing

Check the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document is converted to grayscale data. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box is checked, the printer driver processes image data as sRGB data. In this case, actual colors printed may differ from those in the original image data. When using the grayscale printing function to print Adobe RGB data, convert the data to sRGB data using an application software.

Note

- During Grayscale Printing, gray ink or color inks may be used as well as black ink.

Related Topic

Adjusting Tone

Page top

P045

Adjusting Tone

When printing black and white photos, you can produce the cooling effects of cool colors and the warming effects of warm colors.



Tone is set to Cool | Tone is set to standard | Tone is set to Warm

The procedure for adjusting tone is as follows:

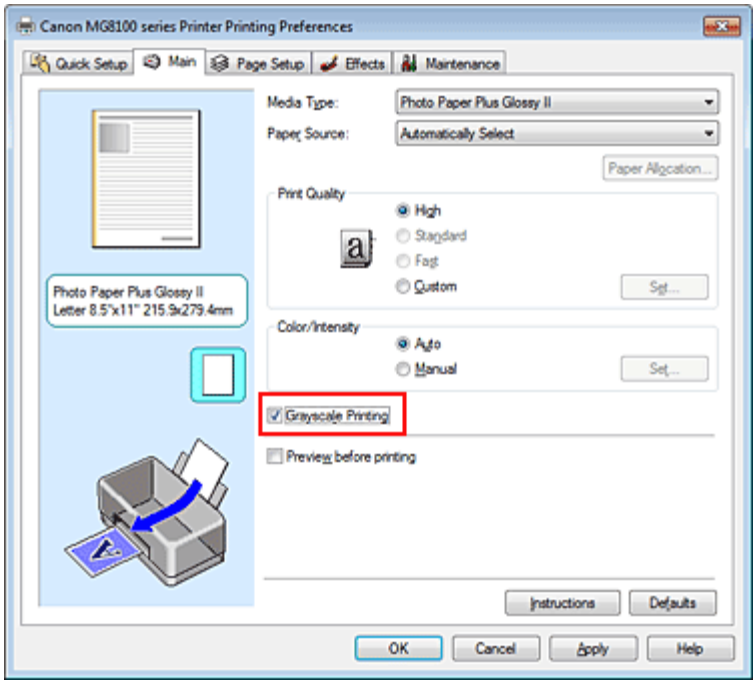
1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

For Media Type on the Main tab, select Photo Paper Plus Glossy II, Photo Paper Pro Platinum, Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss, Fine Art "Photo Rag" or Other Fine Art Paper.

3. Set grayscale printing

Check the Grayscale Printing check box.



4. Select the manual color adjustment

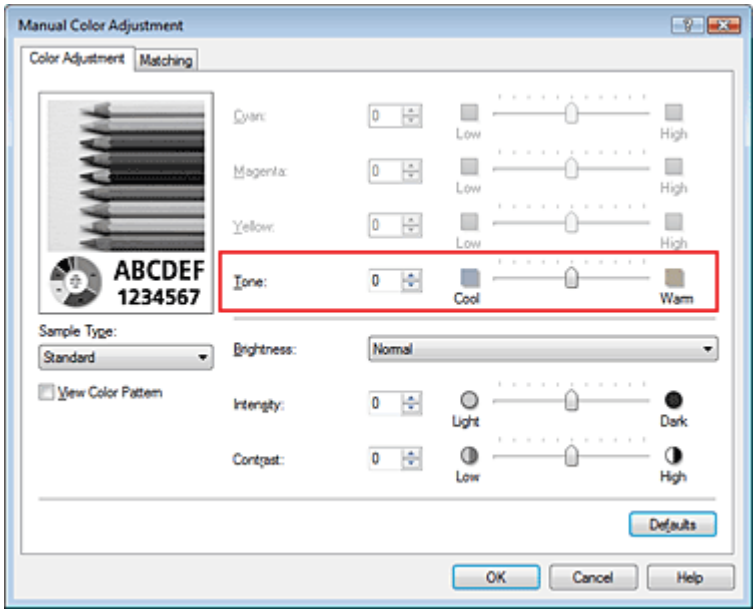
Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....

The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Adjusting monochrome tones

Moving the Tone slider to the right brings out the warm colors (Warm), and moving it to the left brings out the cool colors (Cool).
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting the tones, click OK.



6. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the color document is converted to grayscale data with adjusted tones. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

Related Topics

- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

P013

Specifying Color Correction

You can specify the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed.
Normally, the printer driver adjusts the colors by using Canon Digital Photo Color so that data is printed with color tints that most people prefer. This method is suitable for printing sRGB data.

When you want to print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data effectively, select ICM or ICC Profile Matching. When you want to use an application software to specify a printing ICC profile, select None.

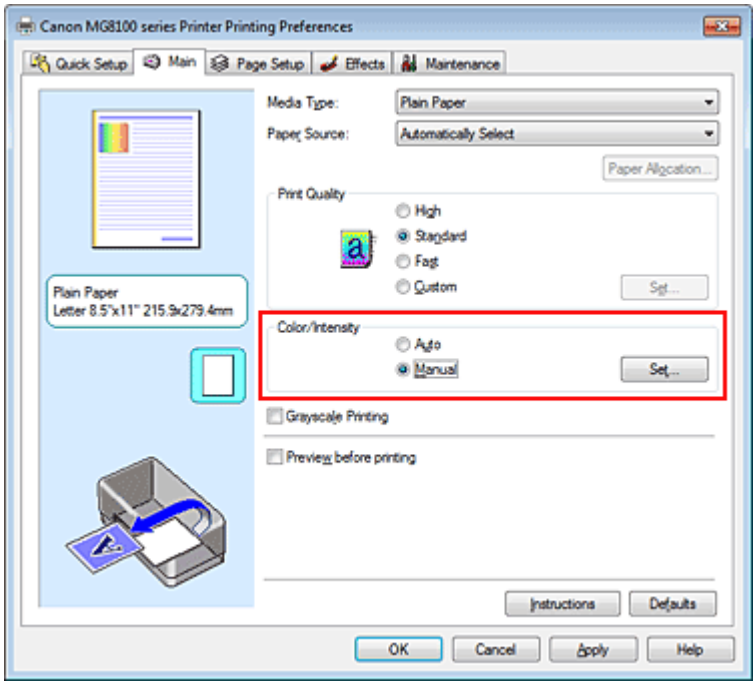
The procedure for specifying color correction is as follows:

You can also set color correction on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

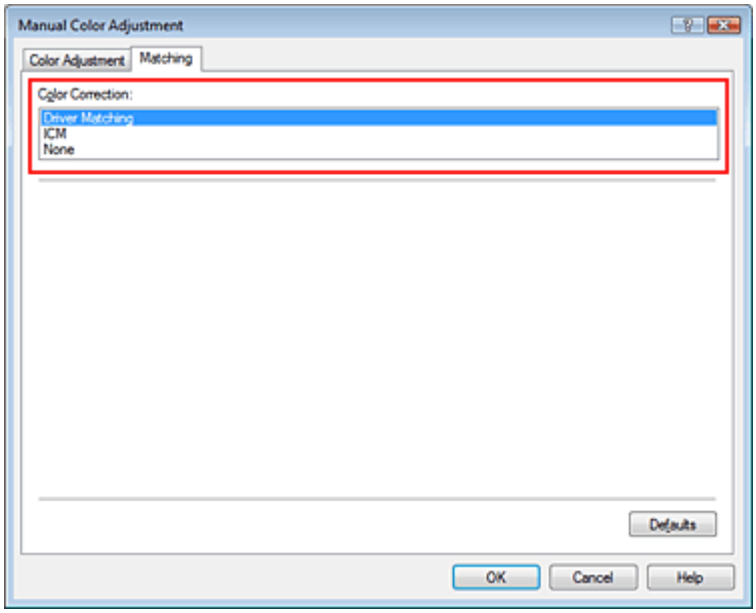
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, select Color Correction setting that matches your purpose from the following, and click OK.



Driver Matching
By using Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer.
Driver Matching is the default setting for color correction.

ICM/ICC Profile Matching
Adjusts the colors by using an ICC profile when printing.
Specify the input profile to be used.

None
The printer driver does not perform color correction. Select this value when you are specifying an individually created printing ICC profile or a printing ICC profile for special Canon paper in an application software to print data.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified color correction method.

Important

- When ICM is disabled in the application software, ICM is unavailable for Color Correction and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.
- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Color Correction appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Related Topics

- Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
- Interpreting the ICC Profile
- Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
- Printing with ICC Profiles

Page top

P014

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data

When people print images taken with digital cameras, they sometimes feel that the printed color tones differ from those of actual image or those displayed on the monitor.
To get the print results as close as possible to the desired color tones, you must select a printing method that is best suited to the application software used or to your purpose.

Color Management

Devices such as digital cameras, scanners, monitors, and printers handle color differently. Color management (color matching) is a method that manages device-dependent "colors" as a common color space. For Windows, a color management system called "ICM" is built into the operating system.
Adobe RGB and sRGB are popularly used as common color spaces. Adobe RGB has a wider color space than sRGB.

ICC profiles convert device-dependent "colors" into a common color space. By using an ICC profile and carrying out color management, you can draw out the color space of the image data within the color reproduction area that the printer can express.

Selecting a Printing Method Suited to the Image Data

The recommended printing method depends on the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data or the application software to be used. There are two typical printing methods. Check the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data and the application software to be used, and then select the printing method suited to your purpose.

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

Describes the procedure for printing sRGB data by using the color correction function of the printer driver.

- **To print using Canon Digital Photo Color**

  The printer prints data with color tints that most people prefer, reproducing colors of the original image data and producing three-dimensional effects and high, sharp contrasts.

- **To print by directly applying editing and touch-up results of an application software**

  When printing the data, the printer brings out subtle color difference between dark and light areas, while leaving the darkest and lightest areas intact.
  When printing the data, the printer applies fine adjustment results, such as brightness adjustments made with an application software.

Printing with ICC Profiles

Describes the procedure for printing by using the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB effectively.
You can print with a common color space by setting up the application software and the printer driver so that the color management matches the input ICC profile of the image data.
The method for setting up the printer driver differs depending on the application software to be used.

Related Topic

Interpreting the ICC Profile

P015

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

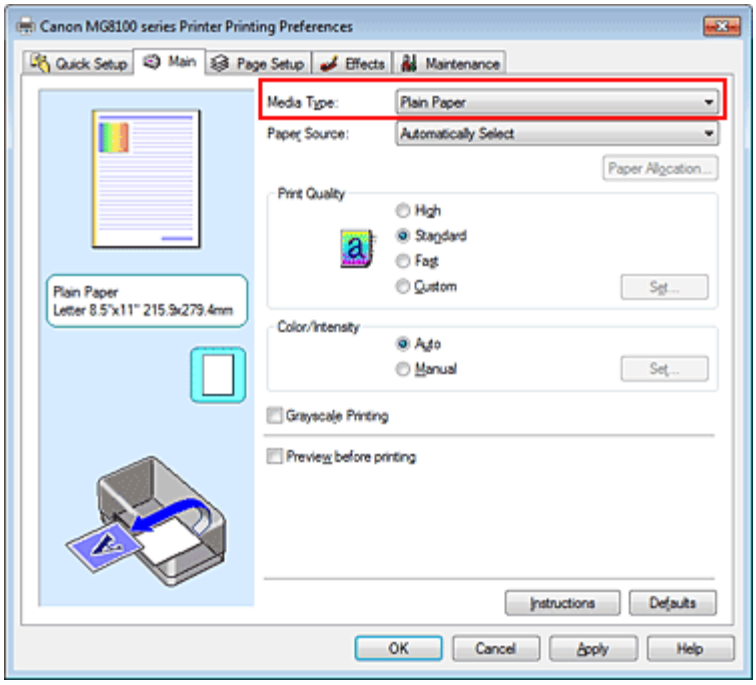
You can specify the color correction function of the printer driver to print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer through the use of Canon Digital Photo Color.
When printing from an application software that can identify ICC profiles and allows you to specify them, use a printing ICC profile in the application software, and select settings for color management.

The procedure for adjusting colors with the printer driver is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

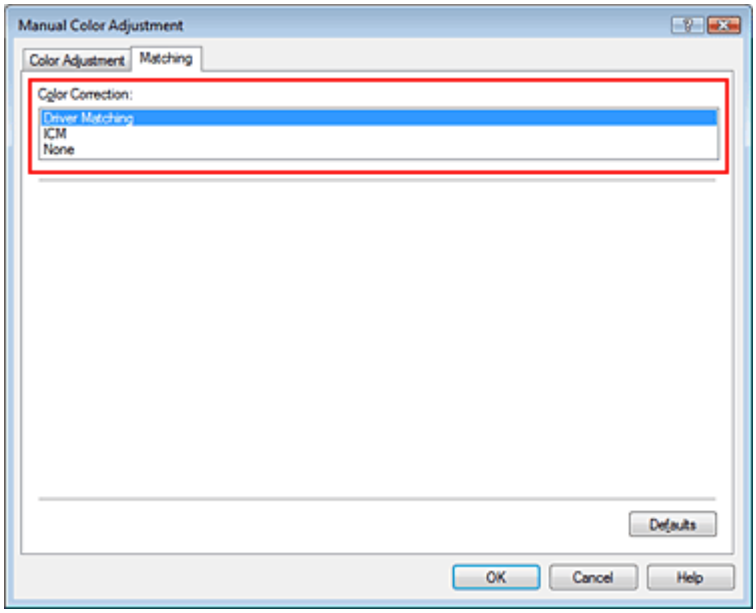
For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select Driver Matching for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the printer driver adjusts the colors when printing the data.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

P016

Printing with ICC Profiles

When the image data has a specified input ICC profile, you can print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the data effectively.

The printer driver setting procedure varies depending on the application software used to print.

Specify an ICC Profile from the Application Software and Print the Data

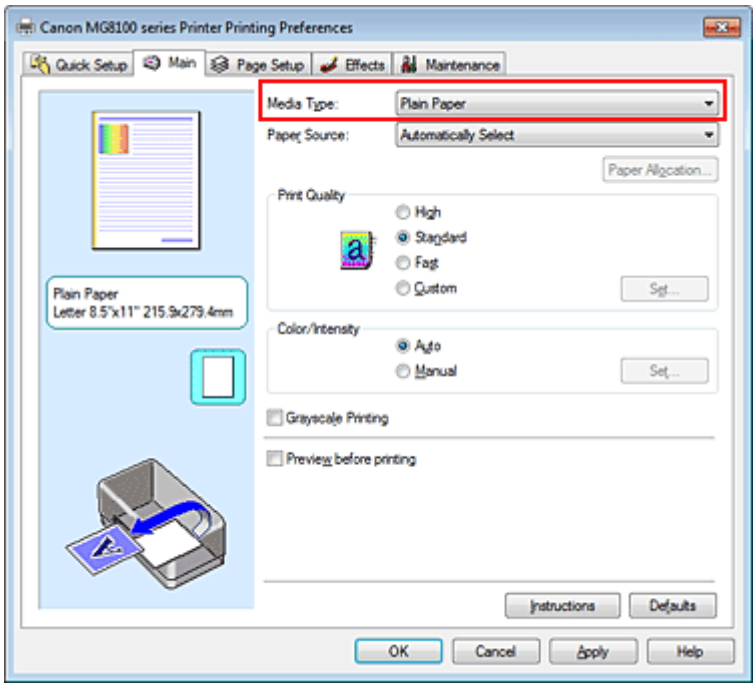
When you print the editing and touch-up results of Adobe Photoshop, Canon Digital Photo Professional, or any application software that allows you to specify input and printing ICC profiles, you print by effectively using the color space of the input ICC profile specified in the image data.

To use this printing method, use your application software to select color management items and specify an input ICC profile and a printing ICC profile in the image data.
Even if you print using a printing ICC profile that you created yourself or one for special Canon paper from your application software, be sure to select color management items from your application software.
For instructions, refer to the manual of the application software you are using.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

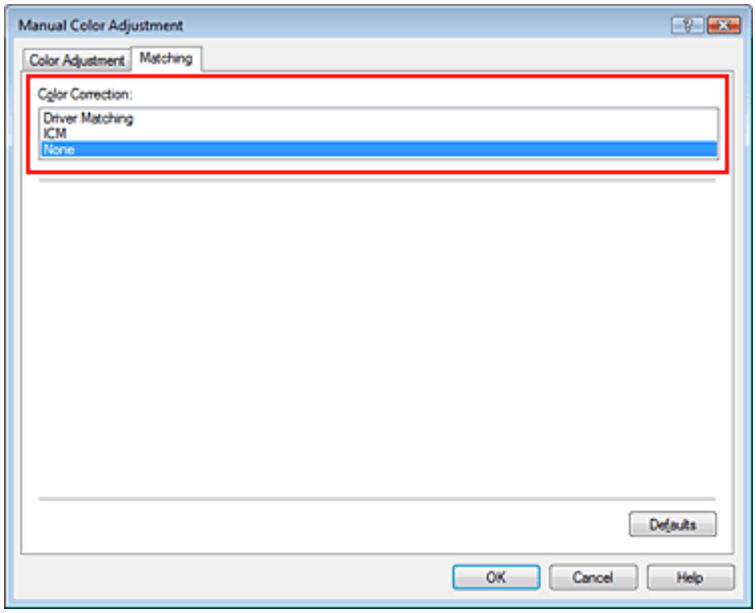
For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select None for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

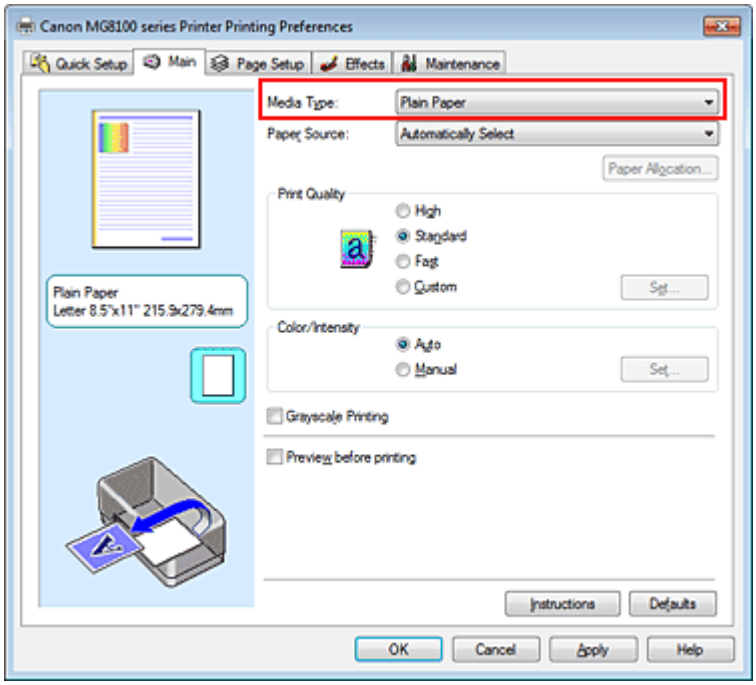
Specify an ICC Profile with the Printer Driver, and then Print

Print from an application software that cannot identify input ICC profiles or does allow you to specify one by using the color space of the input ICC profile (sRGB) found in the data. When printing Adobe RGB data, you can print the data with the Adobe RGB color space even if the application software does not support Adobe RGB.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

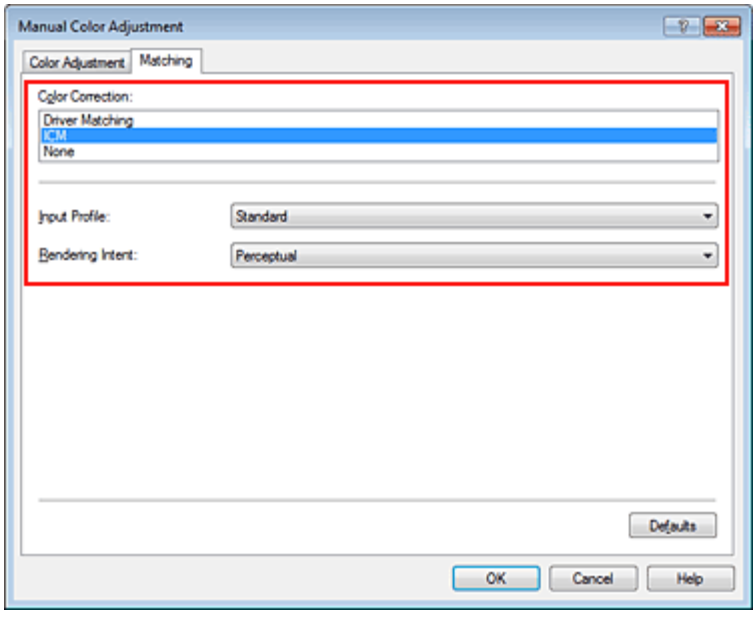
For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select ICM or ICC Profile Matching for Color Correction.



6. Select the input profile

Select an Input Profile that matches the color space of the image data.

- **For sRGB data or data without an input ICC profile:**

  Select Standard.

- **For Adobe RGB data:**

Select Adobe RGB (1998).

Important

- When the application software specifies an input profile, the input profile setting of the printer driver becomes invalid.
- When no input ICC profiles are installed on your computer, Adobe RGB (1998) will not be displayed. You can install ICC profiles from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the machine.

7. Select the rendering intent

Select the coloring adjustment method in Rendering Intent.

- **Saturation**

  This method reproduces images even more vividly than the Perceptual method.

- **Perceptual**

  This method reproduces images by focusing on color tints that most people prefer. Select this method to print photos.

- **Relative Colorimetric**

  When image data is converted to the color space of the printer, this method converts the image data so the color reproduction approximates the shared color regions. Select this method to print image data with colors that are close to the original colors.

- **Absolute Colorimetric**

  When Relative Colorimetric is selected, white spots are reproduced as white spots of the paper (background color). However, when Absolute Colorimetric is selected, how the white spots are reproduced depends on the image data.

Important

- When Windows XP SP2 or Windows XP SP3 is used, this function is disabled.

8. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

9. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast



Page top

P017

Adjusting Color Balance

You can adjust the color tints when printing.
Since this function adjusts color balance of the output by changing the ink ratios of each color, it changes the total color balance of the document. Use the application software when you want to change the color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only when you want to adjust the color balance slightly.
The following sample shows the case when color balance is used to intensify cyan and to diminish yellow so that the overall colors are more uniform.




No adjustment Adjust color balance

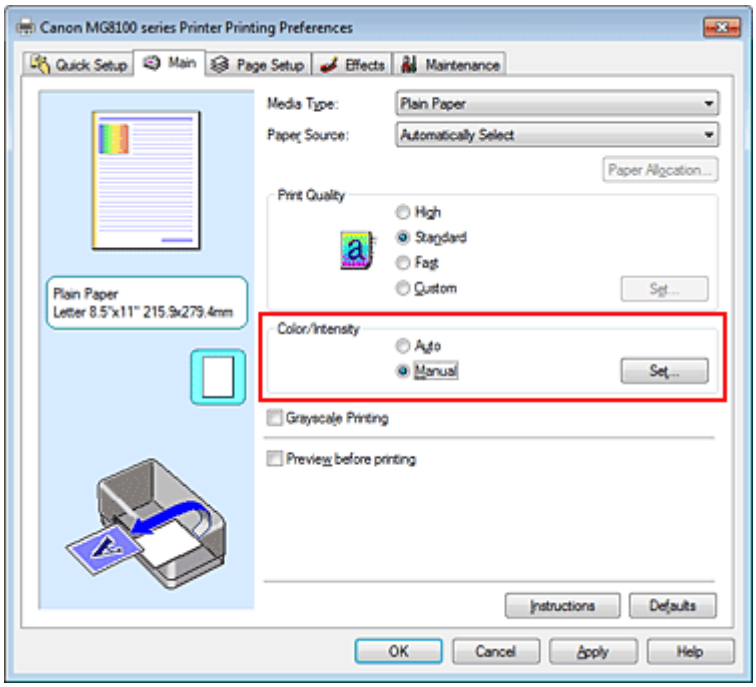
The procedure for adjusting color balance is as follows:

You can also set color balance on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....

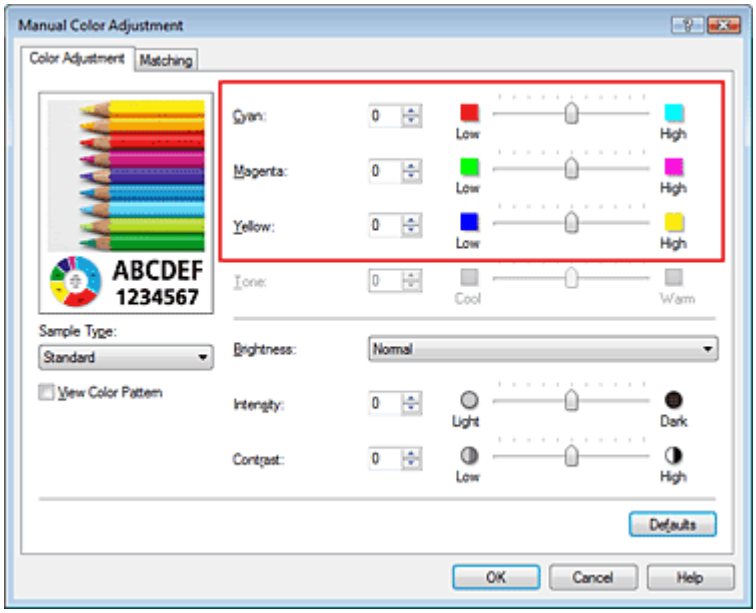


The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust color balance

There are individual sliders for Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow. Each color becomes stronger when the corresponding slider is moved to the right, and becomes weaker when the corresponding slider is moved to the left. For example, when cyan becomes weaker, the color red becomes stronger.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the document is printed with the adjusted color balance.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

P018

Adjusting Brightness

You can change the brightness of the overall image data during printing.
This function does not change pure white or pure black but it changes the brightness of the intermediate colors.
The following sample shows the print result when the brightness setting is changed.


Light is selected


Normal is selected


Dark is selected

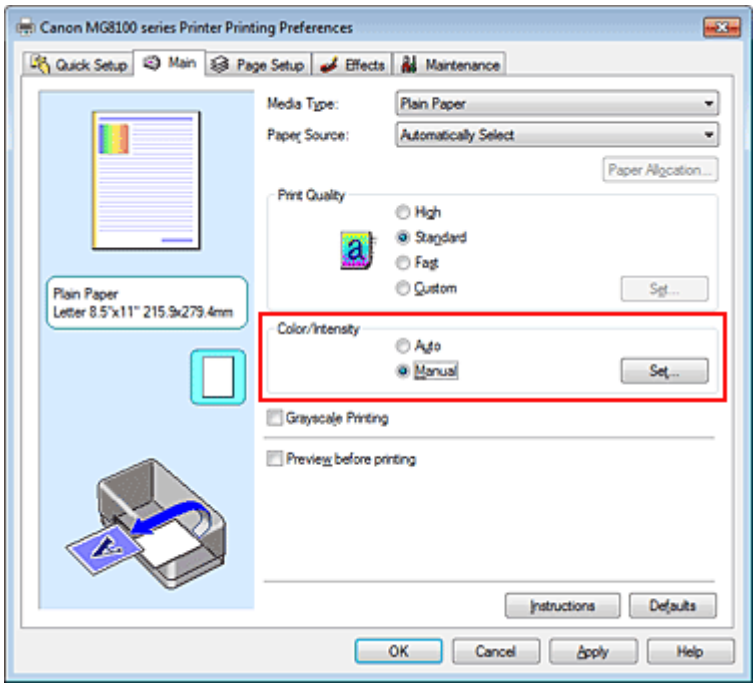
The procedure for adjusting brightness is as follows:

You can also set brightness on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

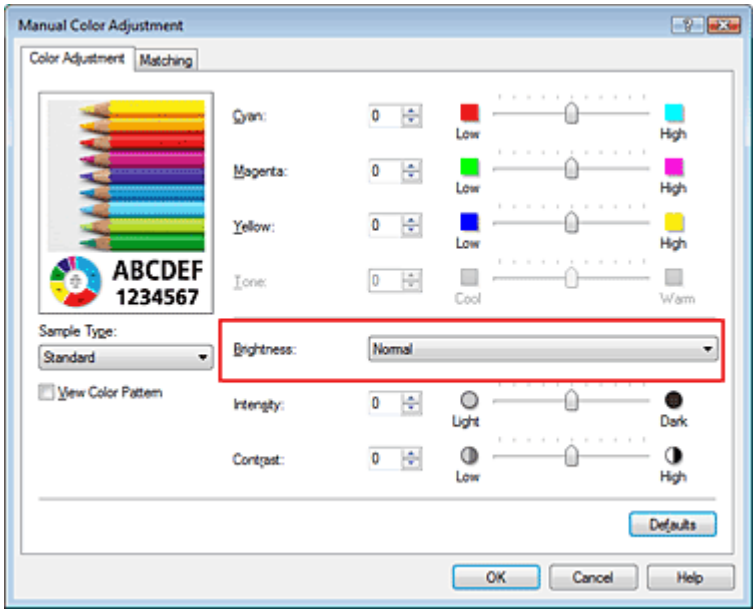
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Specify the brightness

Select Light, Normal, or Dark for Brightness, and click OK. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed at the specified brightness.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

P019

Adjusting Intensity

You can dilute (brighten) or intensify (darken) the colors of the overall image data during printing.
The following sample shows the case when the intensity is increased so that all colors become more intense when the image data is printed.


No adjustment


Higher intensity

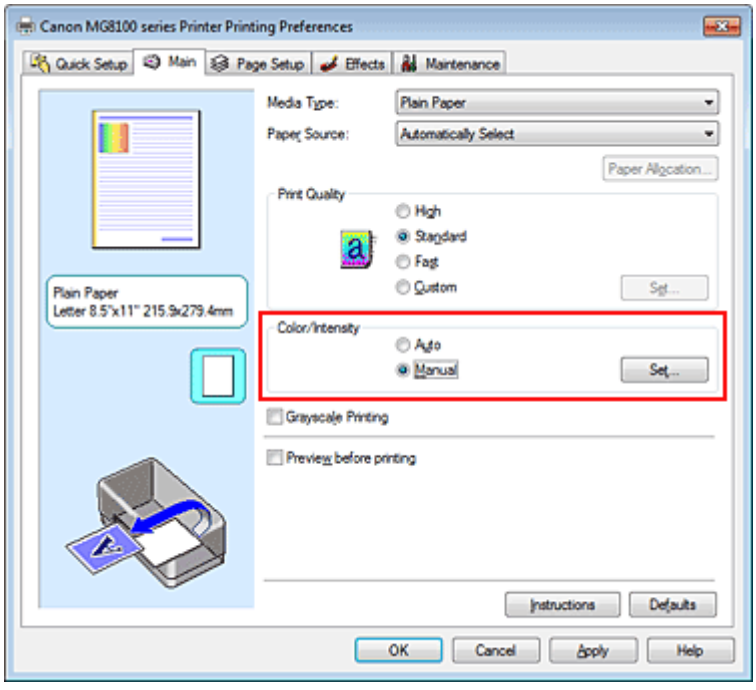
The procedure for adjusting intensity is as follows:

You can also set intensity on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity on the Main tab, and click Set....

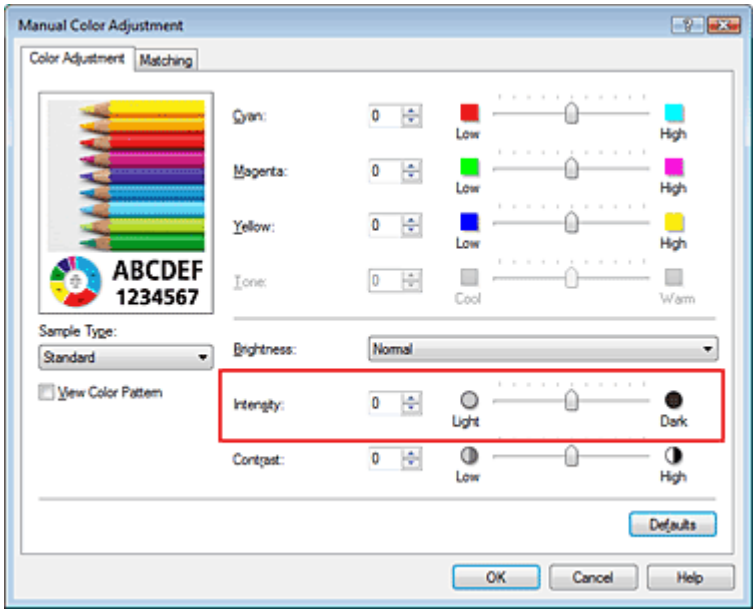


The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust intensity

Moving the Intensity slider to the right intensifies (darkens) the colors. Moving the slider to the left dilutes (brightens) the colors.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the image data is printed with the adjusted intensity.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

P020

Adjusting Contrast

You can adjust the image contrast during printing.
To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.


No adjustment


Adjust the contrast

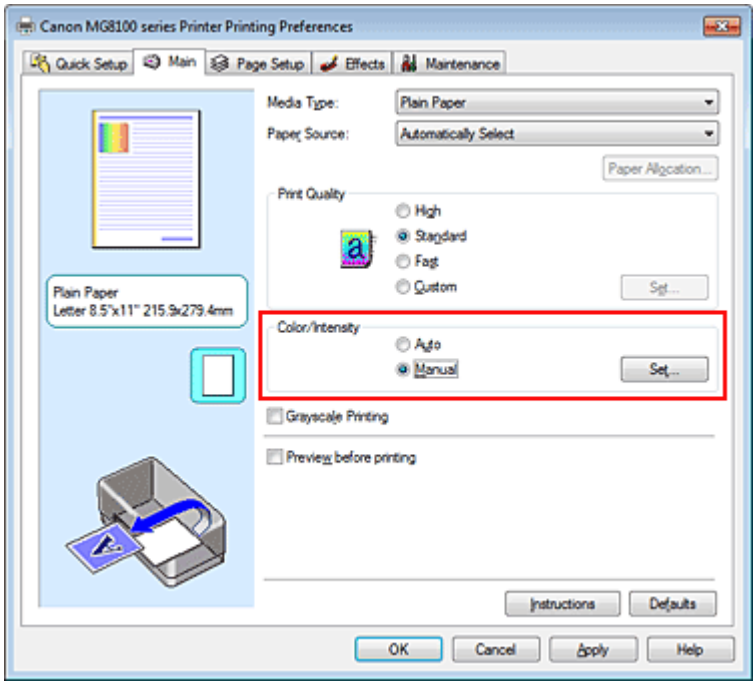
The procedure for adjusting contrast is as follows:

You can also set contrast on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....

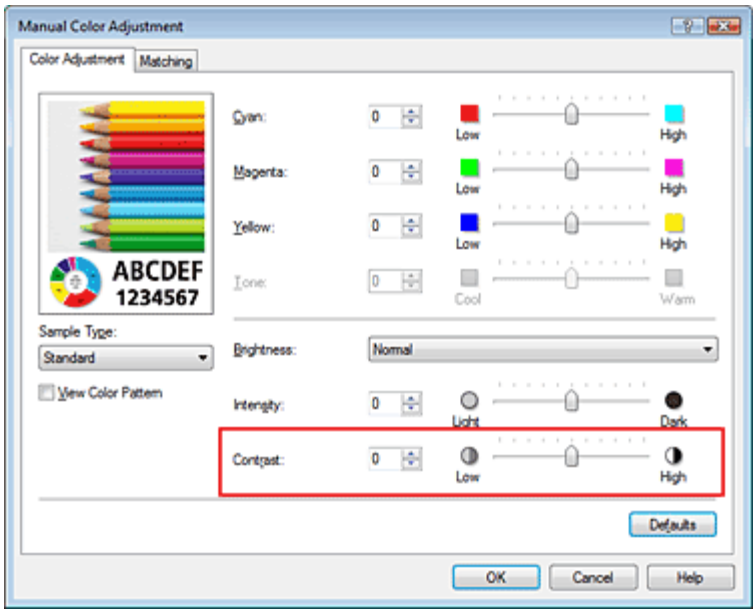


The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust the contrast

Moving the Contrast slider to the right increases the contrast, and moving it to the left decreases the contrast.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the image is printed with the adjusted contrast.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity

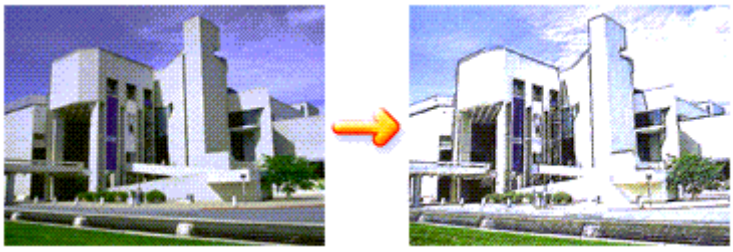
Page top

P021

Simulating an Illustration

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

With the Simulate Illustration function, you can print full-color or 256-color image data so that it looks like a hand-drawn illustration. This function adds different effects to the original profile and colors.

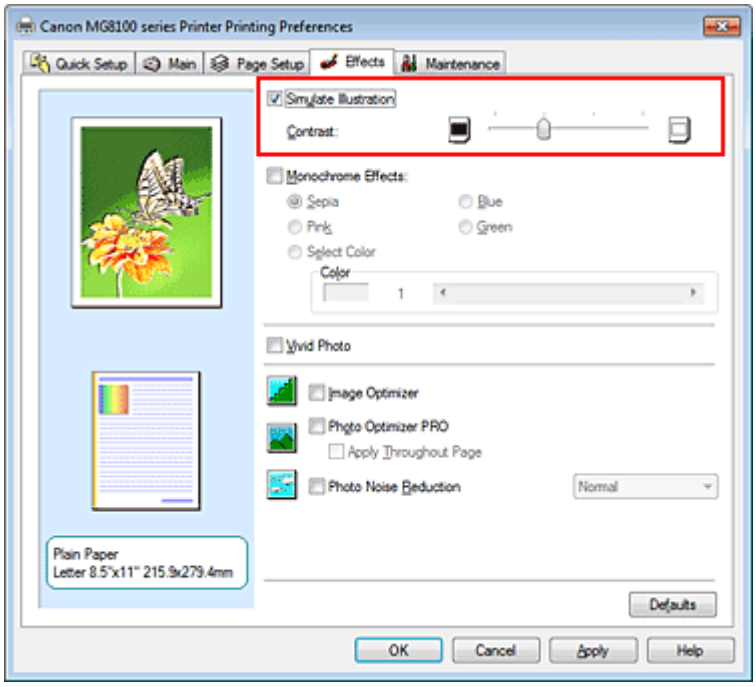


The procedure for performing Simulate Illustration is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the Simulate Illustration

If necessary, check the Simulate Illustration check box on the Effects tab, and adjust the Contrast. Moving the slider to the right lightens the image data and moving the slider to the left darkens the image data.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the image will be printed so that it looks hand-drawn.

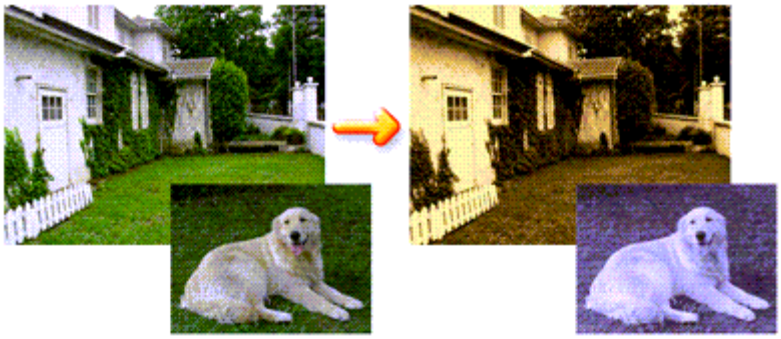
Page top

P022

Representing Image Data with a Single Color

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

With the Monochrome Effects function, you can benefit from coloring effects such as changing a photograph to a sepia tone image.

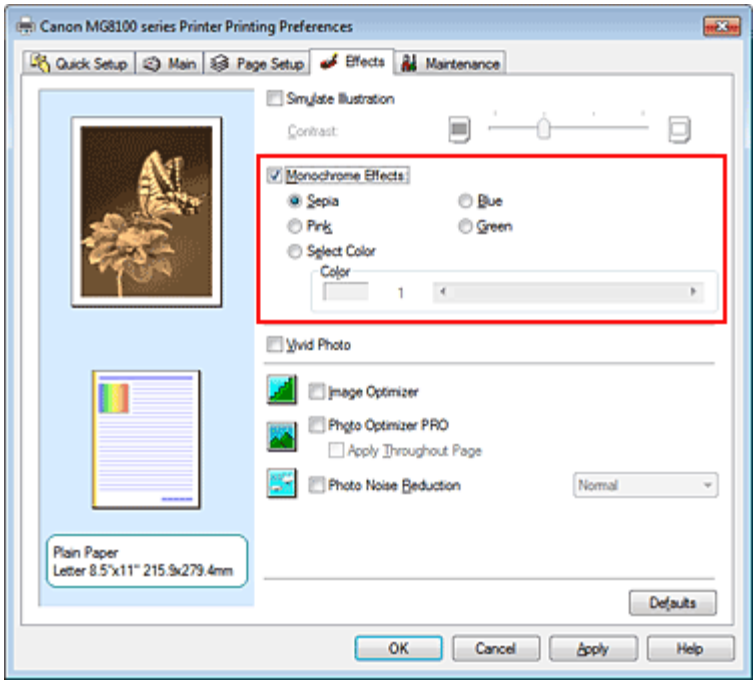


The procedure for performing Monochrome Effects is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Monochrome Effects

Check the Monochrome Effects check box on the Effects tab and select your desired color.
When you use Select Color, move the Color slider to specify the color you want.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the image will be printed with a single color.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Monochrome Effects appears grayed out and is unavailable.

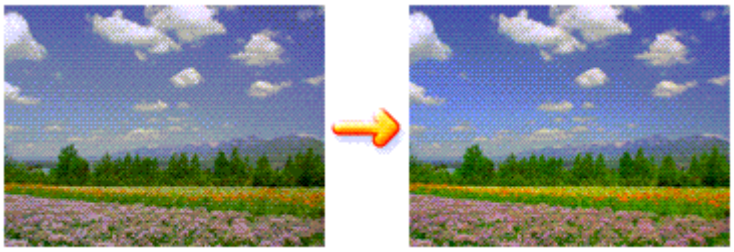
Page top

P023

Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

The Vivid Photo function allows you to print image data with vivid colors.
The vivid photo function emphasizes the colors in background sceneries while maintaining the human skin color natural. By using this function, you can make vivid hues appear even more vivid.



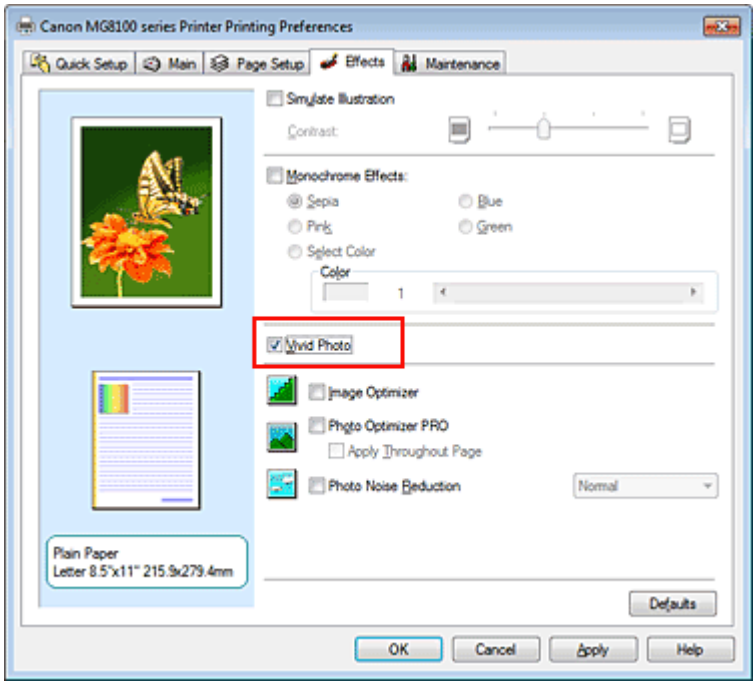
The procedure for performing Vivid Photo is as follows:

You can also set vivid photos on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Vivid Photo

Check the Vivid Photo check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the image will be printed with vivid colors.

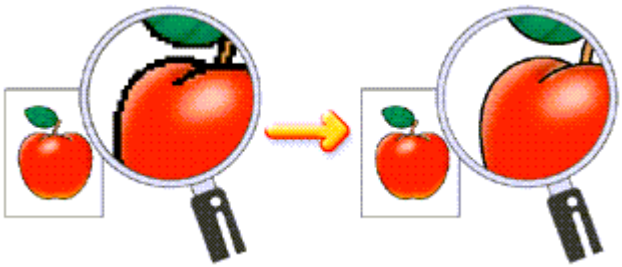
Page top

P407

Smoothing Jagged Outlines

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

The Image Optimizer function reduces the jagged outlines that are produced when photos and graphics are enlarged with your application. It allows you to print smooth outlines. This feature is especially useful when printing low-resolution images from Web pages.

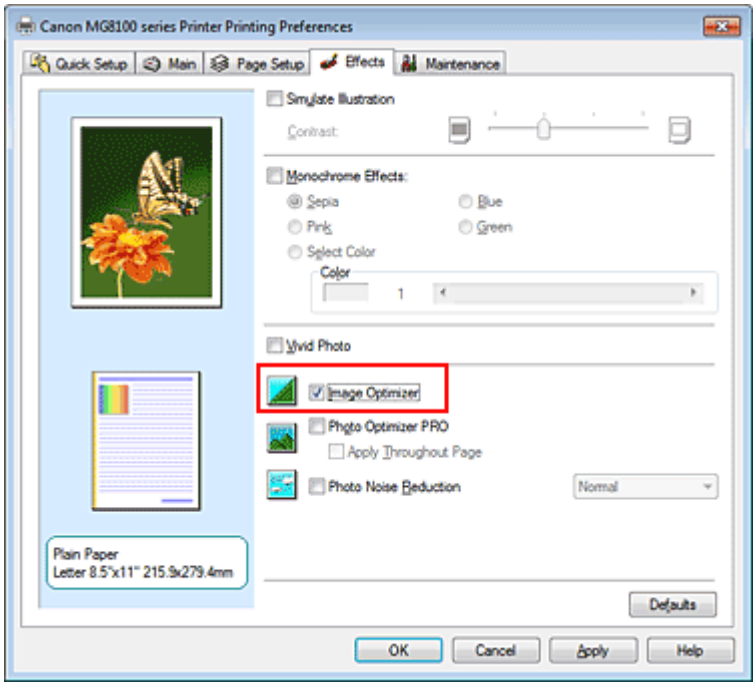


The procedure for performing Image Optimizer is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set image optimizer

Check the Image Optimizer check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
The photos and graphics will be adjusted and printed with smooth outlines.

Note

- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, the image optimizer may have no discernible effects.

- It may take longer to complete printing when the image optimizer is used.

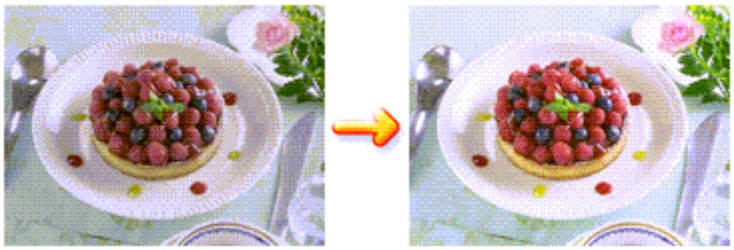
Page top

P408

Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

The Photo Optimizer PRO function corrects colors of digital camera images or scanned images. It is specially designed to compensate for color shift, overexposure, and underexposure.

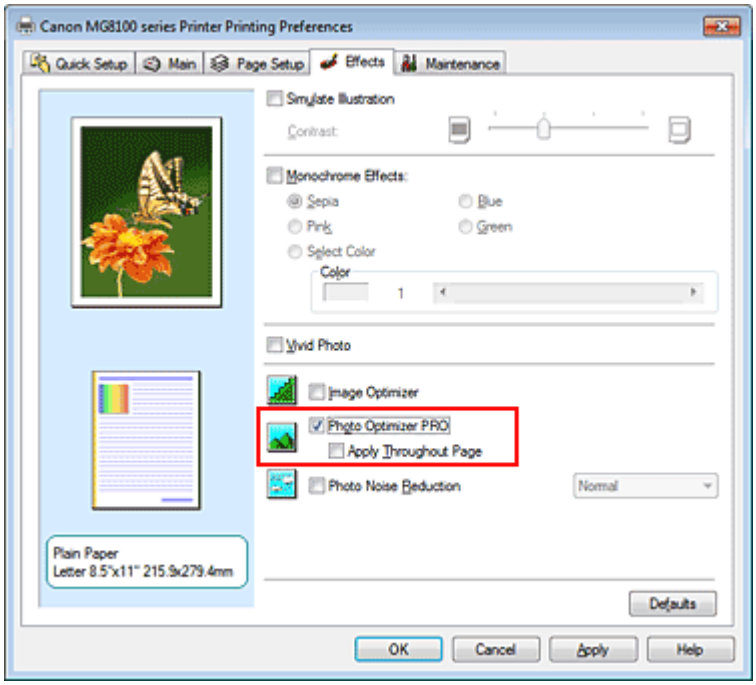


The procedure for performing Photo Optimizer PRO is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Photo Optimizer PRO

   Check the Photo Optimizer PRO check box on the Effects tab.



   Normally there is no need to check the Apply Throughout Page check box.
   Images within each page are optimized on an image-by-image basis.

Note

- Check the Apply Throughout Page check box when printing image data that has been processed, such as being cropped or rotated. In this case the entire page will be treated as a single image to be optimized.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the printer corrects the photo coloring and prints out the photos.

Important

- Photo Optimizer PRO does not function when:
  - Background is set in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab.
  - Define Stamp... is selected in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab, and the bitmapped stamp is configured.

Note

- Depending on images, the Photo Optimizer PRO may have no discernible effect.

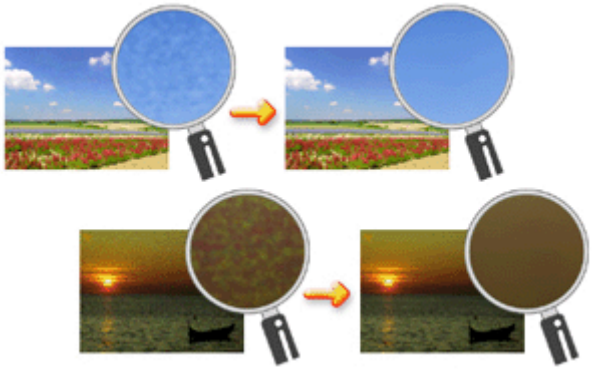
Page top

P024

Reducing Photo Noise

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

With the Photo Noise Reduction function, you can reduce the digital camera noise and improve the image quality of the digital print.

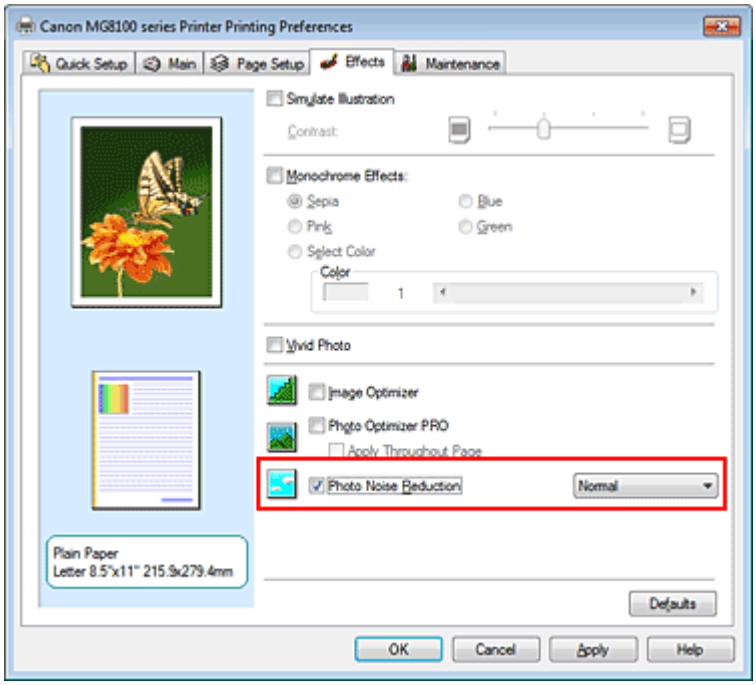


The procedure for performing Photo Noise Reduction is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Photo Noise Reduction

Check the Photo Noise Reduction check box on the Effects tab and select Normal or Strong for the level.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed with the digital camera noise being reduced.

Note

- It is recommended to select Normal for most cases. Select Strong if you have selected Normal and the noise still bothers you.
- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, effects of digital camera noise reduction may not be obvious.
- When this function is used for other than photos taken by digital cameras, image may be distorted.

Page top

Overview of the Printer Driver

- Printer Driver Operations
- Canon IJ Printer Driver
- XPS Printer Driver
- How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
- Maintenance Tab
- Canon IJ Status Monitor
- Canon IJ Preview

Page top

Canon

Printer Driver Operations



MA-6873-V1.00

| Instructions for Use (Printer Driver) | How to Use This Manual | Printing This Manual |

Various Printing Methods

- Printing with Easy Setup
- Setting a Page Size and Orientation
- Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
- Setting the Stapling Margin
- Execute Borderless Printing
- Fit-to-Page Printing
- Scaled Printing
- Page Layout Printing
- Poster Printing
- Booklet Printing
- Duplex Printing
- Stamp/Background Printing
- Printing an Envelope
- Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing
- Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Adjusting Tone
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast
- Simulating an Illustration
- Representing Image Data with a Single Color
- Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
- Smoothing Jagged Outlines
- Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
- Reducing Photo Noise

Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer

- Changing the Print Options
- Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile
- Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper
- Managing the Machine Power
- Reducing the Machine Noise
- Changing the Machine Operation Mode

Performing Maintenance from a Computer

- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- Aligning the Print Head Position
- Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- Cleaning Inside the Machine

Overview of the Printer Driver

- Canon IJ Printer Driver
- XPS Printer Driver
- How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
- Maintenance Tab
- Canon IJ Status Monitor
- Canon IJ Preview

Updating the MP Drivers

- Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
- Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers
- Before Installing the MP Drivers
- Installing the MP Drivers

Appendix

- Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History
- Deleting the Undesired Print Job

P025

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver is software that is installed on your computer for printing data on this machine.

The Canon IJ printer driver converts the print data created by your Windows application into data that your printer can understand, and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different models support different print data formats, you need a Canon IJ printer driver for the specific model you are using.

How to Use Printer Driver Help

You can display the Help describing the driver setting items through the printing preferences screen of the Canon IJ printer driver.

- **To view all descriptions of a tab...**

  Click the Help button on each tab. A dialog box opens, displaying a description of each item on the tab.
  You can also click the link found in the description of an item to display a description of the linked dialog box.

- **To see a description for each item...**

  Right-click the item you want to learn about and then click What's This?.
  Alternatively, when the  Help button is found at the right end of the title bar, click that button, and then click the item you want to learn about.
  A description of the item is displayed.

Related Topic

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

Page top

P416

XPS Printer Driver

The following two printer drivers can be installed on Windows Vista SP1 or later:

- IJ printer driver
- XPS printer driver

The XPS printer driver is suited to print from an application that supports XPS printing.

Important

- To use the XPS printer driver, the standard IJ printer driver must already be installed on your computer.
- Within the application software distributed with the printer, only Easy-PhotoPrint Pro supports the XPS printer driver.

Installing the XPS Printer Driver

Load the Setup CD-ROM that comes with the machine, and then select "XPS Printer Driver" from Custom Install to install the driver.

Using the XPS Printer Driver

To use the XPS printer driver for printing, open the Print dialog box in application you are using, and select "your printer name XPS."

Page top

P409

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

The printer driver setup window can be displayed through the application software in use or the Start menu of the Windows.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Application Software

Follow the procedure below to configure printing profile when printing.

1. Select the command that you perform printing on the application software

   In general, select Print on the File menu to open the Print dialog box.

2. Select your model name and click Preferences (or Properties)

   The printer driver setup window appears.

Note

- Depending on application software you use, command names or menu names may vary and there may be more steps. For details, refer to the user's manual of your application software.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Start Menu

Follow the procedure below to perform maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or to configure printing profile that are common for all application software.

1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:
   - If you are using Windows 7, select the Start menu -> Devices and Printers.
   - If you are using Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
   - If you are using Windows XP, select the start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.
2. Right-click your model name icon, and then select Printing Preferences from the displayed menu

   The printer driver setup window appears.

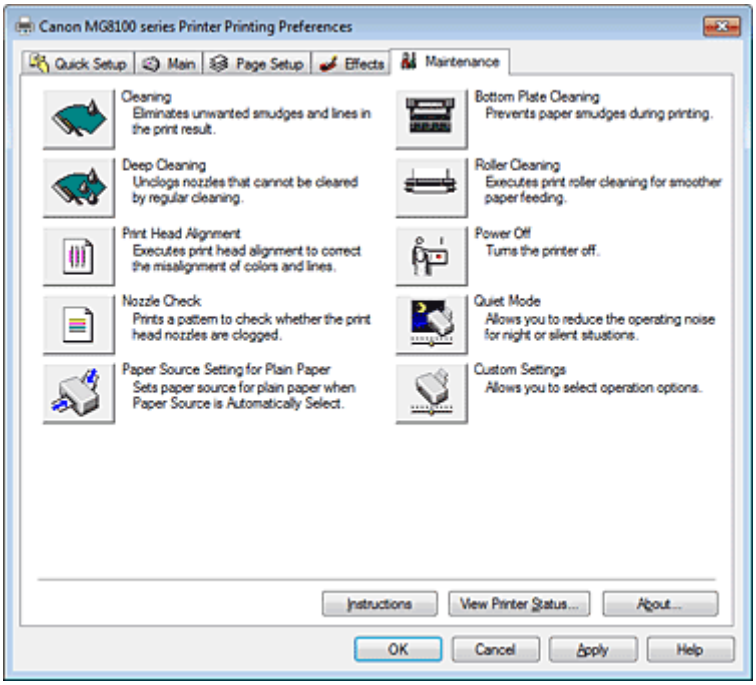
Important

- Opening the printer driver setup window through Printer properties (Windows 7) or Properties (Windows Vista, Windows XP) displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the Ports (or Advanced) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through Printing Preferences or application software. For tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

P410

Maintenance Tab

The Maintenance tab allows you to perform machine maintenance or change the settings of the machine.



Features

- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- Aligning the Print Head Position
- Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper
- Cleaning Inside the Machine
- Managing the Machine Power

Related Features

- Reducing the Machine Noise
- Changing the Machine Operation Mode

Page top

P411

Canon IJ Status Monitor

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

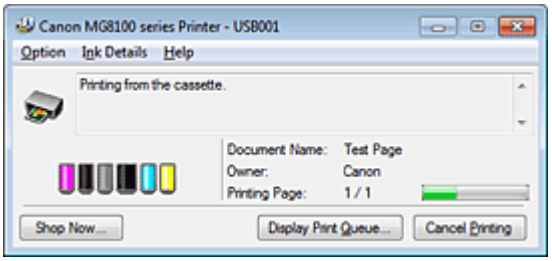
The Canon IJ Status Monitor is an application software that shows the status of the printer and the progress of printing on the Windows screen. You will know the status of the printer with graphics, icons, and messages.

Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor launches automatically when data is sent to the printer. When launched, the Canon IJ Status Monitor appears as a button on the task bar.



Click the button of the status monitor displayed on the task bar. The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

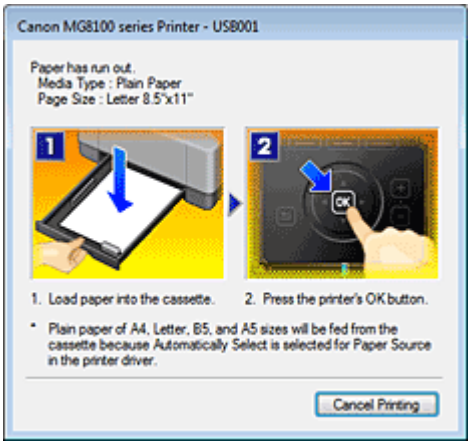


Note

- To open the Canon IJ Status Monitor when the printer is not printing, open the printer driver setup window and click View Printer Status... on the Maintenance tab.
- The information displayed on the Canon IJ Status Monitor may differ depending on the country or region where you are using your machine.

When Errors Occur

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is automatically displayed if an error occurs (e.g., if the printer runs out of paper or if the ink is low).



In such cases, take the appropriate action as described.

Page top

P412

Canon IJ Preview

The Canon IJ Preview is an application software that displays what the print result will look like before a document is actually printed.

The preview reflects the information that is set within the printer driver and allows you to check the document layout, print order, and number of pages. You can also change the media type and paper source settings.

When you want to display a preview before printing, open the printer driver setup window , click the Quick Setup tab or the Main tab, and check the Preview before printing check box.

When you do not want to display a preview before printing, uncheck the check box.

Important

- If you are using the XPS printer driver, see " Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History. "

Related Topic

Displaying the Print Results before Printing

Page top

Printing Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

- Copying
- Using Useful Copy Functions
- Printing Photographs Easily from a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Photo)
- Using Fun Photo Printing Functions
- Using the Slide Show Function
- Printing Documents (PDF File)
- Printing Photo from Printed Photo or Film (Photo reprint)
- Using Photo Reprinting Functions
- Printing from Mobile Phone or Printing Template (Special print)

Page top

Copying

Making Copies
Setting Items
Reducing or Enlarging a Copy
Displaying the Preview Screen

Page top

U031

Making Copies

This section describes the procedure to copy with Standard copy. For the basic procedure to make copies, refer also to Copying.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Copy on the HOME screen.

   The Copy standby screen is displayed.

   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine.

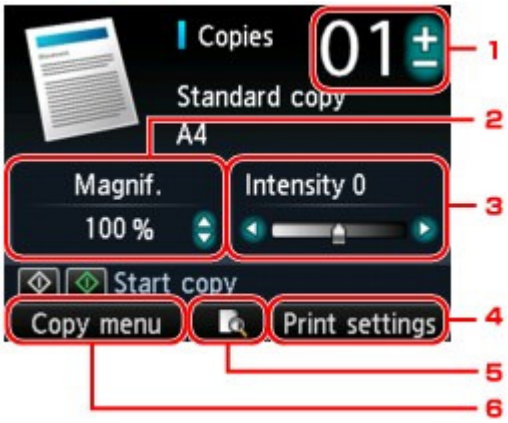
3. Load paper.

4. Load the original on the Platen Glass.

   Note

   - For details on the types and conditions of originals which you can copy, refer to Loading Paper / Originals.

5. Specify the settings as necessary.



1. Copies (Number of copies)

   Specify by using the + or - button.

2. Magnif. (Magnification)

   Specify from 25% to 400% by using the ▲▼ button. When touching and holding the ▲▼ button, the magnification increase or decrease by 10%.

   Note

   - You can specify other reduction/enlargement method on the print settings screen.
     ➡Reducing or Enlarging a Copy

3. Intensity

   Specify by using the ◄► button.

4. Print settings

By touching the right Function button, the print settings screen is displayed.
On the print settings screen, you can change the settings of page size, media type, and print quality and so on.
➡ Setting Items

5. Preview

   By touching the center Function button, you can preview an image of the printout on the preview screen.
   ➡ Displaying the Preview Screen

6. Copy menu

   By touching the left Function button, the Copy menu screen is displayed.
   You can select a copy menu to specify various layouts.
   ➡ How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

Note

- To reset the settings of magnification, intensity, and number of copies, touch the **Stop** button.

6. Touch the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

The machine starts copying.
Remove the original on the Platen Glass after copying is complete.

Important

- Do not open the Document Cover or remove the original from the Platen Glass until copying is complete.

Note

- To cancel copying, touch the **Stop** button.

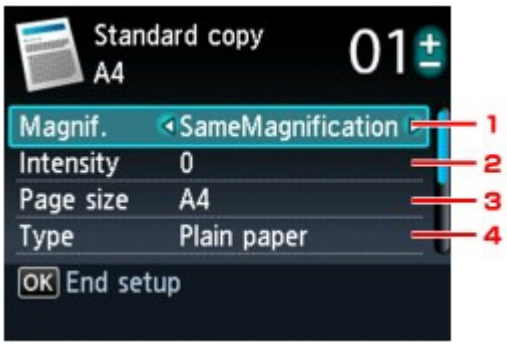
Page top ↑

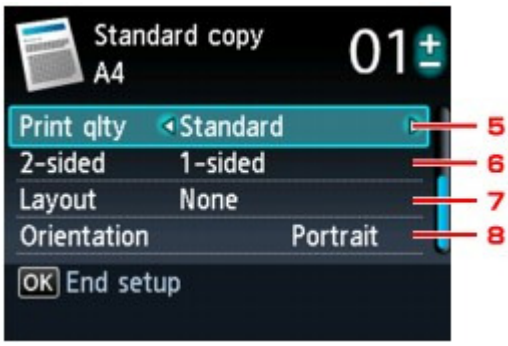
U032

Setting Items

When the Copy standby screen is displayed, touch the right Function button to change the copy settings such as page size, media type, and print quality.

Use the ▲▼ button to change the setting item, and the ◄► button to change the setting.





Note

- Depending on the copy menu, some setting items cannot be selected. This section describes the setting items in Standard copy.
  The setting item cannot be selected is displayed grayed out.
- Depending on the setting item, some settings cannot be specified in combination with the setting of other setting item or the copy menu. If the setting cannot be specified in combination is selected, Error details is displayed on the LCD. In this case, touch the left Function button to confirm the message, then change the setting.
- The settings of the page size, media type, etc. are retained even if the machine is turned off.
- When copying starts in the copy menu that is not available with the specified setting, The specified function is not available with current settings. is displayed on the LCD. Change the setting, follow the on-screen instructions.

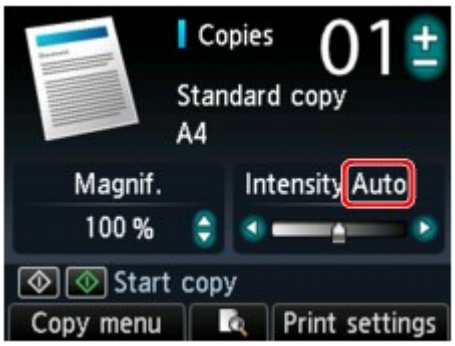
1. Magnif. (Magnification)

Specify the reduction/enlargement method.

➡Reducing or Enlarging a Copy

2. Intensity

Specify the intensity. When Auto is selected, the intensity is adjusted automatically according to the originals loaded on the Platen Glass. Auto is displayed on the slide bar for the intensity on the Copy standby screen.



Important

- When Auto is selected, touching the ◄► button can change the intensity on the Copy standby screen. If you use the ◄► button to move the cursor on the center of the slide bar, auto

adjustment will be valid again.

3. Page size

Select the page size of the loaded paper.

4. Type (Media type)

Select the media type of the loaded paper.

5. Print qlty (Print quality)

Adjust print quality according to the original.

Important

- If you use Fast with Type set to Plain paper and the quality is not as good as expected, select Standard or High for Print qlty and try copying again.
- Select High for Print qlty to copy in grayscale. Grayscale renders tones in a range of grays instead of black or white.

6. 2-sided

Specify the setting of double-sided copy.

Copying onto Both Sides of the Paper (Two-sided copy)

7. Layout

Select the layout.

Copying Two Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (2-on-1 copy)
Copying Four Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (4-on-1 copy)

8. Orientation

Select the orientation of the original document.

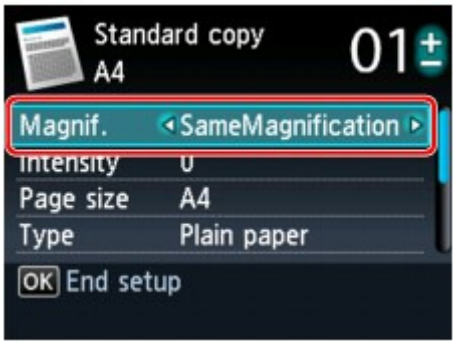
Page top

U033

Reducing or Enlarging a Copy

You can not only change the magnification optionally on the Copy standby screen but also select the preset-ratio copying or fit-to-page copying.

The LCD below is displayed when you touch the right Function button in the Copy standby screen. Select the reduction/enlargement method from Magnif..



Note

- Some of reduction/enlargement methods are not available depending on the copy menu.

- Fit to page
  The machine automatically reduces or enlarges the image to fit the page size.

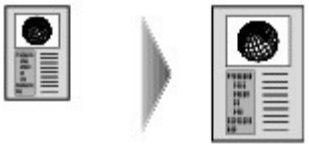


The setting in Magnif.: Fit to page

Note

- When you select Fit to page, the page size may not be detected correctly depending on the original. In this case, select the setting other than Fit to page.

- Preset ratio
  You can select one of the preset ratios to reduce or enlarge copies.

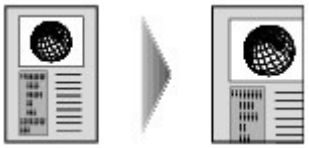


Select the appropriate ratio for size of original and page size.
The setting in Magnif.: 70% A4->A5/86% A4->B5/94% A4->8.5x11/115% B5->A4/141% A5->A4/156% 5x7->8.5x11/183% 4x6->8.5x11

Note

- Some of preset ratios are not available depending on the country or region of purchase.

- Ratio specified copy
  By touching the ▲▼ button on the Copy standby screen, you can specify the copy ratio as a percentage to reduce or enlarge copies.



Note

- 400% MAX (maximum copy ratio) and 25% MIN (minimum copy ratio) are selectable.
- If you make a copy at the same size as the original, select SameMagnification.

Page top

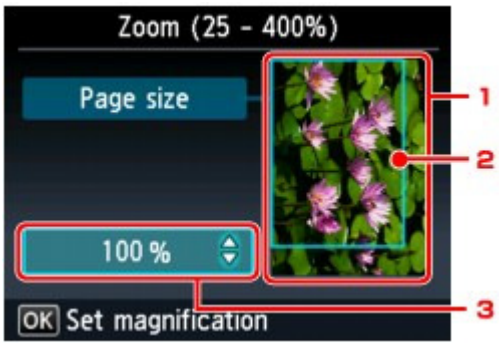
U035

Displaying the Preview Screen

Touching the center Function button in the Copy standby screen allows you to preview an image of the printout on the preview screen.

Important

- The preview screen may not be available depending on the copy menu.
- The original will be scanned to display the preview image. Therefore, do not open the Document Cover until the preview screen is displayed.
- Originals are rescanned after displaying the preview screen and before copying starts. Therefore, do not open the Document Cover or remove the original from the Platen Glass until copying is complete.



1. Preview of the original

   The original that is set on the Platen Glass is displayed. If the displayed image is skewed, refer to Loading Paper / Originals and reset the original properly, then display the preview screen again and preview the original.

2. Page size

   A frame showing the selected page size appears over the image. The inside of the frame will be printed.

3. Magnification

   The magnification setting, which was set when the preview screen was displayed, is displayed. If the setting other than Fit to page is selected, you can change the magnification setting using the ▲ ▼ button.

Page top

Using Useful Copy Functions

- How to Select a Useful Copy Menu
- Copying onto Both Sides of the Paper (Two-sided copy)
- Copying Two Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (2-on-1 copy)
- Copying Four Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (4-on-1 copy)
- Copying without Borders (Borderless copy)
- Copying Thick Originals Such as Books (Frame erase copy)
- Copying the Label Side of Disc

Page top

U036

How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

This section describes the procedure to select the copy menu.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Load the original on the Platen Glass.

Note

- For details on the types and conditions of originals which you can copy, refer to Loading Paper / Originals.

3. Select  Copy on the HOME screen.

The Standard copy screen is displayed.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

4. Touch the left Function button.

The Copy menu screen is displayed.

5. Use the ◄► button to select the copy menu.

Select the copy menu that you want to use, then follow the on-screen instructions.
For details on procedure in Standard copy, refer to Making Copies .
For details on procedure in other copy menu, refer to Using Useful Copy Functions .

Note

- If you return to Standard copy after you selected the copy menu other than Standard copy, touch the **Stop** button. If the number of copies, the magnification, or the intensity has been set already, touch the **Stop** button twice.
- After the copy menu is selected, you can change the print setting by touching the right Function button on the Copy standby screen.
  Depending on the copy menu, some setting items cannot be selected and some settings cannot be specified.
  ➡Setting Items

Page top ↑

U038

Copying onto Both Sides of the Paper (Two-sided copy)

You can copy two original pages onto the both sides of a single sheet of paper.



(A) Long-side stapling

(B) Short-side stapling

1. Display the Copy menu screen.

   How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

2. Load paper.

3. Select  Two-sided copy, then touch the **OK** button.

   The default setting for two-sided copy is displayed.

4. Confirm the instruction on the LCD, then touch the **OK** button.

   The Copy standby screen is displayed.

Note

- You can specify the stapling side of paper. To specify the stapling side, follow the procedure below.
  1. Touch the right Function button on the Copy standby screen.

     The print settings screen is displayed.
  2. Use the ▲▼ button to select 2-sided.
  3. Make sure that 2-sided is specified, then touch the right Function button.

     The Stapling side of print paper screen is displayed.
  4. Use the ◀▶ button to select the stapling side, then touch the **OK** button.

     The print settings screen is displayed. To return to the Copy standby screen, touch the **OK** button again.

5. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

   Change the print settings as necessary.

   Setting Items

6. Touch the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

   The machine starts scanning the original of front side (the first sheet). After scanning is complete, the Document setting screen is displayed.

Note

- If you touch the left Function button, only the original of front side (the first sheet) is copied.

7. Remove the original of front side (the first sheet) from the Platen Glass, then load the original of back side (the second sheet) on the Platen Glass.

8. Touch the **OK** button.

The machine starts scanning the original of back side (the second sheet) and copying.

Note

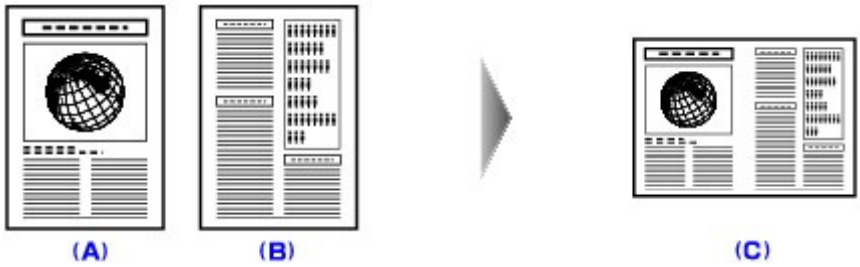
- This copy menu can be used in combination with 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy.
  When you use this copy menu in combination, select 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy in Layout on the print settings screen.
  For details on 2-on-1 copy or 4-on-1 copy, refer to below.
  - Copying Two Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (2-on-1 copy)
  - Copying Four Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (4-on-1 copy)
- If you perform black & white copying for Two-sided copy, print intensity may be different from when performing black & white copying for single-sided copy.

Page top

U040

Copying Two Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (2-on-1 copy)

You can copy two original pages (A) (B) onto a single sheet of paper (C) by reducing each image.



1. Display the Copy menu screen.

How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

2. Load paper.

3. Select  2-on-1 copy, then touch the **OK** button.

The default setting for 2-on-1 copy is displayed.

4. Confirm the instruction on the LCD, then touch the **OK** button.

The Copy standby screen is displayed.

Note

- You can specify the layout. To specify the layout, follow the procedure below.
  1. Touch the right Function button on the Copy standby screen.

     The print settings screen is displayed.
  2. Use the ▲▼ button to select Layout.
  3. Make sure that 2-on-1 copy is specified, then touch the right Function button.

     The 2-on-1 copy layout screen is displayed.
  4. Use the ▲▼ button to select the layout, then touch the **OK** button.

     The print settings screen is displayed. To return to the Copy standby screen, touch the **OK** button again.

5. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

Change the print settings as necessary.

Setting Items

6. Touch the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

The machine starts scanning the first sheet of original. After scanning is complete, the Document setting screen is displayed.

Note

- If you touch the left Function button, only the first sheet of original is copied.

7. Remove the first sheet of original from the Platen Glass, then load the second sheet of original on the Platen Glass.

8. Touch the **OK** button.

The machine starts scanning the second sheet of original and copying.

Note

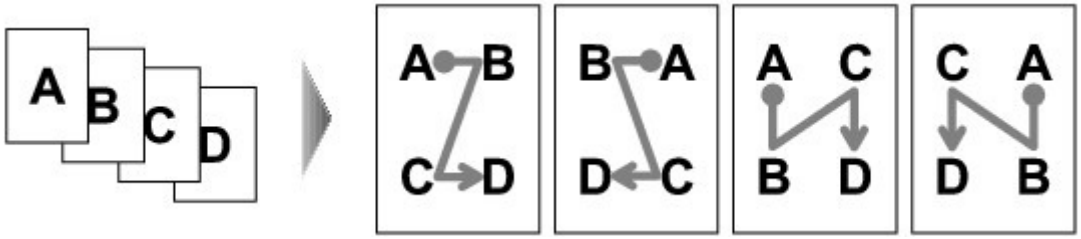
- This copy menu can be used in combination with Two-sided copy.
  If you use this copy menu in combination, you can copy four original pages on one sheet of paper.
  In this case, two original pages are copied on each side of paper.
  When you use this copy menu in combination, select 2-sided in 2-sided on the print settings screen.
  As the Document setting screen is displayed after scanning the second sheet of original is complete, follow the on-screen instructions to scan the third and fourth sheet of original.
  For details on Two-sided copy, refer to Copying onto Both Sides of the Paper (Two-sided copy) .
- If Device memory is full. Cannot continue process. appears on the LCD when scanning, set the print quality to Standard or reduce the number of sheets of documents, then try copying again. If the problem is not resolved, set the print quality to Fast and try copying again.

Page top

U041

Copying Four Pages to Fit onto a Single Page (4-on-1 copy)

You can copy four original pages onto a single sheet of paper by reducing each image. Four different layouts are available.



1. Display the Copy menu screen.

How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

2. Load paper.

3. Select  4-on-1 copy, then touch the **OK** button.

The default setting for 4-on-1 copy is displayed.

4. Confirm the instruction on the LCD, then touch the **OK** button.

The Copy standby screen is displayed.

Note

- You can specify the layout. To specify the layout, follow the procedure below.
  1. Touch the right Function button on the Copy standby screen.

     The print settings screen is displayed.
  2. Use the ▲▼ button to select Layout.
  3. Make sure that 4-on-1 copy is specified, then touch the right Function button.

     The 4-on-1 copy layout screen is displayed.
  4. Use the ▲▼ button to select the layout, then touch the **OK** button.

     The print settings screen is displayed. To return to the Copy standby screen, touch the **OK** button again.

5. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

Change the print settings as necessary.

Setting Items

6. Touch the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

The machine starts scanning the first sheet of original. After scanning is complete, the Document setting screen is displayed.

Note

- If you touch the left Function button, only the first sheet of original is copied.

7. Remove the first sheet of original from the Platen Glass, then load the second sheet of original on the Platen Glass.

8. Touch the **OK** button.

The machine starts scanning the second sheet of original. After scanning is complete, the Document setting screen is displayed.

Note

- If you touch the left Function button, the first sheet of original and second sheet are copied.

9. Scan the third sheet of original and the fourth sheet as well as in step 7 and 8.

After scanning the fourth sheet of original is complete, the machine starts copying.

Note

- This copy menu can be used in combination with Two-sided copy.
  If you use this copy menu in combination, you can copy eight original pages on one sheet of paper.
  In this case, four original pages are copied on each side of paper.
  When you use this copy menu in combination, select 2-sided in 2-sided on the print settings screen.
  As the Document setting screen is displayed after scanning the fourth sheet of original is complete, follow the on-screen instructions to scan the other sheet of original.
  For details on Two-sided copy, refer to Copying onto Both Sides of the Paper (Two-sided copy) .
- If Device memory is full. Cannot continue process. appears on the LCD when scanning, set the print quality to Standard or reduce the number of sheets of documents, then try copying again. If the problem is not resolved, set the print quality to Fast and try copying again.

Page top

U039

Copying without Borders (Borderless copy)

You can copy images so that they fill the entire page without borders.



1. Display the Copy menu screen.

   How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

2. Load paper.

3. Select  Borderless copy, then touch the **OK** button.

4. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

   Change the print settings as necessary.

   Setting Items

5. Touch the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

   The machine starts copying.

Note

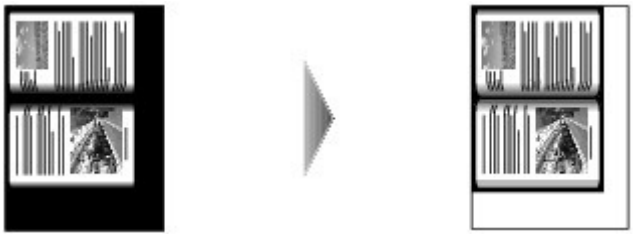
- Slight cropping may occur at the edges since the copied image is enlarged to fill the whole page. You can change the width to be cropped from the borders of the original image as needed. However, the cropped area will be larger if the extension amount is large. For details, see Extended copy amount.
- For details on the paper size and the media type available for borderless copying, see Printing Area .

Page top

U043

Copying Thick Originals Such as Books (Frame erase copy)

When copying thick originals such as books, you can make a copy without black margins around the image and gutter shadows. Using this function, you can reduce unnecessary ink consumption.



1. Display the Copy menu screen.

   How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

2. Load paper.

3. Select  Frame erase copy, then touch the **OK** button.

4. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

   Change the print settings as necessary.

   Setting Items

5. Touch the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

   The machine starts copying.

Note

- Close the Document Cover.
- There may be a narrow black margin that appears around the image. This function removes the dark margins only. If a scanned book is too thin or when the machine is used near a window or in a bright environment, a faint black frame may remain. Also, if the color of an original is dark, the machine cannot distinguish the document color from the shadow and this may cause slight cropping or a shadow on the crease.
- When the Copy standby screen is displayed, touching the center Function button allows you to preview an image of the printout on the preview screen.

  Displaying the Preview Screen

Page top

D003

Copying the Label Side of Disc

Copy the label of an existing BD/DVD/CD and print it on a printable disc.

Important

- You cannot print on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.
- Do not attach the Disc Tray until the message asking you to set the printable disc is displayed. Doing so can damage the machine.

Note

- If printing is misaligned, adjust the printing position. For information on how to adjust it, see Adjusting the Print Area .

1. Display the Copy menu screen.

   How to Select a Useful Copy Menu

2. Select  Disc label, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   The print area setting screen is displayed.

3. Use the ▲▼ button to select Outer circle or Inner circle and use the ◄► button to change the print area.

4. Use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

   - Measure the outer and inner diameters of the printing surface of the printable disc and make sure you set a value smaller than the measured value for the outer diameter, and a value larger than the measured value for the inner diameter.
   - For information on printable discs, contact their manufacturers.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select Recommended disc or Other disc, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

   - If your printable disc is the recommended disc, specify Recommended disc for the suitable density printing. If not, specify Other disc.

6. Load the copy source BD/DVD/CD on the Platen Glass, then use the **OK** button to go to the next step.

   The disc label standby screen is displayed.

   Important

   - Be sure to load the copy source BD/DVD/CD with its label side down on the center of the Platen Glass. If you load it near the edge of the Platen Glass, part of the image may be cut off.

7. Use the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white

copying.

8. Confirm the message, then set the printable disc.

Use the left Function button to see how to set the printable disc.

9. Use the **OK** button to start copying.

The machine starts copying.

Note

- Do not see the light source directly while copying is in progress.
- Use the **Stop** button to cancel copying.
- After printing, allow the printing surface of the disc to dry naturally. Do not use hairdryers or expose the disc to direct sunlight to dry the ink. Do not touch the printing surface until the ink has dried.
- To keep the print quality at an optimal level, it is recommended to stop printing discs once every ten discs when printing more than ten discs continuously.
  To stop the printing operation, detach the Disc Tray from the printer, then close the Inner Cover. After approximately three minutes have elapsed, open the Inner Cover, attach the Disc Tray to the printer, then resume printing.

Page top

Printing Photographs Easily from a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Photo)

- Printing Photographs Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive
- Viewing and Printing Photos (Select photo print)
- Printing All Photos Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Print all photos)
- Setting Items
- Using Useful Display Functions

Page top

U001

Printing Photographs Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive

You can print the photograph saved on the memory card or USB flash drive.

This section describes the procedure to select the print menu or the useful function in Photo as the basic photo menu.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Photo on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

The photo selection screen is displayed.

Important

- You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time.

Note

- For information on how to insert the memory card/USB flash drive, or information on the types of the memory card compatible with the machine, refer to Printing Photos .
- If both photo files and PDF files are saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, when the memory card/USB flash drive is inserted before you select Photo on the HOME screen, the confirmation screen to select which file you print is displayed. Select Print photos in the displayed screen, then touch **OK** button.
- If no printable photo data is saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, Data of supported types are not saved. is displayed on the LCD.

4. Touch the left Function button.

The Photo menu screen is displayed. The following menus are selectable.

Select photo print
You can preview each photo from the memory card or USB flash drive on the LCD and print the desired photo.
If you select this menu, the same screen is displayed as when you select Photo on the HOME screen.
➡ Viewing and Printing Photos (Select photo print)

Print all photos
You can print all photos saved on the memory card or USB flash drive.
➡ Printing All Photos Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Print all photos)

To fun photo print
If you select this menu, the Fun photo print screen is displayed. You can print photo in various layouts with the useful print menu.
➡ Using Fun Photo Printing Functions

To slide show
If you select this menu, you can show photos one after another automatically on the LCD and print

the desired photo.

How to use the Slide Show Function

5. Use the ◄► button to select the print menu or the useful function, then touch the **OK** button.

Select the print menu or the useful function that you want to use, then follow the on-screen instructions.

Page top

U117

Viewing and Printing Photos (Select photo print)

You can view each photo from the memory card or USB flash drive on the LCD and print the desired photo.

You can also specify the number of copies for each photo and add the print queue.

For the basic procedure to print from the memory card or USB flash drive, refer also to Printing Photos .

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Photo on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .
- The screen displayed when you select Select photo print on the Photo menu screen is the same as the screen displayed when you select Photo on the HOME screen.

3. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

The photo selection screen is displayed.

Important

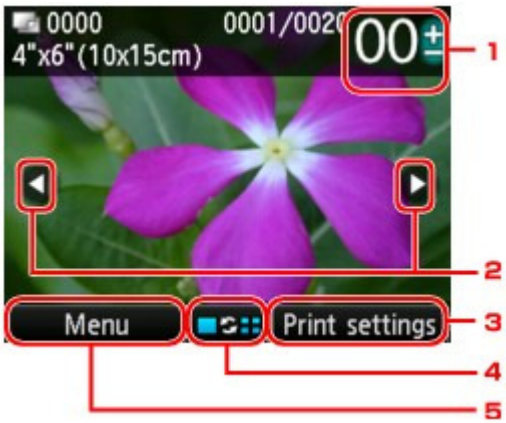
- You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time.

Note

- For information on how to insert the memory card/USB flash drive, or information on the types of the memory card compatible with the machine, refer to Printing Photos .
- If both photo files and PDF files are saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, when the memory card/USB flash drive is inserted before you select Photo on the HOME screen, the confirmation screen to select which file you print is displayed. Select Print photos in the displayed screen, then touch **OK** button.
- If no printable photo data is saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, Data of supported types are not saved. is displayed on the LCD.

4. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.

5. Specify the settings as necessary.



1. Number of copies

   Specify by using the **+** or **-** button.

2. Selection photo

   Select the photo you want to print by using the ◄► button.

3. Print settings

   By touching the right Function button, the print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
   On the print settings confirmation screen, you can change the settings of page size, media type, and print quality and so on.
   ➡ Setting Items

4. Change view

   By touching the center Function button, you can change the view, switch the display mode, or select the menu to display the cropping edit screen.
   ➡ Using Useful Display Functions

5. Menu

   By touching the left Function button, the Photo menu screen is displayed.

Note

- If you specify the number of copies for each photo, use the ◄► button to display the photo you want to print and use the **+** or **-** button to specify the number of copies when the desired photo is displayed.

6. Touch the **Color** button.

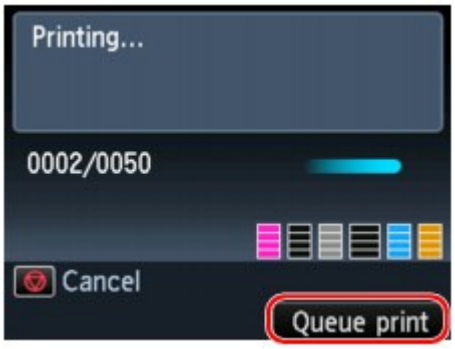
The machine starts printing.

Note

- To cancel printing, touch the **Stop** button.
- You can add the print queue by touching the right Function button while printing.
  ➡ Adding the Print Queue

Adding the Print Queue

You can display photo selection screen again and add the print queue (Queue print) while printing photos.



Note

- This queue print function can be used in Select photo print (Photo).

1. Touch the right Function button when the print progress screen is displayed.

The photo selection screen is displayed.

Note

- While the photo selection screen is displayed, the machine starts the print queue.

2. Select the photo you want to print and specify the number of copies for each photo.

Note

- The  print queue icon appears on the photo included in the print queue.

3. Touch the Color button.

The queued photo is printed next to the photo that has been already started printing.
When you add more print queue, operate from step 1 again.

Note

- When adding the print queue, you cannot display the HOME screen, change the print menu, or print from the computer or other devices.
- When adding the print queue, you cannot select the setting for Page size or Type on print settings confirmation screen. The setting is the same as the setting for the photo included in the print queue.
- If you cancel adding the print queue, touch the **Stop** button. When the confirmation screen is displayed, select Yes to cancel adding. The machine cancels all print queues.
- If there are many print queues, Cannot queue more print jobs. Please wait a while and redo the operation. may be displayed on the LCD. In this case, wait a while, then add the print queue.

Page top

U011

Printing All Photos Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive (Print all photos)

You can print all photos saved on the memory card or USB flash drive.

1. Display the Photo menu screen.

   Printing Photographs Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive

2. Select  Print all photos, then touch the **OK** button.

3. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.

4. Specify the print range.

   Use the ▲▼ button to select the method of specifying the print range, then touch the **OK** button.
   The following methods are selectable.

   Select date
   The screen to select the shooting date is displayed. The photos in the selected date range are printed.
   Use the ▲▼ button to select the shooting date and the **OK** button to fix the start and end of the date.
   After fixing the end of the date, the print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

   Note

   - The date to be specified is displayed according to the settings of Date display format in Device user settings under Device settings under Setup.
     Device user settings

   All photos
   All photos saved on the memory card/USB flash drive are printed.
   After selecting the method and touching the **OK** button, the print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

5. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

   Specify the print settings as necessary.
   Setting Items

6. Touch the **Color** button.

   The machine starts printing all the photos in the specified range.

Page top

U002

Setting Items

You can specify the setting of page size, media type, and print quality and so on to print the photos saved on the memory card or USB flash drive.

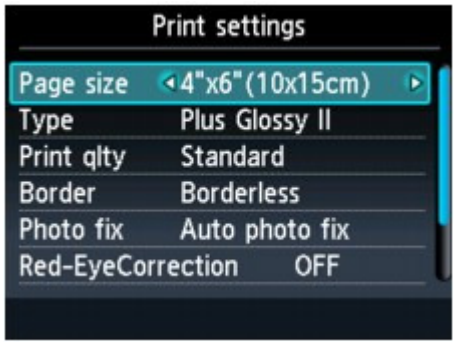
Print settings Screen (Print Settings Confirmation Screen)

Specify the basic setting for printing on this screen.

How to display the print settings confirmation screen varies with the print menu.

- **In Select photo print of Photo or Slide show:**

  The following screen is displayed by touching the right Function button on the photo selection screen.



- **In Print all photos of Photo:**

  The following screen is displayed before printing.



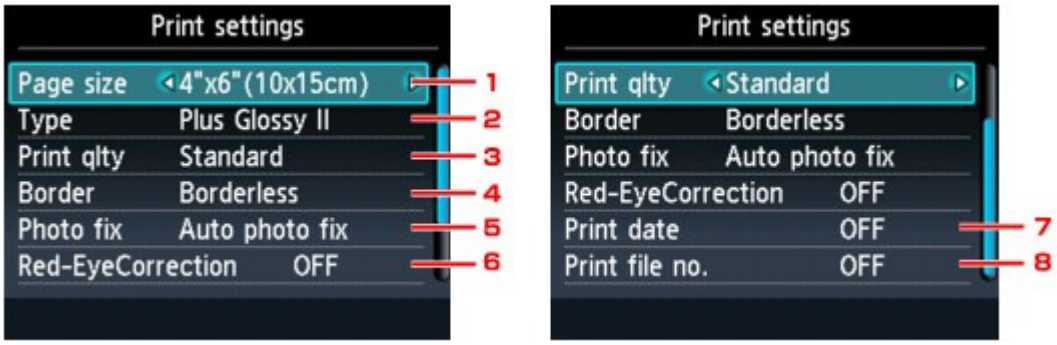
- **In every menu of Fun photo print:**

  The following screen is displayed before printing. The screen to change the setting is displayed by touching the right Function button.



You can specify the following setting items.

Use the ▲▼ button to change the setting item and the ◀▶ button to change the setting on the LCD.



Note

- Depending on the print menu, some setting items cannot be selected. This section describes the setting items in Select photo print.
  The setting item cannot be selected is displayed grayed out or not displayed.
- Depending on the setting item, some settings cannot be specified in combination with the setting of other setting item or the print menu. If the setting cannot be specified in combination is selected, Error details is displayed on the LCD. In this case, touch the left Function button to confirm the message, then change the setting.
- The settings of the page size, media type, etc. are retained even if other print menu is selected or the machine is turned off.

1. Page size

Select the page size of the loaded paper.

2. Type (Media type)

Select the media type of the loaded paper.

3. Print qlty (Print quality)

Adjust print quality according to the photo.

4. Border (Bordered/Borderless print)

Select bordered or borderless print.

5. Photo fix

When Auto photo fix is selected, the scene or person's face of a shot photo is recognized and the most suitable correction for each photo is made automatically. It makes a darkened face by backlight brighter to print. It also analyzes a scene such as scenery, night scene, person, etc. and corrects each scene with the most suitable color, brightness, or contrasts automatically to print.

Note

- As a default, photos on the memory card/USB flash drive are printed with auto correction applied.
- If the print result with Auto photo fix selected for Photo fix is not satisfactory, select Manual correction, touch the right Function button to the Manual correction screen, then specify each advanced setting item.
  ➡ Manual correction Screen
- If No correction is selected, photos are printed without correction.

6. Red-EyeCorrection

Corrects red eyes in portraits caused by flash photography.
Depending on the type of the photo, red eyes may not be corrected or parts other than the

eyes may be corrected.

7. Print date

Activates/deactivates to print the shooting date on a photo.

Note

- The shooting date is printed according to the settings of Date display format in Device user settings under Device settings under Setup.
  Device user settings

8. Print file no.

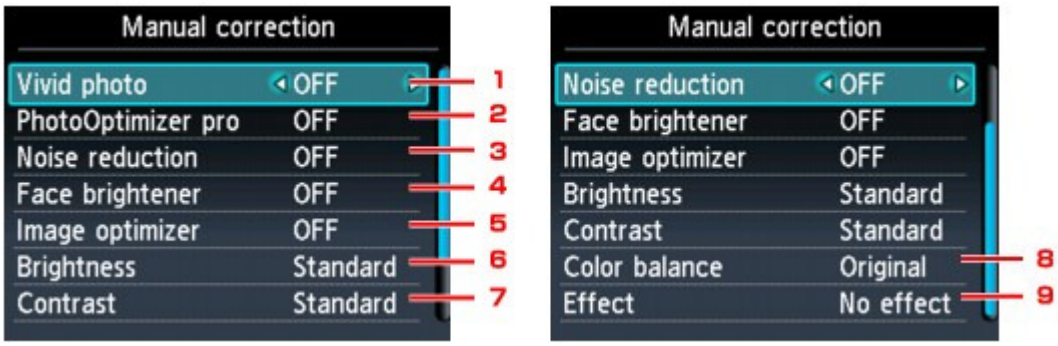
Activates/deactivates to print the file number on a photo.

Note

- If both of the conditions below are satisfied, and ON is selected for both Print date and Print file no., only the shooting date will be printed. If you want to print the file number, select OFF for Print date.
  - Layout print or Calendar print in Fun photo print is selected as a print menu.

Manual correction Screen

To display this screen, select Manual correction for Photo fix, then touch the right Function button.



1. Vivid photo

Makes green and blue more lively.

2. PhotoOptimizer pro

Automatically optimizes brightness and tone of a photo.

3. Noise reduction

Reduces the noise on blue areas like the sky as well as on black areas.

4. Face brightener

Brightens a darkened face on the photo taken against the light.

5. Image optimizer

Corrects and smoothes the jagged contours for printing.

6. Brightness

Adjust brightness.

7. Contrast

Adjust contrast.

8. **Color balance**

Adjust color balance.
For example, you can increase red or yellow to adjust the skin tone.

9. **Effect**

Applies special effects to the photo, such as printing in sepia tones or with a sketch illustration like effect.

Page top

U014

Using Useful Display Functions

In Select photo print of Photo or in some print menu of Fun photo print, you can change the method to display the photos saved on the memory card or USB flash drive.

You can change the view, switch the display mode, or select the menu to display the cropping edit screen by touching the center Function button when the photo selection screen is displayed in each print menu.

Use the ▲▼ button to select the display method and the **OK** button to fix the display method.

The following methods are selectable.

Note

- Depending on the print menu, some display method cannot be selected.
- The display method is retained even if other print menu is selected.

- Standard view mode:
  The photos are displayed one by one. To select the photo, use the ◄► button.
- List view mode:
  Nine photos are displayed at a time. To select the photo, use the ▲▼◄► button.

  ## Note

  - In Select photo print of Photo, you can specify the number of copies for each photo you want to print by using the **+** or **-** button.

- Skip mode:
  You can skip the photo by the number of photos or the shooting date.
  Skipping Photos by the Number of Photos or the Shooting Date (Skip mode)
- Trimming mode
  You can edit photos by cropping them.
  Printing a Specified Area (Trimming mode)

Page top

U015

Printing a Specified Area (Trimming mode)

You can edit images displayed on the LCD by cropping them.

Note

- The trimming mode cannot be available depending on the print menu.
- Crop images after specifying the page size, media type, and bordered or borderless printing in the print settings confirmation screen. If you change the paper settings after cropping, the cropped area may be adjusted to match the paper, or be disabled completely.

1. Select the photo to crop.

2. Display the cropping edit screen.

1. Touch the center Function button to display the Change view/mode screen.
2. Use the ▲▼ button to select Trimming mode, then touch the **OK** button.

   The Trimming screen is displayed.



3. Choose the area to print.

Use the following buttons to crop the area.

▲, ▼, ◄, and ► buttons:
Positions the cropping frame.

+ or - buttons, or Scroll Wheel:
Sets the cropping frame size.

Left Function button:
Changes the aspect ratio of the cropping frame.

Center Function button:
Rotates the cropping frame. To switch the cropping frame between portrait and landscape orientations, touch this button.

Note

- Some buttons cannot be used depending on the print menu.

4. Touch the **OK** button to finalize your selection of cropping area.

The area to be cropped is specified, and the original photo is displayed.

Note

- The cropped image cannot be newly saved on the memory card/USB flash drive.
- The cropping area is displayed only for photos which have been cropped.

- To change the cropped area once it has been set, display the Trimming screen again.
- To cancel cropping after cropping has been set, display the Trimming screen again and touch the right Function button.

Page top

U016

Skipping Photos by the Number of Photos or the Shooting Date (Skip mode)

You can skip the photo on the LCD by the number of photos or the shooting date.

Note

- The skip mode cannot be available depending on the print menu.

1. Touch the center Function button when the photo selection screen is displayed in each print menu.

   The Change view/mode screen is displayed.

2. Use the ▲▼ button to select Skip mode, then touch the **OK** button.

   The following screen is displayed.



3. Use the ◄► button to select the skip method.

   The following methods are selectable.

   Scroll one by one:
   The photo is scrolled one by one.

   Scroll by 10 photos:
   The photo is scrolled by 10 photos.

   Scroll by 100 photos:
   The photo is scrolled by 100 photos.

   Skip by date:
   The photo is skipped by date last modified.

4. Use the ▼ button to move the cursor to the photo selection.

5. Use the ◄► button to select the photo you want to print.

   To return to the skip method selection, use the ▲ button.

Note

- It may take a while for skipping the photos depending on the number of photos saved on the memory card/USB flash drive.
- When Skip by date is selected as a skip method, the date is displayed according to the settings of Date display format in Device user settings under Device settings under Setup.

  Device user settings

Page top

Using Fun Photo Printing Functions

- How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu
- Printing Several Photos on a Single Sheet of Paper (Layout print)
- Printing on Stickers (Sticker print)
- Printing a Photo Index (Photo index print)
- Printing Photos According to the DPOF Settings (DPOF print)
- Printing Photos with Print Shooting Information (Captured info print)
- Printing ID Photo (ID photo size print)
- Creating a Calendar (Calendar print)
- Printing Photo on the Disc Label

Page top

U004

How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu

This section describes the procedure to select the print menu in Fun photo print.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Fun photo print on the HOME screen.

The Fun photo print screen is displayed.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .
- You can display the Fun photo print screen by selecting To fun photo print with the ◄► button on the Photo menu screen which is displayed by touching the left Function button in Photo.

3. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

Important

- You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time.

Note

- For information on how to insert the memory card/USB flash drive, or information on the types of the memory card compatible with the machine, refer to Printing Photos .
- If both photo files and PDF files are saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, when the memory card/USB flash drive is inserted before you select Fun photo print or Photo on the HOME screen, the confirmation screen to select which file you print is displayed. Select Print photos in the displayed screen, then touch **OK** button.
  Then touch the left Function button to display the Photo menu screen, use the ◄► button to select To fun photo print, and touch the **OK** button to display the Fun photo print screen.
- If no printable photo data is saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, Data of supported types are not saved. is displayed on the LCD.

4. Use the ◄► button to select the print menu, then touch the **OK** button.

Select the print menu that you want to use, then follow the on-screen instructions.
For details on each print menu in Fun photo print, refer to Using Fun Photo Printing Functions .

Page top

U006

Printing Several Photos on a Single Sheet of Paper (Layout print)

You can paste photos of your choice in the specified layout.

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.
   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu
2. Select Layout print, then touch the **OK** button.
3. Use the ▲▼◄► button to select the layout, then touch the **OK** button.
4. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.
5. Use the ▲▼ button to select the page size according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - When Mixed 1, Mixed 2, or Mixed 3 is selected, you can select A4 or 8.5"x11"(LTR) for the page size.

6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the media type according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.
7. Use the ▲▼ button to select the pasting method, then touch the **OK** button.

   The following pasting methods are selectable.

   Paste automatically
   You can paste the photos in the selected date range or all photos.
   If you want to paste the photos in the selected date range, follow the on-screen instructions to specify the start and end of the date.

   Paste one by one
   When the photo selection screen is displayed, follow the on-screen instructions to paste the photos.

   Note

   - Other Options
     Using Useful Display Functions

8. When the screen to specify the number of copies is displayed, specify by using the **+** or **-** button and touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
   By touching the right Function button, the selectable setting items are displayed.
   Setting Items

   Note

   - If ON is selected for both Print date and Print file no., only the shooting date will be printed. When you print the photo with Layout print, the shooting date and the file number cannot be printed together. If you want to print the file number, select OFF for Print date.

9. Touch the **Color** button.

The machine starts printing.

Page top

U007

Printing on Stickers (Sticker print)

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.

   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu

2. Select Sticker print, then touch the **OK** button.

3. Load one sheet of stickers on the Rear Tray, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - You cannot use the Cassette to print on stickers. Load one sheet of stickers on the Rear Tray.
   - You can only load one sheet of stickers at a time on the Rear Tray.

4. Make sure that Stickers x16 is selected for layout, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - If any layout other than Stickers x16 is selected on the LCD, select Stickers x16 using the ▲▼◀▶ button.

5. Use the ◀▶ button to select the photo you want to print, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - Other Options

     Using Useful Display Functions

6. Use the ◀▶ button to select the frame, then touch the **OK** button.

   By touching the center Function button, you can edit photos by cropping them.
   Use the following buttons to crop the area.

   ▲, ▼, ◀, and ▶ buttons:
   Positions the cropping frame.

   + or - buttons, or Scroll Wheel:
   Sets the cropping frame size.

   Center Function button:
   Rotates the cropping frame. To switch the cropping frame between portrait and landscape orientations, touch this button.

   OK button:
   Finalize your selection of cropping area.

   Note

   - To print with no frame, touch the right Function button when the screen to select the frame is displayed.
   - When the photo is upside down, use the ▲▼ button to rotate the frame by 180 degrees to orient it properly against the photo.
   - To rotate the photo by 90 degrees to fit it within the frame, use the cropping edit screen to rotate the cropping area.

7. When the screen to specify the number of copies is displayed, specify by using the **+** or **-** button and touch the **OK** button.

The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

8. Touch the **Color** button.

The machine starts printing.

Page top

U010

Printing a Photo Index (Photo index print)

You can print an index of all the photos saved on a memory card/USB flash drive.

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.

   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu

2. Select Photo index print, then touch the **OK** button.

3. Use the ◄► button to select the printing type, then touch the **OK** button.

   The following printing types are selectable.

   Contact print
   35 mm film images are printed in its negative size as in contact print.

   Standard
   The number of photos printed on a single sheet of paper depends on the size of the paper.
   A4/Letter: 80 photos, 8" x 10"/203.2 x 254.0 mm: 72 photos, 5" x 7"/127.0 x 177.8 mm: 35 photos, 4" x 6"/101.6 x 152.4 mm: 24 photos, Wide/101.6 x 180.6 mm: 28 photos

4. Use the ▲▼ button to select the method of specifying the print range, then touch the **OK** button.

   If you want to print the photos in the selected date range, follow the on-screen instructions to specify the start and end of the date.

5. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.

6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the page size according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.

7. Use the ▲▼ button to select the media type according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.

8. When the screen to specify the number of copies is displayed, specify by using the **+** or **-** button and touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
   By touching the right Function button, the selectable setting items are displayed.

   Setting Items

9. Touch the **Color** button.

   The machine starts printing.

Page top

U008

Printing Photos According to the DPOF Settings (DPOF print)

If you have specified Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) settings on your digital camera, you can print photos according to these settings.

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.
   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu
2. Select DPOF print, then touch the **OK** button.
3. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.
4. Use the ▲▼ button to select Yes, then touch the **OK** button.
5. Use the ▲▼ button to select the page size according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.
6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the media type according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
   By touching the right Function button, the selectable setting items are displayed.
   Setting Items
7. Touch the **Color** button.

   The machine starts printing.

Note

- The machine supports the following DPOF functions:

  Version:
  Based on ver. 1.00

  Supported image types:
  Exif (TIFF) and JFIF

  Print Style - Standard Print:
  Prints photos that were specified as "Standard Print" with DPOF

  Print Style - Index Print:
  Prints an index of photos that were specified as "Index Print" with DPOF using the machine's index printing layout

  Print Style - Multi-Image Print:
  Prints a photo that was specified as "Multi-Image Print" with DPOF (with the specified number of copies and layout)

  Print Photo Select:
  Prints only photos specified with DPOF

  Number of copies:
  Prints the number of copies specified with DPOF

- Prints are automatically enlarged or reduced to match the page size. Edges of the photo may be clipped off depending on the page size.
- The shooting date order setting by which photos are sorted follows that of DPOF.
- DPOF is a standard format to record the specified information regarding images, such as which

image or number of copies to print.

Page top

U009

Printing Photos with Print Shooting Information (Captured info print)

You can print shooting information (Exif info) on the margin of the index of photos or selected individual photos.

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.

   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu

2. Select Captured info print, then touch the **OK** button.

3. Use the ◄► button to select the printing type, then touch the **OK** button.

   The following printing types are selectable.

   Print to a selected photo
   The information is printed in the margin of selected individual photos.

   Print to list of photos
   The information is printed in the margin of the Photo index print of all photos or the photos in the selected date range.
   If you want to print the information in the margin of the Photo index print of the photos in the selected date range, follow the on-screen instructions to specify the start and end of the date.

4. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select the page size according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.

6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the media type according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.

   If Print to a selected photo is selected as the printing type, the photo selection screen is displayed.
   Then follow the on-screen instructions to select the photo.

   Note

   - Other Options
     Using Useful Display Functions

7. When the screen to specify the number of copies is displayed, specify by using the **+** or **-** button and touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
   By touching the right Function button, the selectable setting items are displayed.
   Setting Items

8. Touch the **Color** button.

   The machine starts printing.

Page top

U012

Printing ID Photo (ID photo size print)

You can print photos on a memory card/USB flash drive in a specified size such as an ID photo.

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.
   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu
2. Select ID photo size print, then touch the **OK** button.
3. Use the ▲▼ button to select the printing photo size, then touch the **OK** button.
4. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.
5. Use the ▲▼ button to select the page size according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.
6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the media type according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.
7. Use the ◄► button to select the photo you want to print, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - Other Options
     Using Useful Display Functions
8. Crop the area to print, then touch the **OK** button.

   Use the following buttons to crop the area.

   ▲, ▼, ◄, and ► buttons:
   Positions the cropping frame.

   + or - buttons, or Scroll Wheel:
   Sets the cropping frame size.

   Center Function button:
   Rotates the cropping frame. To switch the cropping frame between portrait and landscape orientations, touch this button.
9. When the screen to specify the number of copies is displayed, specify by using the **+** or **-** button and touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
   By touching the right Function button, the selectable setting items are displayed.
   Setting Items
10. Touch the **Color** button.

    The machine starts printing.

Page top

U013

Creating a Calendar (Calendar print)

You can create an original calendar using your favorite photos and a calendar.

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.
   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu
2. Select Calendar print, then touch the **OK** button.
3. Use the ▲▼ button to select the calendar type, then touch the **OK** button.
4. Use the ◄► button to select the layout, then touch the **OK** button.

   The following layouts are selectable.
   - Paper: Portrait format/Photo: Bottom (landscape)
   - Paper: Portrait format/Photo: Top (landscape)
   - Paper: Landscape format/Photo: Right (portrait)
   - Paper: Landscape format/Photo: Left (portrait)

   Note
   - Select the landscape format for a landscape-oriented photo or the portrait format for a portrait-oriented photo.
5. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.

   Important
   - Be sure to load the paper in portrait orientation.
6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the page size according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.
7. Use the ▲▼ button to select the media type according to the paper you loaded, then touch the **OK** button.
8. Use the ◄► button to select the photo you want to print, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note
   - Other Options
     Using Useful Display Functions
9. Confirm the orientation of photo, then touch the **OK** button.

   To rotate the photo, use the ▲▼ button.
10. Follow the on-screen instructions to specify the year to print, the month to print, the starting day of the week, color for holidays, and background color.
11. When the screen to specify the number of copies is displayed, specify by using the **+** or **-** button and touch the **OK** button.

The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.
By touching the right Function button, the selectable setting items are displayed.
Setting Items

Note

- If ON is selected for both Print date and Print file no., only the shooting date will be printed.
  When you print the photo with Calendar print, the shooting date and the file number cannot be printed together. If you want to print the file number, select OFF for Print date.

12. Touch the **Color** button.

The machine starts printing.

Page top

D004

Printing Photo on the Disc Label

Print an image saved on a memory card or USB flash drive onto a printable disc.

Important

- You cannot print on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.
- Do not attach the Disc Tray until the message asking you to set the printable disc is displayed. Doing so can damage the machine.

Note

- If printing is misaligned, adjust the printing position. For information on how to adjust it, see Adjusting the Print Area .

1. Display the Fun photo print screen.

   How to Select a Fun Photo Printing Menu

2. Select Disc label print, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   The print area setting screen is displayed.

3. Use the ◄► button to change the print area of Outer circle.

4. Use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

5. Use the ◄► button to change the print area of Inner circle.

6. Use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

   - Measure the outer and inner diameters of the printing surface of the printable disc and make sure you set a value smaller than the measured value for the outer diameter, and a value larger than the measured value for the inner diameter.
   - For information on printable discs, contact their manufacturers.

7. Use the ▲▼ button to select Recommended disc or Other disc, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   The photo selection screen is displayed.

   Note

   - If your printable disc is the recommended disc, specify Recommended disc for the suitable density printing. If not, specify Other disc.

8. Use the ◄► button to select the photo to print, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

   - Other options

     Using Useful Display Functions

9. Adjust the print area and crop the area as necessary.

Use the following buttons to crop the area.

▲, ▼, ◄, and ► buttons:
Positions the cropping frame.

+ or - buttons, or Scroll Wheel:
Sets the cropping frame size.

10. Use the **OK** button to finalize your selection of cropping area.

The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

11. Use the **Color** button to go to the next step.

Note

- Do not use the **Black** button.

12. Confirm the message, then set the printable disc.

Use the left Function button to see how to set the printable disc.

13. Use the **OK** button to start printing.

The machine starts printing.
The photo selection screen is displayed after printing is complete.

Note

- Use the **Stop** button to cancel printing.
- After printing, allow the printing surface of the disc to dry naturally. Do not use hairdryers or expose the disc to direct sunlight to dry the ink. Do not touch the printing surface until the ink has dried.
- To keep the print quality at an optimal level, it is recommended to stop printing discs once every ten discs when printing more than ten discs continuously.
  To stop the printing operation, detach the Disc Tray from the printer, then close the Inner Cover. After approximately three minutes have elapsed, open the Inner Cover, attach the Disc Tray to the printer, then resume printing.

Page top

Using the Slide Show Function

How to use the Slide Show Function

Page top

U118

How to use the Slide Show Function

You can show photos saved on the memory card or USB flash drive with the slide show.

In the slide show, the photos is displayed one after another automatically.

You can print photos within the slide show.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Slide show on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

The effect selection screen is displayed.

Important

- You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time.

Note

- For information on how to insert the memory card/USB flash drive, or information on the types of the memory card compatible with the machine, refer to Printing Photos .
- If both photo files and PDF files are saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, when the memory card/USB flash drive is inserted before you select Slide show or Photo on the HOME screen, the confirmation screen to select which file you print is displayed. Select Print photos in the displayed screen, then touch **OK** button.
- If no printable photo data is saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, Data of supported types are not saved. is displayed on the LCD.
- You can display the Slide show screen by selecting To slide show with the ◀▶ button on the Photo menu screen which is displayed by touching the left Function button in Photo.

4. Use the ▲▼ button to select the effect for playback.

The following effects are selectable.

Standard

Wide

Circle

Note

- To display the photos in the specified range of dates or change the display order, touch the right Function button.
  If you display the photos in the specified range of dates, follow the on-screen instructions to specify the start and end of the date.

5. Touch the **OK** button.

The slide show starts playing back.
By touching the **OK** button while the slide show is playing back, the slide show pauses.

You can print the displayed photo by touching the **Color** button while the slide show pauses.

Note

- You can change the print settings by touching the right Function button while the slide show pauses.
  Setting Items
- To resume the slide show, touch the **OK** button while the slide show pauses.
- You can resume the slide show by touching the right Function button while printing. If the printing is not complete, you can print the displayed photo by pausing the slide show again and touching the **Color** button.
- To cancel the slide show, touch the **HOME** button.

Page top

Printing Documents (PDF File)

Printing Documents (PDF File) Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive

Page top

U098

Printing Documents (PDF File) Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive

You can print PDF files scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine or made using MP Navigator EX (application software bundled with the machine) from a memory card or USB flash drive.

Note

- You can print PDF files from a memory card/USB flash drive which satisfy the following conditions.
  - PDF files scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine and saved on a memory card/USB flash drive with Format set to PDF or Compact PDF (Extension: .pdf)
    For details on scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine, see Saving Scanned Data on the Memory Card/USB Flash Drive Using the Operation Panel of the Machine .
  - PDF files made using MP Navigator EX (application software bundled with the machine) with PDF Compression on the PDF Settings dialog box set to Standard or High (Extension: .pdf)
    Except for the following data:
    -Encrypted data
    -Data including images scanned at 9601 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions
    For details on making PDF files using MP Navigator EX, refer to Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX .

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Load the plain paper in the Cassette.

3. Select 

Document print on the HOME screen.

   ### Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

4. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

   The document list is displayed.

   ### Important

   - You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time.

   ### Note

   - For information on how to insert the memory card/USB flash drive, or information on the types of the memory card compatible with the machine, refer to Printing Photos .
   - If both photo files and PDF files are saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, when the memory card/USB flash drive is inserted before you select Document print on the HOME screen, the confirmation screen to select which file you print is displayed. Select Print documents in the displayed screen, then touch **OK** button.
   - If no printable document (PDF files) is saved on the memory card/USB flash drive, Data of supported types are not saved. is displayed on the LCD.
   - File names may not be displayed properly on the document list if the file name is long or includes incompatible characters.
   - When the document list is displayed, touching the center Function button displays the preview screen. On the preview screen, the first page of each PDF file is displayed on the LCD. In addition, if a document is in landscape format, it will be displayed rotated by 90 degrees.

- For some PDF files, it may take longer to display the preview or part of the preview may be cropped.
- The name of the PDF files is displayed even though the PDF files cannot be printed using the Operation Panel of the machine. If one of the following conditions is applicable to the PDF files, they are not printable.
  - PDF files saved using application software other than MP Navigator EX (application software bundled with the machine)
  - PDF files for which the preview screen is not available ("?" is displayed on the preview screen.)
- It is recommended you confirm whether a PDF file is printable. When the document list is displayed, touching the right Function button displays the Details screen. If one of the following conditions is applicable to the PDF file, it is not printable.
  - Information on the Details screen cannot be displayed.
  - Characters other than MP Navigator EX are displayed on Created with.
- The PDF files made using application software other than MP Navigator EX (application software bundled with the machine) are not printable even if they are saved using MP Navigator EX.

5. Select the document to print, then touch the **OK** button.

Use the ▲▼ button to select the document to print on the list view and use the ◄► button to select the document to print on the preview.
The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.



1. Page size

   Select the page size.
2. Type

   The paper type is set to Plain paper.
3. Print qlty (Print quality)

   Specify the print quality.

6. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

7. Touch the **Color** button.

The machine starts printing.

Note

- You can print up to 100 pages at a time. If you try to print more than 100 pages of a PDF file, The specified PDF file contains too many pages. The pages exceeding the number of printable pages will not be printed. Continue? is displayed on the LCD. Touch the **OK** button to start printing. If you need to print more than 100 pages of a PDF file, print them from a computer.
- If a document is a landscape format, it will be printed rotated by 90 degrees.
- If the document size is larger than the page size specified on the machine, the document will be printed at a reduced size. In this case, thin lines on the document may not be printed or images may be misaligned.
- For some PDF files, an error message may be displayed before printing starts or while printing is in progress.
  For details, see An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD .

Page top

Printing Photo from Printed Photo or Film (Photo reprint)

Printing from Printed Photo or Film
Setting Items
Printing a Specified Area (Trimming)

Page top

U021

Printing from Printed Photo or Film

You can scan a printed photo or film, and print from the scanned photo (Photo reprint).

For the basic procedure for printing from a printed photo or film, refer to Reprinting Photos from Printed Photos.

You can also print the photo sticker from a printed photo or film, and print all the scanned photos. For details on the useful function, refer to Using Photo Reprinting Functions .

Page top

U022

Setting Items

Before printing, you can specify the setting of page size, media type, and print quality and so on.

Use the ▲▼ button to change the setting item and the ◄► button to change the setting on the LCD.

Note

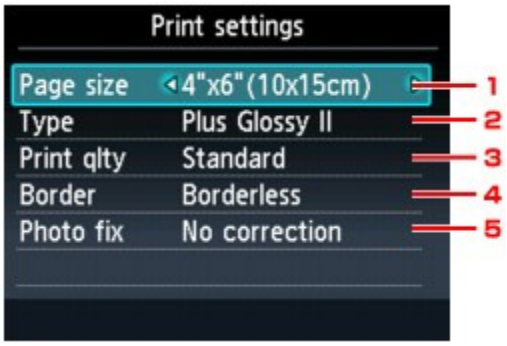
- Depending on the reprint menu, some setting items cannot be selected. This section describes the setting items in Select and print.
  The setting item cannot be selected is displayed grayed out or not displayed.
- Depending on the setting item, some settings cannot be specified in combination with the setting of other setting item or the reprint menu. If the setting cannot be specified in combination is selected, Error details is displayed on the LCD. In this case, touch the left Function button to confirm the message, then change the setting.
- The settings of the page size, media type, etc. in Select and print and Print all photos are retained even if other reprint menu is selected or the machine is turned off.

Print settings Screen (Print Settings Confirmation Screen)

Specify the basic setting for reprinting on this screen.

Note

- How to display the print settings confirmation screen varies with the reprint menu.
  - In Select and print, touch the right Function button to display the print settings confirmation screen on the photo selection screen.
  - In the menu other than Select and print, the print settings confirmation screen is displayed before starting printing.



1. **Page size**

   Select the page size of the loaded paper.

2. **Type (Media type)**

   Select the photo paper type to use.

3. **Print qlty (Print quality)**

   Adjust print quality according to the scanned photo.

4. **Border (Bordered/Borderless print)**

   Select bordered or borderless print.

5. Photo fix

Select No correction, Auto photo fix, or Manual correction.

Note

- If No correction is selected, the photos are reprinted without correction.
- If Auto photo fix is selected, the photos are reprinted with suitable correction.
  If the print result with Auto photo fix selected is not satisfactory, select Manual correction.
- If Manual correction is selected, you can specify advanced setting items such as brightness or contrast on Manual correction screen and reprint photos.
  Manual correction Screen

Manual correction Screen

To display this screen, select Manual correction for Photo fix, then touch the right Function button.



1. Face brightener

Brightens a darkened face on the photo taken against the light.

2. Fade restoration

Corrects the color when printing photos that have faded or color cast over time.

3. Brightness

Adjust brightness.

4. Contrast

Adjust contrast.

5. Color balance

Adjust color balance.
For example, you can increase red or yellow to adjust the skin tone.

Page top

U029

Printing a Specified Area (Trimming)

You can edit images displayed on the LCD by cropping them.

Note

- The trimming function cannot be available depending on the reprint menu.

1. Select an image to crop after scanning the printed photo or film, touch the center Function button.

The Trimming screen is displayed.



2. Crop the area to print.

Use the following buttons to crop the area.

▲, ▼, ◄, and ► buttons:
Positions the cropping frame.

+ or - buttons, or Scroll Wheel:
Sets the cropping frame size.

Left Function button:
Changes the aspect ratio of the cropping frame.

Center Function button:
Rotates the cropping frame. To switch the cropping frame between portrait and landscape orientations, touch this button.

Note

- Some buttons cannot be used depending on the reprint menu.

3. Touch the **OK** button to finalize your selection of cropping area.

The area to be cropped is specified, and the original photo is displayed.

Note

- The cropping area is displayed only for photos which have been cropped.
- To change the cropped area once it has been set, display the Trimming screen again.
- To cancel cropping after cropping has been set, display the Trimming screen again and touch the right Function button.

Using Photo Reprinting Functions

- How to Select a Photo Reprinting Menu
- Reprinting Photo on Stickers (Sticker print)
- Reprinting All Photos (Print all photos)
- Reprinting Photo on the Disc Label

Page top

U024

How to Select a Photo Reprinting Menu

This section describes the procedure to select the reprint menu.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Photo reprint on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Select  Reprint from printed photo to reprint from the printed photo or Reprint from film to reprint from film, then touch the **OK** button.



When Reprint from film is selected, the screen to select the film type is displayed. Use the ◄► button to select the film type, then touch the **OK** button.

4. Load the printed photo or film on the Platen Glass.

Note

- Refer to Loading Paper / Originals for how to load the printed photo on the Platen Glass.
- Refer to Reprinting Photos from Printed Photos for how to load the film on the Platen Glass.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions, then touch the **OK** button to start scanning the printed photo or the film.

Either the Reprint from printed photo screen or the Reprint from film screen is displayed.

Note

- If you print from film, you can confirm the procedure to load the film by touching the left Function button while the instructions are displayed.

6. Use the ◄► button to select the reprint menu, then touch the **OK** button.

Select the reprint menu that you want to use, then follow the on-screen instructions.
For the basic procedure for printing from a printed photo or film, refer to Reprinting Photos from Printed Photos .
You can also print the photo sticker from a printed photo or film, and print all the scanned photos.
For details on the useful function, refer to Using Photo Reprinting Functions .

Page top

U027

Reprinting Photo on Stickers (Sticker print)

You can print a scanned favorite photo on Canon Photo Stickers.

1. Display the Reprint from printed photo screen or the Reprint from film screen.

   How to Select a Photo Reprinting Menu

2. Select  Sticker print, then touch the **OK** button.

3. Load one sheet of stickers on the Rear Tray, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - You cannot use the Cassette to print on stickers. Load one sheet of stickers on the Rear Tray.
   - You can only load one sheet of stickers at a time on the Rear Tray.

4. Make sure that Stickers x16 is selected for layout, then touch the **OK** button.

   Note

   - If any layout other than Stickers x16 is selected on the LCD, select Stickers x16 using the ◄► button.

5. Use the ◄► button to select the photo you want to reprint, then touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

   Note

   - If  appears on the photo, the printed photo or film may be not scanned properly. Rescan the printed photo or film by touching the left Function button.
   - Other Options

     Printing a Specified Area (Trimming)

6. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

7. Touch the **Color** button for color printing, or the **Black** button for black & white printing.

   The machine starts printing.

Page top

U028

Reprinting All Photos (Print all photos)

You can print all scanned photos.

1. Display the Reprint from printed photo screen or the Reprint from film screen.

   How to Select a Photo Reprinting Menu

2. Select  Print all photos, then touch the **OK** button.

   The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

3. Load the paper on the Rear Tray.

4. Specify the number of copies by using the **+** or **-** button.

   Change the print settings as necessary.

   Setting Items

5. Touch the **Color** button for color printing, or the **Black** button for black & white printing.

   The machine starts printing.

Page top

D005

Reprinting Photo on the Disc Label

Print an image on a printed photo onto a printable disc.

For MG8100 series only, you can print the image on the film (35 mm negative/positive (strip/slide)) onto a printable disc.

Important

- You cannot print on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.
- Do not attach the Disc Tray until the message asking you to set the printable disc is displayed. Doing so can damage the machine.

Note

- If printing is misaligned, adjust the printing position. For information on how to adjust it, see Adjusting the Print Area .

1. Display the Reprint from printed photo screen.

   How to Select a Photo Reprinting Menu

   Note

   - For MG8100 series only, when you print from film, display the Reprint from film screen.

2. Select  Disc label print, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   The print area setting screen is displayed.

3. Use the ▲▼ button to select Outer circle or Inner circle and use the ◄► button to change the print area.

4. Use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

   - Measure the outer and inner diameters of the printing surface of the printable disc and make sure you set a value smaller than the measured value for the outer diameter, and a value larger than the measured value for the inner diameter.
   - For information on printable discs, contact their manufacturers.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select Recommended disc or Other disc, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   The photo selection screen is displayed.

   Note

   - If your printable disc is the recommended disc, specify Recommended disc for the suitable density printing. If not, specify Other disc.

6. Use the ◄► button to select the photo to print, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

- If  appears on the photo, the photos may be not scanned properly. Rescan the photo by using left Function button.
- Other options
  ➡ Printing a Specified Area (Trimming)

7. Confirm the print image, then use the **OK** button to go to the next step.

The print settings confirmation screen is displayed.

Note

- You can also crop the print area again by using the center Function button.

8. Use the **Color** button for color printing, or the **Black** button for black & white printing.

9. Confirm the message, then set the printable disc.

Use the left Function button to see how to set the printable disc.

10. Use the **OK** button to start printing.

The machine starts printing.

Note

- Use the **Stop** button to cancel printing.
- After printing, allow the printing surface of the disc to dry naturally. Do not use hairdryers or expose the disc to direct sunlight to dry the ink. Do not touch the printing surface until the ink has dried.
- To keep the print quality at an optimal level, it is recommended to stop printing discs once every ten discs when printing more than ten discs continuously.
  To stop the printing operation, detach the Disc Tray from the printer, then close the Inner Cover. After approximately three minutes have elapsed, open the Inner Cover, attach the Disc Tray to the printer, then resume printing.

Page top

Printing from Mobile Phone or Printing Template (Special print)

- Printing from Mobile Phone via Infrared Communication
- Printing from Mobile Phone via Bluetooth Communication
- Printing Template Forms Such As Lined Paper or Graph Paper

Page top

U056

Printing from Mobile Phone via Infrared Communication

You can print photos from your mobile phone via infrared communication.

When printing through infrared communication, also refer to your mobile phone's instruction manual.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Load paper.

3. Select  Special print on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

4. Select  Print from mobile phone, then touch the **OK** button.

Print standby screen is displayed.

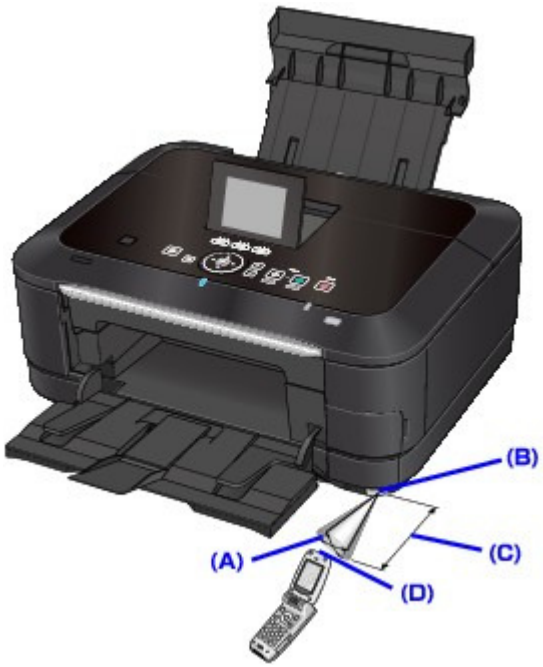
Note

- You can change the print settings by touching the right Function button. For setting items, see Mobile phone print settings .
- The default setting for printing from mobile phone is borderless printing on 4 x 6 inches / 10 x 15 cm Photo Paper Plus Glossy II.

5. Place the mobile phone so that its Infrared Port comes face to face to that of the machine at a distance of less than approximately 8 inches / 20 cm.

Note

- The effective angle of the Infrared Port (B) of the machine is about 10 degrees up, left, or right from the central axis (A). The effective range of communication with the machine depends on the mobile phone you are using. For details, refer to your mobile phone's instruction manual.



(A) Effective angle: 10 degrees up, left, or right from the central axis
(B) Infrared Port of the machine
(C) Approximately 8 inches / 20 cm (Do not block with an object.)
(D) Infrared Port of the mobile phone

6. Select the photo to print and send the data to the machine using the infrared communication function of the mobile phone.

Printing will start after receiving all data.

Note

- Do not place any obstacle between the Infrared Ports of the machine and mobile phone, as it will block data transmission.
- During receiving data, be careful not to interrupt infrared communication with the machine. If it is interrupted, send the data from the mobile phone again.
- Depending on your device, the print quality may be degraded due to the restriction on the infrared transfer capacity.
- We recommend printing on sticker when the print quality on other types of paper is not fine.
- Video files cannot be printed.
- Depending on your device, data saved on a memory card may not be printed.
- **About transmittable data**
  - Due to security settings on the mobile phone, downloaded content or photos downloaded from a URL attached to an E-mail cannot be printed.
  - Depending on the size of a photo, it may take a while for this machine to start printing after starting infrared communication.
  - Printed quality and orientation (portrait or landscape) are determined automatically according to the shot photo size.
  - Depending on the photo size shot on the mobile phone, the edges of the image may be cut off when performing borderless printing; the margin size may change when printing with borders.
  - If the photo file is over 1.8 MB in size, it may not be possible to send the file.

Page top

U057

Printing from Mobile Phone via Bluetooth Communication

This section describes the procedure to print photos through Bluetooth communication from a mobile phone with the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30.

When printing from a mobile phone through Bluetooth communication, refer also to your mobile phone's instruction manual.

For the procedure to print through Bluetooth communication from the computer, refer to About Bluetooth Communication.

Note

- Mobile phones supporting OPP (Object Push Profile) or BIP (Basic Imaging Profile) can be used to print photos.
  Depending on your mobile phone, you may not perform printing even if your mobile phone supports the profiles above. For information on the profiles your mobile phone supports, refer to your mobile phone's instruction manual.

Printing through Bluetooth Communication

1. **Make sure that the machine is turned on.**

2. **Load paper.**

3. **Attach the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30.**

   Insert the Bluetooth Unit BU-30 to the Direct Print Port.



4. **Select**  **Special print on the HOME screen.**

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine.

5. **Select**  **Print from mobile phone, then touch the OK button.**

Print standby screen is displayed.

Note

- You can change the print settings by touching the right Function button. For setting items, see Mobile phone print settings .
- The default setting for printing from mobile phone is borderless printing on 4 x 6 inches / 10 x 15 cm Photo Paper Plus Glossy II.

6. **Start printing from a mobile phone.**

- **For the device name, select the default value Canon XXX-1 (where "XXX" is your machine's name).**
- **If you are required to input a passkey, input the default value "0000".**

  You can change the device name of the machine, passkey, and so on from the Bluetooth settings screen.
  ➡Changing the Bluetooth Settings

Note

- Communication is possible in a range of up to about 33 ft. / 10 m depending on the conditions below. Printing speed may vary depending on the following conditions:
  Presence of obstacles between the communication equipment, and radio conditions.
  Presence of magnetic fields, static electricity, or electromagnetic interference.
  Receiver sensitivity and antenna performance of the communication equipment.
- Video files cannot be printed.
- Depending on your device, data saved on a memory card may not be printed.
- For the transmittable data, see About transmittable data.

Page top

U058

Changing the Bluetooth Settings

As preparation for printing through Bluetooth communication, you can change the settings such as the device name and passkey from the Bluetooth settings screen.

This section describes how to display the Bluetooth settings screen. For each setting item, see Bluetooth settings .

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Attach the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30.

   Insert the Bluetooth Unit BU-30 to the Direct Print Port.



3. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

4. Select  Device settings, then touch the **OK** button.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select Bluetooth settings, then touch the **OK** button.

   The Bluetooth settings screen is displayed.

   Bluetooth settings Screen

U030

Printing Template Forms Such As Lined Paper or Graph Paper

You can print a template form such as lined paper, graph paper, or check list, etc. on A4, B5, or Letter-sized plain paper.

Printable template forms

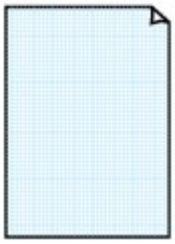
The following templates are available:

- **Notebook paper**



You can select three line spacing formats.
Setting on the LCD:
- Notebook paper 1: 8 mm spacing
- Notebook paper 2: 7 mm spacing
- Notebook paper 3: 6 mm spacing

- **Graph paper**



You can select two square sizes.
Setting on the LCD:
- Graph paper 1: Graph 5 mm
- Graph paper 2: Graph 3 mm

Note

- You cannot print Graph paper on B5 sized paper.

- **Checklist**



You can print a notepad with checkboxes.
Setting on the LCD:
Checklist

- **Staff paper**



You can print staff paper with 10 or 12 staves.

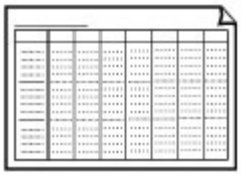
Setting on the LCD:
- Staff paper 1: Staff paper 10 staves
- Staff paper 2: Staff paper 12 staves

- **Handwriting paper**



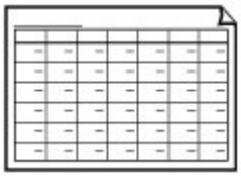
You can print handwriting paper.
Setting on the LCD:
Handwriting paper

- **Weekly schedule**



You can print a weekly schedule form.
Setting on the LCD:
Weekly schedule

- **Monthly schedule**



You can print a monthly schedule form.
Setting on the LCD:
Monthly schedule

Printing template forms

Print template form following the procedure below.

1. **Make sure that the machine is turned on.**

2. **Load A4, B5, or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette.**

3. **Select**  **Special print on the HOME screen.**

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine.

4. **Select**  **Template print, then touch the OK button.**

5. **Use the ▲▼◄► button to select the template you want to print, then touch the OK button.**

➡ Printable template forms

6. **Use the ▲▼◄► button to specify the setting of page size and 2-sided printing and the +or - button to specify the number of copies.**

Note

- Depending on the form, some setting of page size cannot be specified. If it is selected, Error details is displayed on the LCD. In this case, touch the left Function button to confirm the message, then change the setting.

7. **Start printing.**

Touch the **Color** button for printing following form.
Notebook paper 1/Notebook paper 2/Notebook paper 3/Graph paper 1/Graph paper 2/ Handwriting paper
Touch the **Black** button for printing following form.
Checklist/Staff paper 1/Staff paper 2/Weekly schedule/Monthly schedule

Page top

Scanning

- Scanning Images
- Scanning with Using the Operation Panel of the Machine
- Scanning with the Bundled Application Software
- Scanning with Other Application Software
- Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Screens
- Other Scanning Methods

Page top

Scanning Images

Scanning Images
Before Scanning
Placing Documents
Placing Film

Page top

U046

Scanning Images

You can scan images from the machine and save them to a computer, on a memory card, or a USB flash drive easily.

In addition, you can scan images with detailed settings from a computer using application software.

Select the scanning method according to your purpose.

Saving Scanned Data on the Memory Card/USB Flash Drive Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

Forwarding Scanned Data to the Computer Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

Scanning with the Bundled Application Software

Scanning with Other Application Software

Page top

U047

Before Scanning

Before scanning images, confirm the following:

Make sure that the original to be scanned meets the requirements for an original to be set on the Platen Glass.

If you forward the data to the PC, refer to Placing Documents for details.

If you save the data to the memory card or the USB flash drive, refer to Loading Paper / Originals for details.

Page top

S005

Placing Documents

Learn how to place documents on the machine's Platen. Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.

Important

- Do not place objects on the Document Cover. The objects may fall into the machine when the Document Cover is opened. This may damage the machine.
- Close the Document Cover when scanning.
- When scanning documents other than film, make sure that the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet is attached to the Document Cover. Without the FAU Protective Sheet, the document type may not be detected correctly.

Note

- See "Placing Film " to scan film.

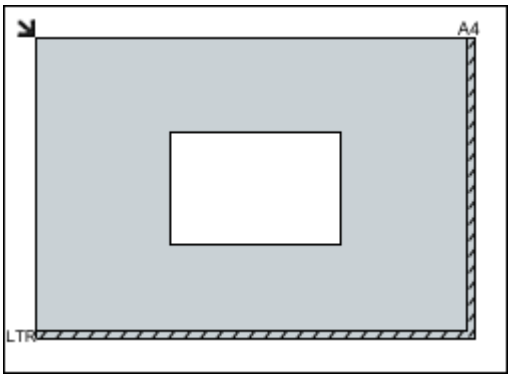
Placing Documents

Place documents as described below to allow the machine to detect the document type or size automatically.

Important

- When scanning by specifying the document size in MP Navigator EX or ScanGear (scanner driver), align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- Photos that have been cut to various shapes and documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square cannot be cropped accurately when scanning.
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.

For Photos, Postcards, Business Cards or BD/DVD/CD	For Magazines, Newspapers or Text Documents
	
Placing a Single Document Place the document face-down on the Platen, with 0.39 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the Platen and the document. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.	Place the document face-down on the Platen and align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.

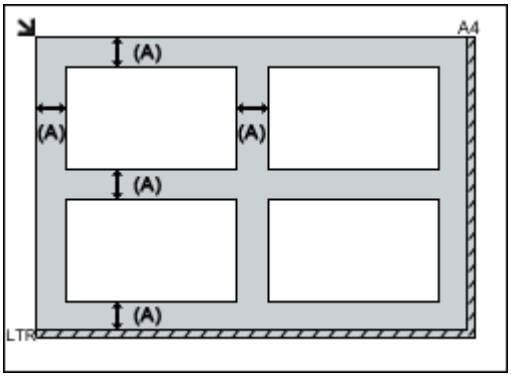


Important

- Large documents (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/ arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may be saved as PDF files. To save in a format other than PDF, scan by specifying the file format.

Placing Multiple Documents

Allow 0.39 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the Platen and documents, and between documents. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



(A) more than 0.39 inches (1 cm)

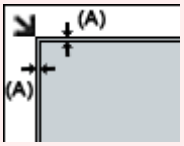
Note

- You can place up to 12 documents.
- You can place up to 4 documents when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.
- Positions of slanted documents (10 degrees or less) are corrected automatically.



Important

- The portion within 0.039 inches (1 mm) inwards from the alignment mark cannot be scanned.



(A) 0.039 inches (1 mm)

Page top

S003

Placing Film

This machine supports 35 mm films (film strips and mounted slides).



35 mm Film Strip

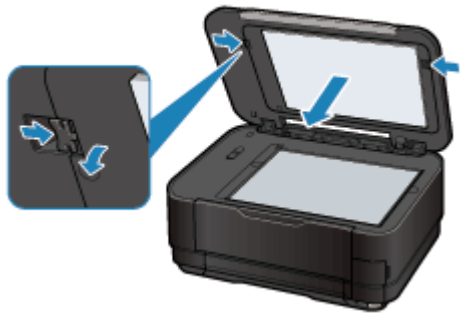


35 mm Mounted Slides

Preparation

Remove the Film Guide from the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet.

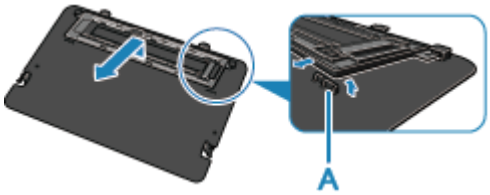
1. Open the Document Cover and remove the FAU Protective Sheet.



2. Turn over the FAU Protective Sheet, then slightly lift the center of the Film Guide and pull it forward to remove it.

Note

- Be careful not to let the Film Guide touch the tab (A) when removing it.



Important

- Film scanning is not available when the FAU Protective Sheet is attached to the Document Cover.
- Be careful not to lose the removed FAU Protective Sheet. Keep it in a safe place.
- To avoid damaging the light source, be sure to attach the FAU Protective Sheet when not scanning film.

Placing Film

Important

- Hold the film by the edge to avoid smudges and fingerprints.
- Dust on the film or Platen appears in scanned images. Remove dust from the film and Platen.
- Do not block the calibration slot on the Film Guide when scanning. If the slot is blocked, the film

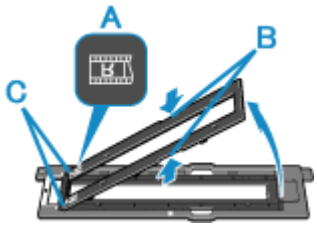
cannot be scanned in correct colors.
- Close the Document Cover gently.

Film Strips	Mounted Slides
Load the film strip into the frame for film strip on the Film Guide removed from the Document Cover and place it on the Platen.	Load mounted slides into the Film Guide (with the frame for film strip removed) after placing it on the Platen.

1. With the film mark (A) facing up, open the Film Holder by gently squeezing the indentations (B) in the directions shown by ➡⬅ (Arrows).

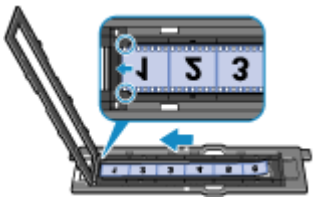
Note

- Be careful not to dislocate the hinge parts (C) when opening the Film Holder.



2. With the film facing down (the side on which images appear correctly) so that the images will be upside down, insert its left corners under the tabs on the frame for film strip.

The image order will be from left to right.



Note

- The frame for film strip holds one film strip of up to six frames at one time.
- Load the film from left to right, as this is the direction of the scan. However, film frames may not be scanned in the correct order depending on the camera model that was used to capture the images.



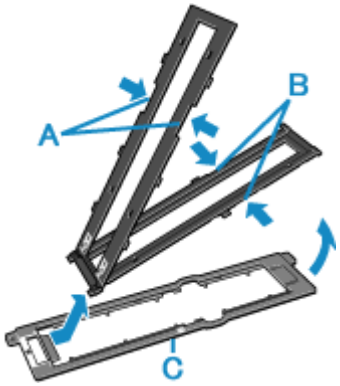
3. Fully close the Film Holder.

Note

- If the holder does not close properly,

1. Open the Film Holder by gently squeezing the indentations (A) inward.

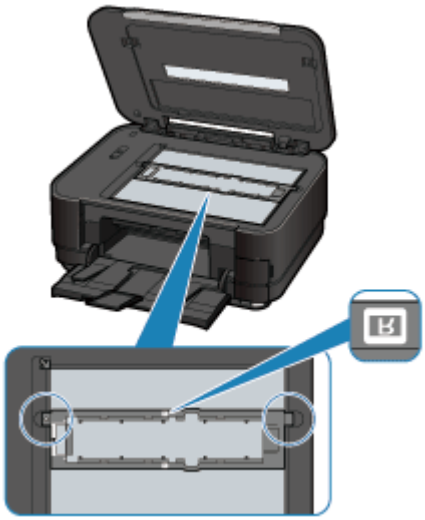
2. Remove the frame for film strip from the Film Guide (C) by gently squeezing the indentations (B) in the directions shown by ➡⬅ (Arrows).



Note

- The frame for film strip is not used when loading mounted slides. Be sure to remove it.

3. Align the tabs on the Film Guide with the indentations on the left and right sides of the Platen.



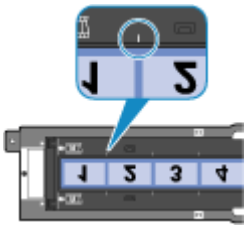
4. With the film facing down (the side on which images appear correctly) so that the images will be upside down, load

check that the film is loaded correctly.

- If the holder is not closed flat, press down across the holder to fit the protrusions into the slots.

4. Make sure that the spaces between frames are aligned with the white lines on the holder.

Double-check the orientation of the film.



Note

- Depending on the film cutting position, the separation lines between frames on a film strip may not be aligned with the white line marks of the Film Holder. In this case, adjust the location of the film strip to align the separation lines between frames with the white line marks.

5. Align the tabs on the Film Guide with the indentations on the left and right sides of the Platen.

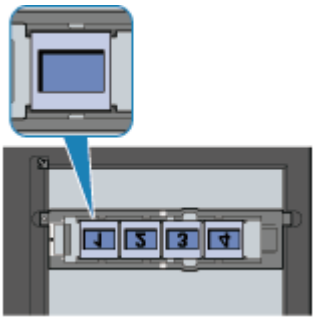


Note

- When a film strip shorter than the frame for film strip is scanned, the image of the frame next to the area without film may appear whitish. In that case, cover the area without film with black paper or the like.
- A sticker label attached to the margin of the film may be recognized as an image.

the slides from left to right.

Load the slides so that the film lies flat on the Platen.



Note

- The Film Guide holds up to four mounted slides at one time.

5. Gently close the Document Cover.

6. Gently close the Document Cover.	

Page top

Scanning with Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

- Saving Scanned Data on the Memory Card/USB Flash Drive Using the Operation Panel of the Machine
- Forwarding Scanned Data to the Computer Using the Operation Panel of the Machine
- Attaching the Scanned Data Using the Operation Panel of the Machine to E-mail
- Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine
- Appendix: Various Scan Settings

Page top

U048

Saving Scanned Data on the Memory Card/USB Flash Drive Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

You can save scanned data on the memory card or USB flash drive using the Operation Panel.

Important

- Do not remove the memory card or USB flash drive from the machine under the following conditions:
  - While scanning is in progress
  - Before saving the scanned data
- You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time. Be sure to use either of them as a media for saving scanned data.
- For safety reasons, we recommend backing up the scanned data saved on a memory card or USB flash drive to another media periodically to avoid unexpected accidents.
- We assume no responsibility for damage to or loss of data for whatever reason even within the warranty period.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Scan on the HOME screen.

   The Save/Forward to screen is displayed.



Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .
- If the Scan standby screen for forwarding the data to the USB-connected computer is displayed on the LCD, touch the left Function button to display the Save/Forward to screen.

3. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

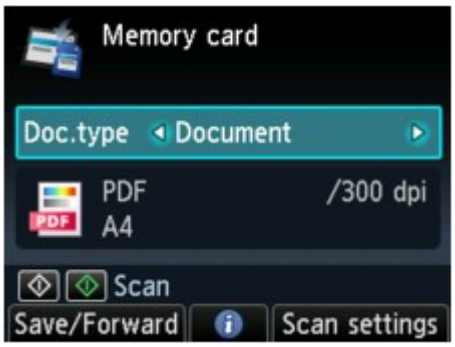
   For information on how to insert the memory card into the Card Slot or information on the types of the memory card compatible with the machine, refer to Printing Photos .
   See Inserting the USB Flash Drive for how to insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

4. Select  Memory card or  USB flash drive, then touch the **OK** button.

5. Select  Save to memory card or  Save to USB flash drive, then touch the

OK button.

The Scan standby screen is displayed.
* The following screen is a Scan standby screen for saving the data on the memory card.



6. Use the ◄► button to select the document type for Doc.type.

Document
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a document.

Photo
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a photo.

7. Touch the right Function button to adjust the settings as necessary.

➡ Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine

8. Load the original on the Platen Glass.

Note

- Refer to Loading Paper / Originals for how to load the original on the Platen Glass.
- You can confirm the procedure to load the original by touching the center Function button.

9. Touch the **Color** button for color scanning, or the **Black** button for black & white scanning.

If ON is selected for Preview on the scan settings screen, the preview screen is displayed on the LCD after scanning. To rescan the original, touch the left Function button. If you select PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen, you can rotate the scanning image on the preview screen by touching the right Function button. To start saving, touch the **OK** button.

If you select the setting other than PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen:
The machine starts scanning and scanned data is saved either on the memory card or USB flash drive, which you select as the media for saving scanned data.

If you select PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen:
You can scan the originals continuously. After scanning the first original is complete, the confirmation screen asking you if you continue scanning is displayed. Load the next original on the Platen Glass, then touch the **Color** button for color scanning, or the **Black** button for black & white scanning. After scanning is complete, touching the left Function button allows you to save the scanned originals in one PDF file on the memory card/USB flash drive. You can save up to 100 pages of images in one PDF file.

Remove the original on the Platen Glass after scanning is complete.
To remove the memory card after scanning is complete, refer to Printing Photos .
To remove the USB flash drive after scanning is complete, see Removing the USB Flash Drive .

Note

- If the memory card or USB flash drive becomes full while scanning images is in progress, only the images already scanned can be saved.
- You can save up to 2000 files of scanned data in both PDF and JPEG data format.
- The folder and file name of scanned data saved on the memory card or USB flash drive is as follows:
  - Folder name: (file extension: PDF): CANON_SC\DOCUMENT\0001

- Folder name: (file extension: JPG): CANON_SC\IMAGE\0001
- File name: Running numbers, starting from SCN_0001

- Importing the Scanned Data Saved on a Memory Card to the Computer
  When you import the scanned data saved on a memory card to the computer, import the data after performing either of the operations below:
  -Turning the machine off, then turn it back on.
  -Removing the memory card, then reinsert it into the Card Slot.
  You can optimize or print the scanned data saved on the memory card using MP Navigator EX.
  For details, refer to Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card.
- Importing the Scanned Data Saved on a USB Flash Drive to the Computer
  You can import the scanned data saved on a USB flash drive to the computer. After scanning the data, connect the USB flash drive to the computer, then import the data using Windows Explorer.

Inserting the USB Flash Drive

Important

- **Before inserting the USB flash drive:**
  - You may need an extension cable if the USB flash drive cannot be inserted into the Direct Print Port of the machine. For details, ask an electronics store.
  - Depending on the type of USB flash drive, the operation may not be guaranteed.
  - Some USB flash drives with security settings may not be used.

1. Insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

Make sure that the USB flash drive is correctly oriented before inserting it straightforward into the Direct Print Port.



Removing the USB Flash Drive

1. Make sure that the machine is not writing data to the USB flash drive.

Check if the writing operation is complete on the LCD.

Important

- Do not remove the USB flash drive or turn off the power while the machine is operating.

Note

- If you use the USB flash drive with the access lamp, refer to the instruction manual

supplied with the USB flash drive to check if the writing operation is complete on the USB flash drive.

2. **Remove the USB flash drive.**

Hold the USB flash drive and remove it from the machine straightforward.

Page top

U050

Deleting Scanned Data on Memory Card/USB Flash Drive

You can delete scanned data on the memory card or USB flash drive using the Operation Panel.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Scan on the HOME screen.

   The Save/Forward to screen is displayed.

   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .
   - If the Scan standby screen for forwarding the data to the USB-connected computer is displayed on the LCD, touch the left Function button to display the Save/Forward to screen.

3. Insert the memory card into the Card Slot or insert the USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

   Important

   - You cannot use the memory card and USB flash drive at the same time.

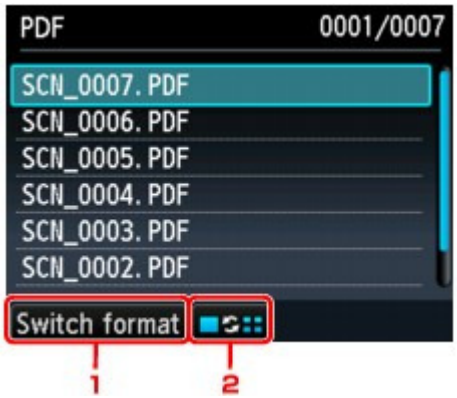
4. Select  Memory card or  USB flash drive, then touch the **OK** button.

5. Select  Delete scanned data, then touch the **OK** button.

   The file list is displayed.

   Note

   - You can preview the file to delete or switch the file list between PDF and JPEG.



1. Switch format

   By touching the left Function button, you can switch the display between the PDF data list and the JPEG data list.

2. Change display

By touching the center Function button, you can switch the display between the list and the preview.
When the format for PDF data is selected, only the first page of the PDF data is displayed on the LCD.

6. Select the file to delete, then touch the **OK** button.

7. Select Yes on the confirmation screen, then touch the **OK** button.

The machine starts deleting the file.

Page top

U051

Forwarding Scanned Data to the Computer Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

You can forward the scanned data to the computer using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Before forwarding scanned data to the computer, confirm the following:

- **The necessary application software (MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX) is installed.**

  If the application software (MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX) is not yet installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then perform Custom Install and select MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX to install.

- **The machine is connected to a computer correctly.**

  Make sure that the machine is connected to the computer correctly.

  Do not plug in or unplug the USB or LAN cable when scanning images with the machine, or when the computer is in the sleep or standby mode.

  If you perform scanning via a network connection, make sure that all the required settings have been specified. For details, refer to Network Scan Settings .

- **The destination and the file name are specified in MP Navigator EX.**

  You can specify the destination and the file name in MP Navigator EX. For details on how to perform settings or the initial settings, refer to Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC) .

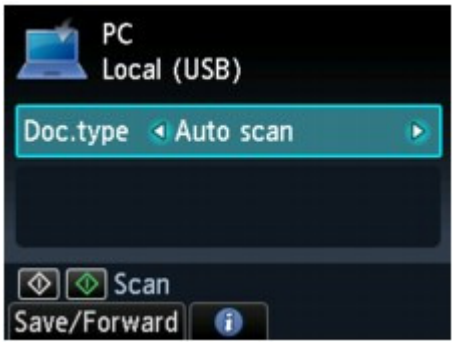
1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Scan on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

If you forward the data to the USB-connected computer:
The Scan standby screen is displayed.



Go to step 3.

Note

- If the Save/Forward to screen is displayed, select PC and touch the **OK** button. The Scan

standby screen is displayed.

If you forward the data to the network-connected computer:
The Save/Forward to screen is displayed.



Note

- If the Scan standby screen for forwarding the data to the USB-connected computer is displayed on the LCD, touch the left Function button to display the Save/Forward to screen.

Select the computer to forward the scanned data following the procedure below.

1. Select  PC, then touch the **OK** button.
2. Use the ▲▼ button to select the computer to forward the scanned data, then touch the **OK** button.

   The Scan standby screen is displayed.

   Note

   - If you select Local (USB) on the Select PC screen, the data is forwarded to the USB-connected computer.

3. Use the ◄► button to select the document type for Doc.type.

Auto scan
This item is available only when the machine is connected to the computer using a USB cable.
The machine detects the type of the originals automatically and the image is forwarded in the optimized size, resolution and data format.

Important

- Scanning via a network is not available.
- Load originals properly according to their type; otherwise, some originals may not be scanned properly.
  Refer to Placing Documents for how to load the original on the Platen Glass.
- The following items can be scanned:
  Photos, postcards, visiting cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, BD/DVD/CDs, films
- The following items cannot be scanned properly.
  - A4 sized photos
  - Documents smaller than 5 inches x 7 inches (127 mm x 178 mm) such as a paperback with its backbone cut off
  - Originals on thin white paper
  - Long and narrow originals such as panoramic photographs

Film
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a film.

Document
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a document.

Photo
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a photo.

4. Touch the right Function button to adjust the settings as necessary.

Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine

5. Load the original on the Platen Glass.

Note

- Refer to Placing Documents for how to load the original on the Platen Glass.
- You can confirm the procedure to load the original by touching the center Function button.

6. Touch the **Color** button for color scanning, or the **Black** button for black & white scanning.

If you select the setting other than PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen:
Scanning starts and the images are forwarded to the computer according to the settings specified in MP Navigator EX.

If you select PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen:
You can scan the originals continuously. After scanning the first original is complete, the confirmation screen asking you if you continue scanning is displayed. Load the next original on the Platen Glass, then touch the **Color** button for color scanning, or the **Black** button for black & white scanning. After scanning is complete, touching the left Function button allows you to forward the scanned originals in one PDF file to the computer.

Remove the original on the Platen Glass after scanning is complete.

7. Specify MP Navigator EX 4.0

If you are using Windows 7 or Windows Vista:
The program selection screen may be displayed after touching the **Color** or **Black** button. In this case, select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 and click OK.
You can set MP Navigator EX to launch whenever touching the **Color** or **Black** button. For details, see For Windows Users .

If you are using Windows XP:
The program selection screen may be displayed after touching the **Color** or **Black** button for the first time. In this case, specify MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 as the application software to use, select Always use this program for this action, then click OK. From the next time, MP Navigator EX is automatically started.

Important

- If the scanning result with Auto scan is not satisfactory, select Film, Document, or Photo according to the original in step 3, then specify the scan size or other setting items in step 4.

If you want to scan originals with advanced settings, or if you want to edit or print the scanned images:

If you scan originals from a computer using MP Navigator EX, MP Navigator EX enables you to edit the scanned images, such as optimizing or trimming.

In addition, you can edit or print the scanned images using the bundled application software to make better use of them.

Let's Try Scanning

Note

- You can use a WIA-compliant application software and the Control Panel (Windows XP only) to scan originals with this machine.
  For details, refer to Other Scanning Methods .
- If you want to convert a scanned document to text, refer to Editing Files .

Page top

U101

Attaching the Scanned Data Using the Operation Panel of the Machine to E-mail

You can attach scanned data to an e-mail using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Before attaching scanned data to an e-mail, confirm the following:

- **The necessary application software (MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX) is installed.**

  If the application software (MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX) is not yet installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then perform Custom Install and select MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX to install.

- **The machine is connected to a computer correctly.**

  Make sure that the machine is connected to the computer correctly.

  Do not plug in or unplug the USB or LAN cable when scanning images with the machine, or when the computer is in sleep or standby mode.

  If you perform scanning via a network connection, make sure that all the required settings have been specified. For details, refer to Network Scan Settings .

- **The mail software and the file name are specified in MP Navigator EX.**

  You can specify the mail software and the file name in MP Navigator EX. For details on how to perform settings or the initial settings, refer to Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail) .

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Scan on the HOME screen.

   The Save/Forward to screen is displayed.



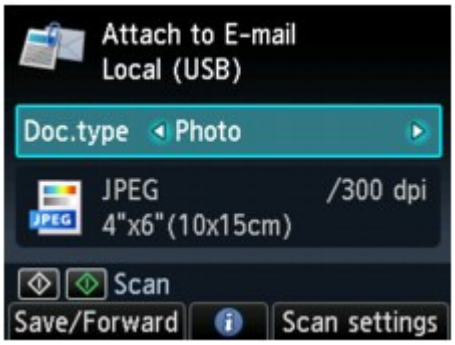
Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .
- If the Scan standby screen for forwarding the data to the USB-connected computer is displayed on the LCD, touch the left Function button to display the Save/Forward to screen.

3. Select  Attach to E-mail, then touch the **OK** button.

4. Use the ▲▼ button to select the computer to forward the scanned data, then touch the **OK** button.

Select Local (USB) for a USB-connected computer, or select the computer to forward the scanned data for a network-connected computer.
The Scan standby screen is displayed.



5. Use the ◄► button to select the document type for Doc.type.

Film
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a film.

Document
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a document.

Photo
Scans the original on the Platen Glass applying the optimized settings for scanning a photo.

6. Touch the right Function button to adjust the settings as necessary.

Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine

7. Load the original on the Platen Glass.

Note

- Refer to Placing Documents for how to load the original on the Platen Glass.
- You can confirm the procedure to load the original by touching the center Function button.

8. Touch the **Color** button for color scanning, or the **Black** button for black & white scanning.

If you select the setting other than PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen:
Scanning starts and the attached files are made or forwarded to the computer according to the settings specified in MP Navigator EX.
For the settings or how to send an e-mail, refer to the mail software's instruction manual.

If you select PDF or Compact PDF for Format on the scan setting screen:
You can scan the originals continuously. After scanning the first original is complete, the confirmation screen asking you if you continue scanning is displayed. Load the next original on the Platen Glass, then touch the **Color** button for color scanning, or the **Black** button for black & white scanning. After scanning is complete, touching the left Function button allows you to attach the scanned data to an e-mail or forward them in one PDF file to the computer.

Remove the original on the Platen Glass after scanning is complete.

9. Specify MP Navigator EX 4.0

If you are using Windows 7 or Windows Vista:
The program selection screen may be displayed after touching the **Color** or **Black** button. In this case, select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 and click OK.
You can set MP Navigator EX to launch whenever touching the **Color** or **Black** button. For details, see For Windows Users .

If you are using Windows XP:

The program selection screen may be displayed after touching the **Color** or **Black** button for the first time. In this case, specify MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 as the application software to use, select Always use this program for this action, then click OK. From the next time, MP Navigator EX is automatically started.

Page top

U049

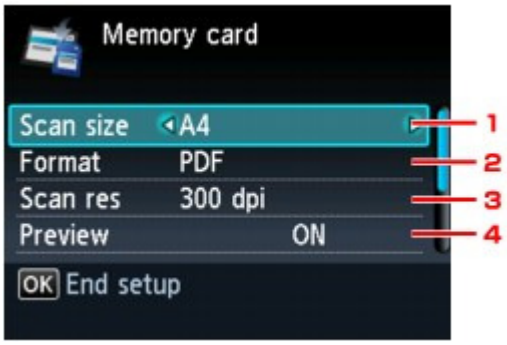
Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine

You can change the scan settings such as the scan size, resolution, or data format.

When the Scan standby screen is displayed, touch the right Function button to select the setting item. Use the ▲▼ to select the setting item, the ◄► button to specify the setting, then touch the **OK** button.

Note

- When Auto scan is selected for Doc.type to forward the scanned data to the computer, the scan setting cannot be specified.
- Depending on the scan menu on the Save/Forward to screen, some setting items cannot be selected. This section describes the setting items when you select Memory card on the Save/Forward to screen.
  The setting item cannot be selected is displayed grayed out.
- Depending on the setting item, some settings cannot be specified in combination with the setting of other setting item, the document type selected for Doc.type, or the scan menu on the Save/Forward to screen. If the setting cannot be specified in combination is selected, Error details is displayed on the LCD. In this case, touch the left Function button to confirm the message, then change the setting.
- The settings of the scan size, resolution, and data format are retained even if the machine is turned off.
- When scanning starts in the scan menu that is not available with the specified setting, The specified function is not available with current settings. is displayed on the LCD. Change the setting, follow the on-screen instructions.
- When you forward the scanned data to the computer or attach the data to an e-mail, you can specify the destination and file name using MP Navigator EX. Refer to Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC) for the settings when forwarding the data to PC, and refer to Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail) for the settings when attaching the data to an e-mail.
- If you scan originals from the computer, you can scan with advanced settings. Refer to Let's Try Scanning for scanning from the computer.





1. Scan size*1

Select the size of the original on the Platen Glass.

2. Format

Select the data format of the scanned data.

3. Scan res (Scan resolution)

Select the resolution for scanning.

4. Preview*1

Select to preview the scanned data or not.

5. Reduce show-thru*1*2 (Reducing show-through)

Characters on the back may show through when scanning a thin document such as a newspaper. Select ON if characters seem to show through on the scanned document.

6. Descreen*1*2

A printout consists of minute dots to make characters or graphs. Interfering with each dot may result in uneven shades or a striped pattern. Select ON if you notice any uneven shades or a striped pattern on the scanned image.

Note

- Even if ON is selected for this setting, some moire effects may remain if Unsharp mask is set to ON. In that case, select OFF for Unsharp mask.

7. Unsharp mask

The outline of small characters or thin objects can be accentuated. Select ON if you want to accentuate the outline of the scanned data.

*1 Not available when scanning a film.

*2 Not available when scanning a photo.

Page top

S010

Appendix: Various Scan Settings

- **Enabling network scanning**

  Network Scan Settings
- **Specifying how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine**

  Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX

Page top

S006

Network Scan Settings

You can connect the machine to a network to share it among multiple computers or scan images into a specified computer.

Important

- Multiple users cannot scan at the same time.

Note

- Complete the network settings of the machine beforehand. (Refer to the printed manual: *Getting Started*.)

Complete the following settings to enable scanning over a network.

Setting for Scanning with MP Navigator EX

To scan over a network using MP Navigator EX, follow the steps below and change the connection status between the computer and the machine.

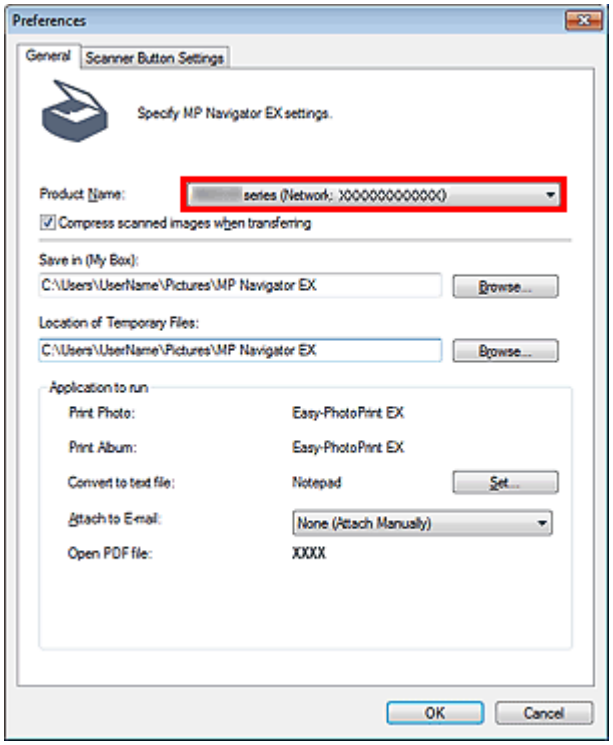
1. Start MP Navigator EX.

   Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Click Preferences.

3. Click the General tab and select (model name) series (Network: XXXXXXXXXXXX) for Product Name.

   (Where XXXXXXXXXXXX is the MAC address.)



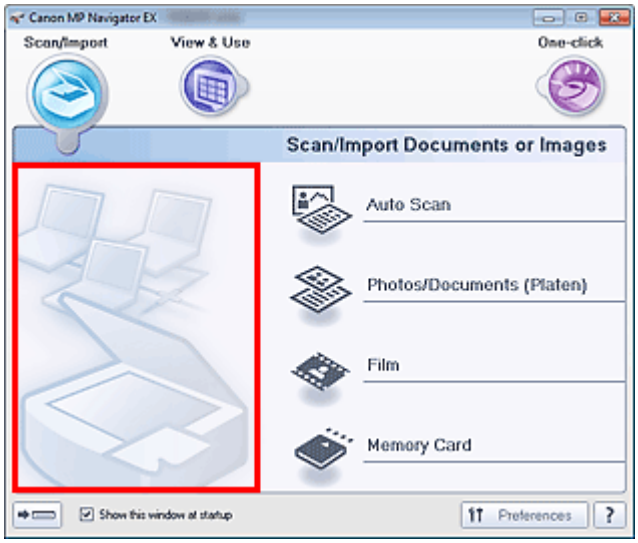
Note

- For USB connection, select (model name) series for Product Name.

4. Click OK.

The Preferences dialog box closes. You can now scan via a network connection.

Go to the Main Menu to check whether network scanning is enabled.

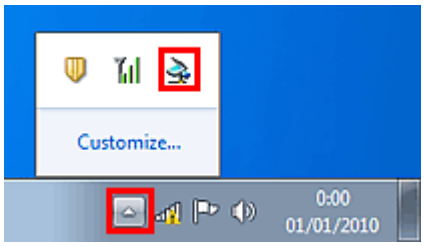


Setting for Scanning Using the Operation Panel

You can make settings for scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

1. Check that Canon IJ Network Scan Utility is running.

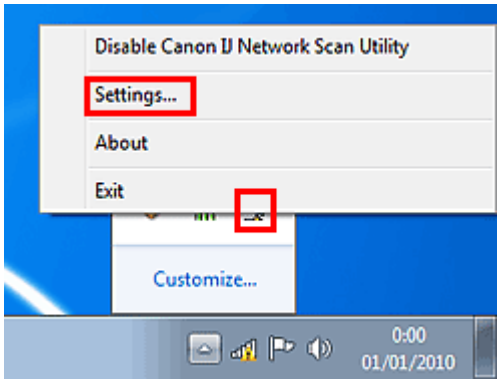
If Canon IJ Network Scan Utility is running, its icon appears in the notification area of the taskbar.



Note

- If Canon IJ Network Scan Utility is not running, from the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon IJ Network Utilities > Canon IJ Network Scan Utility > Canon IJ Network Scan Utility to start it.

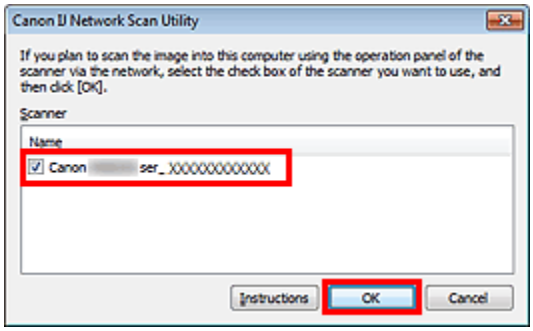
2. In the notification area of the taskbar, right-click the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility icon and select Settings....



The Canon IJ Network Scan Utility dialog box opens.

3. Select Canon (model name) ser_XXXXXXXXXXXX and click OK.

(Where XXXXXXXXXXXX is the MAC address.)



Note

- When multiple scanners are connected via a network, you can select up to three scanners.
- See "Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Menu and Setting Screen " for details on Canon IJ Network Scan Utility.

Note

- If the scanner you want to use is not displayed, check the following conditions and click OK to close the dialog box, then reopen it and select the scanner.
  - The MP Drivers is installed
  - Network setup is completed after installing the MP Drivers
  - Network communication between the product and computer is enabled

  If the scanner is still not displayed, see " Troubleshooting ."

Page top

S007

MP Navigator EX

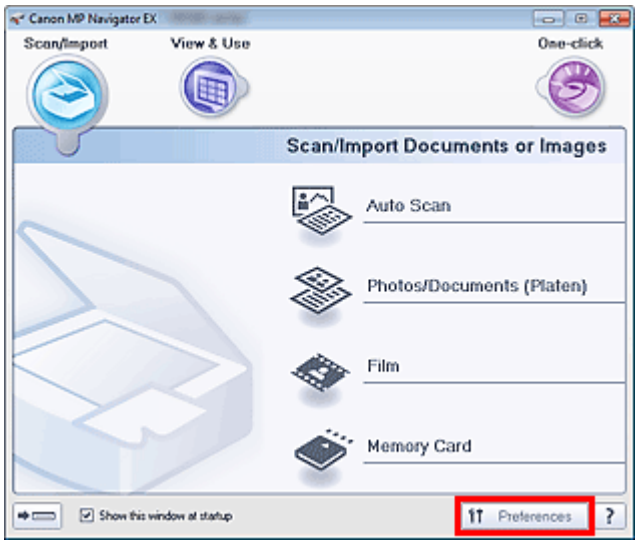
Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX enables you to specify how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

1. Start MP Navigator EX.

   Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Click Preferences.

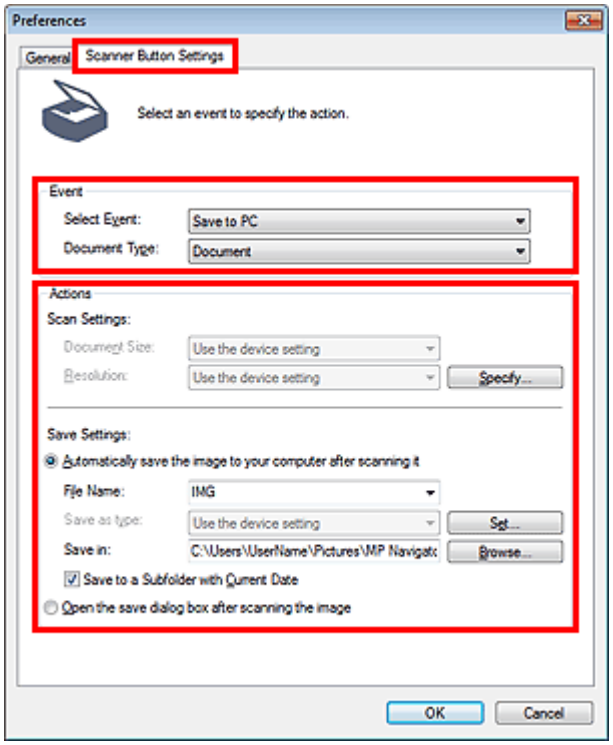


The Preferences dialog box opens.

Note

- The Preferences dialog box can also be opened by clicking Preferences in the One-click Mode screen.

3. On the Scanner Button Settings tab, specify Event and Actions.



Note

- See the section below for details.
  - Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)
  - Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail)

4. Click OK.

The operation will be performed according to the settings when you start scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Page top

Scanning with the Bundled Application Software

- What Is MP Navigator EX (Supplied Scanner Software)?
- Let's Try Scanning
- Useful MP Navigator EX Functions
- Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX
- MP Navigator EX Screens
- Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images

Page top

S101

MP Navigator EX

What Is MP Navigator EX (Supplied Scanner Software)?

MP Navigator EX is an application that enables you to easily scan photos, documents and film. It is suitable even for beginners.

Important

- MP Navigator EX may not start from the Operation Panel of the machine. In that case, restart the computer.
- Use the default display font size of the OS. Otherwise, software screens may not appear correctly.

What You Can Do with This Software

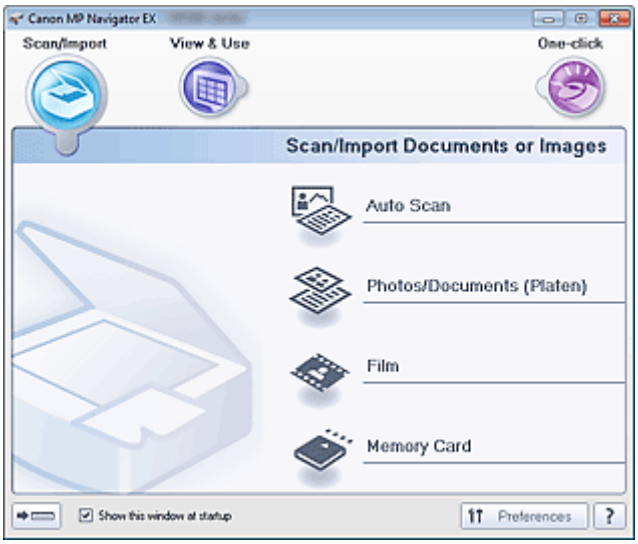
This software allows you to scan multiple documents at one time, or scan images larger than the Platen. You can also save scanned images, attach them to e-mail or print them using the supplied applications.

Screens

There are two types of MP Navigator EX Main Menu: Navigation Mode screen and One-click Mode screen.

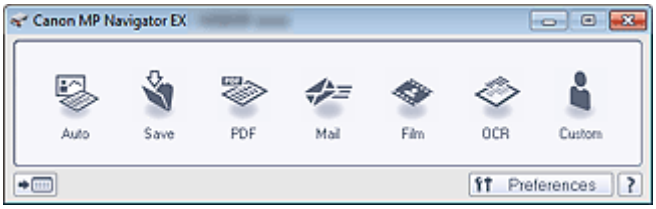
Navigation Mode Screen

You can start various tasks from the Navigation Mode screen, including simple scanning, scanning using ScanGear (scanner driver), and enhancing/correcting images.



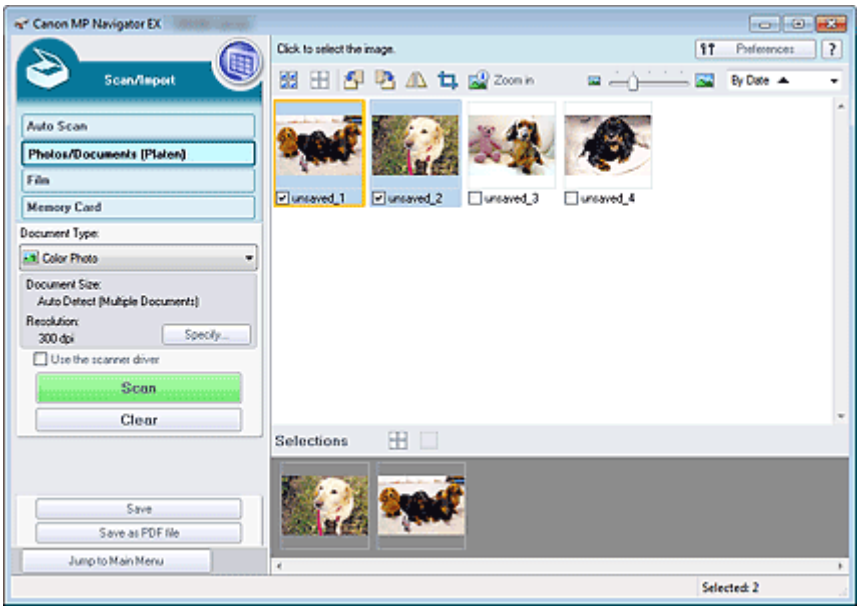
One-click Mode Screen

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the One-click Mode screen.



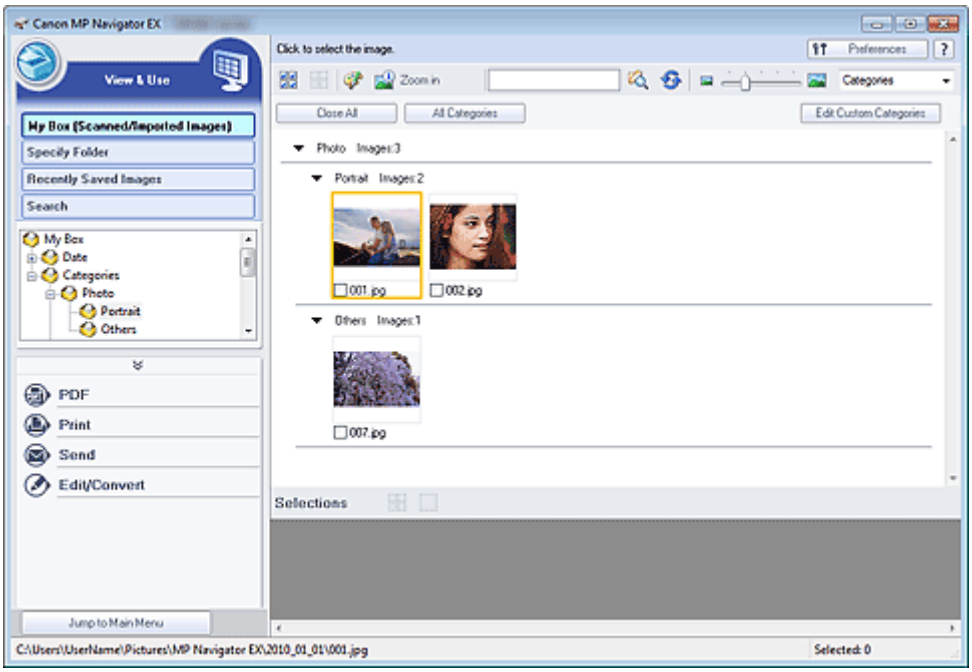
Scan/Import Window

Use the Scan/Import window to scan photos, documents and film, or import images saved on memory cards.



View & Use Window

Use the View & Use window to select what you want to do with the scanned images.



Note

- See "File Formats " for data formats (extensions) supported by MP Navigator EX.

Page top

S100

MP Navigator EX

Let's Try Scanning

Try scanning using MP Navigator EX.

- **Starting MP Navigator EX**
  - Starting MP Navigator EX
- **Scanning with a simple operation**
  - Easy Scanning with Auto Scan
- **Scanning documents, photos, magazines, etc. from the Platen**
  - Scanning Photos and Documents
- **Scanning Film**
  - Scanning Film
- **Scanning two or more photos (small documents) at one time**
  - Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time
- **Scanning images larger than the Platen**
  - Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)
- **Scanning easily according to purpose (scan and save, attach to e-mail, etc.)**
  - Easy Scanning with One-click

Page top

S111

MP Navigator EX

Starting MP Navigator EX

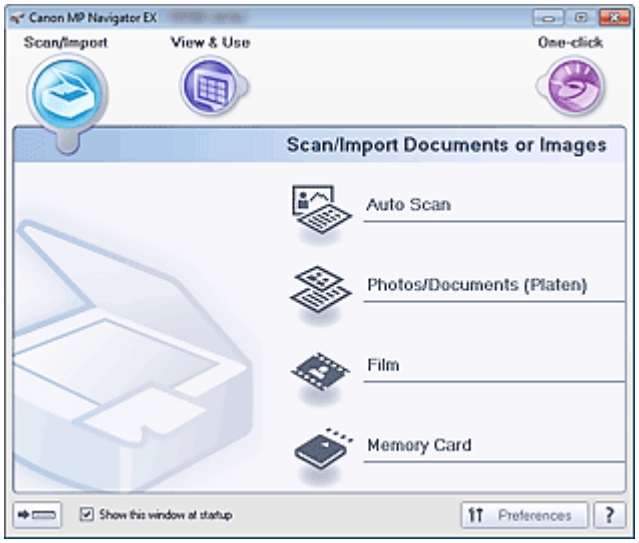
Note

- To scan via a network connection, start MP Navigator EX and set up the network environment.
  Network Scan Settings

Starting MP Navigator EX

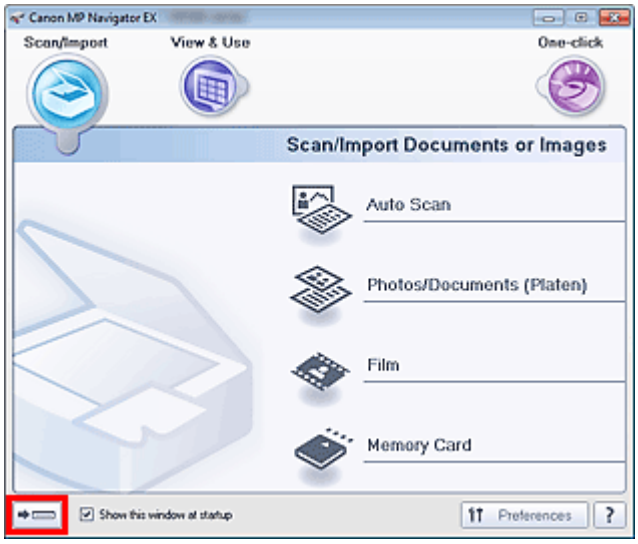
1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > MP Navigator EX 4.0 > MP Navigator EX 4.0.

   MP Navigator EX starts.

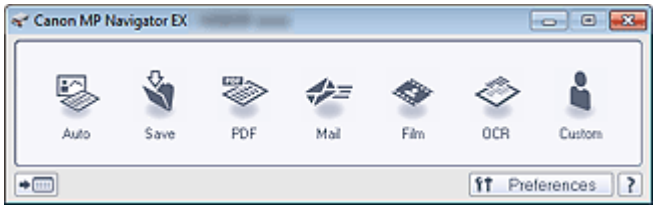


Starting One-click Mode

1. Click  (Switch Mode) at the bottom left of the screen.



The One-click Mode screen appears.



Note

- Select the Show this window at startup checkbox in the Navigation Mode screen to always open the Navigation Mode screen at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears at startup.

Page top

S108

MP Navigator EX

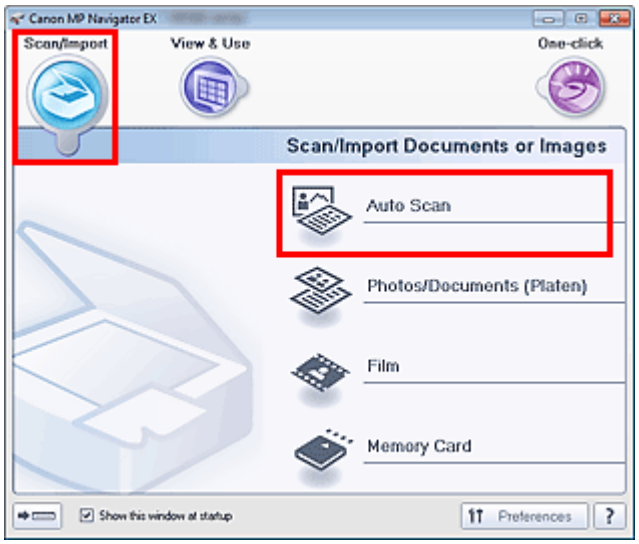
Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

Scan documents easily by automatically detecting the document type.

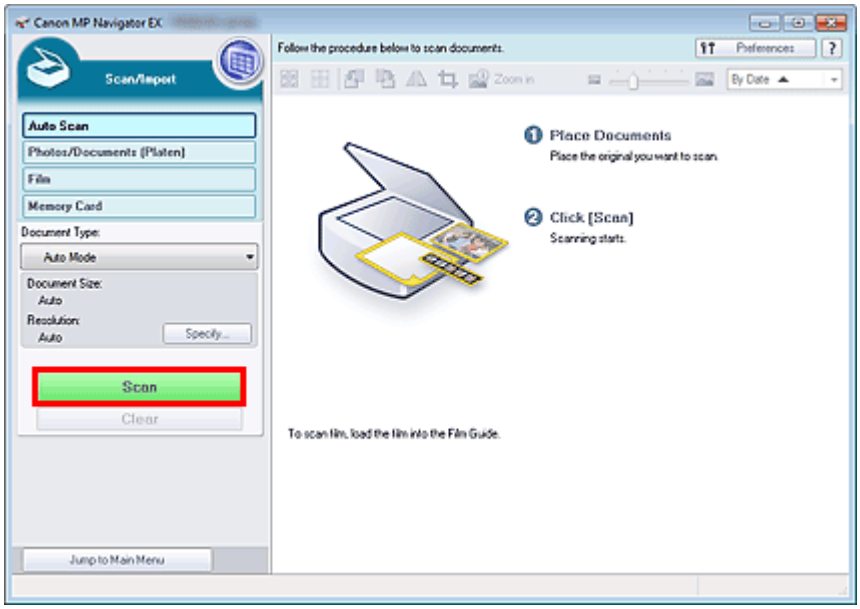
Important

- Supported document types are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film. To scan other documents, specify the document type.
  Scanning Photos and Documents
- To scan black and white film, scan from the Film screen of Scan/Import window.
  Scanning Film

1. Place the document or film on the Platen.
   Placing Documents
   Placing Film
2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
   Starting MP Navigator EX
3. In Scan/Import, click Auto Scan.



4. Click Specify... as required.
   Set the preferences if you want to apply suitable corrections based on the document type.
   When setting is completed, click OK.
   Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)
5. Click Scan.



A message about placing documents appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

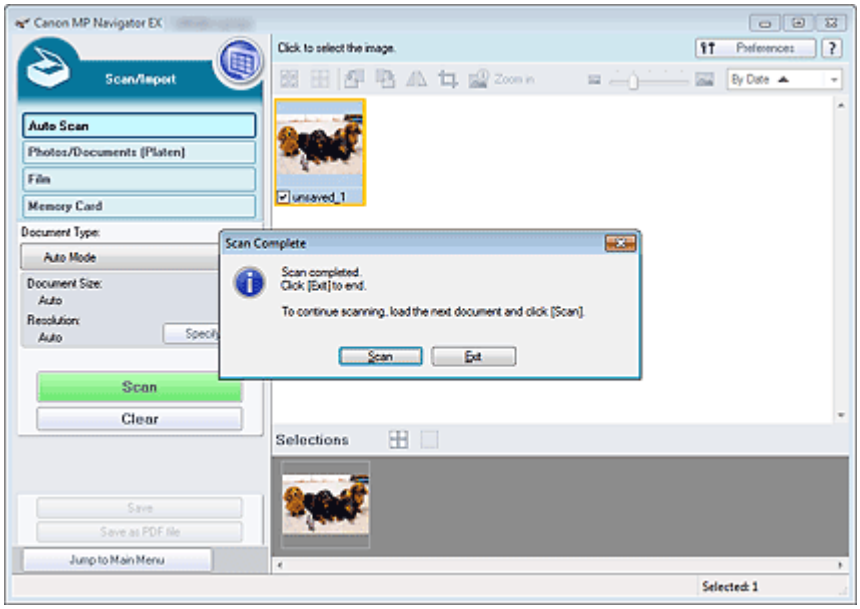
Click OK to start scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



6. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in " Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

7. Save the scanned images.

- Saving
- Saving as PDF Files

Page top

S102

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Photos and Documents

Scan photos and documents placed on the Platen.

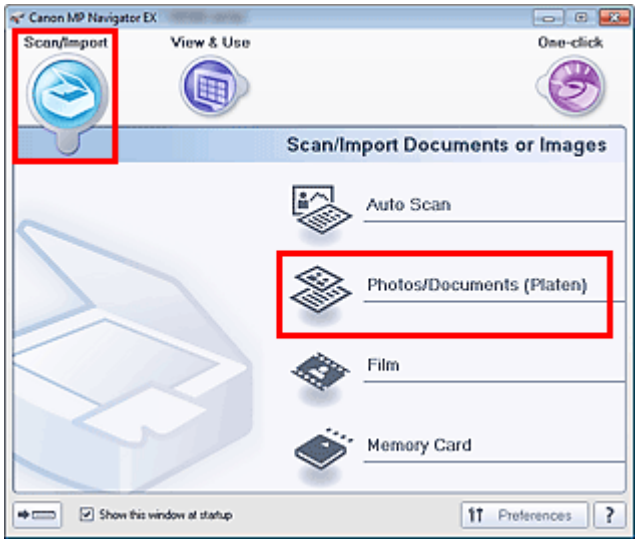
1. Place the document on the Platen.

   Placing Documents

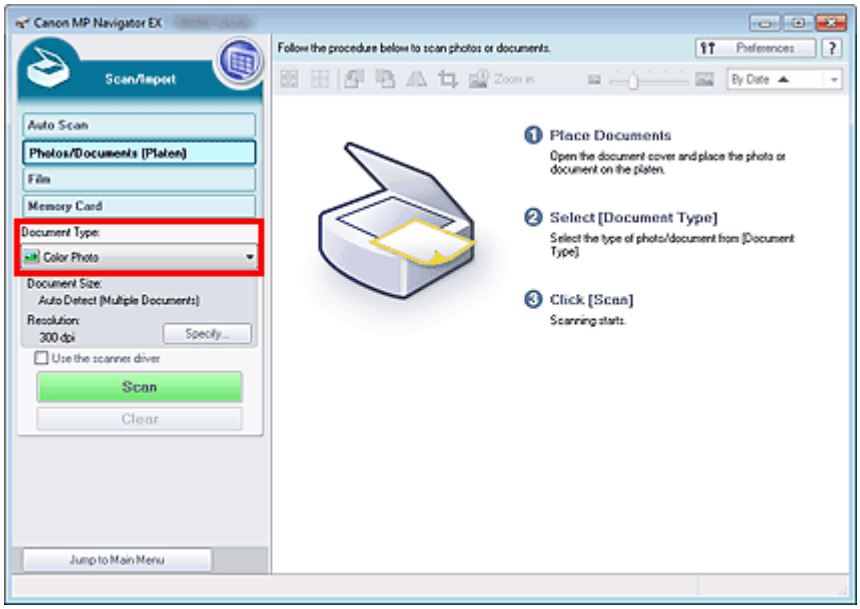
2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

   Starting MP Navigator EX

3. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).



4. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- When you select Magazine(Color), the descreen function will be enabled and scanning takes longer than usual. To disable the descreen function, deselect the Descreen checkbox in the Scan Settings dialog box.
- Select Text(OCR) to extract the text in the image and convert to editable text data using MP Navigator EX. This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.
- Color scanning is not available for Text(OCR). To scan in color, open the OCR dialog box from the One-click Mode screen and scan with Color Mode set to Color.

5. Click Specify... to set the document size and scanning resolution as required.

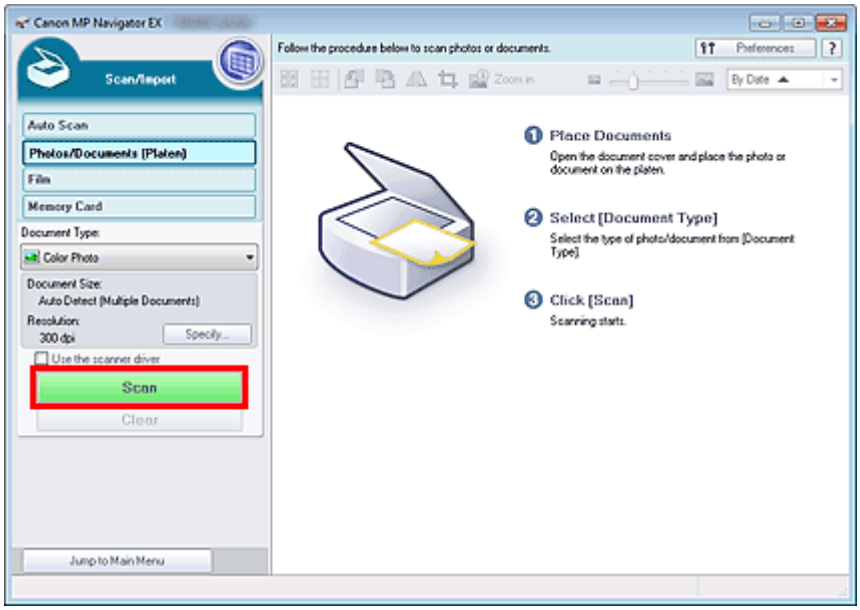
When setting is completed, click OK.

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Important

- When scanning a large document (such as an A4 size photo), align its corner with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen and specify the document size in the Scan Settings dialog box.

6. Click Scan.



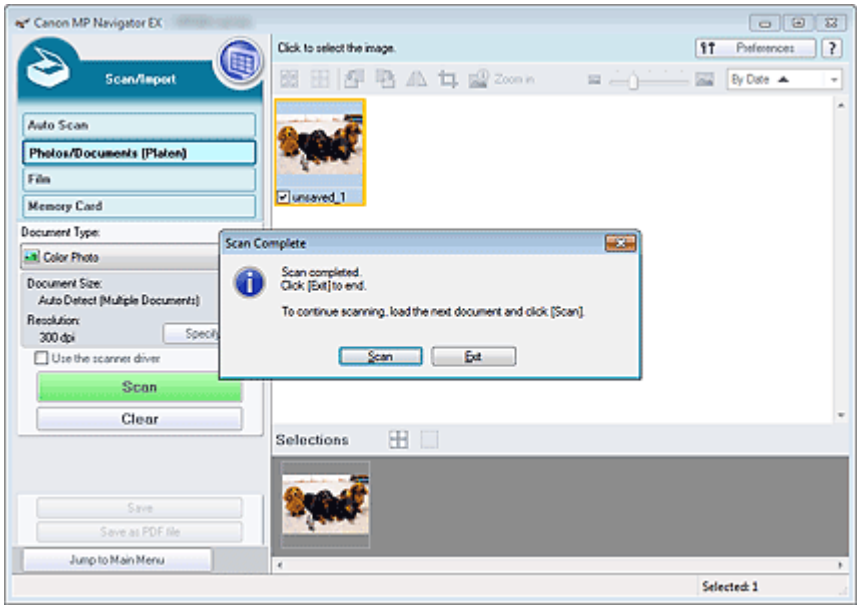
Starts scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



7. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in " Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

8. Save the scanned images.

- Saving
- Saving as PDF Files

Page top

S103

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Film

This machine supports 35 mm negative and positive film strips (standard state of developed film, with six frames in each strip) as well as 35 mm mounted positive slides (one frame per mounted slide).

Up to six film strip frames or four mounted slide frames can be scanned continuously.

Note

- To scan at a resolution higher than 4800 dpi, scan from the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).
  Scanning Film in Advanced Mode



35 mm Film Strip 35 mm Mounted Slides

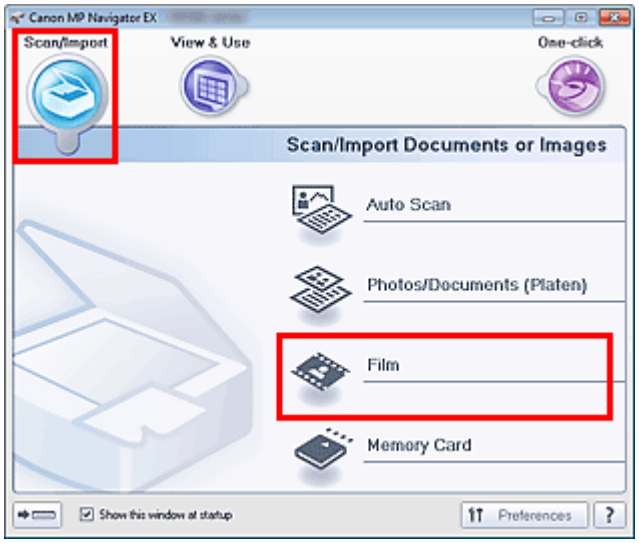
1. Place the film on the Platen.

   Placing Film

2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

   Starting MP Navigator EX

3. In Scan/Import, click Film.



4. Click Specify... to set the document size and scanning resolution as required.

   When setting is completed, click OK.

   Scan Settings Dialog Box (Film)

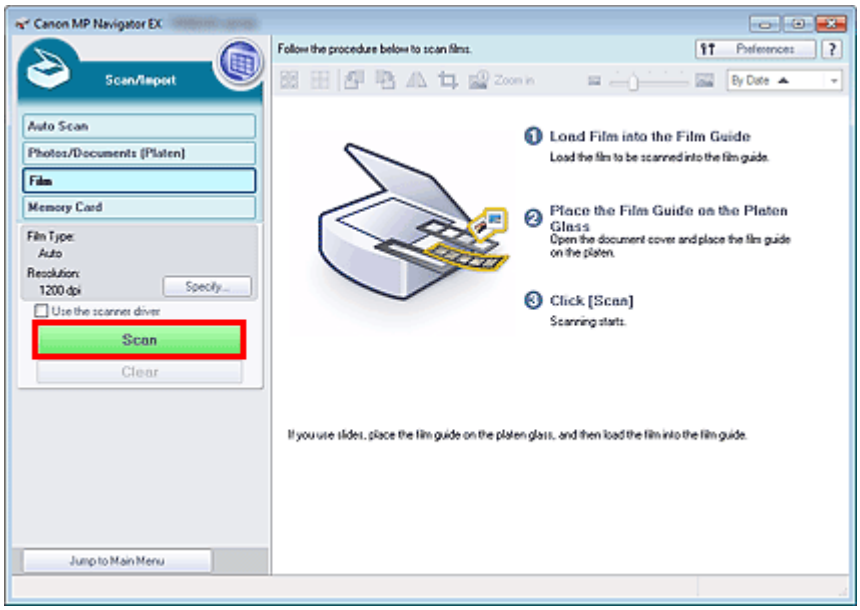
Important

- Film may not be scanned correctly when Film Type in the Scan Settings dialog box is set to Auto. In that case, select the type of film in Film Type and scan again.

Note

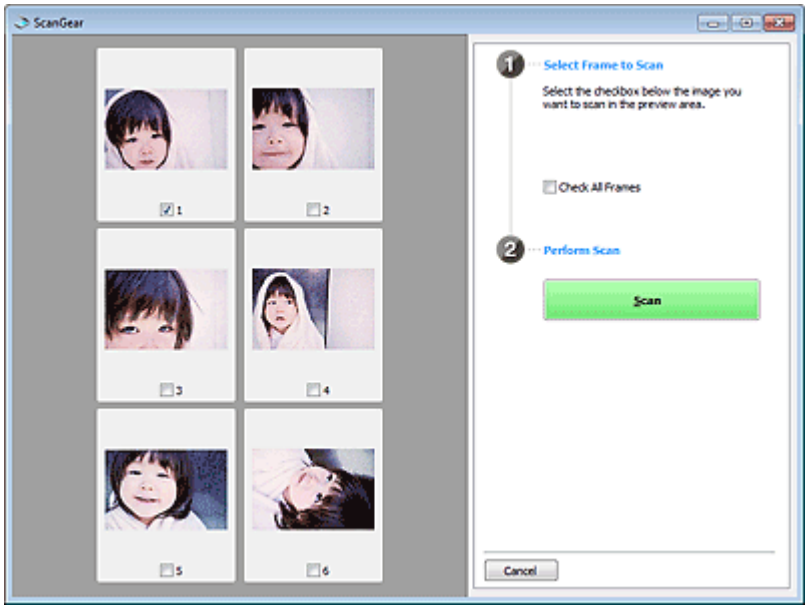
- To scan black and white film, it is recommended that you select Black and White Negative Film or Black and White Positive Film for Film Type in the Scan Settings dialog box.

5. Click Scan.



Preview scan starts.

When preview scan of the film is completed, the preview images appear.



Note

- Preview images do not appear when the Preview before scanning checkbox is not selected in the Scan Settings dialog box. The scanned images appear directly in the Thumbnail window.
- If film cannot be scanned correctly, see " Problems with Scanning/Printing Film " in "Troubleshooting."

6. Select the checkboxes of the frames you want to scan, then click Scan.

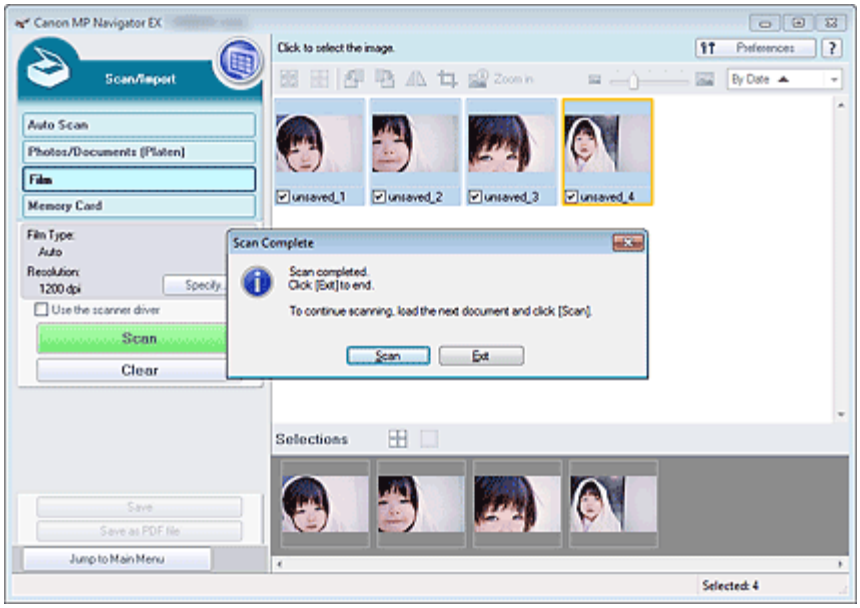
Starts scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next film, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



7. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in " Film Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

8. Save the scanned images.

➡ Saving

➡ Saving as PDF Files

Page top

S105

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time

You can scan two or more photos (small documents) at one time by setting Document Size to Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) in the Scan Settings dialog box of MP Navigator EX.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, start ScanGear (scanner driver), then adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan again.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents

  Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

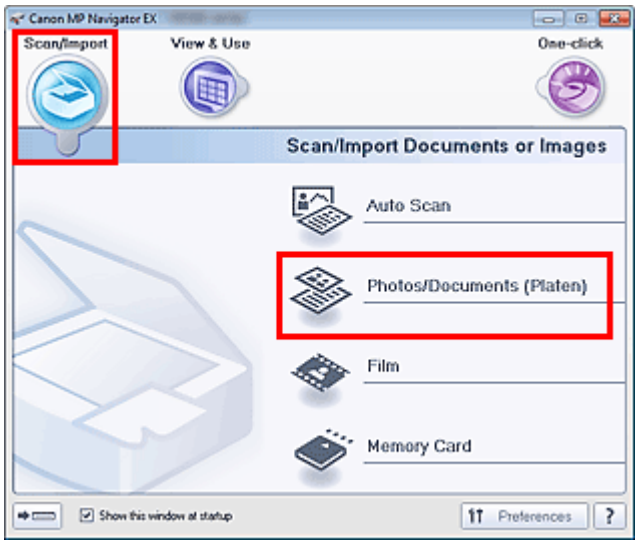
1. Place the documents on the Platen.

   Placing Documents

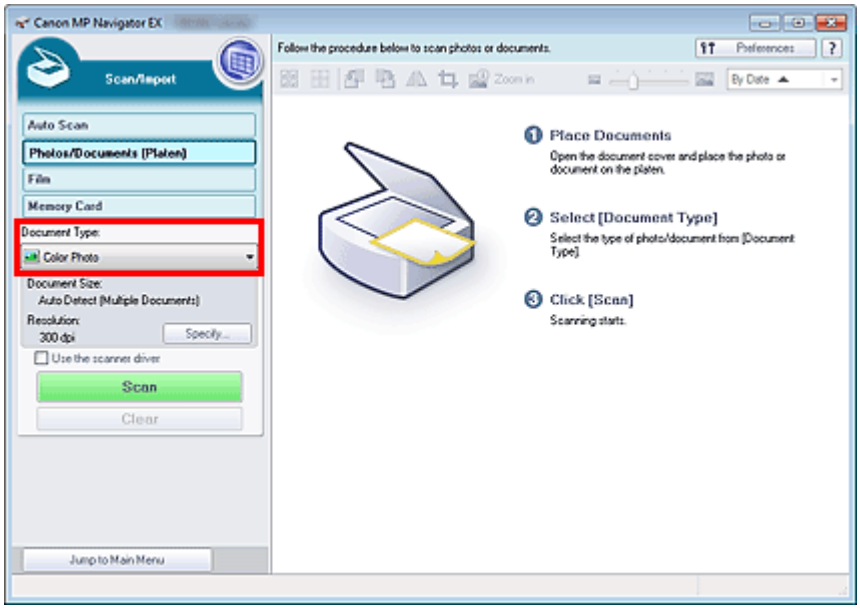
2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

   Starting MP Navigator EX

3. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).



4. Select Document Type according to the documents to be scanned.

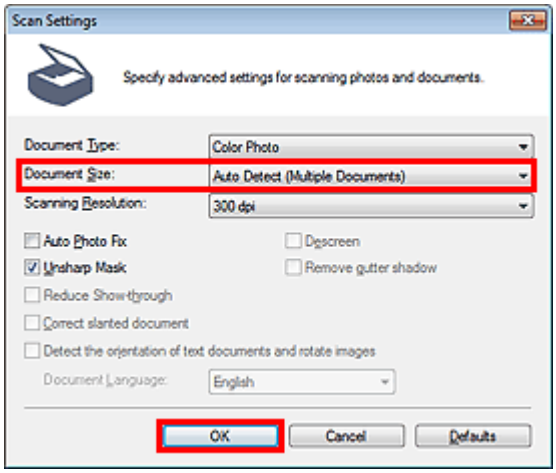


5. Click Specify....

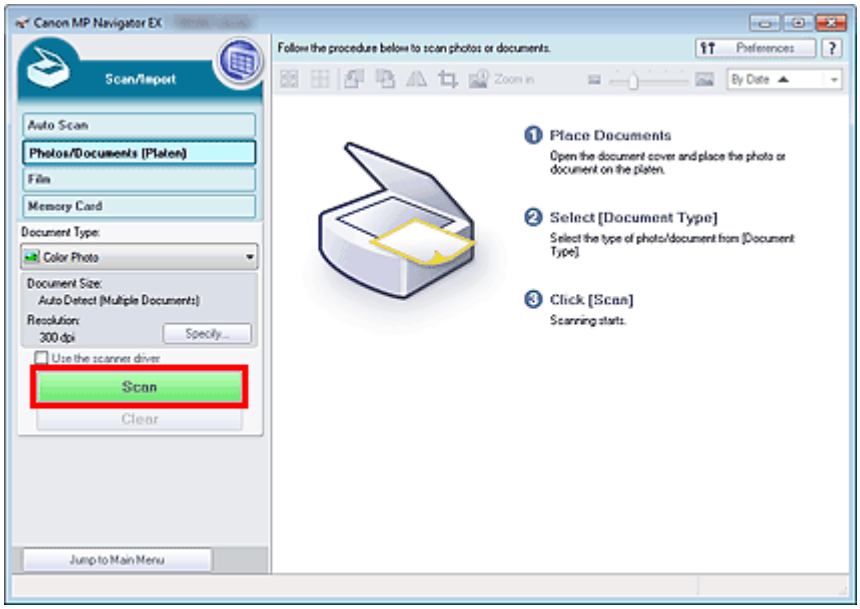
Select Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) for Document Size.

When setting is completed, click OK.

➡Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)



6. Click Scan.



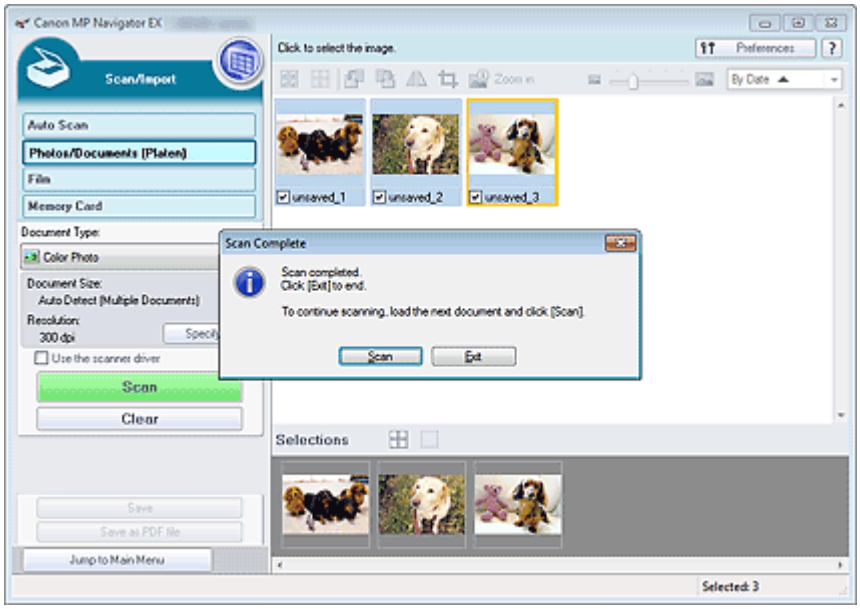
Multiple documents are scanned at one time.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



7. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in " Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

8. Save the scanned images.

➡ Saving

Saving as PDF Files

Note

- If you want to preview the images before scanning, use ScanGear.
  Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Page top

S106

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)

Stitch Assist allows you to scan the left and right halves of a large document separately and combine the scanned images back into one image. You can scan documents that are up to twice as large as the Platen.

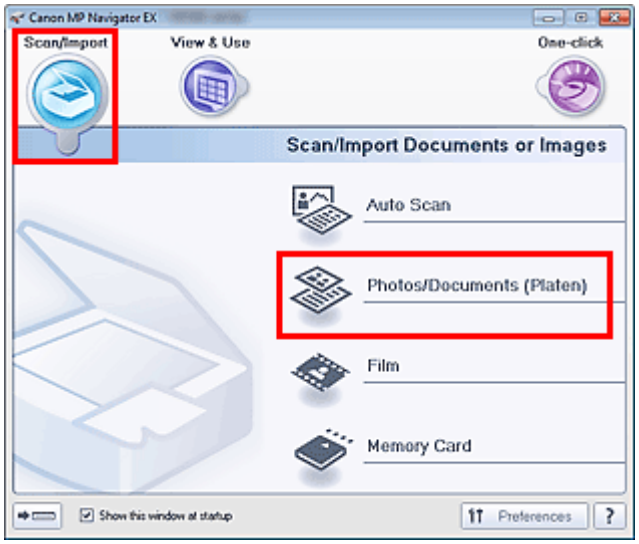
1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

Starting MP Navigator EX

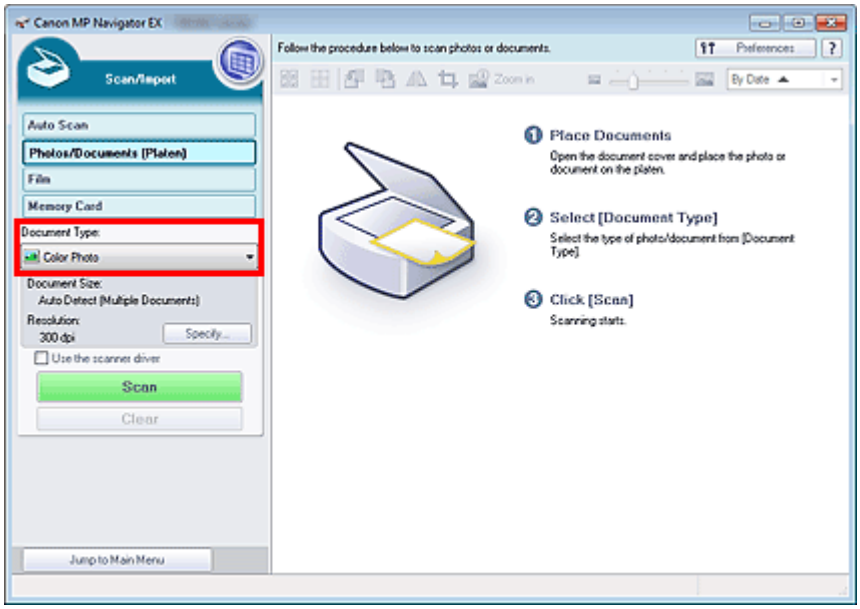
Note

- You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the One-click Mode screen. Stitch Assist is available from the One-click Mode screen as well, by changing the document size. Click the corresponding icon and select Stitch Assist for Document Size. Then skip ahead to Step 5.

2. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).



3. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.

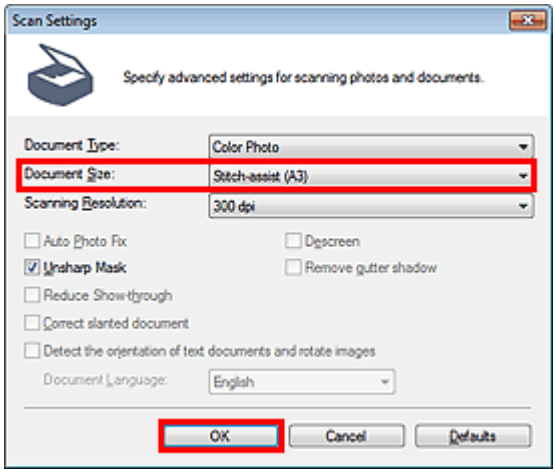


4. Click Specify....

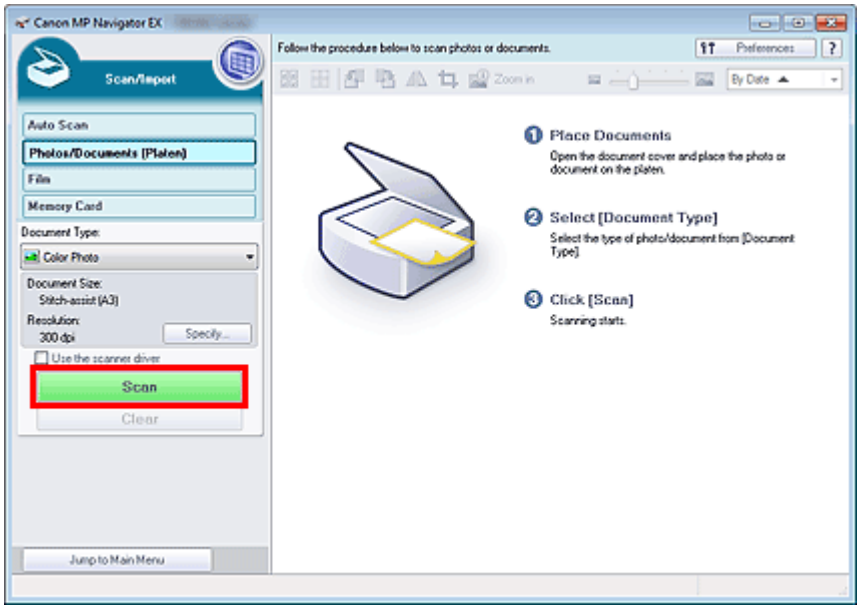
Select Stitch Assist for Document Size, then specify the scanning resolution as required.

When setting is completed, click OK.

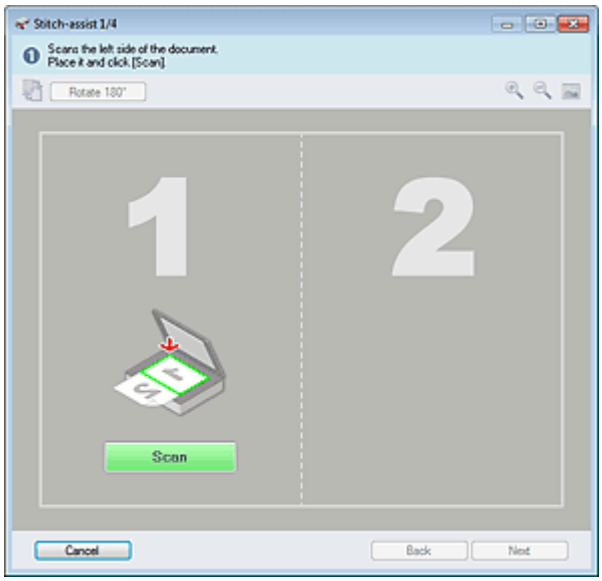
➡Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)



5. Click Scan.



The Stitch-assist window opens.



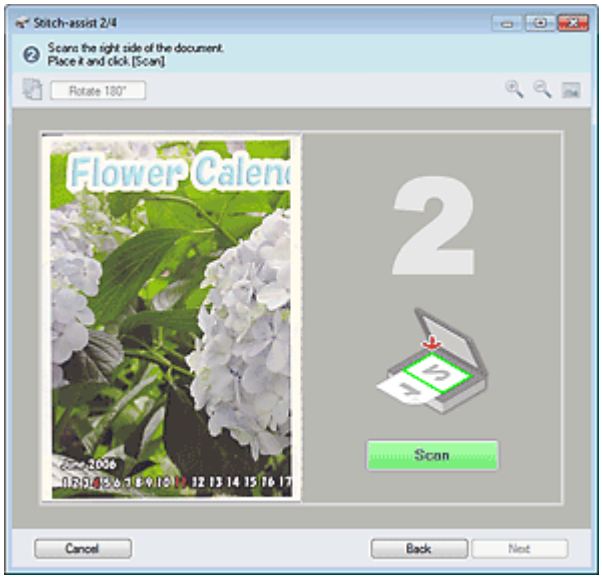
6. Place the left half of the document face-down on the Platen.

7. Click Scan.

The left half of the document is scanned and appears in the Stitch-assist window.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.



8. Place the right half of the document face-down on the Platen.

9. Click Scan.

The right half of the document is scanned.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

10. Adjust the scanned image as required.

Use the icons to swap the left and right halves, rotate the image 180 degrees or enlarge/reduce the image.



- **(Swap Left & Right)**

Swaps the left and right halves.

Important

- This function is not available while the image is enlarged/reduced.

- **Rotate 180°**

Rotates right half of the image 180 degrees.

Important

- This function is not available while the image is enlarged/reduced.

- **(Enlarge)**

  Enlarges the displayed image.

- **(Reduce)**

  Reduces the displayed image.

- **(Full-screen)**

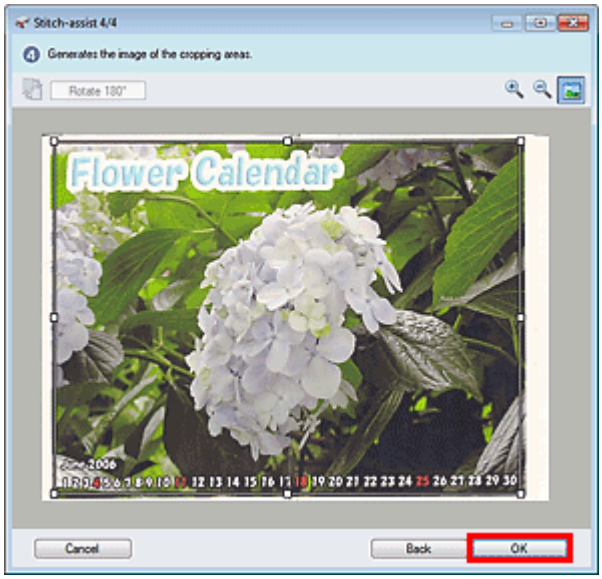
  Displays the entire image.

Note

- Enlarge/Reduce does not affect the actual size of the scanned image.
- When the document is scanned upside down, the image displayed in the Stitch-assist window will also be upside down. Click Rotate 180° to rotate the image to the correct orientation.
- You can drag the right half of the image from right to left or up and down to adjust the position.
- If the left and right halves do not match due to a slanted document, place the document correctly and click Back, then scan again.

11. Click Next.

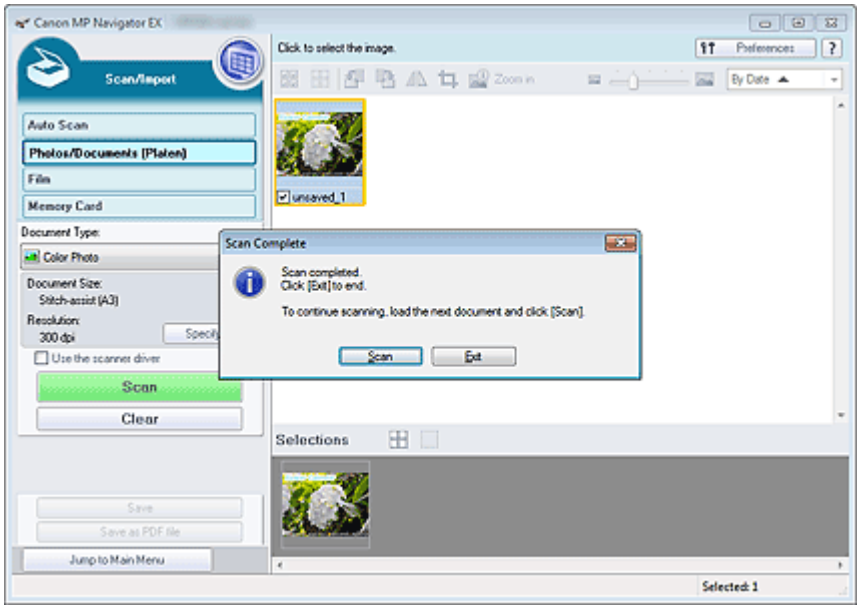
12. Drag the mouse to specify the area to be saved, then click OK.



The combined image is created.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



13. Save the scanned images.

- Saving
- Saving as PDF Files

Page top

S104

MP Navigator EX

Easy Scanning with One-click

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

1. Place the document on the Platen.

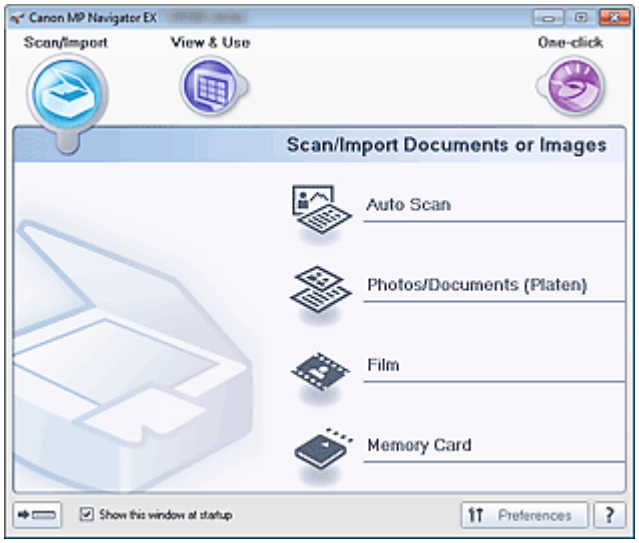
Placing Documents

2. Start MP Navigator EX.

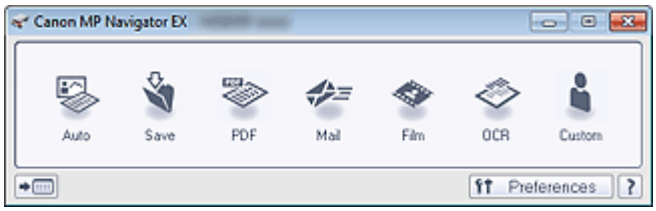
Starting MP Navigator EX

The MP Navigator EX Navigation Mode screen or One-click Mode screen appears.

Navigation Mode Screen



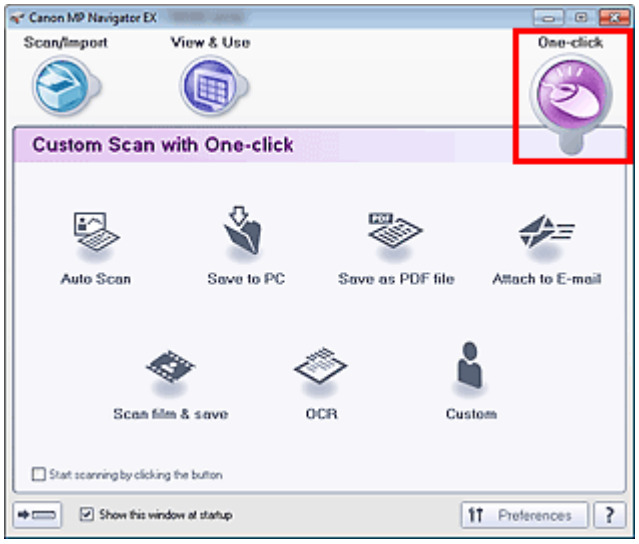
One-click Mode Screen



Note

- Skip ahead to Step 4 if One-click Mode screen is open.

3. Click One-click.



4. Click the corresponding icon.
   - Custom Scan with One-click Tab
   - One-click Mode Screen

5. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.

6. Set the document size and scanning resolution as required.

7. Start scanning.

   Starts scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

Page top

S400

MP Navigator EX

Useful MP Navigator EX Functions

With MP Navigator EX, you can correct/enhance scanned images beautifully, and search saved images quickly.

- **Correcting/enhancing images automatically**
  - Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically
- **Correcting/enhancing images manually**
  - Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually
- **Adjusting color characteristics such as brightness and contrast**
  - Adjusting Images
- **Searching for lost images**
  - Searching Images
- **Classifying and sorting images**
  - Classifying Images into Categories

Page top

S401

MP Navigator EX

Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically

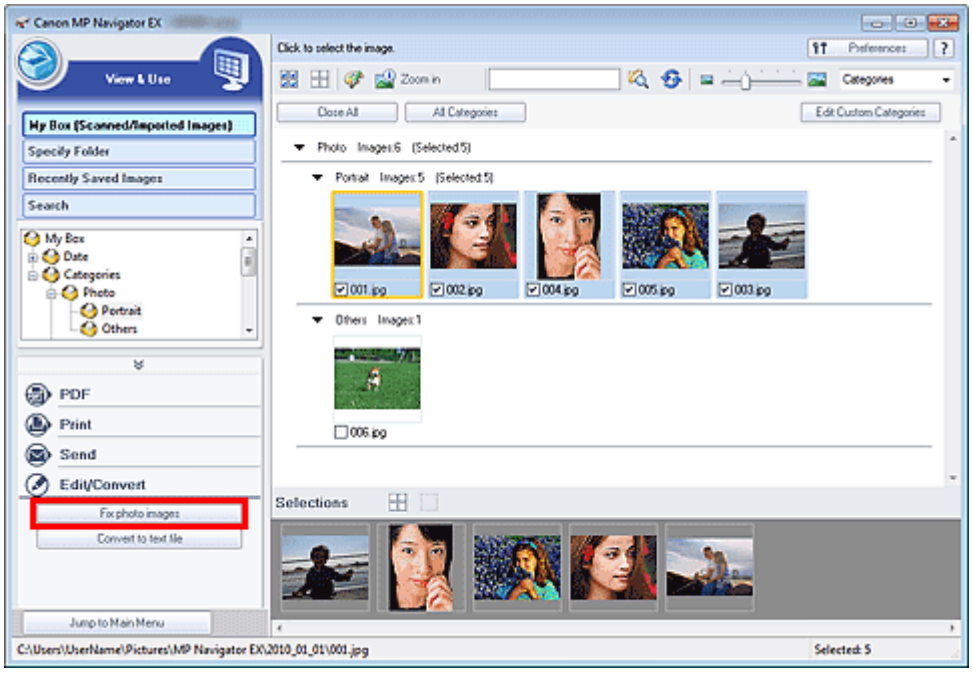
MP Navigator EX will analyze and correct/enhance scanned images automatically.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to correct/enhance.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to correct/enhance from the thumbnail list.

The selected image appears in Preview.



Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Make sure that Auto is selected.

5. Click Auto Photo Fix, Face Sharpener or Digital Face Smoothing.



Important

- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix. Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

Note

- The Face Sharpener and Digital Face Smoothing effect levels can be changed using the slider that appears by clicking the corresponding buttons.
- When you apply Auto Photo Fix, dark backlit photos will be corrected automatically. If the image is not corrected enough using Auto Photo Fix, it is recommended that you apply Face Brightener on the Manual tab.
  ➡Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

6. Click OK.

The entire image is corrected/enhanced automatically and (Correct/Enhance) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.

Note

- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction/enhancement.
- Select the Apply to all images checkbox to correct/enhance all selected images.

7. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected/enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of corrected/enhanced images is JPEG/Exif.
- Adobe RGB images are saved as sRGB images.

8. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections/enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving corrected/enhanced images.

Page top

S402

MP Navigator EX

Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

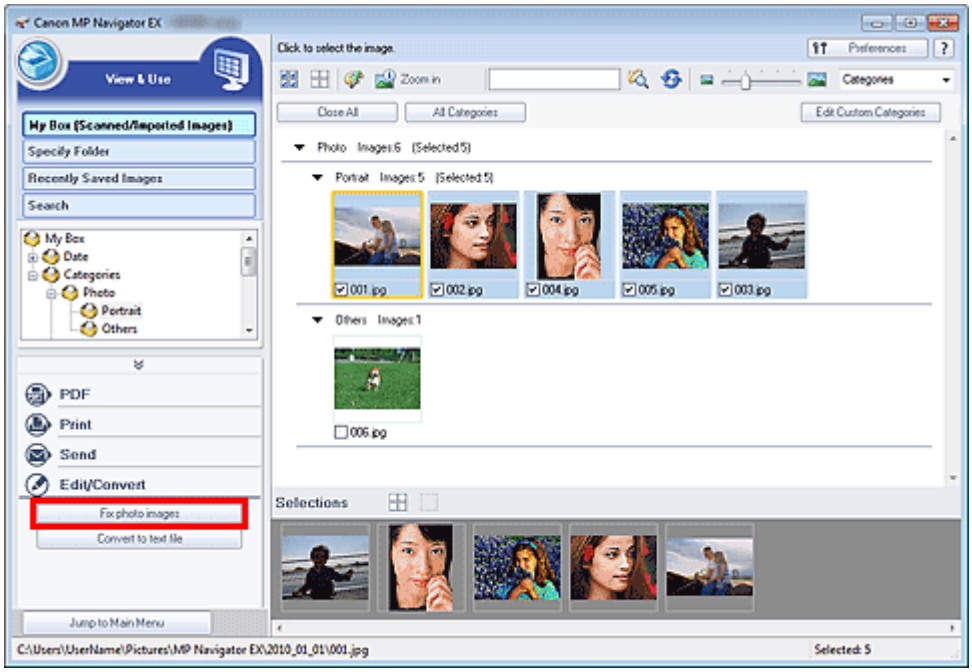
You can correct/enhance scanned images manually.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to correct/enhance.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to correct/enhance from the thumbnail list.

The selected image appears in Preview.

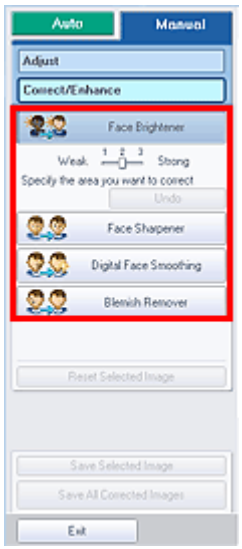


Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Select Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

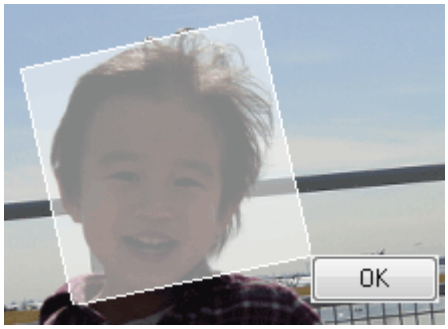
5. Click Face Brightener, Face Sharpener, Digital Face Smoothing or Blemish Remover.



Note

- The Face Brightener, Face Sharpener and Digital Face Smoothing effect levels can be changed using the slider that appears by clicking the corresponding buttons.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to + (Cross).

6. Drag to select the area you want to correct/enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



The portion in and around the selected area is corrected/enhanced and (Correct/Enhance) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the rectangle.
- Click Undo to undo the latest correction/enhancement.
- Click Reset Selected Image to cancel all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

7. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected/enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of corrected/enhanced images is JPEG/Exif.

8. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections/enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving corrected/enhanced images.

Page top

S406

MP Navigator EX

Adjusting Images

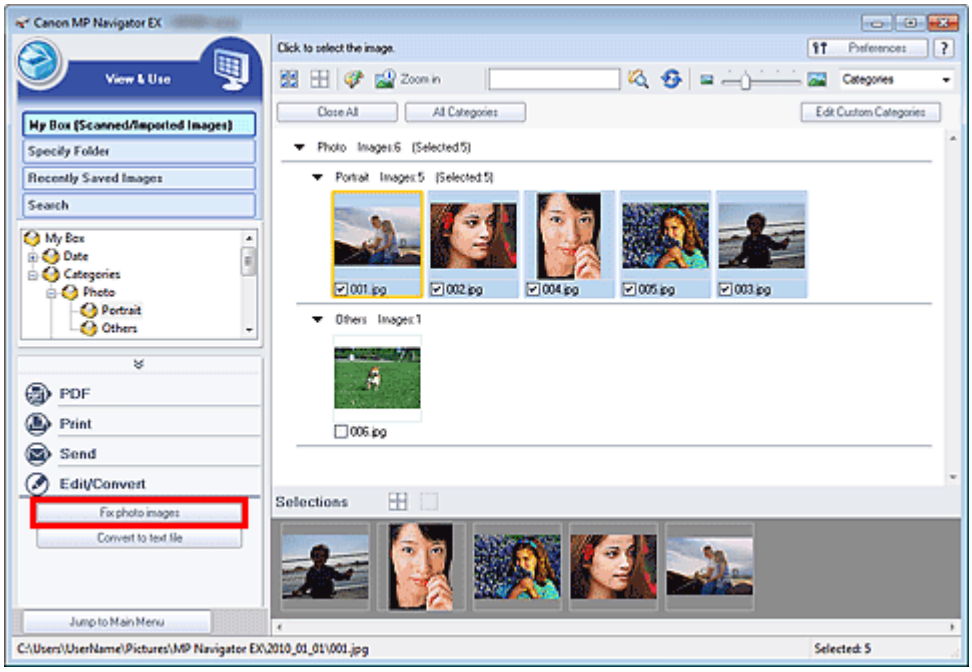
You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to adjust.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/ Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to adjust from the thumbnail list.

The selected image appears in Preview.



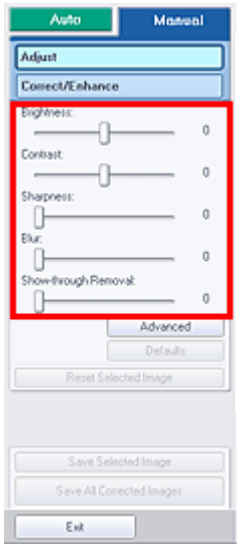
Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Select Manual, then click Adjust.

5. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

When you move a slider, (Correct/Enhance) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.



Note

- Click Advanced to make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone. See " Advanced " in the descriptions of the Correct/Enhance Images window for details.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.
- Click Reset Selected Image to cancel all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of adjusted images is JPEG/Exif.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

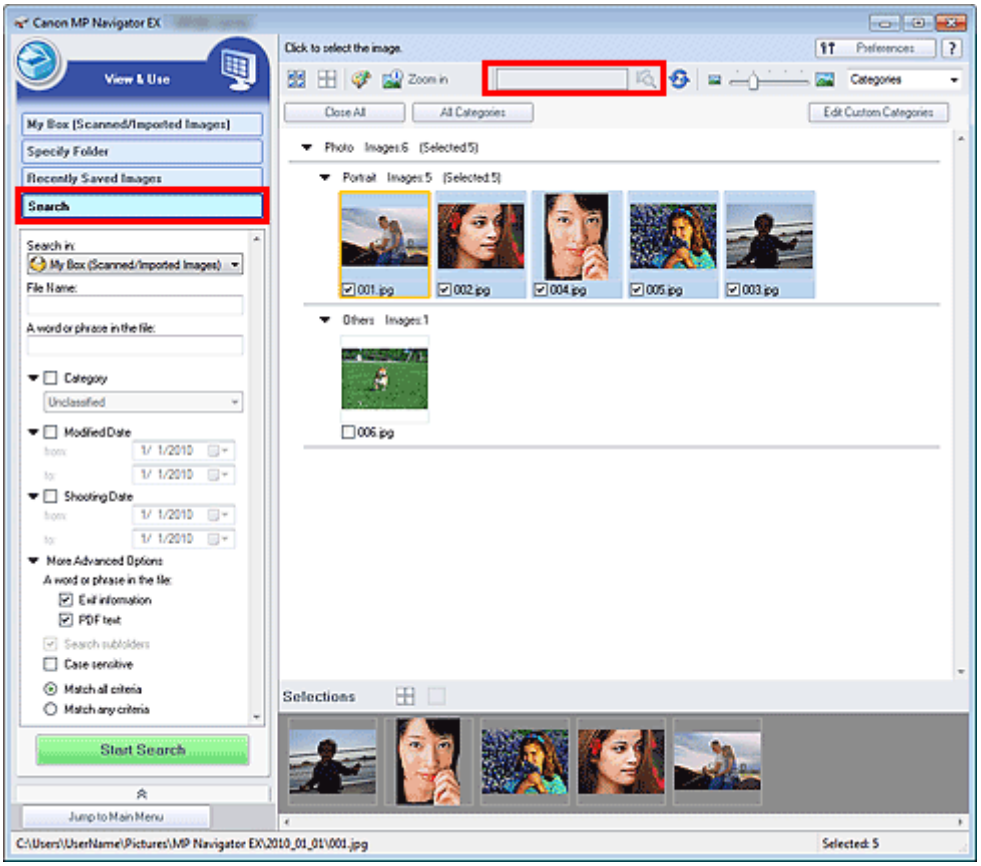
Page top

S407

MP Navigator EX

Searching Images

In the View & Use window of the Navigation Mode screen, you can search images saved on your computer and open them in MP Navigator EX. Opened images can be printed and edited.



Note

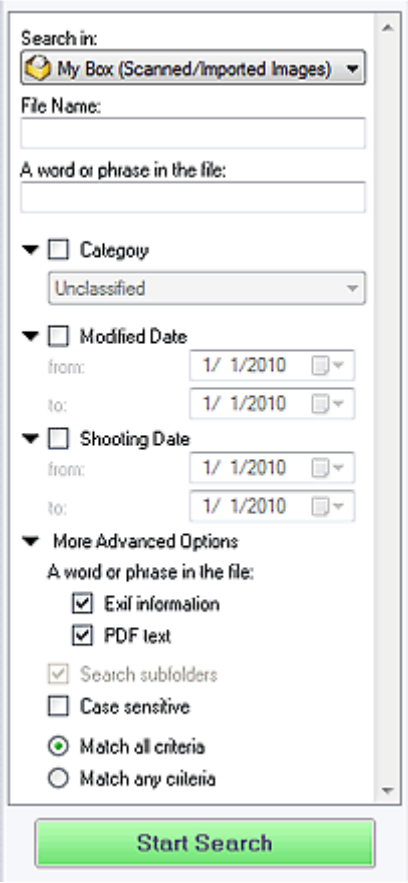
- Search images in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Recently Saved Images or a selected folder and its subfolders.
- See "Starting MP Navigator EX " to start MP Navigator EX.

Quick Search

In  (Text box) on the Toolbar, enter a word or phrase included in the file name, Exif information or PDF text of the image you want to search for, then click  (Search). For Exif information, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched.

Advanced Search

Click Search on the left of the screen to open search options. Enter information of the image you want to search for, then click Start Search.



- **Search in**

  If you know where to look for, select the drive, folder or network from Specify Folder.

- **File Name**

  If you know the file name, enter it.

- **A word or phrase in the file**

  Enter a word or phrase included in the items selected in More Advanced Options.

  Important

  - For PDF files, you can only search for those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot search PDF files created or edited in other applications. Also, searching PDF files is available only when keyword search is set.
    For details of creating PDF files that enables keyword search, see " PDF Settings Dialog Box ."
  - Password-protected PDF files cannot be searched.

- **Category**

  You can search for images by category.

- **Modified Date**

  To search for images that have been updated in a specific time period, enter the first and last dates of the period.

- **Shooting Date**

  To search for images captured in a specific time period, enter the first and last dates of the period.

  Note

  - "Shooting date" is the date and time of data creation, which are included in the image's Exif information.

- **More Advanced Options**

  - **A word or phrase in the file**

    In A word or phrase in the file, select the items to search. If you select the Exif information

checkbox, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched. If you select the PDF text checkbox, text in PDF files is searched.

Important

- Text in password-protected PDF files cannot be searched.

- **Search subfolders**

  Select this checkbox to search subfolders.

- **Case sensitive**

  Select this checkbox to match case.

- **Match all criteria**

  Searches for files that meet all the specified criteria.

- **Match any criteria**

  Searches for files that meet any of the specified criteria.

- **Start Search**

  Starts search.

Related Topic

▶ View & Use Window

Page top↑

S403

MP Navigator EX

Classifying Images into Categories

Display images scanned with MP Navigator EX by category. You can classify images displayed in Unclassified automatically, and also create custom categories. You can drag and drop an image to move it from one category to another.

Note

- If you have classified the images in MP Navigator EX 2.0 or later and then upgrade MP Navigator EX to the latest version, the classification information on the second latest version is transferred upon initial startup. After the initial startup, the classification information cannot be transferred.

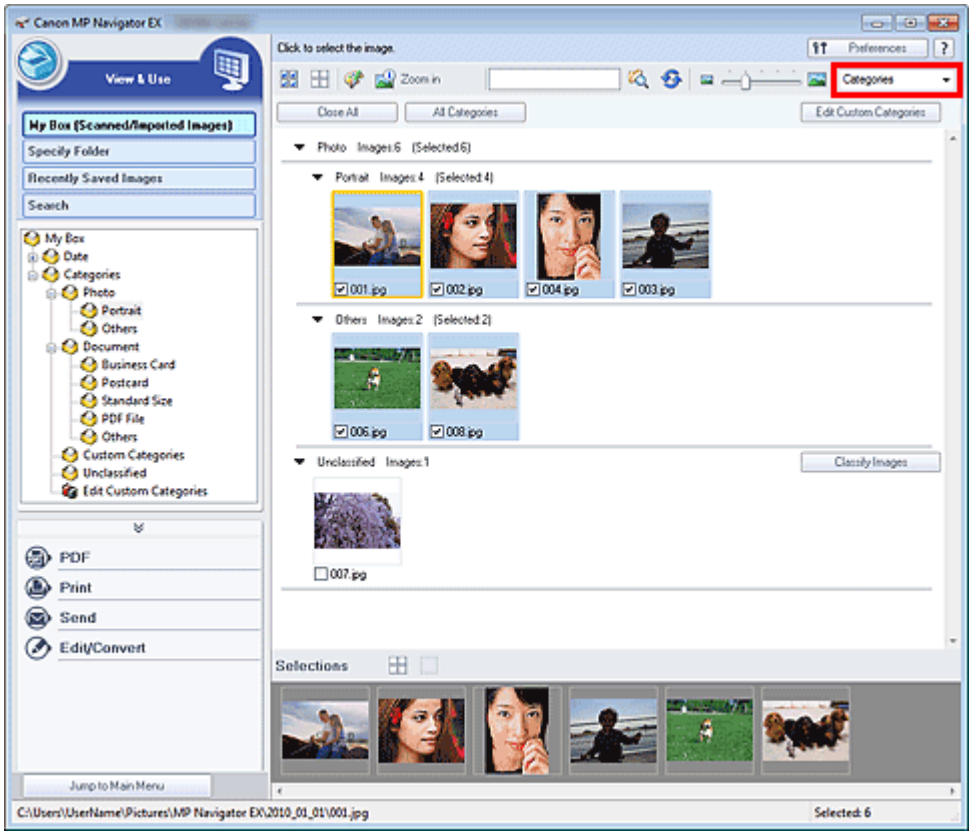
1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. In Categories (Sort by), select Categories.

Images are automatically sorted by category and appear in the Thumbnail window.



Images are sorted into the following categories.

Photos: Portrait, Others

Documents: Business Card, Postcard, Standard Size, PDF File, Others

Custom categories: Displays your custom categories.

To create custom categories, see " Creating Custom Categories ."

Unclassified: Displays images that are not classified.

Note

- Click Classify Images to classify images displayed in Unclassified automatically. Click Cancel to stop.
- Classification may take time if there are many images to classify.

Important

- Even if you classify images saved in removable media such as USB flash drive and external hard disk, the classification information will be deleted once you remove the media. From the next time, the images are classified to Unclassified.
- Images cannot be classified when Recently Saved Images is selected in the View & Use window.

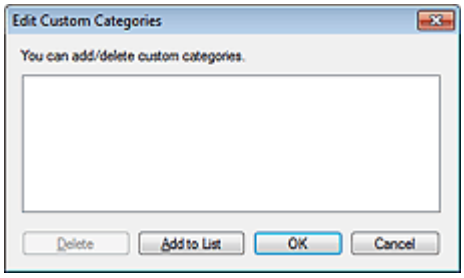
Note

- Some images may not be detected correctly and thus may be classified into wrong categories. In that case, drag and drop the image to the correct category.
- Images saved in network folders may not be classified.
- You can search for images by category. See " Searching Images " for details.

Creating Custom Categories

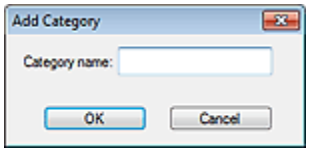
1. In the View & Use window, sort images by category and click Edit Custom Categories.

   The Edit Custom Categories dialog box opens.



2. Click Add to List.

   The Add Category dialog box opens.



3. Enter Category name and click OK.

Note

- You can create up to 20 custom categories.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be used for a category name.
- Double-click a created category to open the Change Category Name dialog box in which you can change the category name.
- Select a custom category and click Delete to delete it.

Related Topic

- View & Use Window

Page top

S500

MP Navigator EX

Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX

You can scan images using MP Navigator EX and edit or print the saved images.

See the corresponding sections below for details on saving scanned images.

- **Saving scanned images to computer**
  - Saving
- **Saving scanned image as PDF Files**
  - Saving as PDF Files

See the corresponding sections below for details on using images/files.

- **Creating/editing PDF files from scanned images**
  - Creating/Editing PDF Files
- **Printing multiple scanned images at one time or printing at specific size, quality, etc.**
  - Printing Documents
- **Printing scanned photos**
  - Printing Photos
- **Sending scanned images via e-mail**
  - Sending via E-mail
- **Correcting/enhancing scanned images or converting them to text**
  - Editing Files
- **Setting passwords for created PDF files**
  - Setting Passwords for PDF Files
  - Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

Page top

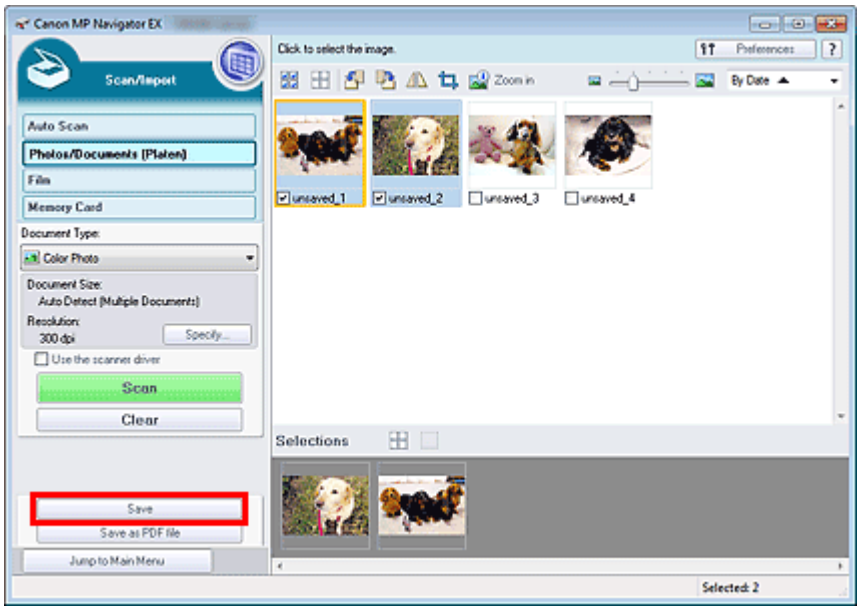
S112

MP Navigator EX

Saving

Save images scanned with MP Navigator EX to a computer.

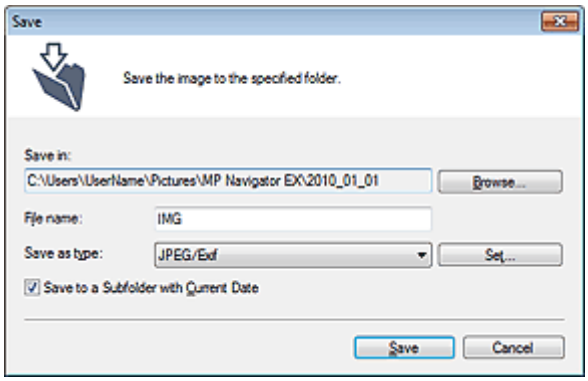
1. Select the checkboxes of the images you want to save, then click Save.



2. In the Save dialog box, specify the save settings.

Specify the destination folder, file name and file type.

Save Dialog Box



Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is Text(OCR).
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Black and White is selected for Color Mode on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).
- When saving 48 bit color or 16 bit grayscale images scanned with ScanGear, select TIFF. If you select a format other than TIFF, they will be saved as 24 bit color or 8 bit grayscale images.

Note

- By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

3. Click Save.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

To further use/edit the scanned images on MP Navigator EX, click Open saved location in the Save Complete dialog box.

- Creating/Editing PDF Files
- Printing Documents
- Printing Photos
- Sending via E-mail
- Editing Files

Page top

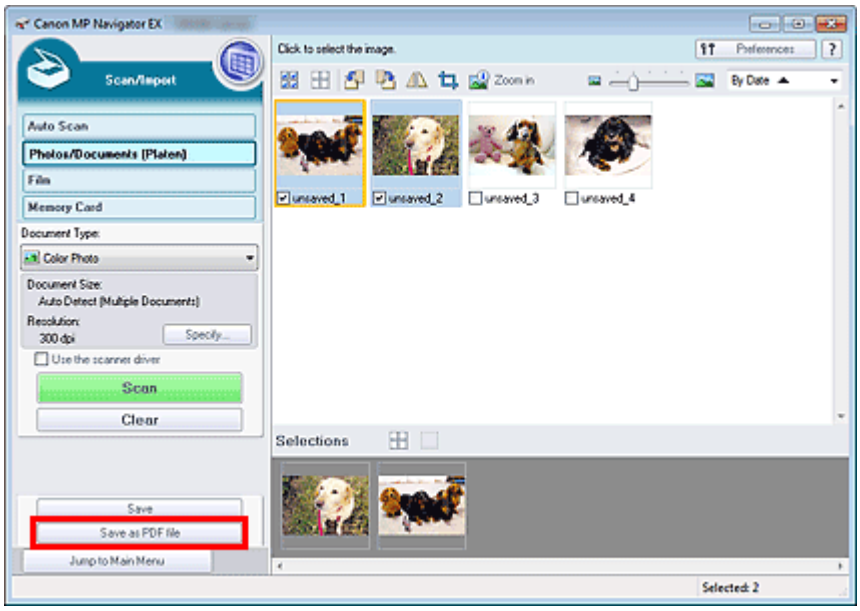
S113

MP Navigator EX

Saving as PDF Files

Save images scanned with MP Navigator EX as PDF files.

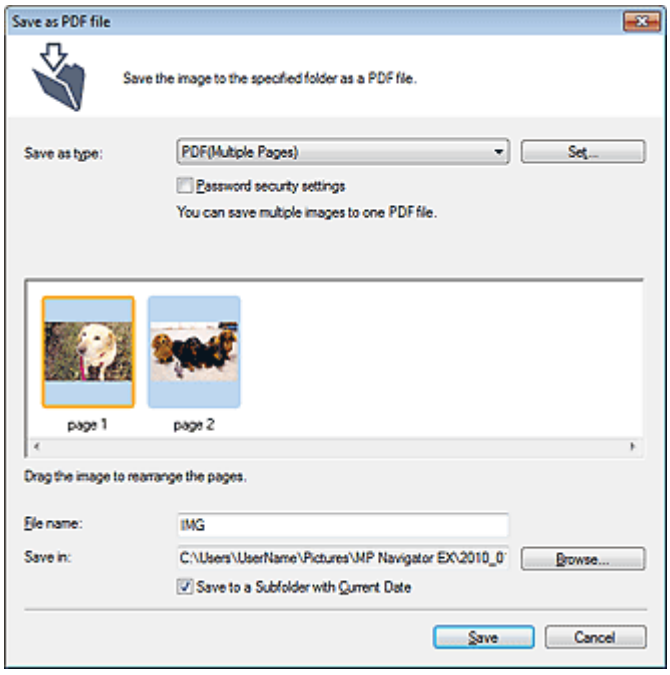
1. Select the checkboxes of the images you want to save, then click Save as PDF file.



2. In the Save as PDF file dialog box, specify the save settings.

Specify the file type, file name and destination folder.

➡Save as PDF file Dialog Box



Note

- By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
- You can set passwords for PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

3. Click Save.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

To further use/edit the scanned images on MP Navigator EX, click Open saved location in the Save Complete dialog box.

Creating/Editing PDF Files

Printing Documents

Printing Photos

Sending via E-mail

Editing Files

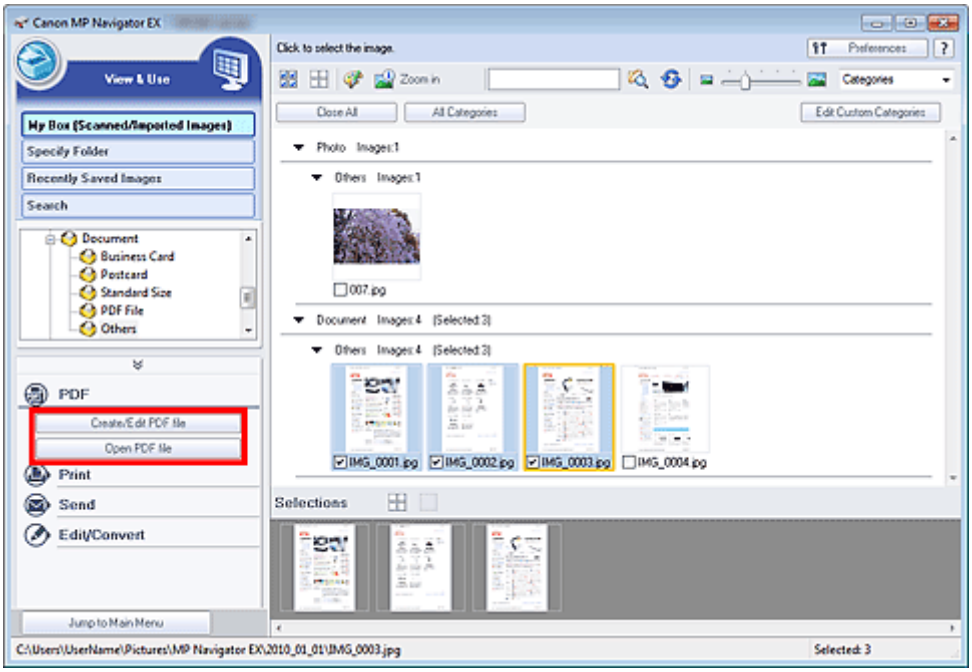
Page top

S501

MP Navigator EX

Creating/Editing PDF Files

Create/edit PDF files using MP Navigator EX. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to create PDF files and add/delete pages, rearrange the page order, etc.



Important

- You can create or edit up to 99 pages at one time using MP Navigator EX.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Creating/Editing PDF Files with MP Navigator EX

1. Select images and click PDF.

   Note

   - You can select PDF, JPEG, TIFF and BMP files.

2. Click Create/Edit PDF file on the list.

   Important

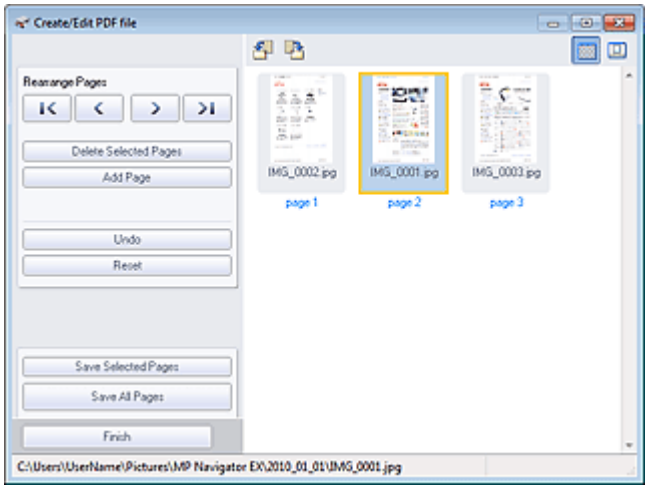
   - For PDF files, you can only edit those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot edit PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be edited as well.

Note

- If a password-protected PDF file is selected, you will be prompted to enter the password.
  Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

3. Add/delete pages as required.

To add an existing file, click Add Page and select the file. To delete a page, select it and click Delete Selected Pages.



Note

- You can add PDF, JPEG, TIFF and BMP files.
- When adding a password-protected PDF file, you will be prompted to enter the password.

4. Rearrange the page order as required.

Use the icons to rearrange the order. Alternatively, drag the thumbnail to the target location.

Note

- See "Create/Edit PDF file Window " for details on the Create/Edit PDF file window.

5. Click Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages.

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.

Save as PDF file Dialog Box

Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

6. Specify the save settings in the Save as PDF file dialog box, then click Save.

Images are saved according to the settings.

Opening PDF Files in an Application

You can open PDF files created with MP Navigator EX in an associated application and edit or print them.

1. Select PDF files and click PDF.

Important

- For PDF files, you can only select those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot select PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be selected as well.

2. Click Open PDF file on the list.

The application associated with the file extension (.pdf) by the operating system starts.

Important

- Password-protected PDF files cannot be opened in applications not supporting PDF security.
- Files may not open if an application that can be associated with PDF files is not installed.

3. Use the application to edit/print the file.

For details, refer to the application's manual.

Important

- In some applications, the commands (print, edit, etc.) restricted by Permissions Password may differ from those in MP Navigator EX.

Page top

S502

MP Navigator EX

Printing Documents

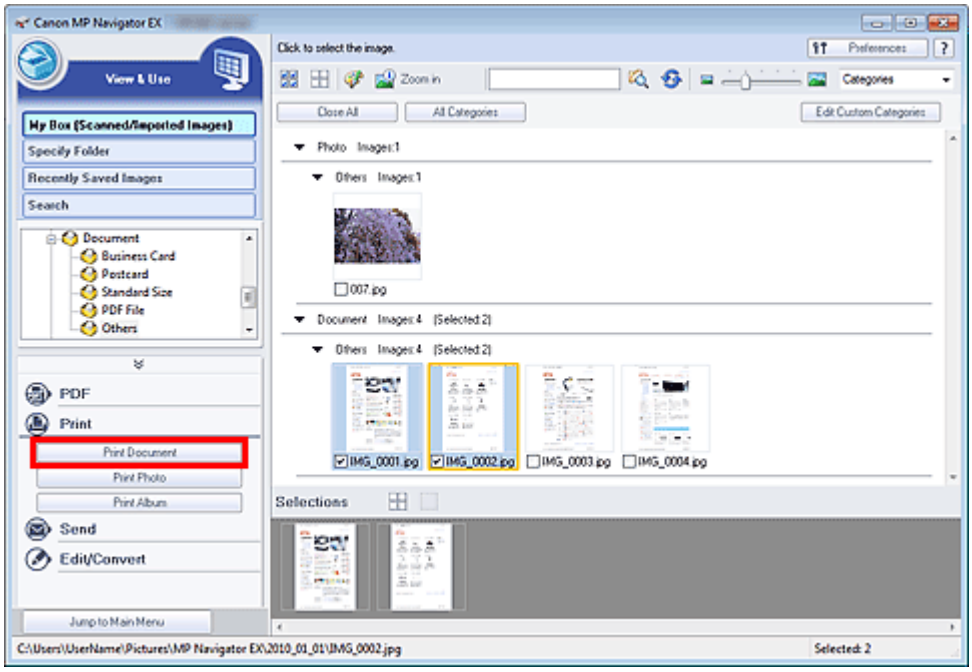
You can print multiple scanned images at one time, print at specific quality, etc. using MP Navigator EX.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select images.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Print, then click Print Document on the list.



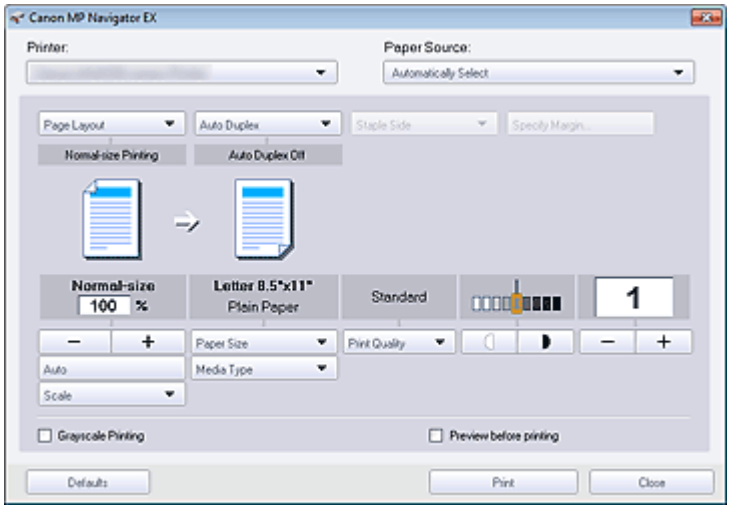
Important

- If a password-protected PDF file is selected, you will be prompted to enter the password.
  - Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

3. Specify print settings as required.

In the displayed dialog box, specify print count, quality, scale, etc.

- Print Document Dialog Box



Important

- At normal-size (100%), some images may be printed small or with some portions cropped. In that case, select Auto to resize the print in proportion to the paper size.

4. Click Print.

Starts printing.

Note

- When printing a multiple-page PDF file via Print Document, printing may take time depending on your computer. In that case, follow these steps and change settings.
  Windows 7:
  1. From the Start menu, select Devices and Printers.
  2. Right-click the icon of your printer and click Printer Properties.
  The printer properties dialog box opens.
  3. Click the Advanced tab.
  4. Select Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster.
  5. Select Start printing after last page is spooled.
  6. After printing, return the setting on the Advanced tab to Start printing immediately.
  Windows Vista/Windows XP:
  1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.
  2. Click Printer (Windows XP: Printers and Faxes).
  3. Right-click the icon of your printer and click Properties.
  The printer properties dialog box opens.
  4. Click the Advanced tab.
  5. Select Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster.
  6. Select Start printing after last page is spooled.
  7. After printing, return the setting on the Advanced tab to Start printing immediately.
- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

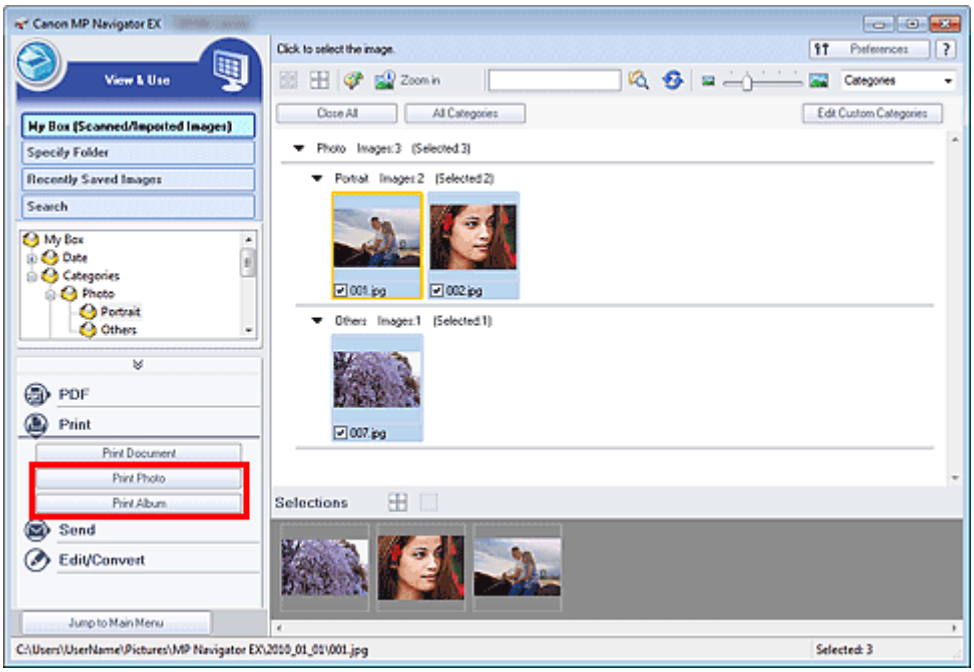
Page top

S503

MP Navigator EX

Printing Photos

You can print photos using MP Navigator EX or an application that accompanies the machine. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to select how you want to print the photos.



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

When Printing Photos Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Easy-PhotoPrint EX enables you to print scanned photos at high quality or to layout and print images.

1. Select images and click Print.
2. Click Print Photo or Print Album on the list.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts. See " Printing with the Bundled Application Software " for details.

Note

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, print with MP Navigator EX.

When Printing Photos Using MP Navigator EX

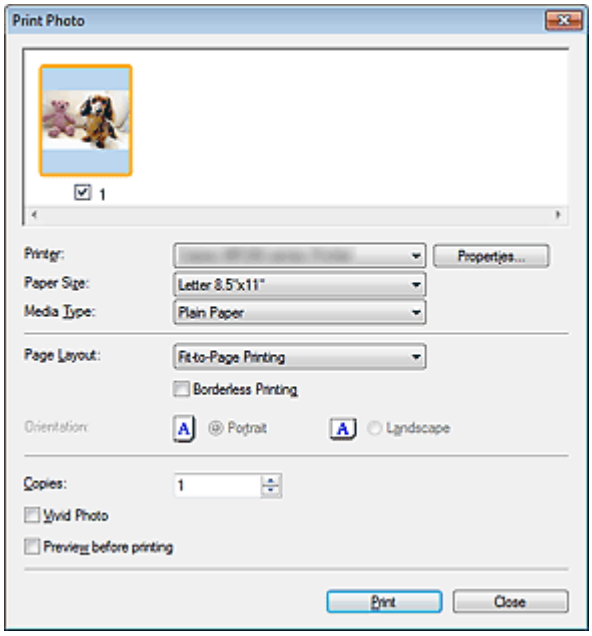
1. Select images and click Print.

2. Click Print Photo on the list.

3. Specify print settings as required.

In the displayed dialog box, specify paper size, print count, etc.

Print Photo Dialog Box



4. Click Print.

Starts printing.

Note

- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Page top

S504

MP Navigator EX

Sending via E-mail

Send scanned images via e-mail.

Important

- MP Navigator EX is compatible with the following e-mail software programs:
  - Microsoft Outlook
  - Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
  - Outlook Express (Windows XP)

  (If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled. To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.)

Note

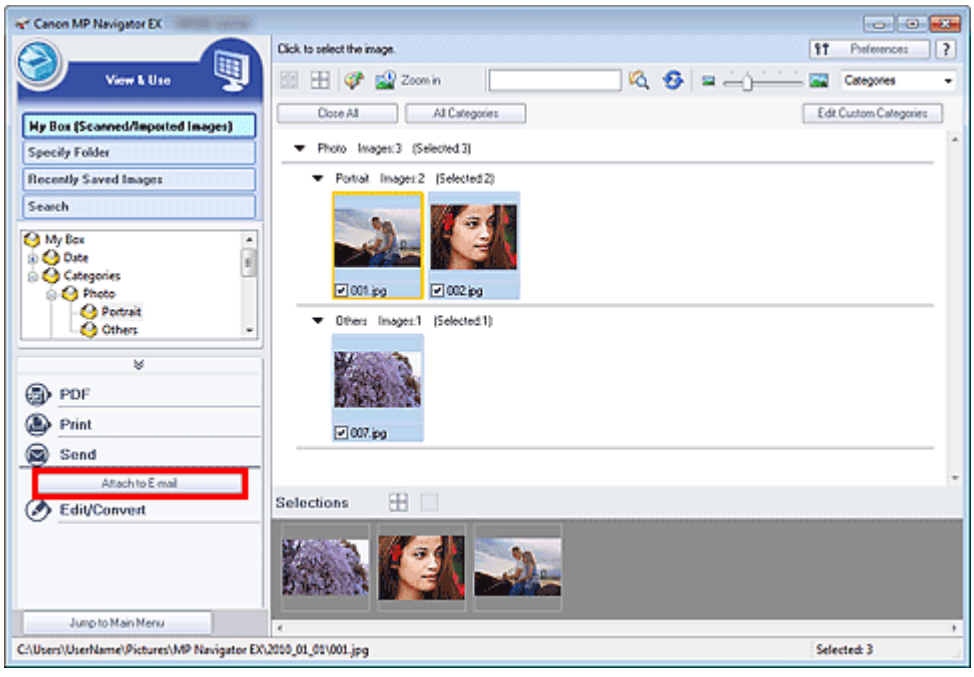
- If an e-mail software program is not selected, manually attach the scanned and saved image to e-mail.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select images.

   ### Note

   - Only PDF and JPEG files can be attached to e-mail.
   - See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
   - You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
     - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
     - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

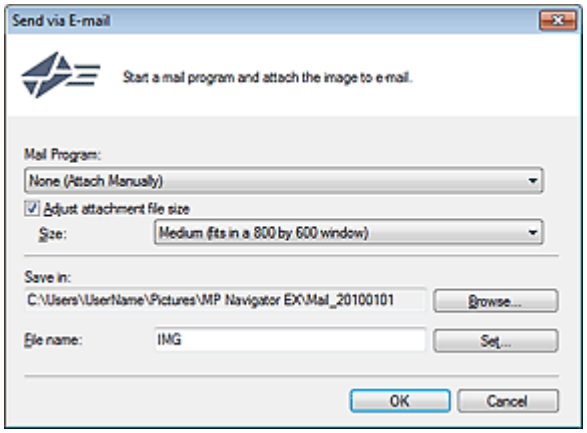
2. Click Send, then click Attach to E-mail on the list.



3. Set the e-mail software program and file save options as required.

Specify the e-mail software program, destination folder and file name.

Send via E-mail Dialog Box



Note

- You can select a compression type when sending JPEG images via e-mail. Click Set... to open a dialog box and select a compression type from High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

4. Click OK.

Files are saved according to the settings, and the e-mail software program starts.

5. Specify the recipient, enter the subject and message, then send e-mail.

For details, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.

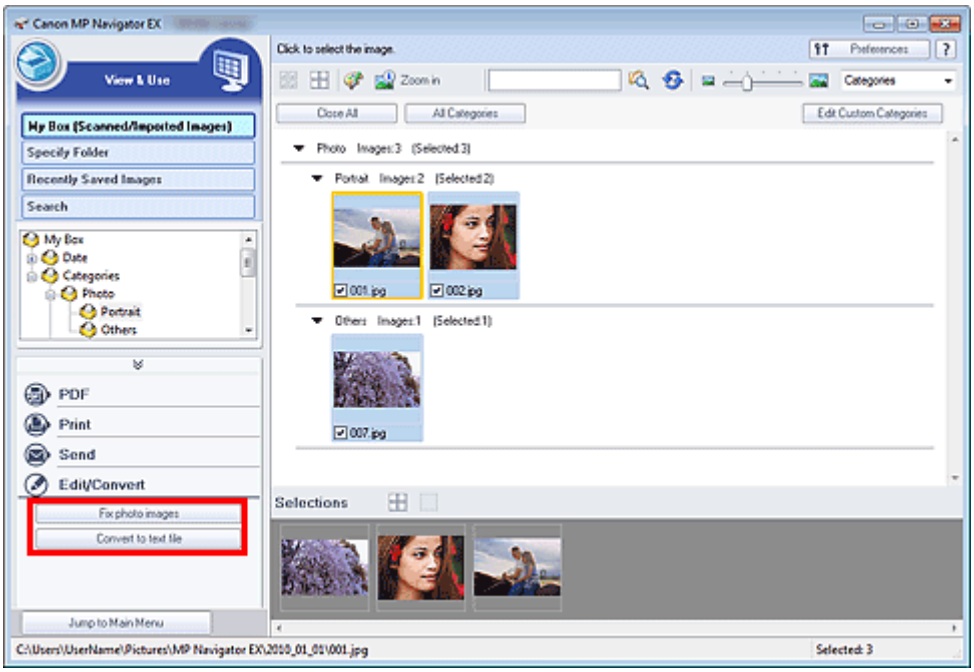
Page top

S505

MP Navigator EX

Editing Files

You can edit images or convert them to text using MP Navigator EX or an application that accompanies the machine. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to select what you want to do with the images.



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a memory card or computer.
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Correcting Photo Images

You can correct/enhance images in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

1. Select images and click Edit/Convert.
2. Click Fix photo images on the list.

   The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.
3. Correct/enhance images in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Note

- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.
- See the corresponding sections below for correcting/enhancing images.
  - Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically
  - Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

Converting Documents to Text

Scan text in scanned magazines and newspapers and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).

Important

- PDF files cannot be converted to text.

1. Select images and click Edit/Convert.

2. Click Convert to text file on the list.

   Notepad (included with Windows) starts and editable text appears.

Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected on the General tab can be extracted to Notepad (included with Windows). Click Set... on the General tab and specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned.
  When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
  General Tab
- Text displayed in Notepad (included with Windows) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
  - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
  - Slanted documents
  - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with narrow line spacing
  - Documents with colors in the background of text
  - Documents containing multiple languages

Page top

S508

MP Navigator EX

Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Set passwords for opening, editing and printing PDF files.

You can set two passwords: one for opening the file and one for editing/printing it.

This section explains how to set passwords for images scanned into the Scan/Import window of MP Navigator EX and how to set passwords for existing files via the View & Use window.

Important

- You will not be able to open/edit the file if you forget the password. Record your passwords in a safe place for future reference.
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be opened in applications not supporting PDF security.
- In some applications, the commands (print, edit, etc.) restricted by Permissions Password may differ from those in MP Navigator EX.
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be searched by text from the " View & Use Window ."
- Passwords cannot be set when images are automatically saved after scanning.

1. Open the password setting screen from images scanned into MP Navigator EX or existing files.

Setting Passwords for Scanned Images

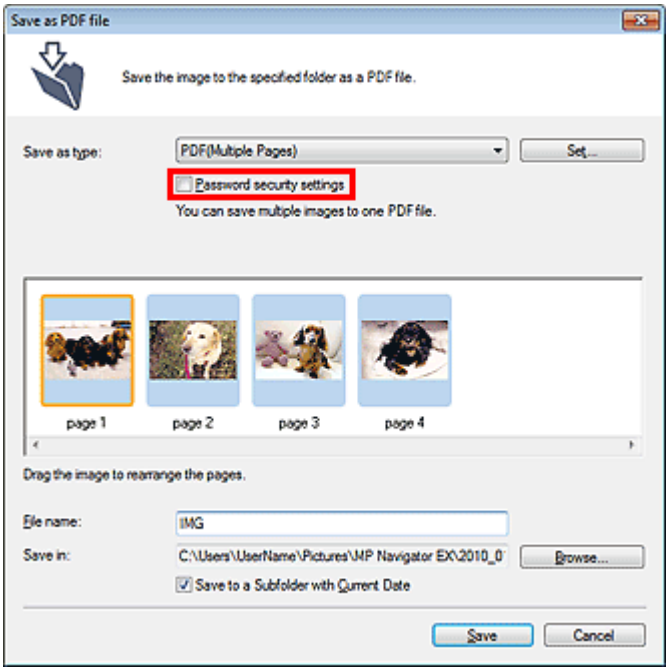
1. Scan documents into the Scan/Import window.

   Let's Try Scanning

2. Click Save as PDF file.

   The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.

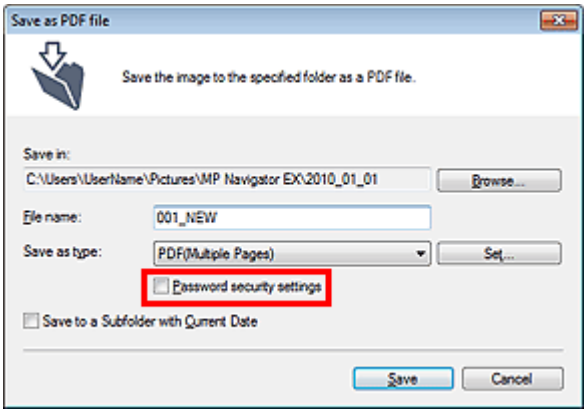
3. Select the Password security settings checkbox.



The Password Security -Settings dialog box opens.

Setting Passwords for Existing Files

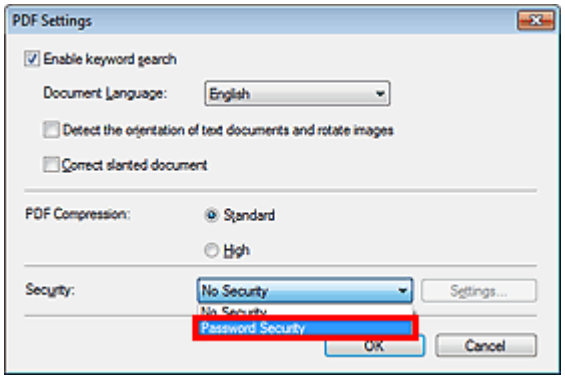
1. In the View & Use window, select image/PDF files and click PDF.
2. Click Create/Edit PDF file on the list.
   Creating/Editing PDF Files
3. Edit files in the Create/Edit PDF file window, then click Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages.
   The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.
4. Select the Password security settings checkbox.



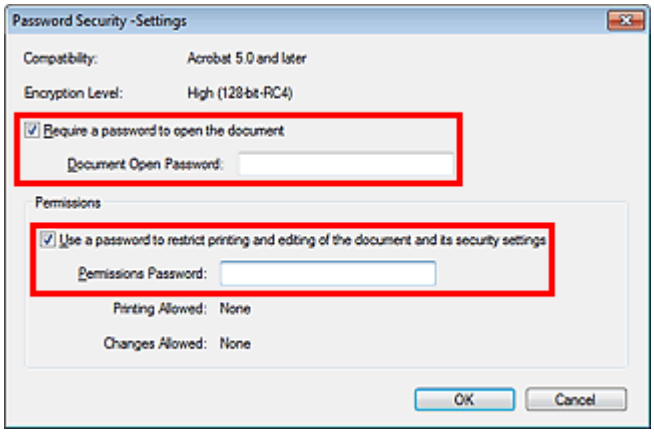
The Password Security -Settings dialog box opens.

Note

- You can also open the Password Security -Settings dialog box by clicking Set..., then selecting Password Security for Security in the PDF Settings dialog box.



2. Select the Require a password to open the document or Use a password to restrict printing and editing of the document and its security settings checkbox, then enter a password.



Important

- Up to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used for the password. Passwords are case sensitive.
- Select both checkboxes to set both Document Open Password and Permissions Password. You cannot use the same password for both.

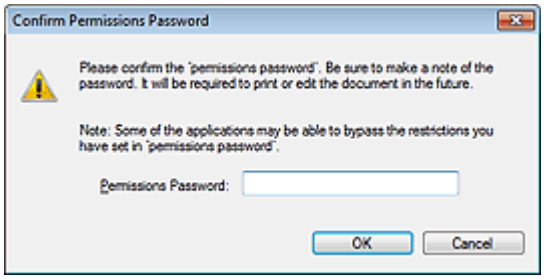
3. Click OK.

The Confirm Document Open Password or Confirm Permissions Password dialog box opens.

Document Open Password



Permissions Password



4. Re-enter the password and click OK.

The Save as PDF file dialog box returns.

Important

- If you close the Save as PDF file dialog box without clicking Save, the settings in the Password Security -Settings dialog box will be deleted.
- Passwords are deleted once the file is edited. Reset the passwords when saving edited files.

Note

- If you set the passwords via the PDF Settings dialog box, the PDF Settings dialog box returns. Click OK. The Save as PDF file dialog box returns.

5. Click Save.

Files are saved according to the settings.

Related Topic

- Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

Page top

S509

MP Navigator EX

Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

Enter a password to open or edit/print password-protected PDF files.

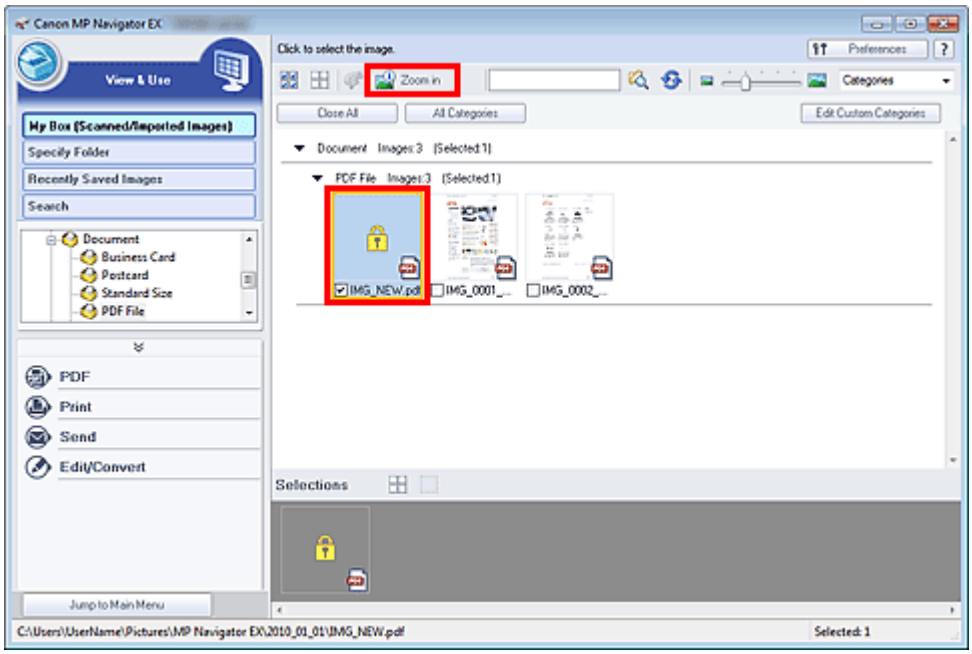
Password entry method varies by operation. The following procedures are examples only.

Important

- You can open, edit or print only PDF files whose passwords were set with MP Navigator EX. You cannot edit PDF files edited in other applications or whose passwords were set with other applications. Only MP Navigator EX version 1.1 and 2.0 or later supports opening, editing and printing password-protected PDF files.
- Passwords are case sensitive.
- You can create or edit up to 99 pages at one time using MP Navigator EX.

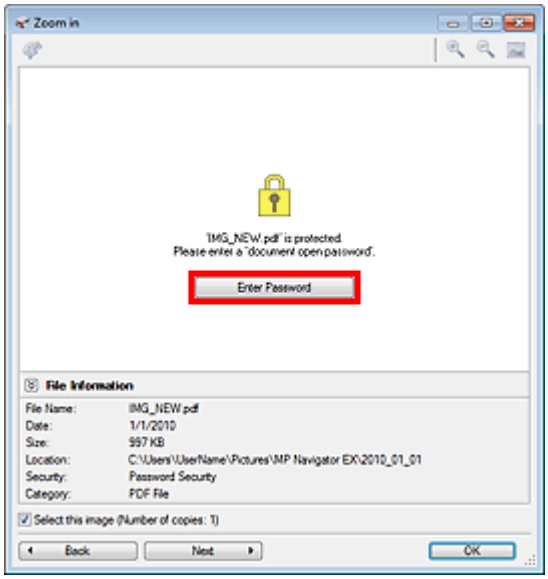
Entering a Password to Open a File

1. In the View & Use window, select the PDF file you want to open and click Zoom in.
   Alternatively, double-click the PDF file.

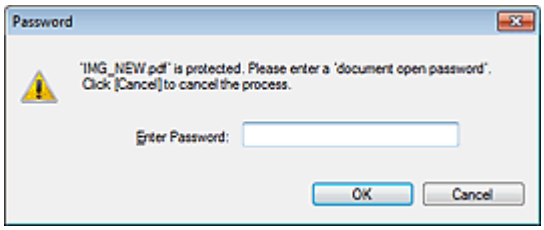


Note

- Only the Document Open Password will be required. The Permissions Password will not be required.
- If the Zoom in dialog box with a lock icon opens, click Enter Password.



2. The Password dialog box opens. Enter the password and click OK.



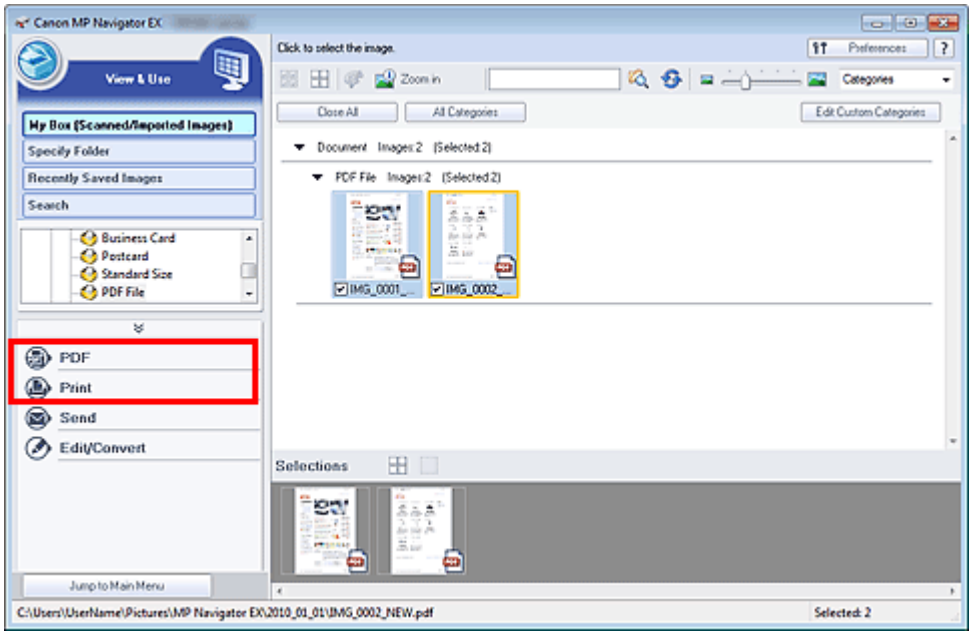
The PDF file opens in the Zoom in dialog box.

Note

- To reopen the file after closing the Zoom in dialog box, re-enter the password.

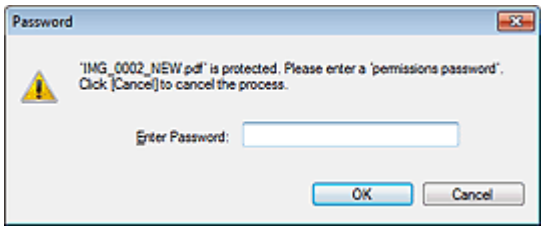
Entering a Password (Permissions Password) to Edit or Print a File

1. In the View & Use window, select PDF files and click PDF or Print.



2. To create a PDF file or edit the file, select Create/Edit PDF file on the list. To print the file, click Print Document.

In the Password dialog box, you will be prompted to enter a password.



Note

- If the Document Open Password is set as well, the Document Open Password will be required, then the Permissions Password will be required.

3. Enter the password and click OK.

The corresponding dialog box opens.

Important

- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
  ➡ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Related Topic

▶ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Page top

S700

MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX Screens

Learn about the screens and functions of MP Navigator EX.

Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

- Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)
  - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)
- Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)
  - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)
  - Save Dialog Box
  - Save as PDF file Dialog Box
- Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)
  - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Film)
- Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)

View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

- View & Use Window
  - Create/Edit PDF file Window
  - Print Document Dialog Box
  - Print Photo Dialog Box
  - Send via E-mail Dialog Box
  - Correct/Enhance Images Window

Custom Scan with One-click Tab / One-click Mode Screen

- Auto Scan Dialog Box
- Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
  - Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
- PDF Dialog Box
- Mail Dialog Box
- Film Dialog Box
- OCR Dialog Box
- Custom Dialog Box

Preferences Dialog Box

- General Tab
- Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)
  - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)
- Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail)

Page top

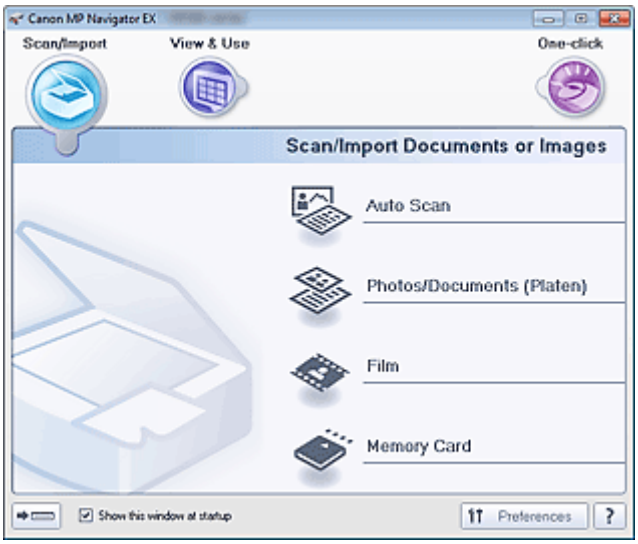
S735

MP Navigator EX

Navigation Mode Screen

This is one of the startup screens of MP Navigator EX.

Select an icon at the top of the screen to display the corresponding tab. Use each tab depending on what you want to do.



- **Scan/Import**

  You can scan photos, documents and film, or import images saved on memory cards.
  ➡ Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab
- **View & Use**

  You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.
  ➡ View & Use Images on your Computer Tab
- **One-click**

  You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ Custom Scan with One-click Tab
-  **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ One-click Mode Screen
- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.
- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  ➡ Preferences Dialog Box
-  **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Page top

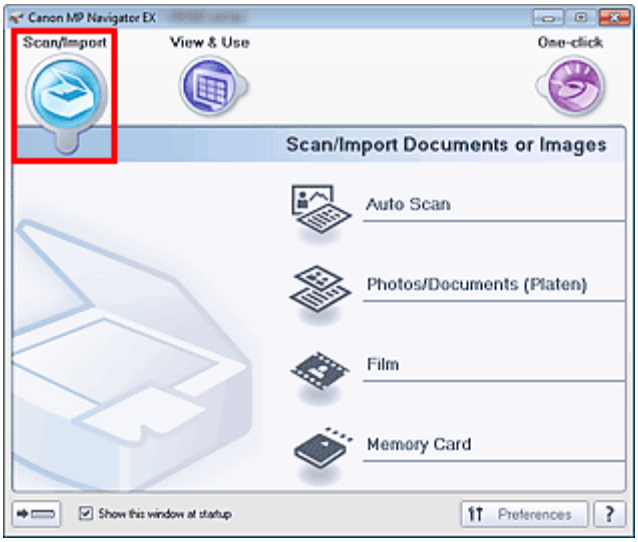
S702

MP Navigator EX

Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen to display the Scan/Import Documents or Images tab.

You can scan photos, documents and film, or import images saved on memory cards.



- **Auto Scan**

  Opens the Scan/Import window with Auto Scan selected.
  Scan documents easily by automatically detecting the document type.
  ➡ Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Opens the Scan/Import window with Photos/Documents (Platen) selected.
  Scan photos and documents placed on the Platen.
  ➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Film**

  Opens the Scan/Import window with Film selected.
  Scan film placed on the Platen.
  ➡ Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Memory Card**

  Opens the Scan/Import window with Memory Card selected.
  Import images saved on memory cards.
  ➡ Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)

-  **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  ➡ Preferences Dialog Box

-  **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Page top

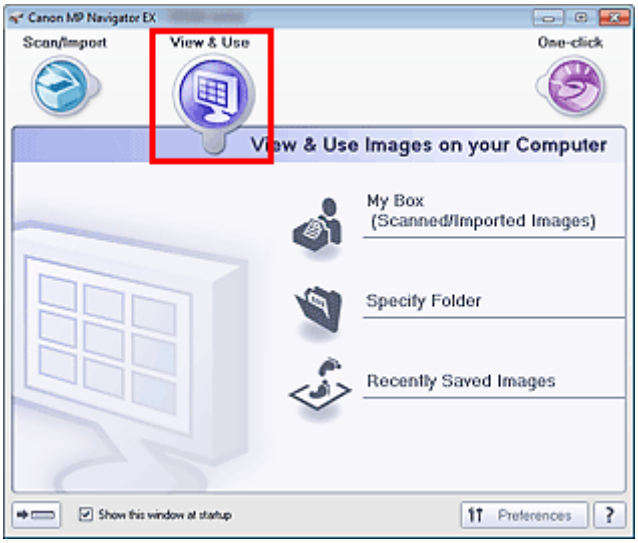
S703

MP Navigator EX

View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

Select View & Use in the Navigation Mode screen to display the View & Use Images on your Computer tab.

You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.



- **My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)**

  Opens the View & Use window with My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) selected.
  You can open and use images saved in My Box.
  "My Box" is a specific folder for saving images scanned with MP Navigator EX.

  Note

  - By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
    Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
    Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
    Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Specify Folder**

  Opens the View & Use window with Specify Folder selected.
  You can open and use images saved in specific folders.

- **Recently Saved Images**

  Opens the View & Use window with Recently Saved Images selected.
  You can open and use "Scanned/Imported Images" and images that have been "Attached to E-mail" or "Sent to Application" recently.
  View & Use Window

-  **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

  Preferences Dialog Box

-  **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Related Topic

Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Page top

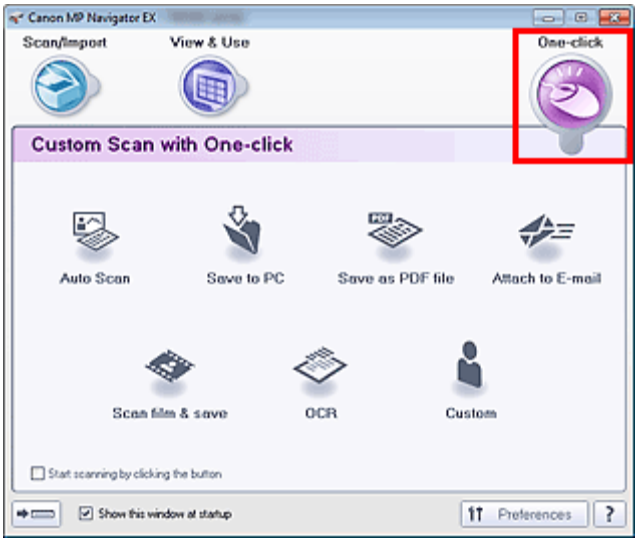
S704

MP Navigator EX

Custom Scan with One-click Tab

Select One-click in the Navigation Mode screen to display the Custom Scan with One-click tab.

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Auto Scan**

  Scan documents by automatically detecting the document type. File format is automatically set. Files are saved to a computer.
  When you click this icon, the Auto Scan dialog box opens and you can specify the save settings.
  ➡ Auto Scan Dialog Box

- **Save to PC**

  Scan documents or photos and save them to a computer. The document type can be detected automatically.
  When you click this icon, the Save dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  ➡ Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

- **Save as PDF file**

  Scan documents and save them as PDF files.
  When you click this icon, the PDF dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  ➡ PDF Dialog Box

- **Attach to E-mail**

  Scan documents or photos and attach them to e-mail.
  When you click this icon, the Mail dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and e-mail software program settings.
  ➡ Mail Dialog Box

- **Scan film & save**

  Scan film and save to a computer.
  When you click this icon, the Film dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  ➡ Film Dialog Box

- **OCR**

  Scan text documents then extract text in the image and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).
  When you click this icon, the OCR dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  ➡ OCR Dialog Box

- **Custom**

  Scan documents/photos and open them in a specified application. The document type can be automatically detected.
  When you click this icon, the Custom dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  Custom Dialog Box

- **Start scanning by clicking the button**

  Select this checkbox and click an icon to start scanning immediately.

-  **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode. The One-click Mode screen appears.
  One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

-  **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Important

- The following restrictions apply when you scan with Document Type set to Auto Mode in the Save dialog box or Custom dialog box.
  When you want to convert text in the scanned image to text data, specify Document Type (do not select Auto Mode).

Related Topic

▶ Easy Scanning with One-click

Page top

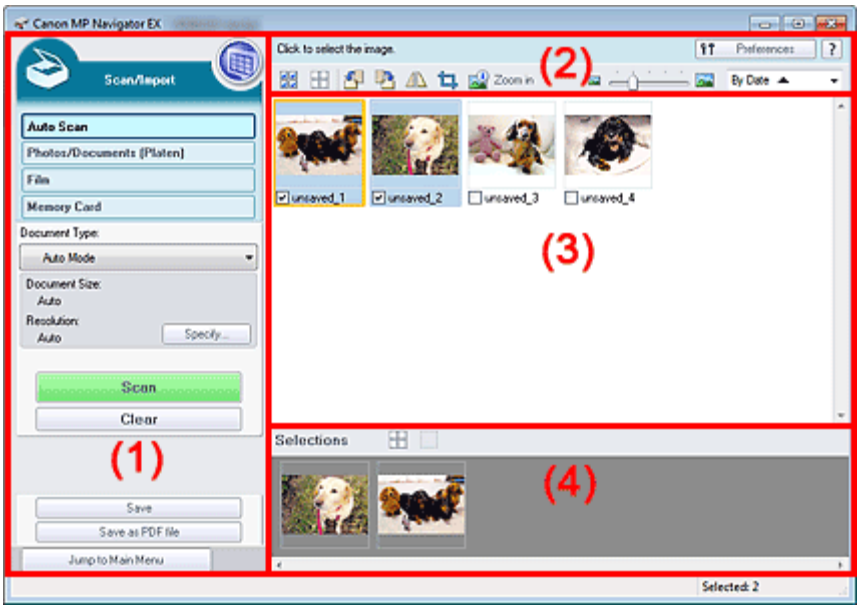
S744

MP Navigator EX

Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Auto Scan or click Auto Scan in the Scan/Import window to open the Auto Scan screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window when you want to scan documents by automatically detecting the document type.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selected Images Area

- **Supported Documents**

  Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. To scan other documents, specify the document type.
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos

  Scanning Photos and Documents
- To scan black and white film, scan from the Film screen of Scan/Import window.

  Scanning Film
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.

  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

Note

- To reduce moire, open the " Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " and set Document Type to Magazine(Color).

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **(View & Use)**

  Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.
  View & Use Window

- **Auto Scan**

  Displays the screen for scanning documents by automatically detecting the document type, etc.

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The screen for scanning photos and documents appears.
  Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Film**

  Click this when you want to scan film. The screen for scanning film appears.
  Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Memory Card**

  Click this when you want to import images saved on a memory card. The screen for importing images from a memory card appears.
  Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Document Type**

  Auto Mode is set.

- **Specify...**

  Select whether or not to apply suitable corrections based on the document type.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)

- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

- **Clear**

  Delete all images in the Thumbnail window.

  Note

  - Images not saved on a computer will be deleted. To keep important images, use Save or other methods to save them to a computer before clicking Clear.

- **Save**

  Save the selected images. Click to open the Save dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save Dialog Box

- **Save as PDF file**

  Save the selected images as PDF files. Click to open the Save as PDF file dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save as PDF file Dialog Box

- **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**
  - **(Select All)**

    Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.
  - **(Cancel All)**

    Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.
  - **(Rotate Left)**

    Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
  - **(Rotate Right)**

    Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees clockwise.
  - **(Invert)**

    Inverts the target image (outlined in orange) horizontally.
  - **(Trimming)**

    Trims the target image (outlined in orange). "Trimming" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. Click this button to open the Crop window and specify the trimming frame.
  - **Zoom in**

    Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it.
  - **(Display Size)**

    Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.
  - By Date **(Sort by)**

    Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category or by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Scanned images are displayed.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

Note

- Thumbnails may appear as "?" when there is not enough memory to display the images.

When Images are Sorted by Categories

- **Close All / Open All**

  You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.
  - **Close All**

    Hides all images.
  - **Open All**

    Displays all images.

Note

- When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

-  **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

  Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

▶ Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

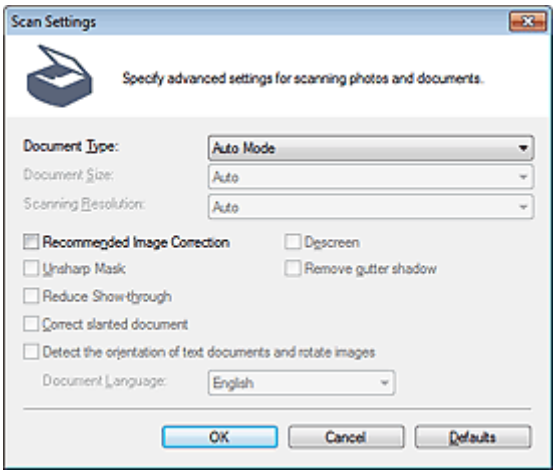
Page top

S745

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in the Scan/Import window.



- **Document Type**

  Auto Mode is set.

  Important

  - To scan black and white film, scan from the Film screen of Scan/Import window.
    Scanning Film
  - Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
    See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

- **Recommended Image Correction**

  Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

  Important

  - When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
  - Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
  - The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Defaults**

  Restore the default settings.

Page top

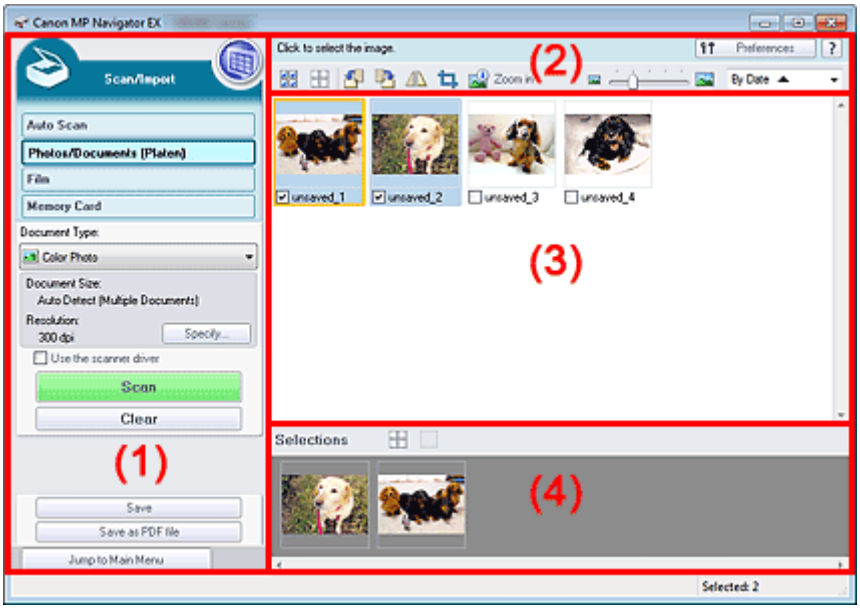
S708

MP Navigator EX

Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Photos/Documents (Platen) or click Photos/Documents (Platen) in the Scan/Import window to open the Photos/Documents (Platen) screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window when you want to scan documents from the Platen.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selected Images Area

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **(View & Use)**

  Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.

  View & Use Window

- **Auto Scan**

  Click this when you want to scan documents by automatically detecting the document type, etc. The screen for scanning with Auto Scan appears.

  Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Displays the screen for scanning photos, documents and other printed materials.

- **Film**

  Click this when you want to scan film. The screen for scanning film appears.

  Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Memory Card**

Click this when you want to import images saved on a memory card. The screen for importing images from a memory card appears.
Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned.
  Scanning photos: Color Photo or Black and White Photo
  Scanning text documents: Color Document, Black and White Document or Text(OCR)
  Scanning magazines: Magazine(Color)

  Important
  - You cannot select Document Type if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Specify...**

  Specify the document size, resolution, and other advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

  Important
  - Specify... is not available if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox when you want to scan with ScanGear (scanner driver). Use ScanGear to correct images and adjust colors when scanning.

- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

  Note
  - This button changes to Open Scanner Driver when you select the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Open Scanner Driver**

  ScanGear starts.
  See "ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens " for details on ScanGear screens.

  Note
  - This button changes to Scan when you deselect the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Clear**

  Delete all images in the Thumbnail window.

  Note
  - Images not saved on a computer will be deleted. To keep important images, use Save or other methods to save them to a computer before clicking Clear.

- **Save**

  Save the selected images. Click to open the Save dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save Dialog Box

- **Save as PDF file**

  Save the selected images as PDF files. Click to open the Save as PDF file dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save as PDF file Dialog Box

- **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**
  - **(Select All)**

    Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.
  - **(Cancel All)**

    Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.
  - **(Rotate Left)**

    Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
  - **(Rotate Right)**

    Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees clockwise.
  - **(Invert)**

    Inverts the target image (outlined in orange) horizontally.
  - **(Trimming)**

    Trims the target image (outlined in orange). "Trimming" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. Click this button to open the Crop window and specify the trimming frame.
  - **Zoom in**

    Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it.
  - **(Display Size)**

    Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.
  - By Date **(Sort by)**

    Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category or by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Scanned images are displayed.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

Note

- Thumbnails may appear as "?" when there is not enough memory to display the images.

When Images are Sorted by Categories

- **Close All / Open All**

  You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.
  - **Close All**

    Hides all images.
  - **Open All**

    Displays all images.

Note

- When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

-  **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

  Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

▶ Scanning Photos and Documents

Page top

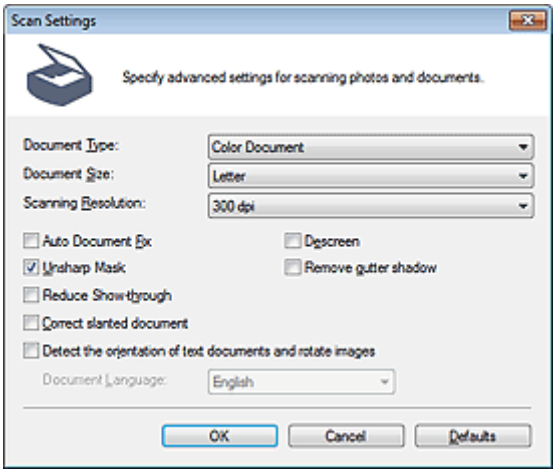
S713

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in the Scan/Import window.

In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.



- **Document Type**

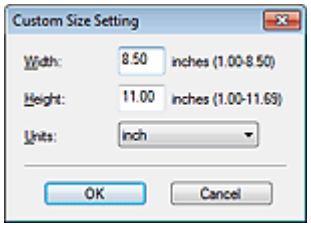
  Select the type of document to be scanned.
  Scanning photos: Color Photo or Black and White Photo
  Scanning text documents: Color Document, Black and White Document or Text(OCR)
  Scanning magazines: Magazine(Color)

Important

- You cannot select Text(OCR) when Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- You cannot select Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Auto Detect when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Scanning Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

Resolution

Note

- The following scanning resolutions can be specified when Document Type is Text(OCR).
  300 dpi / 400 dpi

- **Auto Photo Fix / Auto Document Fix**

  The displayed item varies by Document Type.

  - **Auto Photo Fix**

    This is displayed when Document Type is Color Photo. Select this checkbox to automatically analyze the captured scene (landscape, night scene, etc.) and apply suitable corrections.

  - **Auto Document Fix**

    This is displayed when Document Type is Color Document, Black and White Document or Magazine(Color). Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).
- You cannot select this checkbox when Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Descreen**

  Select this checkbox to reduce moire patterns.
  Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo, Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Descreen.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Remove gutter shadow**

  Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Auto Detect, Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Stitch Assist is selected for Document Size.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.
- When scanning, align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set.

See "Gutter Shadow Correction " for details.

- **Reduce Show-through**

  Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo, Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).

  Note

  - Select this checkbox when Document Type is text document and show-through is apparent in the scanned image.

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
  - The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
    - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
    - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
    - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
    - Documents with small amount of text
    - Documents containing figures/images
    - Hand-written documents
    - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

  Note

  - Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

  Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
  - This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
  - The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly. In that case, select the scanned image in the Thumbnail window of the " Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " and rotate it with Edit Tools.
    - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
    - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
    - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
    - Documents with patterned backgrounds

  Note

  - Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

  Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.

- **Defaults**

  Restore the default settings.

Page top

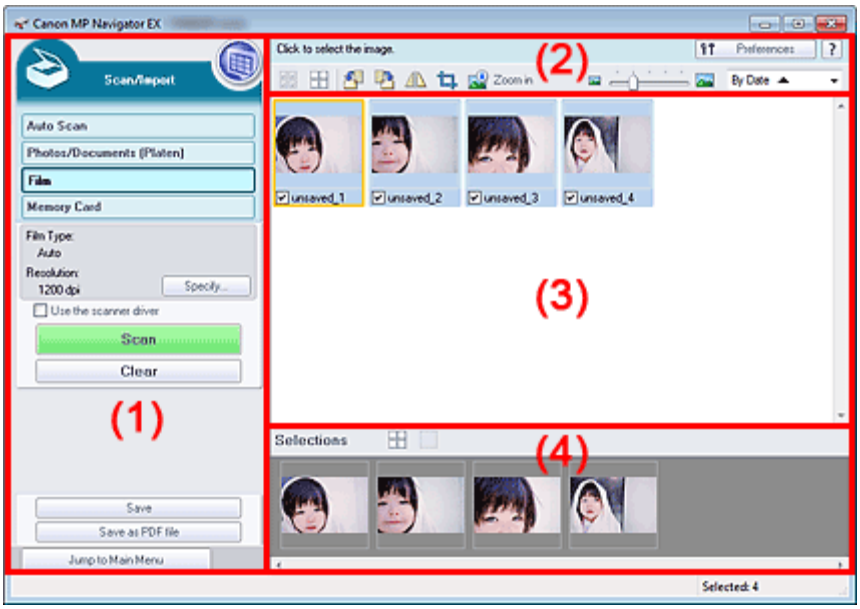
S709

MP Navigator EX

Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Film or click Film in the Scan/Import window to open the Film screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window when you want to scan film from the Platen.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selected Images Area

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **(View & Use)**

  Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.

  ➡ View & Use Window

- **Auto Scan**

  Click this when you want to scan documents by automatically detecting the document type, etc. The screen for scanning with Auto Scan appears.

  ➡ Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The screen for scanning photos and documents appears.

  ➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Film**

  Displays the screen for scanning film.

- **Memory Card**

Click this when you want to import images saved on a memory card. The screen for importing images from a memory card appears.
Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Specify...**

  Specify the film type, resolution, and other advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (Film)

Important

- Specify... is not available if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox when you want to scan with ScanGear (scanner driver). Use ScanGear to correct images and adjust colors when scanning.

- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

Note

- This button changes to Open Scanner Driver when you select the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Open Scanner Driver**

  ScanGear starts.
  See "ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens " for details on ScanGear screens.

Note

- This button changes to Scan when you deselect the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Clear**

  Delete all images in the Thumbnail window.

Note

- Images not saved on a computer will be deleted. To keep important images, use Save or other methods to save them to a computer before clicking Clear.

- **Save**

  Save the selected images. Click to open the Save dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save Dialog Box

- **Save as PDF file**

  Save the selected images as PDF files. Click to open the Save as PDF file dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save as PDF file Dialog Box

- **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**
  - **(Select All)**

Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.

-  **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

-  **(Rotate Left)**

  Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

-  **(Rotate Right)**

  Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees clockwise.

-  **(Invert)**

  Inverts the target image (outlined in orange) horizontally.

-  **(Trimming)**

  Trims the target image (outlined in orange). "Trimming" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. Click this button to open the Crop window and specify the trimming frame.

-  **Zoom in**

  Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it.

-  **(Display Size)**

  Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.

- 

(Sort by)

  Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category or by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Scanned images are displayed.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

Note

- Thumbnails may appear as "?" when there is not enough memory to display the images.

When Images are Sorted by Categories

- **Close All / Open All**

  You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.

  - **Close All**

    Hides all images.

  - **Open All**

    Displays all images.

  ### Note

  - When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

-  **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

  Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

▶ Scanning Film

Page top

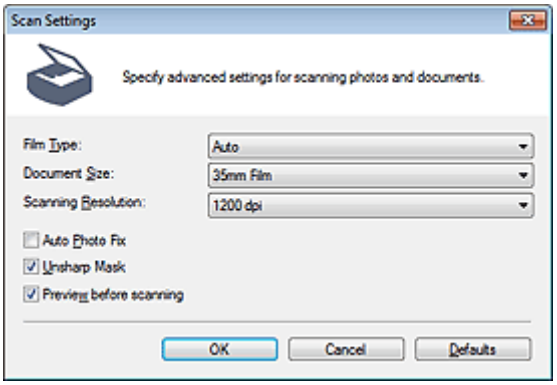
S714

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Film)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in the Scan/Import window.

In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.



- **Film Type**

  Select the type of film to be scanned.

  Important

  - Film may not be scanned correctly when Auto is selected. In that case, select the type of film and scan again.

  Note

  - To scan black and white film, it is recommended that you select Black and White Negative Film or Black and White Positive Film.

- **Document Size**

  35mm Film is set.

- **Scanning Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan film.
  Resolution

- **Auto Photo Fix**

  Select this checkbox to automatically analyze the captured scene (landscape, night scene, etc.) and apply suitable corrections.

  Important

  - When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
  - Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
  - You cannot select this checkbox when Film Type is Black and White Negative Film or Black and White Positive Film.
  - The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

- **Preview before scanning**

  Select this checkbox to display preview images. In the preview screen, click Cancel to return to the MP

Navigator EX screen, or click Scan to start scanning the selected frames.

- **Defaults**

  Restore the default settings.

Page top

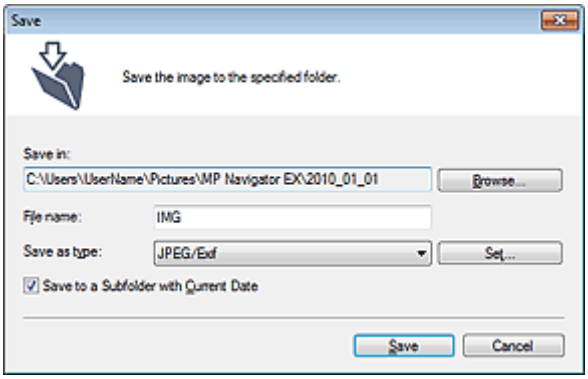
S716

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box

The Save dialog box opens when you click Save in the Scan/Import window.

In the Save dialog box, you can make settings for saving images to a computer.



- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

  Important

  - When saving to a memory card, enable writing on the Card Slot of the machine. For details on how to enable writing, refer to " Setting Up the Card Slot as the Memory Card Drive of the Computer ." With network connection, map the Card Slot as a network drive. See " Using the Card Slot over a Network " for details.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.

  Important

  - You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is Text(OCR).
  - You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Black and White is selected for Color Mode on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).
  - When saving 48 bit color or 16 bit grayscale images scanned with ScanGear, select TIFF. If you select a format other than TIFF, they will be saved as 24 bit color or 8 bit grayscale images.

- **Set...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Important

- This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Page top

S717

MP Navigator EX

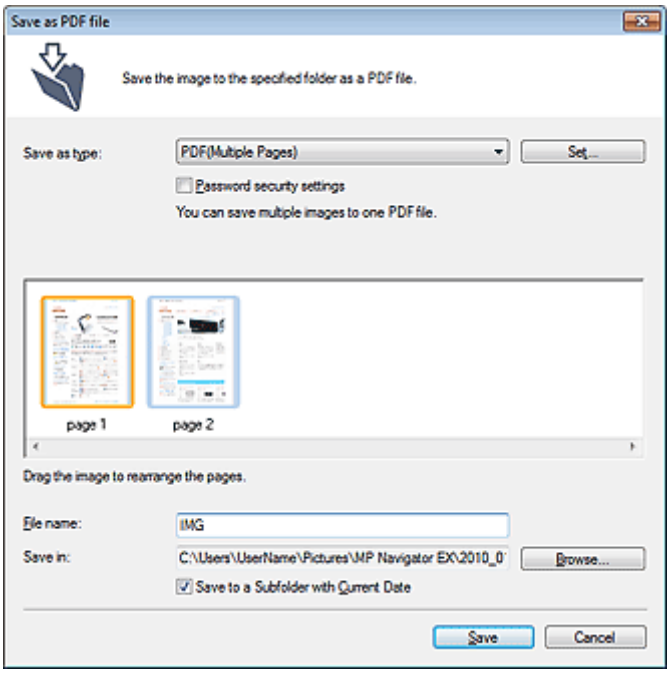
Save as PDF file Dialog Box

In the Save as PDF file dialog box, you can make advanced settings for saving scanned images as PDF files. You can save multiple documents as one PDF file or add pages to a PDF file created with MP Navigator EX.

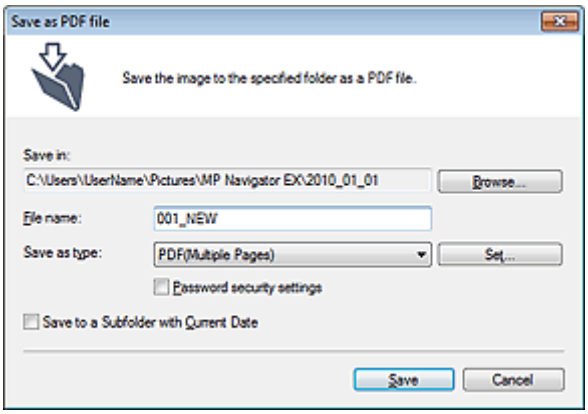
Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.

When Opened from the Scan/Import Window



When Opened from the View & Use Window



- **Save as type**

  Select a PDF file type to save the scanned images.

- **PDF**

  Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

- **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

  Save multiple images in one PDF file.

  Note

  - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are selected.

- **PDF(Add Page)**

  Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

  Important

  - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
  - When Opened from the View & Use window, PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected.
  - If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
    Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Set...**

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

- **Password security settings**

  Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Add to**

  This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

  Important

  - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files as separate PDF files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

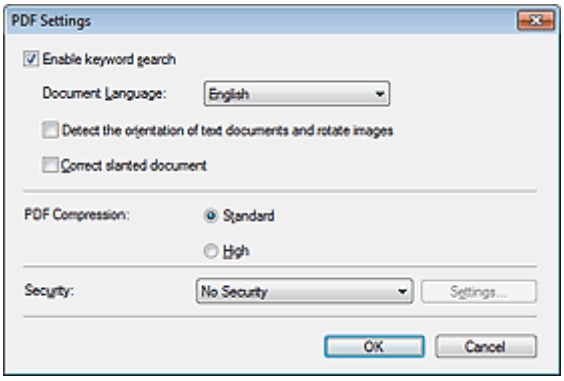
Page top

S736

MP Navigator EX

PDF Settings Dialog Box

In the PDF Settings dialog box, you can specify the PDF compression type and other advanced settings for creating PDF files.



Important

- Only the Security setting is available for images with resolutions outside the range of 75 dpi to 600 dpi.

- **Enable keyword search**

  Select this checkbox to convert characters in a document to text data. This will enable an easy search by keyword.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

  Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation.

Important

- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
  - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with patterned backgrounds

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
  - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
  - Documents with small amount of text

- Documents containing figures/images
- Hand-written documents
- Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

- **PDF Compression**

  Select a compression type for saving.

  - **Standard**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Compresses the file size when saving, allowing you to reduce the load on your network/server.

    Important

    - Highly compressed PDF images may degrade if you repeatedly save them with high compression.

Important

- Compression type cannot be set when Color Mode is Black and White.
- Compression type cannot be set when scanning by selecting PDF on the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Security**

  Set passwords for opening, editing and printing the created PDF files.

Important

- This function is not available when images are automatically saved after scanning.

Note

- Select Password Security and set passwords in the Password Security -Settings dialog box.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Page top

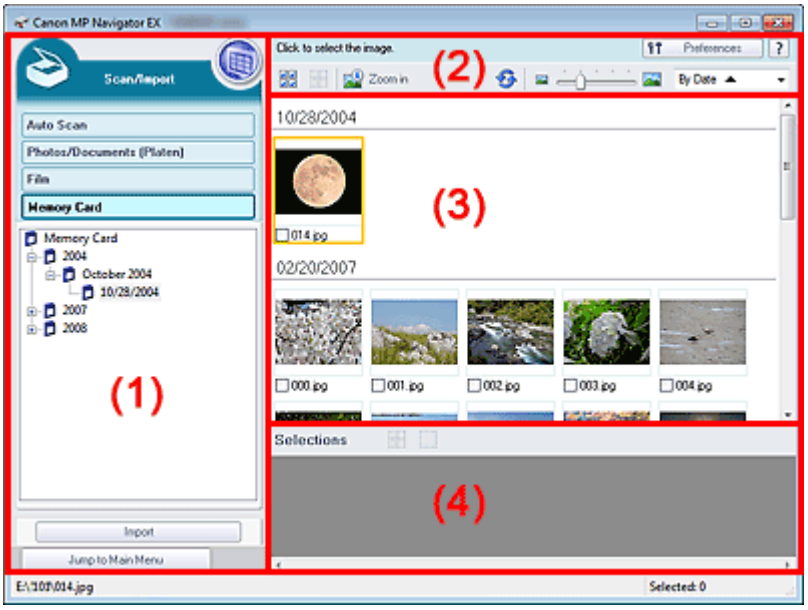
S710

MP Navigator EX

Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Memory Card, or click Memory Card in the Scan/Import window to open the Memory Card screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window when you want to import images (including PDF files created via scanning using the Operation Panel) saved on a memory card.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selected Images Area

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **(View & Use)**

  Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.

  ➡ View & Use Window

- **Auto Scan**

  Click this when you want to scan documents by automatically detecting the document type, etc. The screen for scanning with Auto Scan appears.

  ➡ Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The screen for scanning photos and documents appears.

  ➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Film**

  Click this when you want to scan film. The screen for scanning film appears.

  ➡ Film Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **Memory Card**

  Displays folders of images and PDF files (grouped by year, month/year and month/date/year) on a memory card in tree view. Select a folder to display its contents in the Thumbnail window to the right. File date is the captured or updated date.

- **Import**

  Imports the selected images and open them in the View & Use window.
  View & Use Window

- **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

-  **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**

  -  **(Select All)**

    Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.

  -  **(Cancel All)**

    Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

  -  **Zoom in**

    Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it. You can check all pages when you select a PDF file.

  -  **(Refresh)**

    Refreshes the Thumbnail window contents.

  -  **(Display Size)**

    Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.

  - 

    (Sort by)

    Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Images saved on the memory card are displayed by year or month/year.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

-  **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

  Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

▶ Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card

Page top

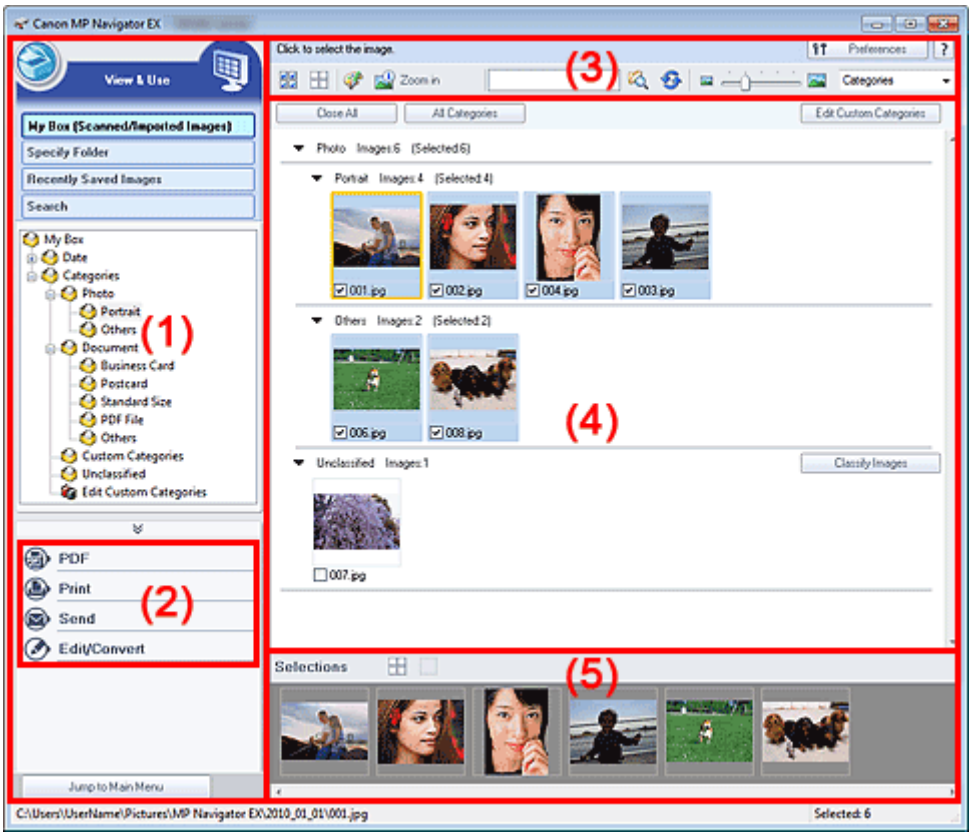
S711

MP Navigator EX

View & Use Window

Select View & Use in the Navigation Mode screen and click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Specify Folder or Recently Saved Images to open the View & Use window.

Open this window to display or use scanned images or images saved on a computer.



(1) Display Setting Items

(2) Image Handling Buttons

(3) Toolbar

(4) Thumbnail Window

(5) Selected Images Area

Important

- For PDF files, only those created with MP Navigator EX are displayed. You cannot display PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be displayed as well.

Display Setting Items

- **(Scan/Import)**

  Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The Scan/Import window opens.

  ➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)**

  Displays folders of images (grouped by year, month/year and month/date/year) in My Box in tree view. Select a folder to display its contents in the Thumbnail window to the right.
  Image date is the scanned, captured or updated date.

- **Specify Folder**

  Displays all hard disks and folders in tree view. Select a folder to display images in the Thumbnail window to the right.
  Selecting a folder and clicking it highlights the folder name, allowing you to rename it.

- **Recently Saved Images**

  "Scanned/Imported Images" and images that have been "Attached to E-mail" or "Sent to Application" recently are displayed in tree view by date. For "Scanned/Imported Images", "From Scanner" and "From Memory Card" are displayed separately. Select a Month/Date/Year folder to display images by date in the Thumbnail window to the right.
  Image date is the scanned or sent date.
  Click Clear History to clear all data (date folders and images) displayed in Recently Saved Images.

  Note

  - The actual image files are not deleted.

- **Search**

  The advanced search options opens.
  Searching Images

- **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

  Important

  - Jump to Main Menu is not displayed when the window is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

Image Handling Buttons

- **Image Handling Buttons**

  Specify what to do with the selected images. See the corresponding sections below for details on each button.
  Creating/Editing PDF Files
  Printing Documents
  Printing Photos
  Sending via E-mail
  Editing Files

  Note

  - The buttons in Image Handling Buttons are displayed when the corresponding applications are installed.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

-  **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**

  -  **(Select All)**

Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Image Correction/Enhancement)**

  Allows you to correct the target image (outlined in orange). Click this button to open the Correct/ Enhance Images window in which you can correct/enhance images and also adjust the brightness, contrast, etc.
  Correct/Enhance Images Window

  Important

  - Image correction/enhancement cannot be applied to PDF files or black and white binary files.

- **Zoom in**

  Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it. You can check all pages when you select a PDF file.
  You can also check file information such as file name, date, size and security setting. A lock icon appears for PDF files with Document Open Password set.
  Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

- **(Search)**

  Enter a word or phrase included in the file name, Exif information or PDF text of the image you want to search for, then click (Search). For Exif information, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched.

  Note

  - Search images in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Recently Saved Images or a selected folder and its subfolders.

- **(Refresh)**

  Refreshes the Thumbnail window contents.

- **(Display Size)**

  Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.

- Categories **(Sort by)**

  Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category, date (ascending or descending) or name (ascending or descending).
  Images can be sorted by category only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Scanned images are displayed.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.
  Selecting an image and clicking the file name highlights the file name, allowing you to rename it.
  Drag and drop an image to do the following things.
  - Move from one category to another within the Thumbnail window
  - Move to a category folder displayed in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)
  - Copy to a folder displayed in Specify Folder

  Important

  - You cannot change the extension (.jpg, .pdf, etc.) when renaming a file.
  - You cannot move or copy images to the date folders displayed in tree view in My Box (Scanned/

Imported Images) or Recently Saved Images.

Note

- A lock icon appears for PDF files with Document Open Password set.
- Thumbnails may appear as "?" in the following cases.
  - Opening unsupported images
  - File size is too large and there is not enough memory to display the image
  - The file is corrupted

When Images are Sorted by Categories

Scanned images are displayed by category.

Note

- Some images may not be detected correctly and thus may be classified into wrong categories.
  In that case, drag and drop an image and move it from one category to another.

- **Category name Images: N (Selected: n)**



  - **Category name**

    The following categories are provided.
    Photos: Portrait, Others
    Documents: Business Card, Postcard, Standard Size, PDF File, Others
    Custom categories: Displays your custom categories.
    Unclassified: Displays images that are not classified.

  - **Images: N**

    The number of images classified into the category is displayed.

  - **(Selected: n)**

    The number of images with the checkbox selected is displayed.

    ## Note

    - This portion is displayed only when one or more images are selected.

- **Close All / Open All**

  You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.
  This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

  - **Close All**

    Hides all images.

  - **Open All**

    Displays all images.

  ## Note

  - Immediately after opening the View & Use window or sorting images, all images appear and Close All is displayed.
  - When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

- **All Categories / Specific Categories**

  You can display all categories or only those containing images.
  This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

- **All Categories**

  Displays all categories and images.

- **Specific Categories**

  Displays categories containing images, along with the contained images. More images will be displayed in the Thumbnail window, allowing you to find or move images easily.

Note

- Immediately after opening the View & Use window, categories containing images appear along with the contained images, and All Categories is displayed.
- Click All Categories, to changes to Specific Categories.

- **Edit Custom Categories**

  When My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed, the Edit Custom Categories dialog box opens.
  In the Edit Custom Categories dialog box, you can add/delete categories displayed in Custom Categories.
  See "Classifying Images into Categories " for details.

- **Classify Images**

  Images imported from hard disks or memory cards appear in Unclassified. Click Classify Images to classify them automatically.
  This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

Note

- Classification may take time if there are many images to classify.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

-  **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

  Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

▶ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Page top

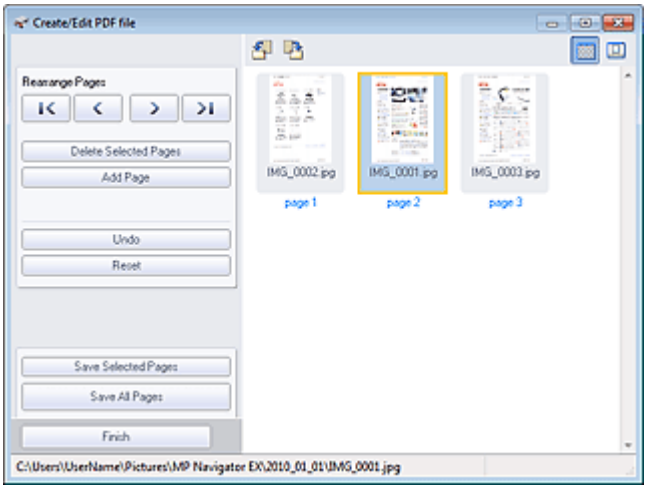
S715

MP Navigator EX

Create/Edit PDF file Window

Click PDF in the View & Use window, then click Create/Edit PDF file on the list to open the Create/Edit PDF file window.

In the Create/Edit PDF file window, you can add/delete pages and rearrange the page order of PDF files created with MP Navigator EX.



Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files
- You can create or edit up to 99 pages at one time using MP Navigator EX.

- **Rearrange Pages**

  You can move the selected image (outlined in orange).

  - Moves the selected image to the top.

  - Moves the selected image up one page.

  - Moves the selected image down one page.

  - Moves the selected image to the end.

Note

- You can also drag the image to rearrange the order.

- **Delete Selected Pages**

Deletes the selected image.

- **Add Page**

  Allows you to select and add an existing PDF file.

  Note

  - A password will be required to add a password-protected PDF file.

- **Undo**

  Cancels the latest change made.

- **Reset**

  Cancels all the changes made.

- **Save Selected Pages**

  Opens the Save as PDF file dialog box. Specify the save settings. Only the selected page is saved.

  Note

  - When multiple pages are selected, a multiple-page PDF file is created.
  - See "Save as PDF file Dialog Box " for details on the Save as PDF file dialog box.

- **Save All Pages**

  Opens the Save as PDF file dialog box. Specify the save settings and save all pages in the list as one PDF file or save all pages as separate PDF files.

  Note

  - See "Save as PDF file Dialog Box " for details on the Save as PDF file dialog box.

- **Finish**

  Closes the Create/Edit PDF file window.

- **Toolbar**

  - **(Rotate Left)**

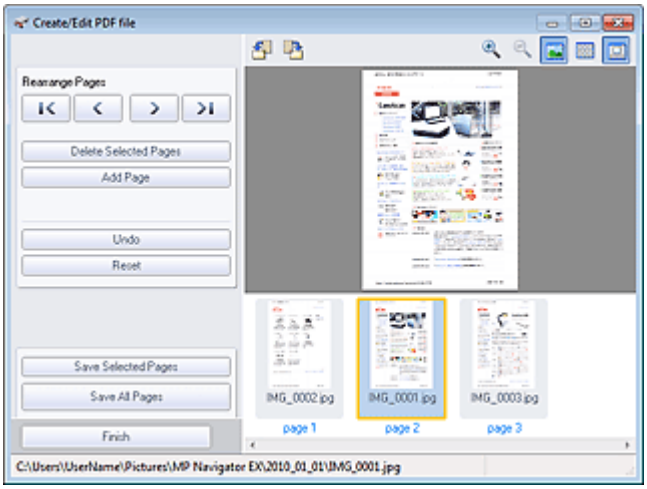
    Rotates the page 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

  - **(Rotate Right)**

    Rotates the page 90 degrees clockwise.

  - **(Preview Mode)**

    Switches to Preview Mode.
    The selected page appears in Preview.

  - **(Enlarge)**

    Enlarges the image displayed in Preview.

-  **(Reduce)**

  Reduces the image displayed in Preview.

-  **(Full-screen)**

  Displays the entire image.

-  **(Thumbnail Mode)**

  Switches to Thumbnail Mode. The pages are displayed in thumbnail view.

Page top

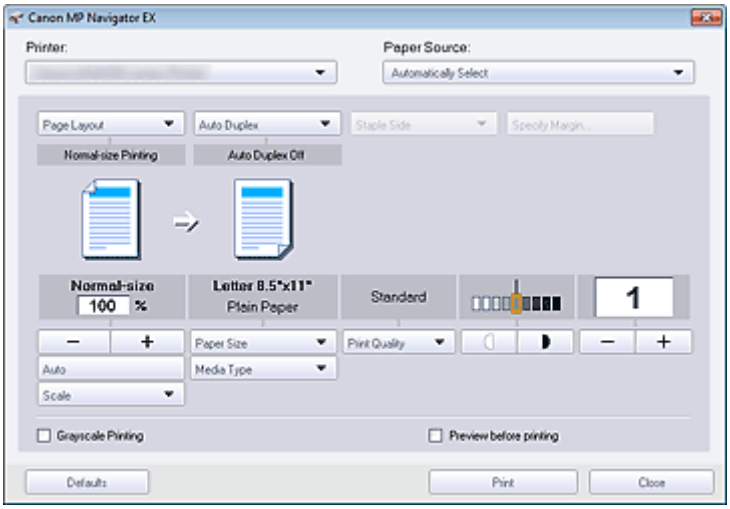
S718

MP Navigator EX

Print Document Dialog Box

Click Print in the View & Use window, then click Print Document on the list to open the Print Document dialog box.

In the Print Document dialog box, you can make advanced settings for printing multiple scanned images at one time.



- **Printer**

  Select the printer to use.
- **Paper Source**

  Select paper source.
- **Page Layout**

  Select a print type.
  - **Normal-size Printing**

    Print one image per sheet.
  - **Scaled Printing**

    Print images at the selected scale (enlarged or reduced).
  - **Fit-to-Page Printing**

    Print an image at the paper size (enlarged or reduced).
  - **Borderless Printing**

    Print the image on an entire sheet of paper without borders.
  - **Page Layout Printing (2 on 1)**

    Layout and print two images on a sheet of paper.
  - **Page Layout Printing (4 on 1)**

    Layout and print four images on a sheet of paper.
- **Auto Duplex**

  Print on both sides of a sheet of paper automatically.

Note

- Auto Duplex is displayed when Page Layout is Normal-size Printing or Scaled Printing, and available when Media Type is Plain Paper.

- **Staple Side**

  Select a stapling side from the list.

  Note

  - Staple Side is available when Auto Duplex On is set.

- **Specify Margin...**

  Specify the width of the margin (0 inches to 1.18 inches (0 mm to 30 mm)).

  Note

  - Specify Margin... is available when Auto Duplex On is set.
  - A page may not fit in one page due to the Specify Margin... setting. In that case, the document will be reduced for printing.

- **Enlarge/Reduce**

  Enlarge or reduce images to print.

  -  **(Enlarge/Reduce)**

    Print a reduced or enlarged image by specifying a scale in increments of 1%.

  - **Auto**

    Scale is adjusted automatically according to the detected paper width and the selected paper size. Image may be printed rotated 90 degrees depending on its size.

  - **Scale**

    Select a scale from the list.

  Important

  - At normal-size (100%), some images may be printed small or with some portions cropped. In that case, select Auto to resize the print in proportion to the paper size.

- **Paper Size**

  Select the size of paper for printing. Match the size to the size of the paper set in the machine.

  Note

  - Selectable paper sizes depend on the selected printer.

- **Media Type**

  Select the type of paper for printing. Print quality may be fixed depending on the paper type.

  Note

  - Selectable paper types depend on the selected printer.

- **Print Quality**

  Select the print quality.

- **Density**

  Click  (Density adjustment) to select the print density.

- **Copies**

  Click  (Copy setting) to select the number of copies to be printed.

- **Grayscale Printing**

  Select this checkbox to print the document in black and white.

- **Preview before printing**

  Select this checkbox to display the print result before printing.

- **Defaults**

  Restore the default settings.

- **Print**

  Start printing with the specified settings.

  Note

  - To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

- **Close**

  Close the Print Document dialog box.

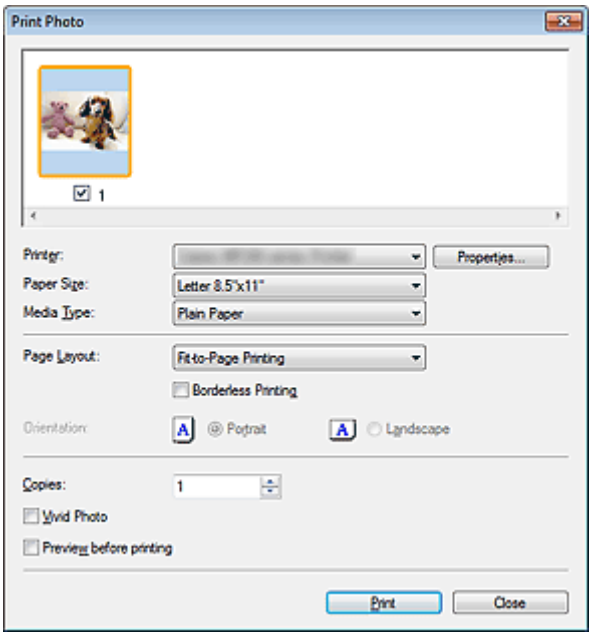
Page top

S729

MP Navigator EX

Print Photo Dialog Box

Click Print in the View & Use window, then click Print Photo on the list to open the Print Photo dialog box.



Important

- The Print Photo dialog box will not open if Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed. Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts instead.
- PDF files cannot be printed.

Note

- Double-click an image to display it in a different window.

- **Printer**

  Select the printer to use.
- **Properties...**

  Displays the selected printer's advanced setting screen.
- **Paper Size**

  Select the size of paper for printing. Match the size to the size of the paper set in the machine.
- **Media Type**

  Select the type of paper for printing. Print quality may be fixed depending on the paper type.
- **Page Layout**

  Select a print type.

  - **Normal-size Printing**

    Print one image per sheet.
  - **Fit-to-Page Printing**

    Print an image at the paper size (enlarged or reduced).
- **Borderless Printing**

Select this checkbox to print the image on an entire sheet of paper without borders.

Important

- Page Layout setting will be disabled when you select Borderless Printing.
- This setting is only available with printers that support borderless printing.

- **Orientation**

  Specify the print orientation.

  Important

  - This setting is available only when Page Layout is Normal-size Printing. For others, the image is automatically rotated according to the aspect ratio of the paper.

- **Copies**

  Specify the number of copies to print.

- **Vivid Photo**

  Select this checkbox to print the image in vivid colors.

- **Preview before printing**

  Select this checkbox to display the print result before printing.

- **Print**

  Starts printing.

  Note

  - Only the images in the Thumbnail window with the checkbox selected are printed.

- **Close**

  Closes the dialog box without printing the photo.

Page top

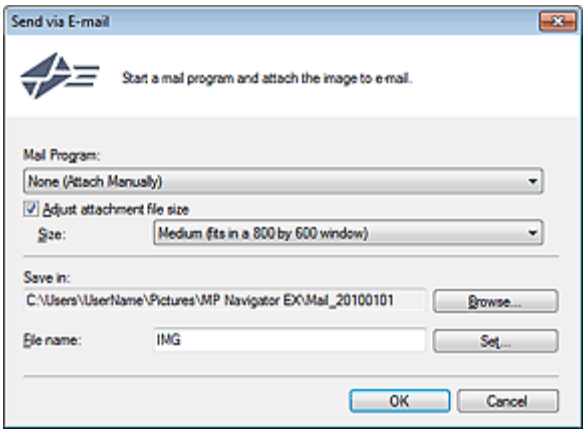
S719

MP Navigator EX

Send via E-mail Dialog Box

Click Send in the View & Use window, then click Attach to E-mail on the list to open the Send via E-mail dialog box.

In the Send via E-mail dialog box, you can make advanced settings for attaching images to e-mail.



Important

- MP Navigator EX is compatible with the following e-mail software programs:
  - Microsoft Outlook
  - Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
  - Outlook Express (Windows XP)

  (If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled. To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.)

Note

- Only PDF and JPEG files can be attached to e-mail.

- **Mail Program**

  The e-mail software program set up on the General tab of the Preferences dialog box is displayed. Select the e-mail software program you want to use.

- **Adjust attachment file size**

  When the file type is JPEG, selecting this checkbox allows you to resize the images. Select a size from Size.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one. If resized, the resized images are saved.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be attached (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Set...**

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files.
  Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Page top

S712

MP Navigator EX

Correct/Enhance Images Window

Click (Image Correction/Enhancement) in the View & Use window or click Fix photo images in Image Handling Buttons to open the Correct/Enhance Images window.

In the Correct/Enhance Images window, you can make advanced settings including image correction/enhancement and brightness/contrast adjustment.

You can also display the source image and corrected image side by side for comparison.



(1) Task Area

(2) Toolbar

Important

- Image correction/enhancement cannot be applied to PDF files or black and white binary files.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/Enhancement) in the Zoom in dialog box.
- It may take a while to correct large images.
- See "View & Use Window " for details on the View & Use window.

Task Area

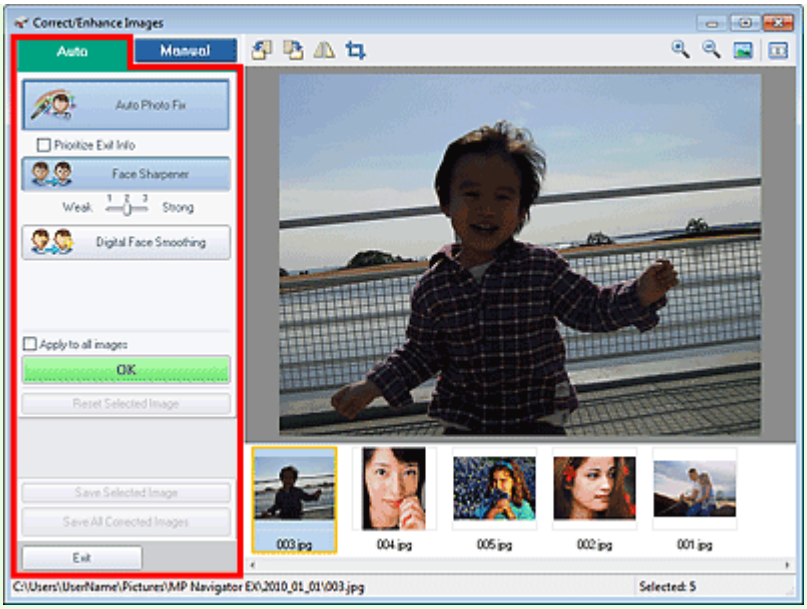
Available tasks and settings vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click the Auto or Manual tab to open the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Use the functions in the Auto tab to apply corrections and enhancements to the entire image.

See "Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically " for details.



- **Auto Photo Fix**

  Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.

  - **Prioritize Exif Info**

    Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
    Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

    Note

    - "Exif" is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).

- **Face Sharpener**

  Sharpens out-of-focus faces.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Digital Face Smoothing**

  Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Apply to all images**

  Automatically corrects/enhances all images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **OK**

  Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

- **Reset Selected Image**

  Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

  Saves the corrected/enhanced image (the selected one).

- **Save All Corrected Images**

  Saves all the corrected/enhanced images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

  Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Manual Tab

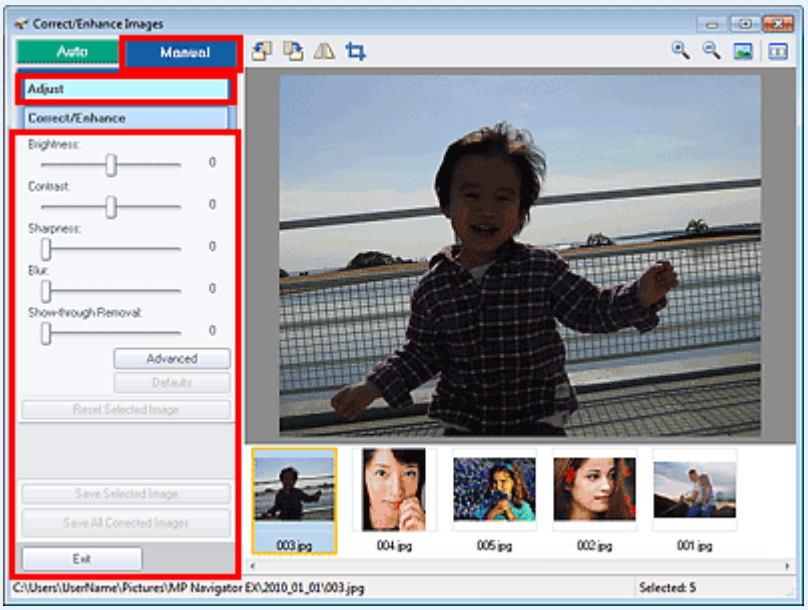
There are two menus on the Manual tab: Adjust and Correct/Enhance.

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

See "Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually " for details.

Adjustment



- **Brightness**

  Adjusts the overall image brightness.
  Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

- **Contrast**

  Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.
  Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

- **Sharpness**

  Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.
  Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

- **Blur**

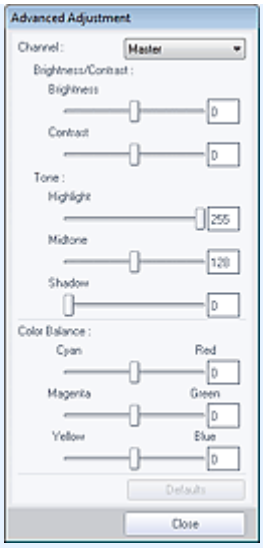
  Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.
  Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

- **Show-through Removal**

  Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.
  Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

- **Advanced**

  Opens the Advanced Adjustment dialog box in which you can make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone.
  For Brightness/Contrast and Tone, select a color in Channel to adjust either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to adjust three colors together.



- **Brightness/Contrast**

  Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image.
  Move the Brightness slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.
  Move the Contrast slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

- **Tone**

  Adjust the brightness balance by specifying Highlight (the brightest level), Shadow (the darkest level) and Midtone (the color in the middle of Highlight and Shadow).
  Move the Highlight slider to the left to brighten the image.
  Move the Midtone slider to the left to brighten and right to darken the image.
  Move the Shadow slider to the right to darken the image.

- **Color Balance**

  Adjust the vividness and color tone of the image.
  Move the Color Balance slider to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

  Note

  - These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.
  - It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

- **Defaults**

  Resets all adjustments.

- **Close**

  Closes the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.

Note

- The Brightness and Contrast values set in Adjust do not change even if the brightness and color tone are adjusted in the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.

- **Defaults**

  Resets all settings (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

- **Reset Selected Image**

  Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

  Saves the corrected/enhanced/adjusted image (the selected one).

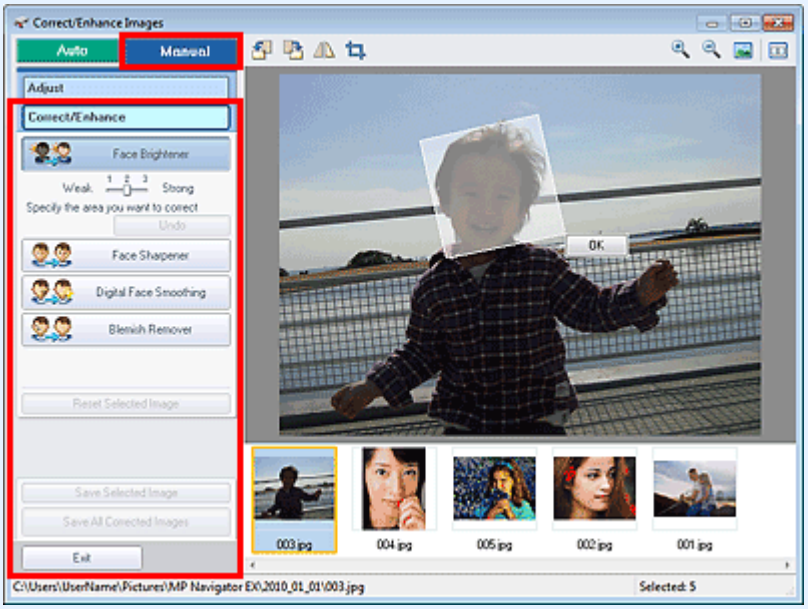
- **Save All Corrected Images**

  Saves all the corrected/enhanced/adjusted images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

  Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correction/Enhancement



- **Face Brightener**

  Corrects the entire image to brighten the facial area in and around the selected area.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.
- **Face Sharpener**

  Corrects the entire image to sharpen the facial area in and around the selected area.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.
- **Digital Face Smoothing**

  Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles in the selected area.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.
- **Blemish Remover**

  Removes moles in the selected area.
- **OK**

  Applies the selected effect to the specified area.
- **Undo**

  Cancels the latest correction/enhancement.
- **Reset Selected Image**

  Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.
- **Save Selected Image**

  Saves the corrected/enhanced image (the selected one).
- **Save All Corrected Images**

  Saves all the corrected/enhanced images displayed in the thumbnail list.
- **Exit**

  Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**
  -  **(Rotate Left)**

    Rotates the image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- **(Rotate Right)**

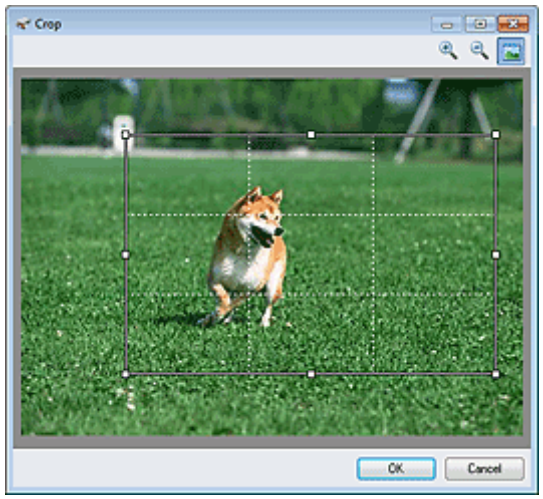
  Rotates the image 90 degrees clockwise.

- **(Invert)**

  Inverts the image horizontally.

- **(Trimming)**

  Trimming is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. In the displayed window, drag the white frame to specify the trimming area. Move the cursor inside the white frame and drag to move the trimming area.



Note

- Place the main subjects along the broken white lines or at the intersections to create a balanced image.

- **(Enlarge)**

  Enlarges the displayed image.

- **(Reduce)**

  Reduces the displayed image.

- **(Full-screen)**

  Displays the entire image in Preview.

- **(Compare)**

  Opens a window in which you can compare the images before and after the correction/ enhancement side by side.
  The source image appears on the left and the corrected image appears on the right.



Page top

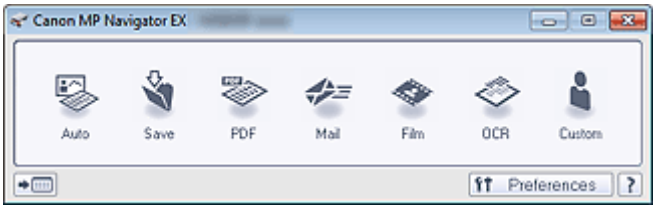
S701

MP Navigator EX

One-click Mode Screen

Click  (Switch Mode) at the bottom left of the Navigation Mode screen to display the One-click Mode screen.

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Auto**

  Scan documents by automatically detecting the document type. File format is automatically set. Files are saved to a computer.
  When you click this icon, the Auto Scan dialog box opens and you can specify the save settings.
  Auto Scan Dialog Box

- **Save**

  Scan documents or photos and save them to a computer. The document type can be detected automatically.
  When you click this icon, the Save dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

- **PDF**

  Scan documents and save them as PDF files.
  When you click this icon, the PDF dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  PDF Dialog Box

- **Mail**

  Scan documents or photos and attach them to e-mail.
  When you click this icon, the Mail dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and e-mail software program settings.
  Mail Dialog Box

- **Film**

  Scan film and save to a computer.
  When you click this icon, the Film dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  Film Dialog Box

- **OCR**

  Scan text documents then extract text in the image and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).
  When you click this icon, the OCR dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  OCR Dialog Box

- **Custom**

  Scan documents/photos and open them in a specified application. The document type can be automatically detected.
  When you click this icon, the Custom dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  Custom Dialog Box

-  **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to Navigation Mode. The Navigation Mode screen appears.

Custom Scan with One-click Tab

- **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

  Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Important

- The following restrictions apply when you scan with Document Type set to Auto Mode in the Save dialog box or Custom dialog box.
  When you want to convert text in the scanned image to text data, specify Document Type (do not select Auto Mode).

Related Topic

Easy Scanning with One-click

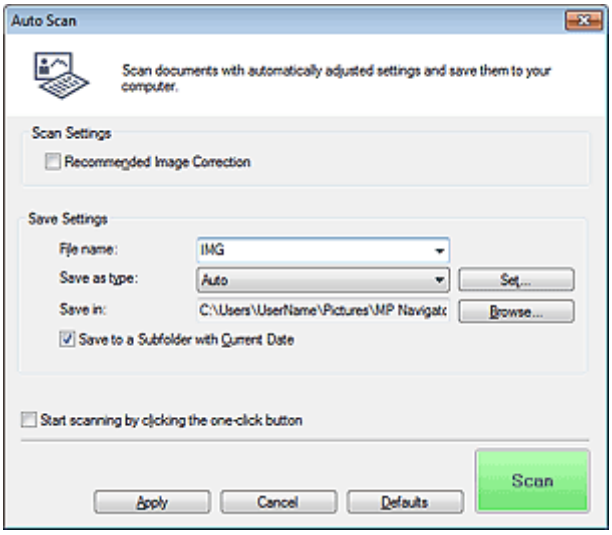
Page top

S742

MP Navigator EX

Auto Scan Dialog Box

Click Auto Scan on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Auto in the One-click Mode screen to open the Auto Scan dialog box.



- **Supported Documents**

  Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. In that case, click another icon in the One-click Mode screen or on the Custom Scan with One-click tab and specify the document type or size.
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- To scan black and white film, scan from the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).
  Scanning Film in Advanced Mode
- Film may not be scanned correctly. In that case, select the type of film in the Film dialog box and scan again.
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

Note

- To reduce moire, click another icon in the One-click Mode screen or on the Custom Scan with One-click tab and set Document Type to Magazine.

Scan Settings

- **Recommended Image Correction**

  Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Save Settings

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF, BMP or PDF.

Important

- When Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.
- You cannot set passwords for PDF files.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
  Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD, business cards and film: JPEG
  Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
  You can change the file format from Set....

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

Important

- You cannot select a compression type for JPEG files when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Important

- This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

When Save as type is PDF

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

  Important

  - Start scanning by clicking the one-click button is not displayed when the dialog box is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.
  When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

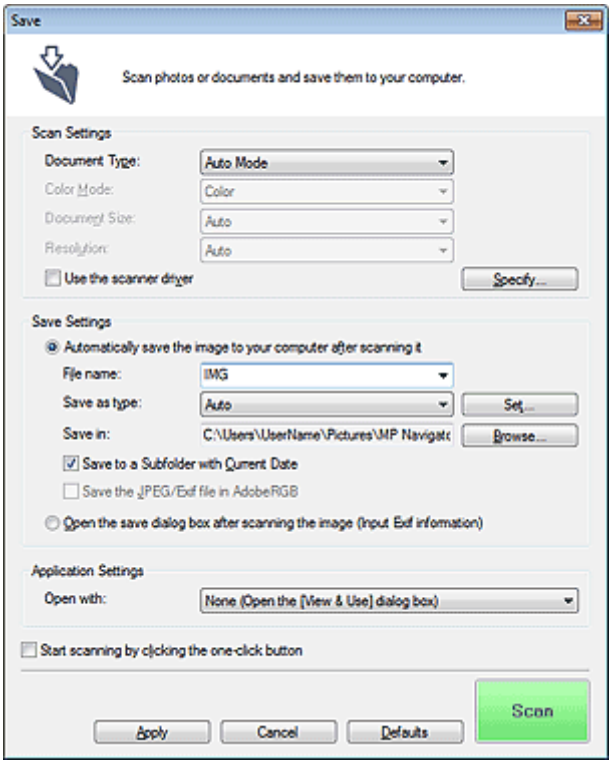
Page top

S721

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Click Save to PC on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Save in the One-click Mode screen to open the Save dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected. In that case, Color Mode, Document Size and Resolution are automatically set as well.

Important

- Document types supported by Auto Mode are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film.
- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Mode. In that case, specify the document type or size.
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Film may not be scanned correctly when Auto Mode is selected. In that case, select the type of film in the Film dialog box and scan again.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

Note

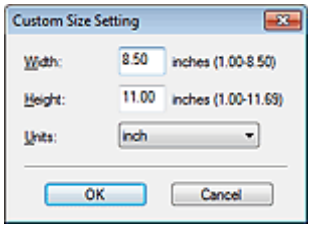
- To reduce moire, set Document Type to Magazine.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Save dialog box will be disabled.
  Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

Important

- If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode. When saving as PDF files, select PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

Important

- When Document Type is Auto Mode and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.
- Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
  Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD, business cards and film: JPEG
  Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
  You can change the file format from Set....
  Images saved as PDF files may not open depending on the application. In that case, select an option other than Auto in Save as type.
- If you select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is not Auto Mode, the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

Important

- You cannot select a compression type for JPEG files when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Important

- This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

When Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page)

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

  Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.

Important

- This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif and Document Type is not Auto Mode.
- This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.

Note

- You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
- When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

  Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.
  Save Dialog Box

Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information). After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save dialog box.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  You can select whether to open the View & Use window or Explorer after saving the images.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.
  When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

Page top

S734

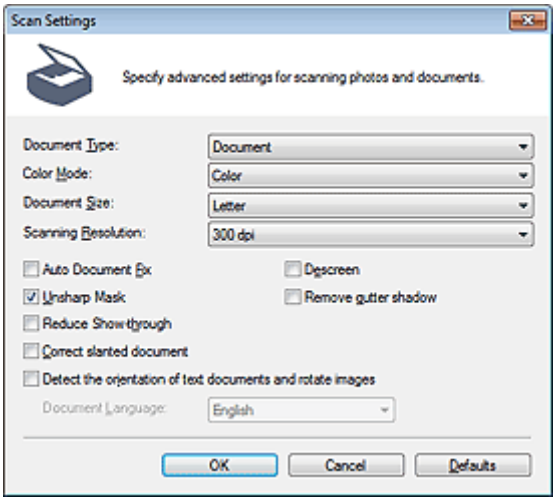
MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

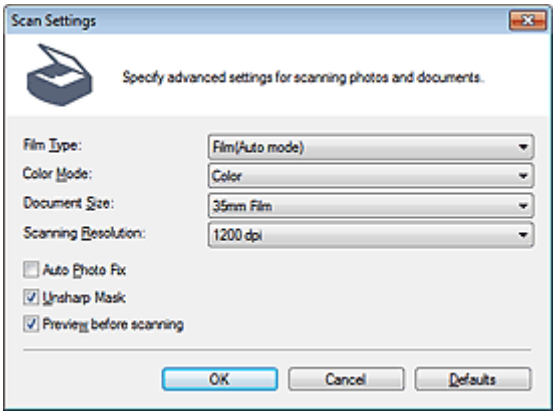
The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in a dialog box of the One-click Mode screen.

In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.

For Photos/Documents (Platen)



For Film



Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected.
  In that case, Color Mode, Document Size, etc. are automatically set as well. When Film(Auto mode) is selected, the film type (negative or positive) is automatically detected.

Important

- Film may not be scanned correctly when Auto Mode or Film(Auto mode) is selected. In that case,

select the type of film and scan again.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

  - **Color**

    This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

  - **Grayscale**

    This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

    Important

    - Grayscale cannot be selected when Film(Auto mode) is selected for Document Type.

  - **Black and White**

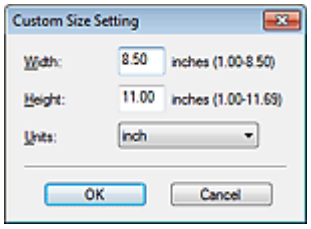
    This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level) into black and white and is rendered in two colors.

    Important

    - You cannot select Black and White if Document Type is film.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned. When Document Type is film, 35mm Film is set. When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Scanning Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents. The following scanning resolutions can be specified:
  When Document Type is other than film: 75 dpi / 100 dpi / 150 dpi / 200 dpi / 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi
  When Document Type is film: 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi / 1200 dpi / 2400 dpi / 4800 dpi
  Resolution

- **Recommended Image Correction / Auto Photo Fix / Auto Document Fix**

  The displayed item varies by Document Type.

  - **Recommended Image Correction**

    This is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode. Select this checkbox to apply auto photo fix or auto document fix based on the document type.

  - **Auto Photo Fix**

    This is displayed when Document Type is Photo or film. Select this checkbox to automatically analyze the captured scene (landscape, night scene, etc.) and apply suitable corrections.

  - **Auto Document Fix**

    This is displayed when Document Type is Magazine or Document. Select this checkbox to

sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- These functions are not available when the Scan Settings dialog box is opened from the OCR dialog box.
- Auto Photo Fix is not available when Color Mode is Grayscale or Black and White.
- Auto Document Fix is not available when Color Mode is Black and White.
- Auto Photo Fix and Auto Document Fix are not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Descreen**

  Select this checkbox to reduce moire patterns.
  Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Descreen.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

- **Remove gutter shadow**

  Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Auto Detect, Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Stitch Assist is selected for Document Size.
- When scanning, align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set.
  See "Gutter Shadow Correction " for details.

- **Reduce Show-through**

  Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

Note

- Select this checkbox when Document Type is text document and show-through is apparent in the scanned image.

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
  - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
  - Documents with small amount of text
  - Documents containing figures/images
  - Hand-written documents

- Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

  Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
  - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with patterned backgrounds

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.

- **Preview before scanning**

  Select this checkbox to display preview images.

- **Defaults**

  Restore the default settings.

Page top

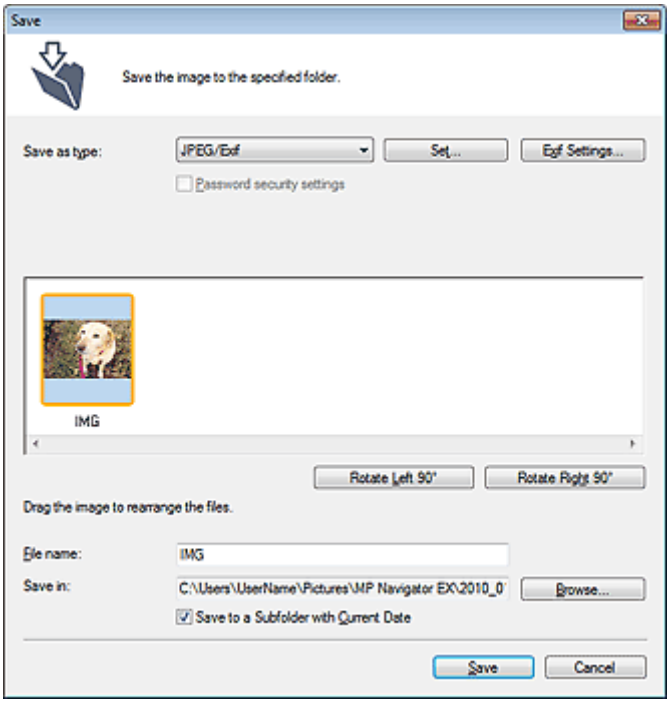
S731

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box

The Save dialog box opens when you scan from the Save dialog box or Custom dialog box of the One-click Mode screen after selecting Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information).

You can specify the file type and destination while viewing the thumbnails.



- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF, BMP, PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

  - **PDF**

    Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

  - **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

    Save multiple images in one PDF file.

    Note

    - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are scanned.

  - **PDF(Add Page)**

    Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

    Important

    - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
    - If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.

Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Important

- PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) and PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected for images scanned from the Custom dialog box or Film dialog box.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  Important

  - This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

  When Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page)

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

- **Exif Settings...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif, you can input Exif information into the file to be saved.
  Exif Settings Dialog Box

- **Password security settings**

  Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

  Note

  - This function is available only when Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

- **Add to**

  This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

  Important

  - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Rotate Left 90° / Rotate Right 90°**

  Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.
  Select the image you want to rotate and click Rotate Left 90° or Rotate Right 90°.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Page top

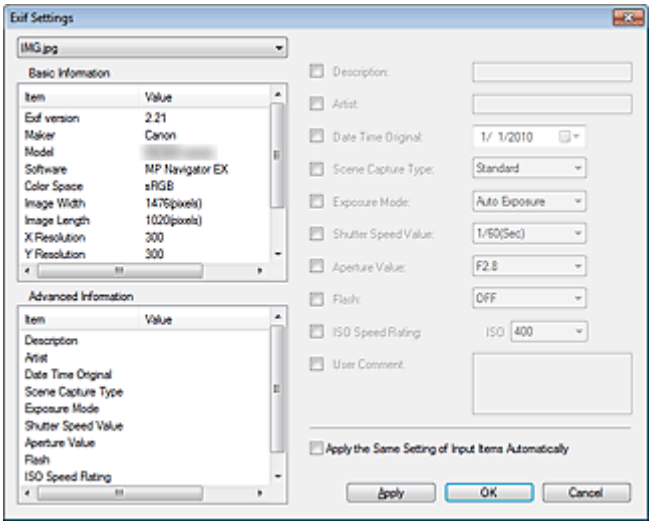
S732

MP Navigator EX

Exif Settings Dialog Box

You can input Exif information into a file to be saved. "Exif" is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG). Embedding Exif information into scanned images allows you to organize and print them along with digital camera images.

The Exif Settings dialog box can be opened when Save as type is JPEG/Exif.



- **Basic Information**

  Displays the information obtained automatically from the machine or software.
- **Advanced Information**

  Displays the information specified on the right side of the screen.
- **Advanced Information Settings Area**

  You can input Exif information such as the title and shooting data. Select the checkbox of the items you want to specify, and select or enter information.
- **Apply the Same Setting of Input Items Automatically**

  Select this checkbox to automatically display the information you specified for the previous image.
- **Apply**

  After specifying all the information you need, click Apply to embed it into the image. The information appears in Advanced Information.
- **OK**

  Embeds the specified information into the image and closes the screen. The specified information is saved.
- **Cancel**

  Cancels the settings and closes the screen.
  Information is embedded when Cancel is clicked after clicking Apply.

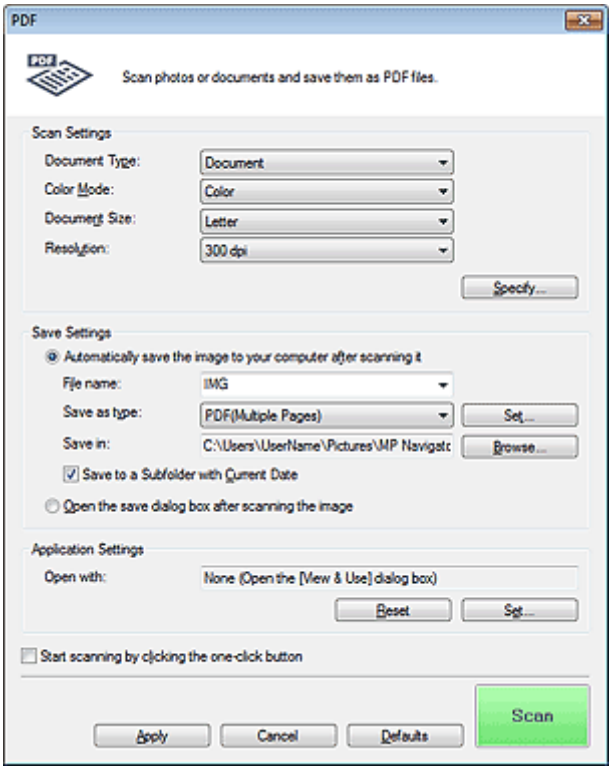
Page top

S725

MP Navigator EX

PDF Dialog Box

Click Save as PDF file on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click PDF in the One-click Mode screen to open the PDF dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

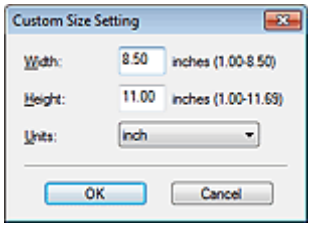
  Select the type of document to be scanned.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In

that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

  Important

  - If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

  - **PDF**

    Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

  - **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

    Save multiple images in one PDF file.

  - **PDF(Add Page)**

    Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

    Important

    - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
    - Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.

  Note

  - See "Creating/Editing PDF Files " to delete or rearrange the pages of saved PDF files.

- **Set...**

  You can specify the PDF compression type and other advanced settings for creating PDF files.
  PDF Settings Dialog Box

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Add to**

  This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image**

  Select this to open the Save as PDF file dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder and file name.
  Save as PDF file Dialog Box

Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image. After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  Specify an application with which to open scanned images. Drag and drop the icon of an application that supports the file format displayed in Save as type. The specified application starts after images are scanned.

Important

- Depending on the specified application, the images may not appear correctly or the application may not start.

- **Reset**

  Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

  Allows you to select an application to start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans and saves documents as PDF files with the specified settings.

Page top

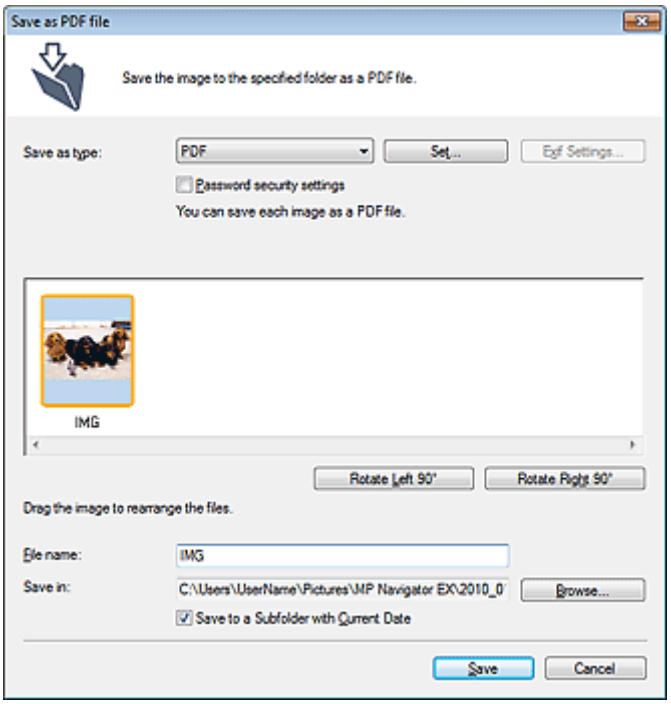
S730

MP Navigator EX

Save as PDF file Dialog Box

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens when you scan from the PDF dialog box of the One-click Mode screen after selecting Open the save dialog box after scanning the image.

In the Save as PDF file dialog box, you can make settings for saving images to a computer.



Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.

- **Save as type**

  Select a PDF file type to save the scanned images.

  - **PDF**

    Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

  - **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

    Save multiple images in one PDF file.

    ## Note

    - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are scanned.

  - **PDF(Add Page)**

    Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

    ## Important

    - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected for images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Set...**

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

- **Password security settings**

  Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Add to**

  This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Rotate Left 90° / Rotate Right 90°**

  Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.
  Select the image you want to rotate and click Rotate Left 90° or Rotate Right 90°.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

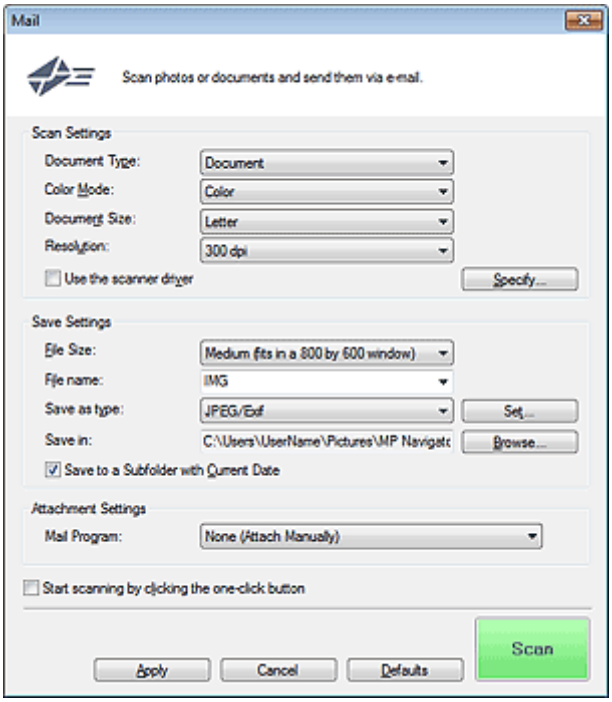
Page top

S722

MP Navigator EX

Mail Dialog Box

Click Attach to E-mail on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Mail in the One-click Mode screen to open the Mail dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

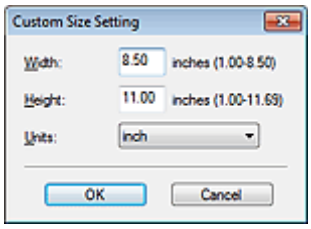
  Select the type of document to be scanned.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Mail dialog box will be disabled.
  Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

- **File Size**

  Select a size from Small (fits in a 640 by 480 window), Medium (fits in a 800 by 600 window), Large (fits in a 1024 by 768 window) and Original.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, PDF or PDF(Multiple Pages).

  Important

  - You cannot set passwords for PDF files.
  - You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

  ### When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  Important

  - This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

  ### When Save as type is PDF or PDF(Multiple Pages)

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

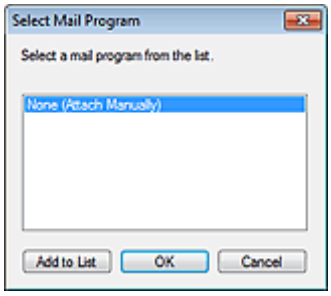
Attachment Settings

- **Mail Program**

  Specify an e-mail software program.

  Note

  - Select Add... to open the Select Mail Program dialog box in which you can select an e-mail software program. If the e-mail software program you want to use is not listed, click Add to List and select it.



- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

  Important

  - Start scanning by clicking the one-click button is not displayed when the dialog box is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans documents with the specified settings.
  When scanning is completed, attachment files are created and saved. If using an MP Navigator EX compatible e-mail software program, it starts automatically and a new message screen appears with the image attached.

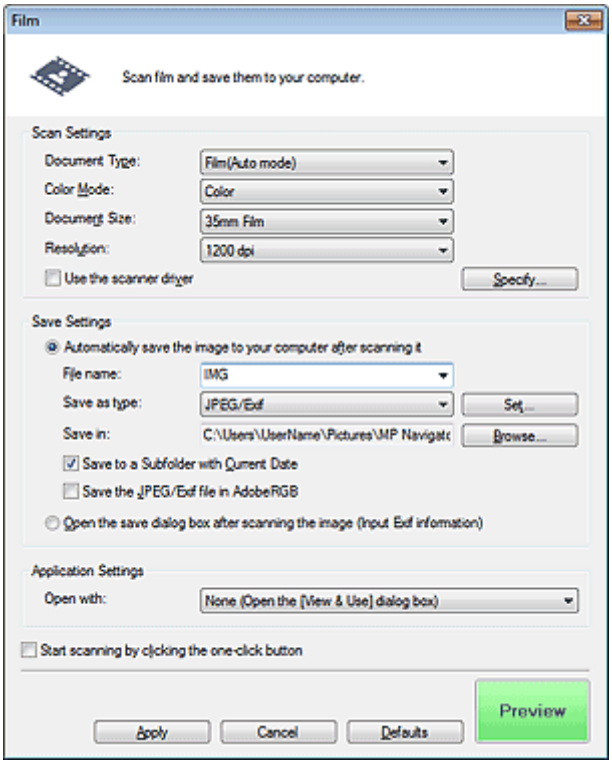
Page top

S723

MP Navigator EX

Film Dialog Box

Click Scan film & save on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Film in the One-click Mode screen to open the Film dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of film to be scanned. When Film(Auto mode) is selected, the film type (negative or positive) is automatically detected.

  Important

  - Film may not be scanned correctly when Film(Auto mode) is selected. In that case, select the type of film and scan again.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the film.

  Important

  - Grayscale cannot be selected when Film(Auto mode) is selected for Document Type.

- **Document Size**

  35mm Film is set.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan film.

  Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Film dialog box will be disabled.
  Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.

  Note

  - If you select JPEG/Exif, the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

  ### When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  Important

  - This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

  Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.

  Important

  - This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif.
  - This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.

  Note

  - You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
  - When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an

underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

  Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.
  Save Dialog Box

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  You can select whether to open the View & Use window or Explorer after saving the images.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Preview** / **Scan**

  Displays the thumbnails of the photos on the film.
  Click Scan in the displayed screen to scan and save film with the specified settings.
  When you select the Use the scanner driver checkbox, this button changes to Scan.

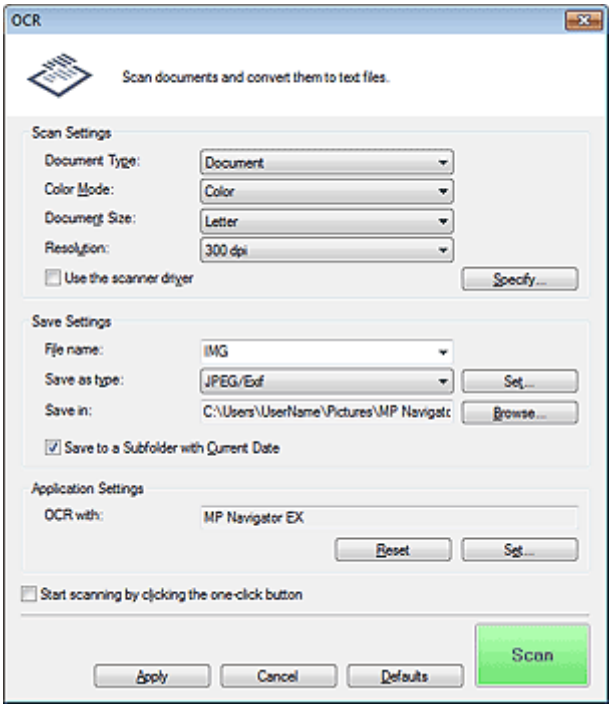
Page top

S724

MP Navigator EX

OCR Dialog Box

Click OCR on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or in the One-click Mode screen to open the OCR dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

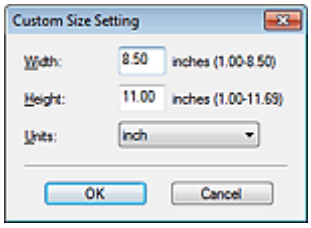
  Select the type of document to be scanned.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the OCR dialog box will be disabled.
Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Note

- When scanning slanted documents, select the Correct slanted document checkbox to improve the text recognition accuracy.

Save Settings

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.

Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

  ### When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Important

- This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Application Settings

- **OCR with**

  Specify an OCR application.
  When MP Navigator EX is specified, after the image is scanned, the text in the image is extracted and appears in Notepad (included with Windows).

Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected on the General tab can be extracted to Notepad (included with Windows). Click Set... on the General tab and specify the language

according to the language of the document to be scanned.
When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
General Tab

- Text displayed in Notepad (included with Windows) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
  - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
  - Slanted documents
  - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with narrow line spacing
  - Documents with colors in the background of text
  - Documents containing multiple languages
- For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.

- **Reset**

  Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

  Allows you to select an application.

  Important

  - Depending on the specified application, the text may not be extracted correctly or the application may not start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

  Important

  - Start scanning by clicking the one-click button is not displayed when the dialog box is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans documents with the specified settings.

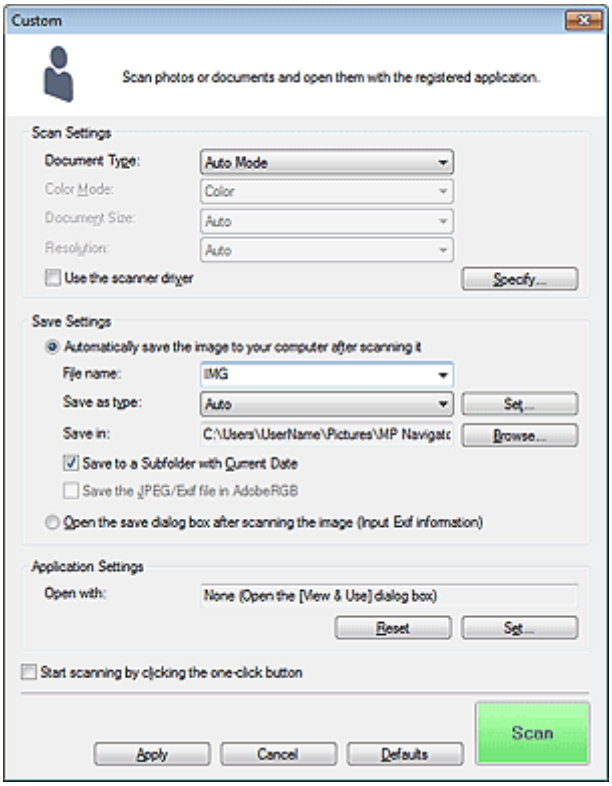
Page top

S726

MP Navigator EX

Custom Dialog Box

Click Custom on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or in the One-click Mode screen to open the Custom dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected. In that case, Color Mode, Document Size and Resolution are automatically set as well. When Film(Auto mode) is selected, the film type (negative or positive) is automatically detected.

Important

- Document types supported by Auto Mode are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film.
- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Mode. In that case, specify the document type or size.
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Film may not be scanned correctly when Auto Mode or Film(Auto mode) is selected. In that case, select the type of film and scan again.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise,

documents may not be scanned correctly.
See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

Note

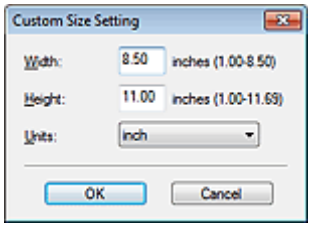
- To reduce moire, set Document Type to Magazine.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents. The following scanning resolutions can be specified:
  When Document Type is other than film: 75 dpi / 100 dpi / 150 dpi / 200 dpi / 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi
  When Document Type is film: 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi / 1200 dpi / 2400 dpi / 4800 dpi
  Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Custom dialog box will be disabled. Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode.

Important

- When Document Type is Auto Mode and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ

depending on how you place the document.
See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
  Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD, business cards and film: JPEG
  Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
  You can change the file format from Set....
  Images saved as PDF files may not open depending on the application. In that case, select an option other than Auto in Save as type.
- You cannot set passwords for PDF files.
- If you select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is not Auto Mode, the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

Important

- You cannot select a compression type for JPEG files when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Important

- This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

  Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.

Important

- This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif and Document Type is not Auto Mode.
- This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.

Note

- You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
- When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

  Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.
  Save Dialog Box

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  Specify an application with which to open scanned images. Drag and drop the icon of an application that supports the file format displayed in Save as type. The specified application starts after images are scanned.

  Important

  - Depending on the specified application, the images may not appear correctly or the application may not start.

  Note

  - For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.

- **Reset**

  Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

  Allows you to select an application to start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan** / **Preview**

  Scans and saves documents with the specified settings. When film is selected for Document Type, this button changes to Preview, and clicking it displays the thumbnails of the photos on the film. In the displayed dialog box, select the checkboxes of the images you want to scan, then click Scan. Starts scanning.
  When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

Page top

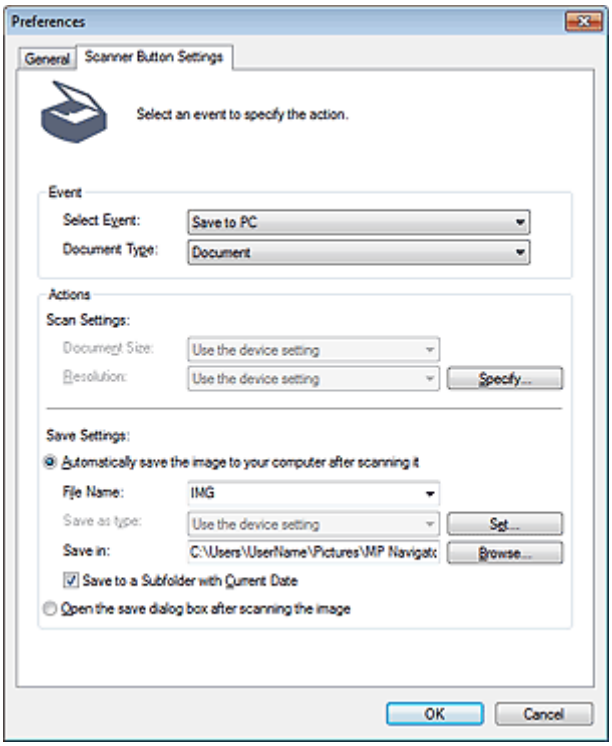
S705

MP Navigator EX

Preferences Dialog Box

Click Preferences to open the Preferences dialog box.

In the Preferences dialog box, you can specify general MP Navigator EX settings and how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel, via the General and Scanner Button Settings tabs.



Note

- See the corresponding sections below for details on each tab.
  - General Tab
  - Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)
  - Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail)

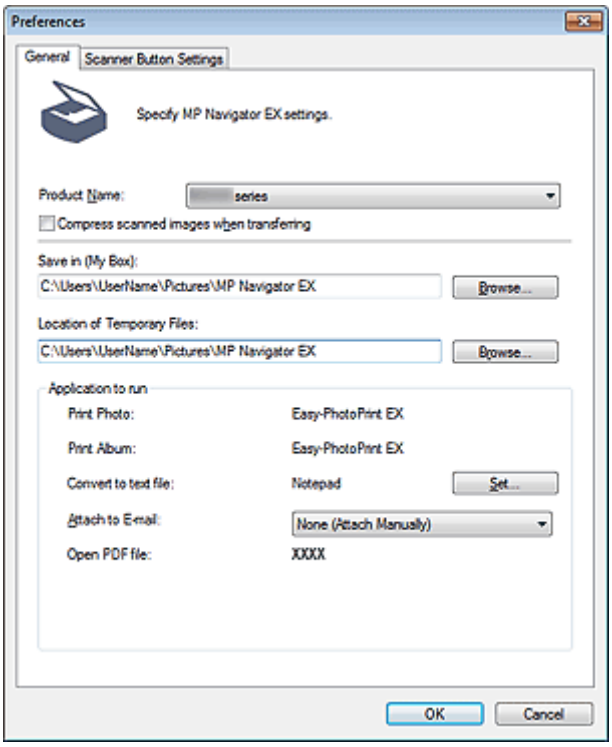
Page top

S740

MP Navigator EX

General Tab

On the General tab, you can specify general MP Navigator EX settings.



- **Product Name**

  Displays the product name of the machine that MP Navigator EX is currently configured to use.
  If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.
  For network connection, select one with (Network: XXXXXXXXXXXX) after the product name. (Where XXXXXXXXXXXX is the MAC address.)
  Use network connection to share the machine among multiple computers.

Note

- To set up a network environment, see " Network Scan Settings ."

- **Compress scanned images when transferring**

  Compress and transfer images scanned using MP Navigator EX or the Operation Panel of the machine. This is useful when the machine is connected via a slow interface such as USB 1.1 or a network.

Important

- When Photo is selected for Document Type on the Scanner Button Settings tab, allow 0.39 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges of the Platen and the document. If not, some images may not be scanned at the correct positions and sizes.
- Business cards, panorama photos and bordered photos may not be cropped accurately when scanned. In that case, deselect the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox and scan again.
- The following restrictions apply when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected.
  - Text(OCR) cannot be selected for Document Type in the Scan/Import window.

- Black and White cannot be selected in the color mode settings for One-click Mode.
- Remove gutter shadow is not available.
- Auto Photo Fix and Auto Document Fix are not available.
- Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB for One-click Mode is not available.
- Available resolutions (other than film): 75 dpi / 150 dpi / 300 dpi / 600 dpi
- Maximum number of documents that can be scanned at one time: 4
- A compression type (image quality) cannot be selected when saving scanned images in JPEG.

- The following images are not compressed even when scanned with the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox selected.
  - Film scanned images
  - Images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine by automatically detecting the document type
  - Images scanned from the Scan/Import window by automatically detecting the document type
  - Images scanned in One-click Mode by automatically detecting the document type
  - Images scanned using ScanGear (scanner driver)

Note

- It is recommended that you scan at 300 dpi or higher resolution when scanning multiple photos using this function.
- When the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected, Unsharp Mask is always applied.

- **Save in (My Box)**

  Displays the folder in which to save scanned documents. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Location of Temporary Files**

  Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

Important

- An error may occur if you set the destination to the root directory of the drive on which the operating system is installed. Be sure to specify a folder.
- An error may occur if you set the destination to a network folder. Be sure to specify a local folder.

- **Application to run**

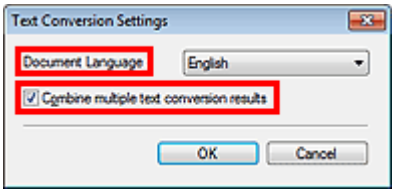
  Displays the applications that can be started via MP Navigator EX. Install the applications from the *Setup CD-ROM* that accompanies the machine.
  For Attach to E-mail, you can select an e-mail software program to start.
  For Open PDF file, the application associated with the file extension (.pdf) by the operating system is displayed.

Important

- You can change which items are installed during installation from the *Setup CD-ROM* by selecting Custom Install. If you choose not to install some applications with Custom Install, the corresponding MP Navigator EX functions will be unavailable. To use those functions, install the corresponding applications.

Note

- For Convert to text file, Notepad (included with Windows) is displayed. Click Set... to open a dialog box, then specify Document Language and how to scan multiple documents.



- Document Language
  Specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned. Only text written in languages that can be selected in the Document Language can be extracted to Notepad.
- Combine multiple text conversion results
  When scanning multiple documents, select the checkbox to collect the conversion results (text) into one file.
  When the checkbox is selected, you can scan up to 99 pages at one time.
  Deselect the checkbox to display each conversion result (text) in a separate file.
  When the checkbox is not selected, you can scan up to 10 pages at one time.

Page top

S707

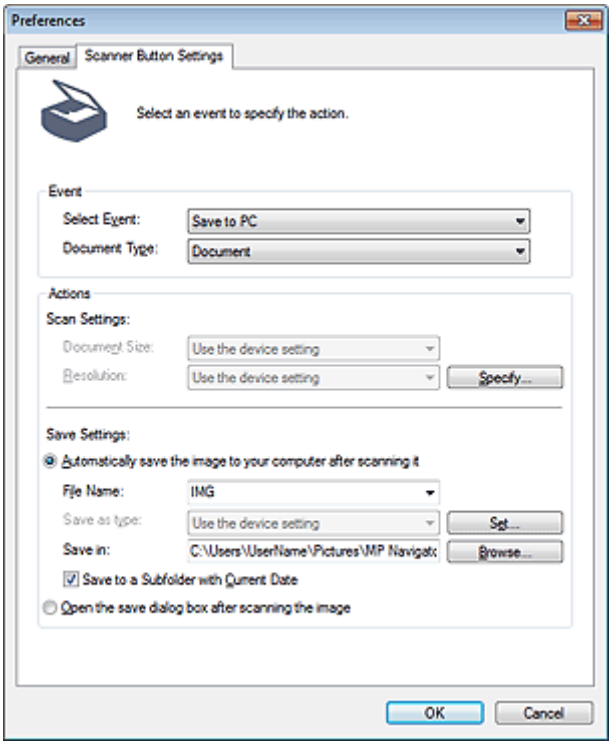
MP Navigator EX

Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)

On the Scanner Button Settings tab, you can specify how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

This section describes the settings available when Select Event is Save to PC.

See "Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine " for details on the items to be set using the Operation Panel of the machine.



Event

- **Select Event**

  Displays the scan modes that can be selected on the Operation Panel of the machine. Select Save to PC.

- **Document Type**

  Displays the document types that can be selected on the Operation Panel of the machine.

Actions

Scan Settings

- **Document Size**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Note

- Document Type will be displayed if Film is selected for Document Type in Event.

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of film to be scanned. When Film(Auto mode) is selected, the film type (negative or positive) is automatically detected.

  Note

  - To scan black and white film, select Negative Film or Positive Film and touch the Black button on the machine.

- **Resolution**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File Name and Save in settings will be displayed.

  Important

  - If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File Name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters).

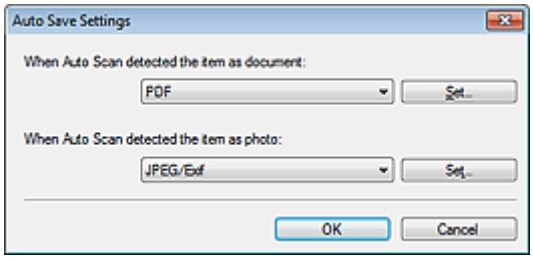
- **Save as type**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Set...**

  When Document Type is Auto Scan

  The Auto Save Settings dialog box opens and you can specify the file format in which to save images automatically and other advanced save settings. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

  - **When JPEG/Exif is Selected**

    Click Set... to specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

    Important

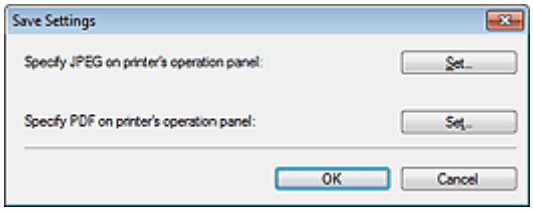
    - This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

  - **When PDF is Selected**

    Click Set... to make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

  When Document Type is Document, Photo or Film

  The Save Settings dialog box opens and you can make advanced settings for saving images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine as JPEG or PDF files.



- **Specify JPEG on printer's operation panel**

  Click Set... to specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  Important

  - This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Specify PDF on printer's operation panel**

  Click Set... to make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

  Important

  - Use the Operation Panel of the machine to set the compression type for saving.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image**

  Select this to open the save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.
  ➡ Save Dialog Box

  Note

  - To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image. After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.
    ➡ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Related Topic

▶ Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail)

Page top

S737

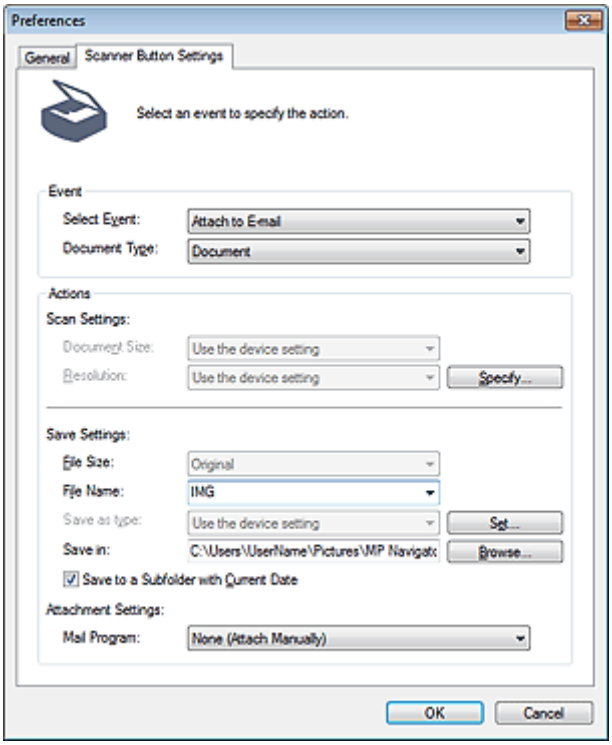
MP Navigator EX

Scanner Button Settings Tab (Attach to E-mail)

On the Scanner Button Settings tab, you can specify how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

This section describes the settings available when Select Event is Attach to E-mail.

See "Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine " for details on the items to be set using the Operation Panel of the machine.



Event

- **Select Event**

  Displays the scan modes that can be selected on the Operation Panel of the machine. Select Attach to E-mail.

- **Document Type**

  Displays the document types that can be selected on the Operation Panel of the machine.

Actions

Scan Settings

- **Document Size**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Note

- Document Type will be displayed if Film is selected for Document Type in Event.

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of film to be scanned. When Film(Auto mode) is selected, the film type (negative or positive) is automatically detected.

  Note

  - To scan black and white film, select Negative Film or Positive Film and touch the Black button on the machine.

- **Resolution**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Specify...**

  Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

Save Settings

- **File Size**

  Not available.

- **File Name**

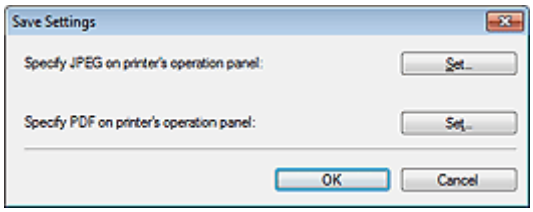
  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters).

- **Save as type**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Set...**

  The Save Settings dialog box opens and you can make advanced settings for saving images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine as JPEG or PDF files.

  - **Specify JPEG on printer's operation panel**

    Click Set... to specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

    Important

    - This setting is not available when the Compress scanned images when transferring checkbox is selected on the " General Tab " of the Preferences dialog box.

  - **Specify PDF on printer's operation panel**

    Click Set... to make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

    Important

    - Use the Operation Panel of the machine to set the compression type for saving.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Attachment Settings

- **Mail Program**

  Specify an e-mail software program.

Related Topic

▶ Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)

Page top

S743

MP Navigator EX

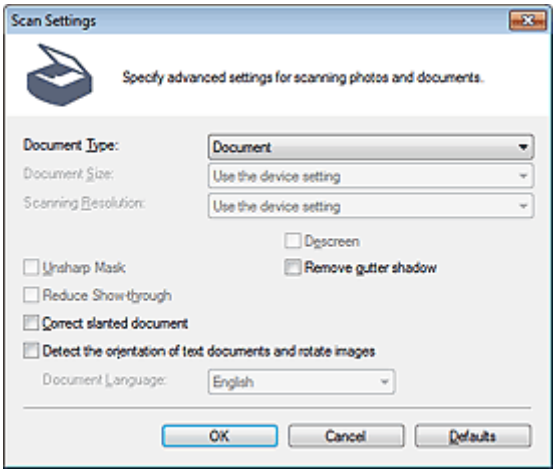
Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... on the Scanner Button Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

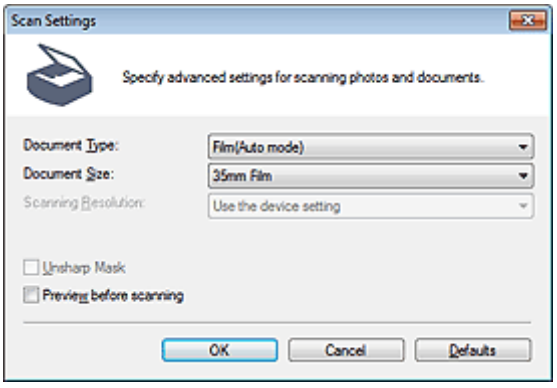
In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.

See "Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine " for details on the items to be set using the Operation Panel of the machine.

For Photos/Documents (Platen)



For Film



Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

- **Document Type**

  The Document Type specified in the Scanner Button Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box is displayed. When Auto Scan is selected, the document type is automatically detected.

Important

- Film may not be scanned correctly when Auto Scan or Film(Auto mode) is selected. In that case, select the type of film and scan again.

- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

- **Document Size**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.
  When Document Type is film, 35mm Film is set.

- **Scanning Resolution**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Recommended Image Correction**

  Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.
  This function is available when Document Type is Auto Scan.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- This is not available when scanning in black and white with Auto Scan selected on the Operation Panel of the machine.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Descreen**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Remove gutter shadow**

  Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- When scanning, align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set.
  See "Gutter Shadow Correction " for details.

- **Reduce Show-through**

  Set this item using the Operation Panel of the machine.

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
  - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
  - Documents with small amount of text
  - Documents containing figures/images
  - Hand-written documents
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

Important

- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
  - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with patterned backgrounds

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

- **Preview before scanning**

  Select this checkbox to display preview images.

- **Defaults**

  Restore the default settings.

Page top

S011

MP Navigator EX

Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images

You can save or print data other than scanned images using MP Navigator EX.

- **Using images saved on a memory card**
  - Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card
- **Using images saved on a computer**
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Page top

S506

MP Navigator EX

Importing Images Saved on a Memory Card

You can import images (including PDF files created via scanning using the Operation Panel) saved on a memory card, and save them to a computer or print them using MP Navigator EX. You can also attach them to e-mail, or edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.

When saving PDF files, you can select whether to enable keyword search, and also specify the compression type and other advanced settings.

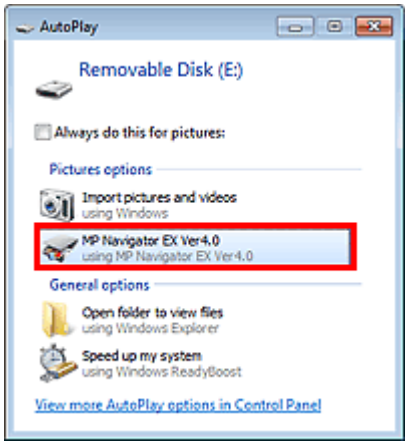
Important

- Do not remove or insert memory cards while they are being accessed or the Access Lamp of the machine is flashing.
- The machine can only detect one memory card at a time. Do not simultaneously insert multiple memory cards.
- When switching to another memory card of the same type or inserting another memory card in a different Card Slot, make sure that the Access Lamp of the machine is not flashing, then remove the memory card. Then, insert another memory card.
- The machine's Card Slot (memory card) may become inaccessible. In that case, restart the machine or turn it off and reconnect the USB cable.
- With network connection, check that the Card Slot is mapped as a network drive. See " Using the Card Slot over a Network " for details.
- On a network machine, memory cards will be inaccessible when you change the printer name in Set printer name using its Operation Panel.

1. Insert a memory card containing images/PDF files into the machine's Card Slot.

For details on how to insert a memory card into the machine, refer to the on-screen manual: *Basic Guide*.

2. Select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 in the program selection screen.

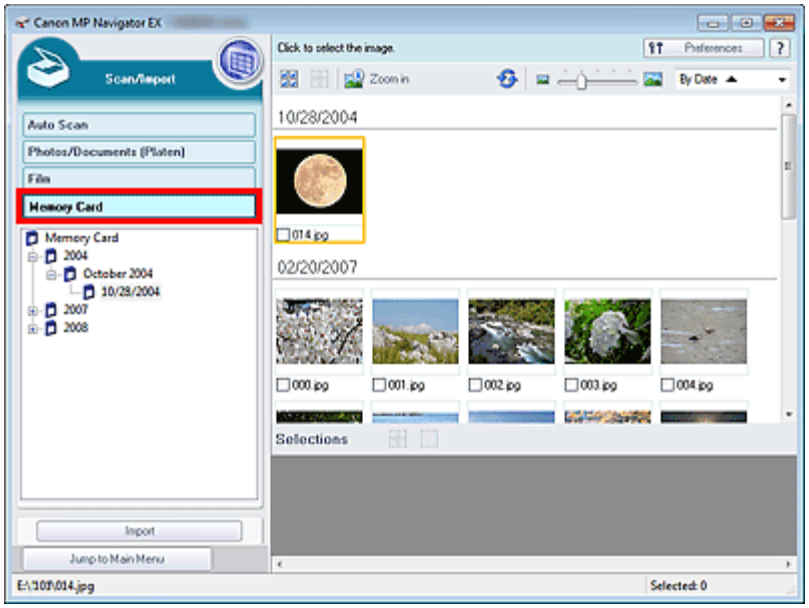


Note

- If you want to start MP Navigator EX every time a memory card is inserted into the machine, follow these steps.
  Windows 7/Windows Vista:
  Select the Always do this for pictures checkbox and click MP Navigator EX Ver4.0.
  Windows XP:
  Select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0, then select the Always do the selected action. checkbox and click OK.

- If a program selection screen does not appear after inserting a memory card into the machine's Card Slot, start MP Navigator EX from the Start menu, then select Memory Card on the Scan/Import tab of the Navigation Mode screen.
  ➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

The Memory Card screen of the Scan/Import window appears, and the images and PDF files saved on the memory card appear in the Thumbnail window.

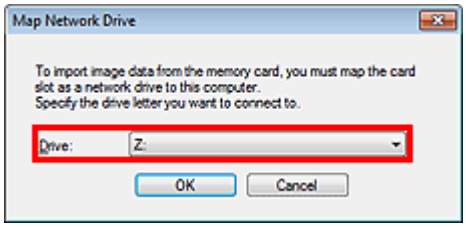


Important

- If you cannot import images from memory cards via a network connection, see " Using the Card Slot over a Network ."

Note

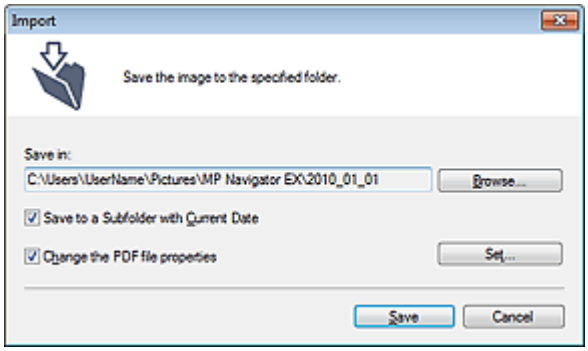
- With network connection, the Map Network Drive dialog box may open when a memory card is inserted into the machine for the first time. Specify a drive letter to map.



- See "Memory Card Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details on the Memory Card screen.

3. Select the checkboxes of the images and PDF files you want to import, then click Import.

The Import dialog box opens. Specify the folder in which to save the imported files.



- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the imported images and PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
  Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

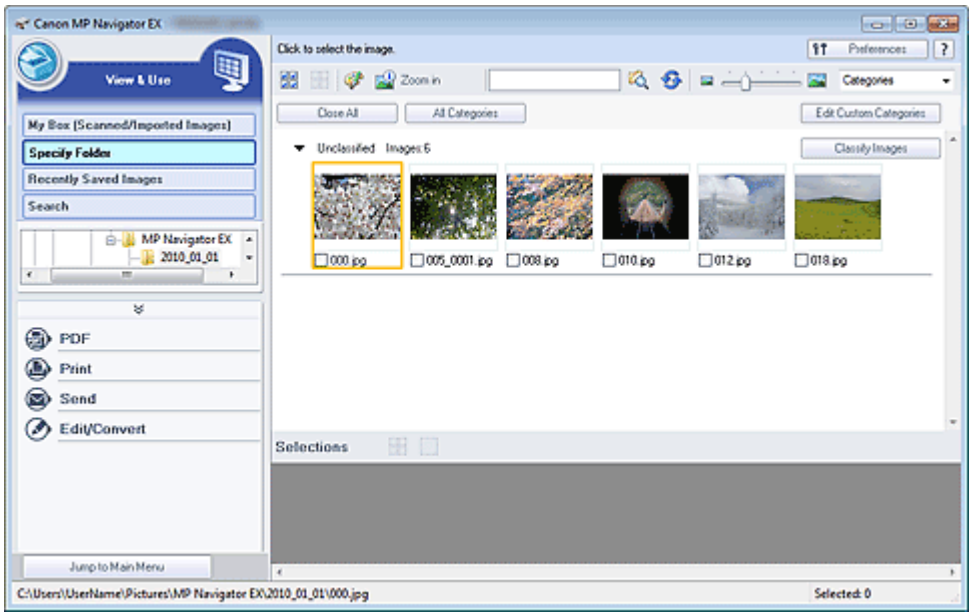
  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save imported files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Change the PDF file properties**

  This option is displayed when PDF files are selected in the Memory Card screen.
  Select this checkbox to change the PDF file settings. You can also change the settings of PDF files created via scanning using the Operation Panel. Click Set... to open a dialog box in which you can specify advanced settings. See " PDF Settings Dialog Box " for details.

4. Click Save.

The imported images and PDF files appear in the View & Use window.



See the corresponding sections below for details on using the imported images and PDF files.

- Creating/Editing PDF Files
- Printing Documents
- Printing Photos
- Sending via E-mail
- Editing Files

Page top

S507

MP Navigator EX

Opening Images Saved on a Computer

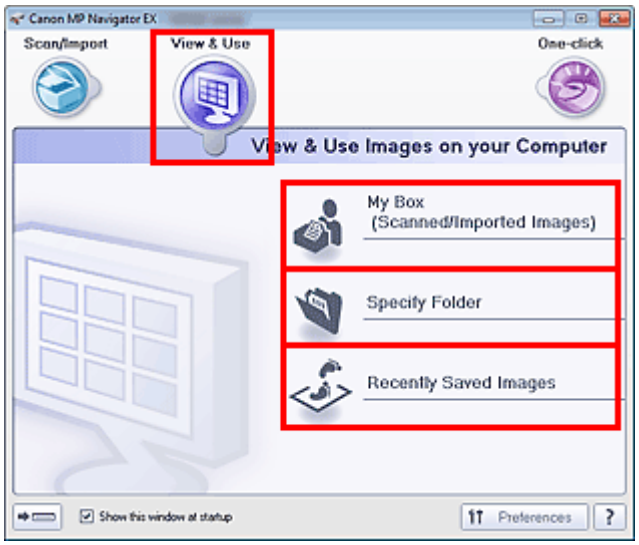
You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail using MP Navigator EX. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

Starting MP Navigator EX

2. In the Navigation Mode screen, select View & Use and click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Specify Folder or Recently Saved Images.

Click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) to open images saved in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), click Specify Folder to open images saved in a specific folder, or click Recently Saved Images to open recently saved images.

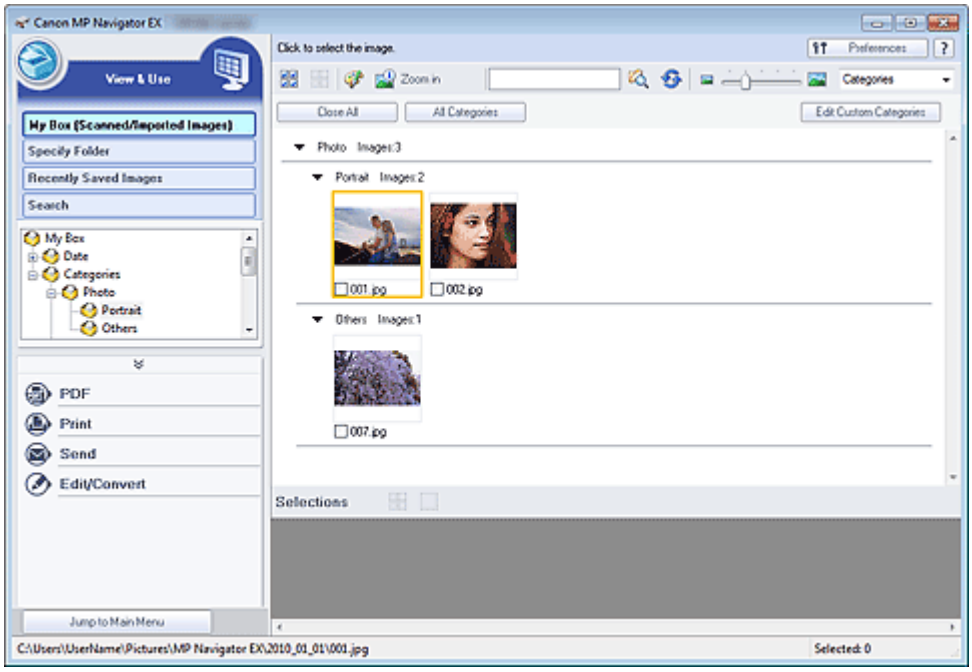


Note

- If the Show this window at startup checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears. If the Scan/Import window is displayed, click (View & Use) on the upper left of the screen. The View & Use window opens.
- See "View & Use Images on your Computer Tab " for details on the View & Use Images on your Computer tab.

3. Click the folder containing the images you want to open.

Images saved in the folder appear in the Thumbnail window.



4. Select the images you want to use, then select what you want to do with them.

See the corresponding sections below for details on using images.

- Creating/Editing PDF Files
- Printing Documents
- Printing Photos
- Sending via E-mail
- Editing Files

Page top

Scanning with Other Application Software

- What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?
- Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
- Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens
- Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning

Page top

S201

ScanGear

What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?

ScanGear (scanner driver) is software required for scanning documents and film. It enables you to specify the output size and make image corrections when scanning.

ScanGear can be started from MP Navigator EX or from other applications that are compatible with a standard interface called TWAIN. (ScanGear is a TWAIN-compatible driver.)

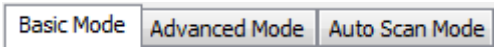
What You Can Do with This Software

This software enables you to preview scan results or set document type and output size, etc. when scanning documents and film. It is useful when you want to scan in a specific color tone, as it allows you to make various corrections and adjust brightness, contrast, etc.

Screens

There are three modes: Basic Mode, Advanced Mode and Auto Scan Mode.

Switch modes by clicking a tab on the upper right of the screen.

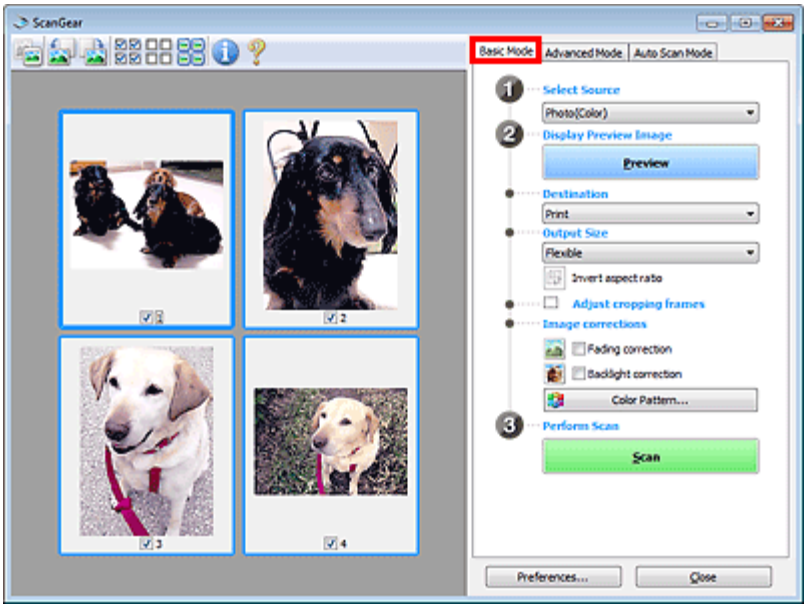


Note

- ScanGear starts in the last used mode.
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

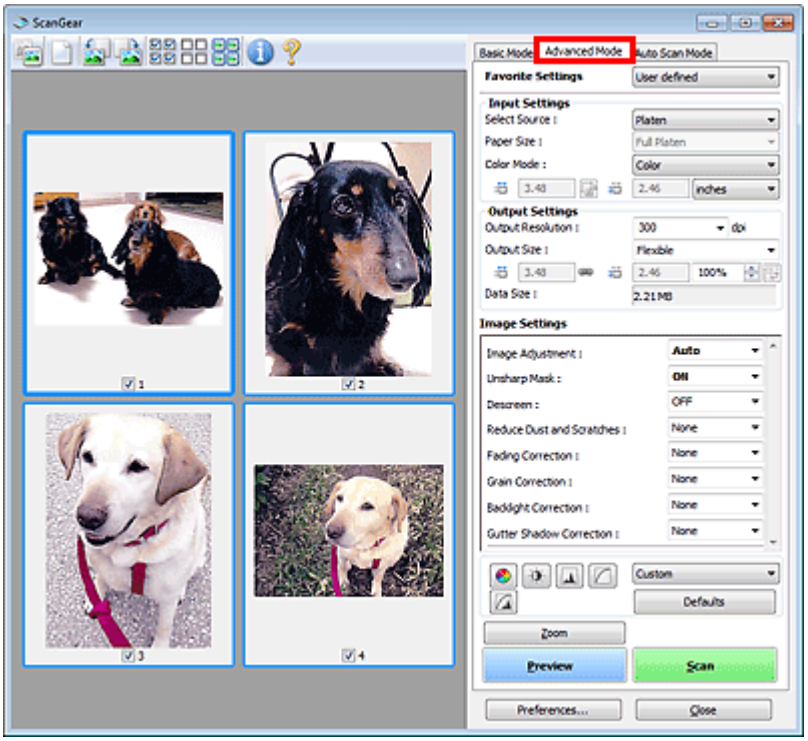
Basic Mode

Use the Basic Mode tab to scan easily by following three simple on-screen steps (1 , 2 and 3).



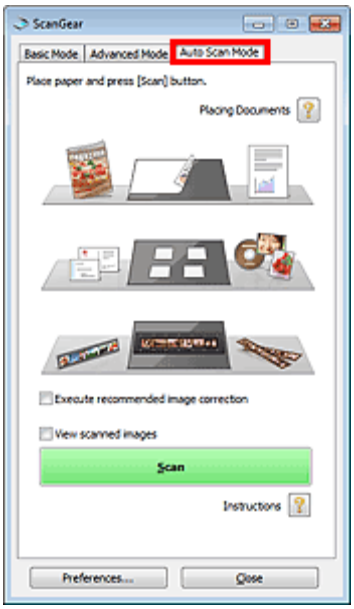
Advanced Mode

Use the Advanced Mode tab to specify color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.



Auto Scan Mode

Use the Auto Scan Mode tab to scan easily by simply placing the document on the Platen and clicking Scan.



Page top

S200

ScanGear

Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

- **Starting ScanGear (scanner driver)**
  - Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
- **Scanning documents after making simple image corrections**
  - Scanning in Basic Mode
- **Scanning documents after making advanced image corrections and brightness/color adjustments**
  - Scanning in Advanced Mode
  - Scanning Film in Advanced Mode
- **Scanning with a simple operation**
  - Scanning in Auto Scan Mode
- **Scanning multiple documents at one time after making image corrections and color adjustments**
  - Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Page top

S202

ScanGear

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Use ScanGear (scanner driver) to make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning.
ScanGear can be started from MP Navigator EX or an application.

Note

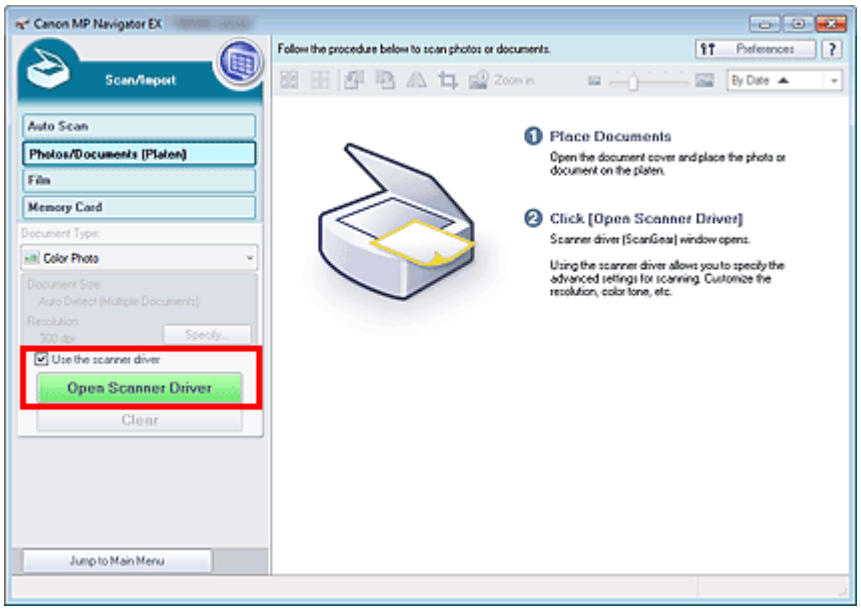
- To scan via a network connection, start MP Navigator EX and set up the network environment.
  Network Scan Settings

Starting from MP Navigator EX

Navigation Mode Screen

Follow these steps to start ScanGear from the Navigation Mode screen of MP Navigator EX.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
   Starting MP Navigator EX
2. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).
   The Scan/Import window opens.
3. Select the Use the scanner driver checkbox, then click Open Scanner Driver.



   The ScanGear screen appears.

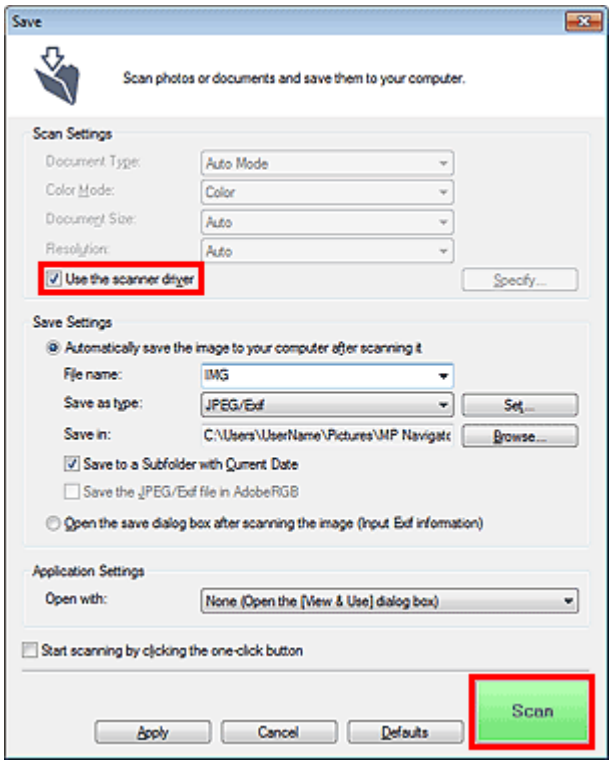
One-click Mode Screen

Follow these steps to start ScanGear from the One-click Mode screen of MP Navigator EX.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the One-click Mode screen.
   Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Click the corresponding icon.
   The corresponding dialog box opens.

3. Select the Use the scanner driver checkbox in Scan Settings, then click Scan.



The ScanGear screen appears.

Important

- Use the scanner driver is not displayed in the Auto Scan dialog box or PDF dialog box.

Starting from an Application

Follow these steps (example) to start ScanGear from an application.

The procedure varies depending on the application. For details, refer to the application's manual.

1. Start the application.

2. On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

Note

- For network connection, the MAC address is displayed after the product name.

3. Select the command to scan a document (Scan/Import, Acquire image, etc.).
   The ScanGear screen appears.

Page top

S203

ScanGear

Scanning in Basic Mode

Use the Basic Mode tab to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section explains how to scan a single document and how to scan color film.

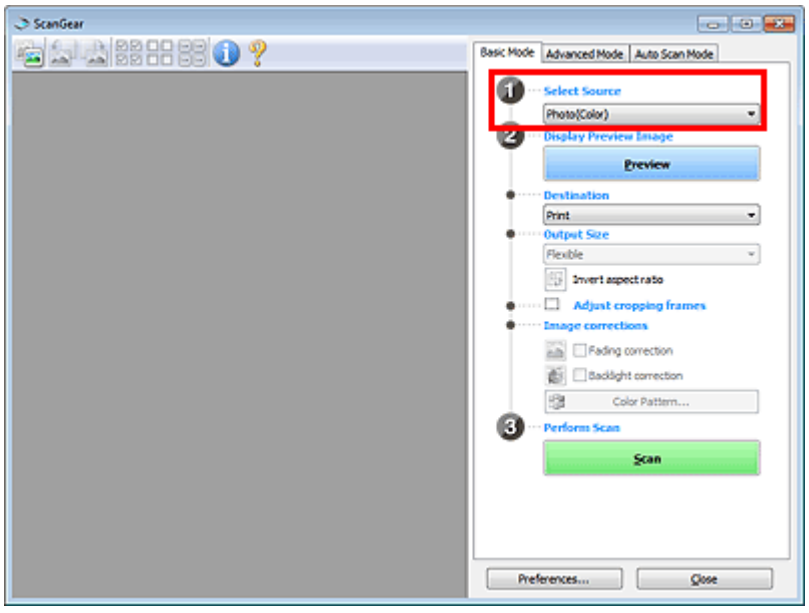
See "Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) " to scan multiple documents at one time.

See "Scanning Film in Advanced Mode" to scan black and white film.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

1. Place the document or film on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).
   - Placing Documents
   - Placing Film
   - Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
2. Set Select Source according to the document or film placed on the Platen.



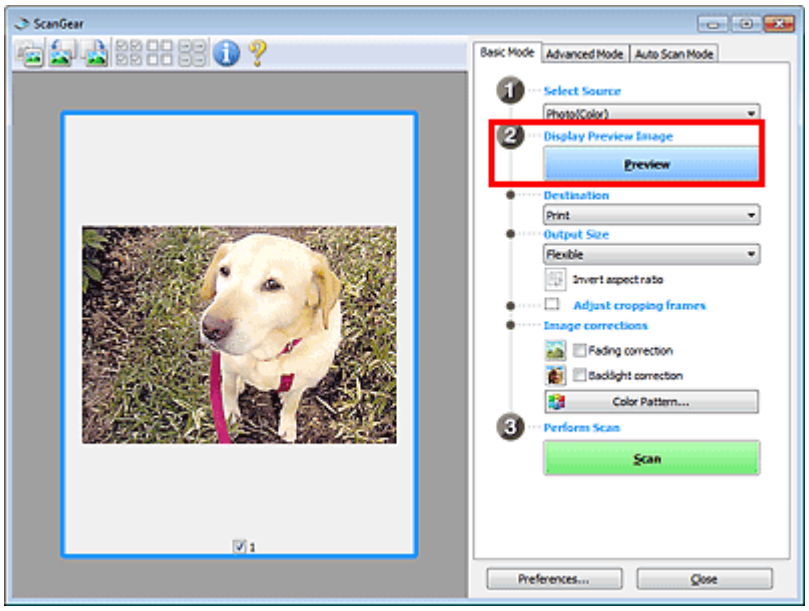
Note

- To scan magazines containing many color photos, select Magazine(Color).

3. Click Preview.

When Photo or Document is Previewed

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



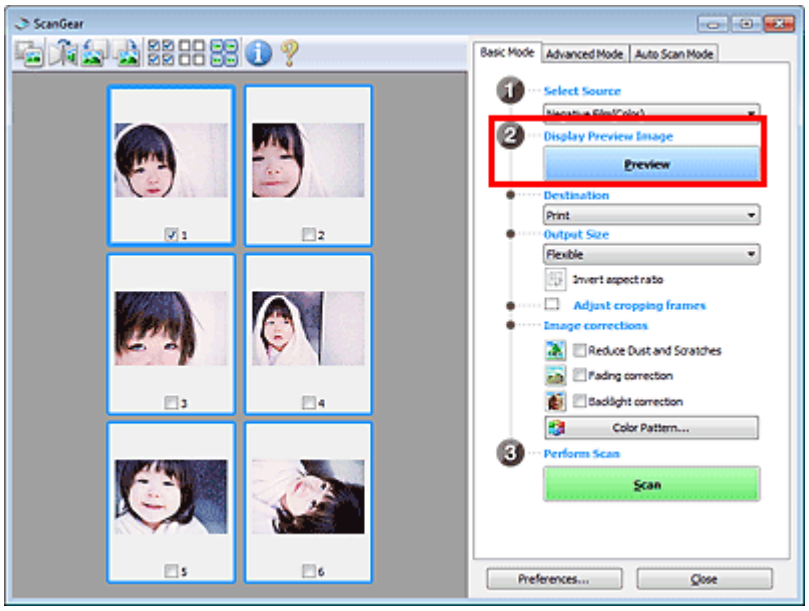
Note

- Colors are adjusted based on the document type selected in Select Source.

When Film is Previewed

Preview images appear in the Preview area. Images are cropped (scan areas are specified) automatically according to the film size.

Select the frames to scan.



Important

- Film cannot be scanned without previewing.

4. Set Destination.

5. Set Output Size.

Output size options vary by the item selected in Destination.

6. Adjust the scan area (cropping frame) as required.

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image.

Adjusting Cropping Frames

7. Set Image corrections as required.

8. Click Scan.

Starts scanning.

Note

- Click  (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Scan Tab

Related Topic

Basic Mode Tab

Page top

S205

ScanGear

Scanning in Advanced Mode

Use the Advanced Mode tab to specify the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.

This section explains how to scan a single document.

See "Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) " to scan multiple documents at one time.

See "Scanning Film in Advanced Mode" to scan film.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

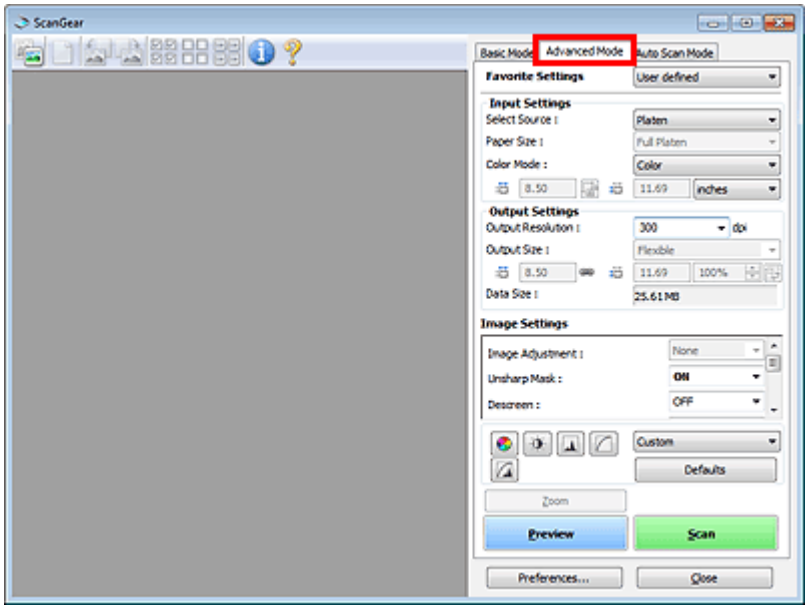
1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

Placing Documents

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Click the Advanced Mode tab.

The Advanced Mode tab appears.



Note

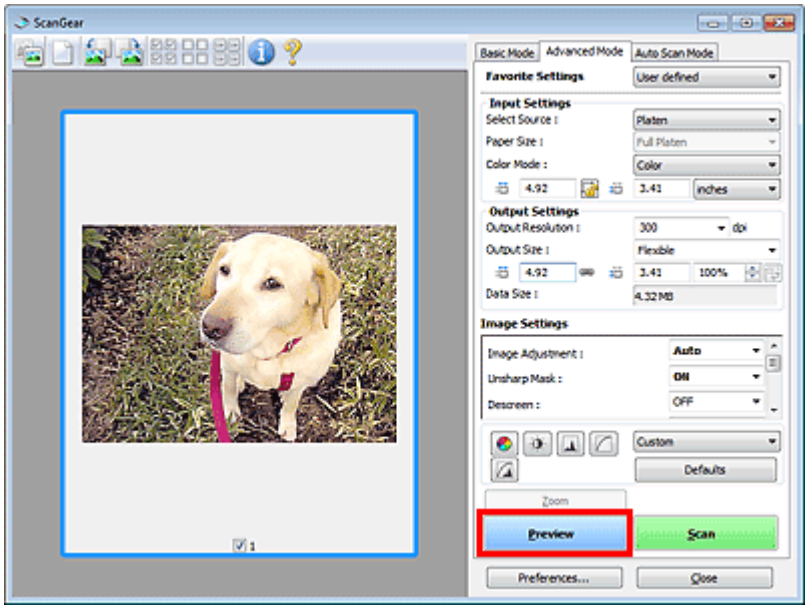
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

3. Set Input Settings.

Input Settings

4. Click Preview.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



Note

- If you scan without preview, the show-through reduction function will be active. This function is useful when scanning magazines. However, when scanning photos, the color tone of the scanned image may differ from the source due to the show-through reduction function. In that case, use preview first.

5. Set Output Settings.

Output Settings

6. Adjust the cropping frame (scan area), correct image and adjust colors as required.

Adjusting Cropping Frames

Image Settings

Color Adjustment Buttons

7. Click Scan.

Starts scanning.

Note

- Click (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.

  Scan Tab

Related Topic

▶ Advanced Mode Tab

Page top

S207

ScanGear

Scanning in Auto Scan Mode

Use the Auto Scan Mode tab to scan easily by automatically detecting the type of document placed on the Platen.

Important

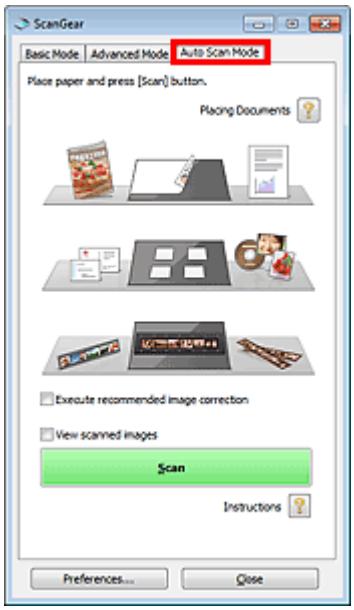
- Supported document types are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film. To scan other documents, specify the document type on the Basic Mode tab or the Advanced Mode tab.
  - Scanning in Basic Mode
  - Scanning in Advanced Mode
- To scan black and white film, scan in Advanced Mode tab.
  - Scanning Film in Advanced Mode

1. Place the document or film on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).
   - Placing Documents
   - Placing Film
   - Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
2. Click the Auto Scan Mode tab.

   The Auto Scan Mode tab appears.

Note

- Select the Execute recommended image correction checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically according to the type of document to be scanned.



3. Click Scan.

   Starts scanning.

Note

- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  Scan Tab

Related Topic

Auto Scan Mode Tab

Page top

S206

ScanGear

Scanning Film in Advanced Mode

Use the Advanced Mode tab to specify the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.

This section explains how to scan film.

1. Place the film on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

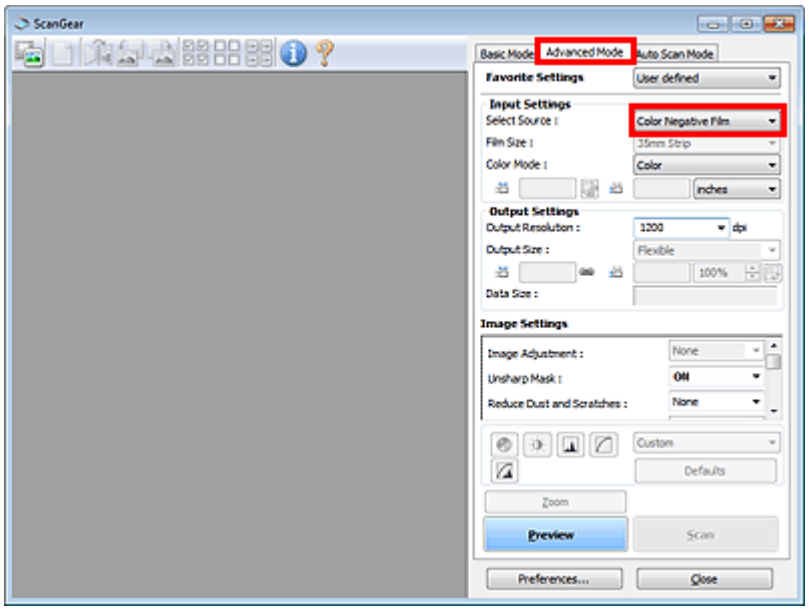
Placing Film

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Important

- Some applications cannot receive images scanned in Color(48bit) or Grayscale(16bit), or may close when such images are received.

2. Click the Advanced Mode tab and select film for Select Source.



Note

- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

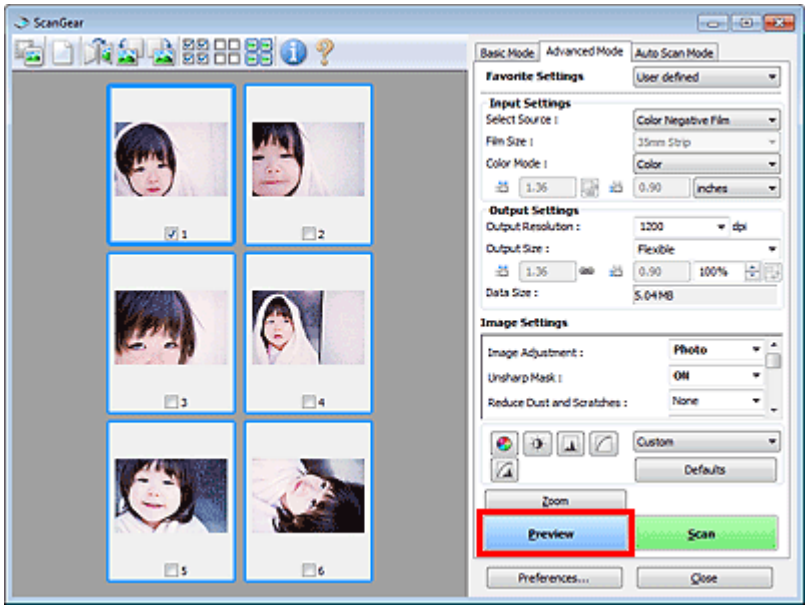
3. Set Input Settings according to the film or purpose.

Input Settings

4. Click Preview.

Preview images appear in the Preview area. Images are cropped (scan areas are specified) automatically according to the film size.

Select the frames to scan.



5. Set Output Settings.

➡ Output Settings

Note

- When the data size exceeds 1.8 GB, change the settings to reduce the size.

6. Adjust the cropping frame (scan area), correct image and adjust colors as required.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

➡ Image Settings

➡ Color Adjustment Buttons

Note

- You can correct each image separately. Select the frame you want to correct.

7. Click Scan.

Starts scanning.

Note

- Click (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  ➡ Scan Tab

Related Topic

▶ Advanced Mode Tab

Page top

S208

ScanGear

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

You can scan two or more photos (small documents) on the Platen at one time on the Basic Mode tab and Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

This section explains how to scan multiple documents from the Basic Mode tab.

Important

- To scan multiple documents as a single image, scan in whole image view.
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents

  Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

Note

- See "Scanning in Auto Scan Mode " to scan easily by automatically detecting the document type.
- You can also scan multiple documents at one time from the Advanced Mode tab. Use the Advanced Mode tab to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.
- See the corresponding sections below for details on the Basic Mode tab and Advanced Mode tab.

  Basic Mode Tab

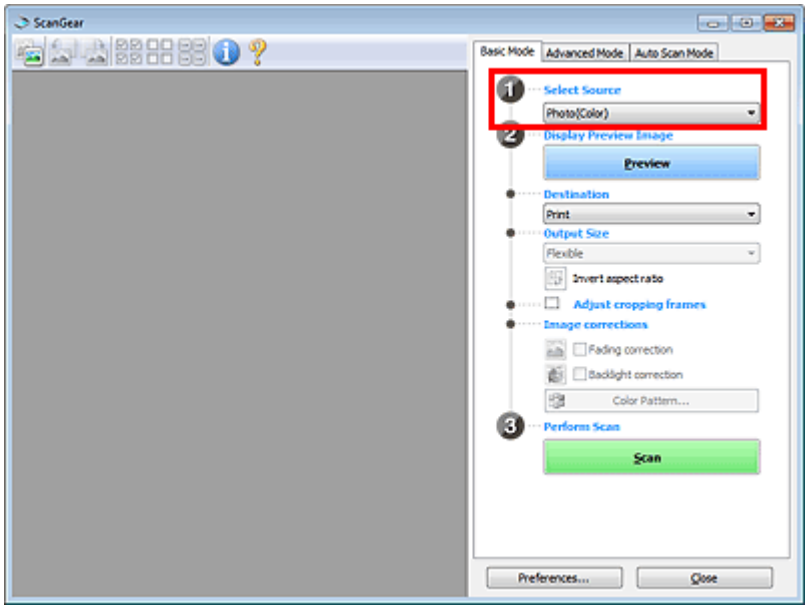
  Advanced Mode Tab

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear.

   Placing Documents

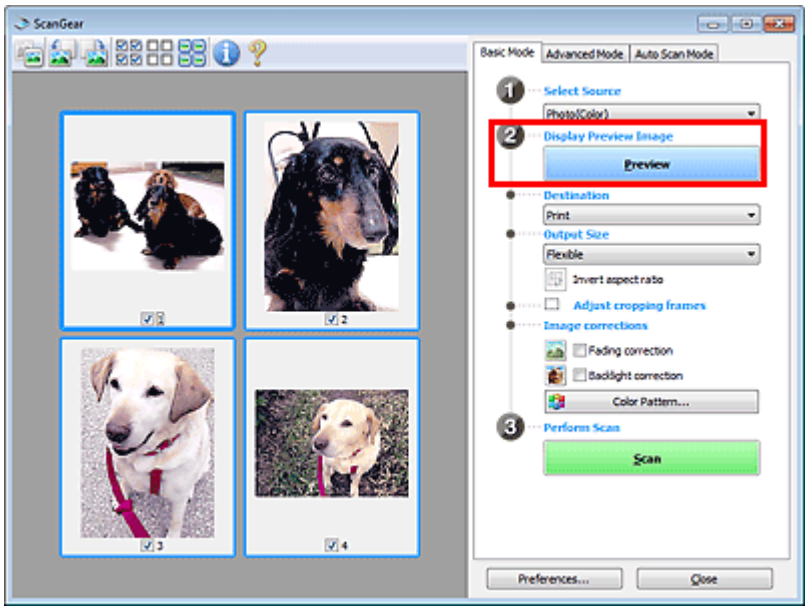
   Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Set Select Source according to the document placed on the Platen.



3. Click Preview.

Thumbnails of the preview images appear in the Preview area. Images are cropped (scan areas are specified) automatically according to the document size.



4. Set Destination.

5. Set Output Size.

6. Adjust the scan areas (cropping frames) and set Image corrections as required.

Note

- You can correct each image separately. Select the frame you want to correct.
- In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame (scan area) per image.
  To create multiple cropping frames in an image, scan in whole image view.
  Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

7. Select the images you want to scan.

Select the checkboxes of the images you want to scan.

8. Click Scan.

Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

Follow these steps if thumbnails are not displayed correctly when previewed or if you want to scan multiple documents as a single image.

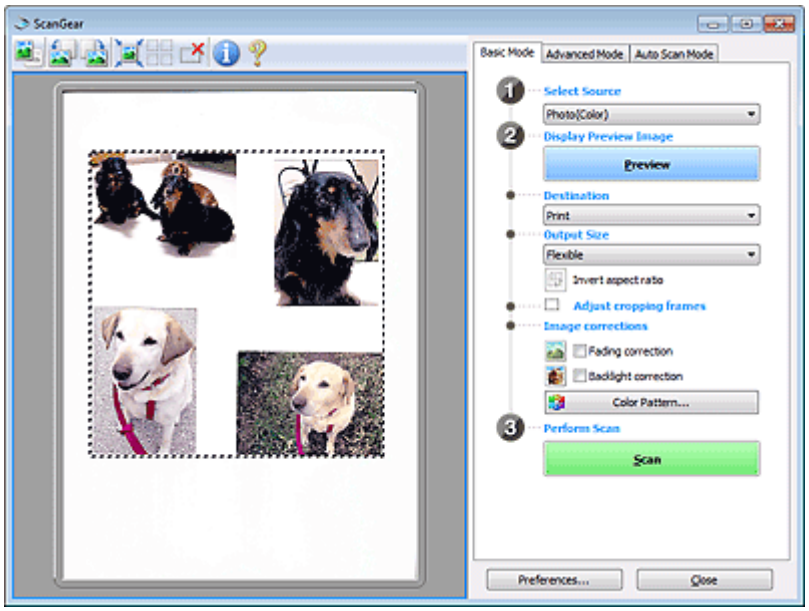
Note

- Positions of slanted documents are not corrected in whole image view.

1. After previewing images, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar.

Switch to whole image view.





Note

- When the whole image is displayed, the icon changes to (Whole Image).

2. Adjust the scan areas (cropping frames).

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image. You can also create two or more cropping frames.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the specified area will be scanned.

Adjusting Cropping Frames

3. Set Destination.

4. Set Output Size.

5. Set Image corrections as required.

6. Click Scan.

Areas framed by broken lines are scanned.

Note

- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  Scan Tab

Page top

S300

ScanGear

Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

The following sections provide you with tips and know-how on advanced scanning techniques involving color/brightness adjustment, etc.

- **Sharpening out-of-focus photos, reducing dust and scratches, and correcting faded colors**
  - Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)
- **Previewing and changing the color tone of the entire image to scan**
  - Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern
- **Brightening colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast**
  - Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance
- **Adjusting images that are too dark or bright, or too flat due to lack of contrast**
  - Adjusting Brightness and Contrast
- **Adjusting the color tone using histogram (a graph showing brightness distribution)**
  - Adjusting Histogram
- **Adjusting the image brightness using tone curve (a graph of brightness balance)**
  - Adjusting Tone Curve
- **Sharpening characters in text documents or reducing show-through effects**
  - Setting Threshold

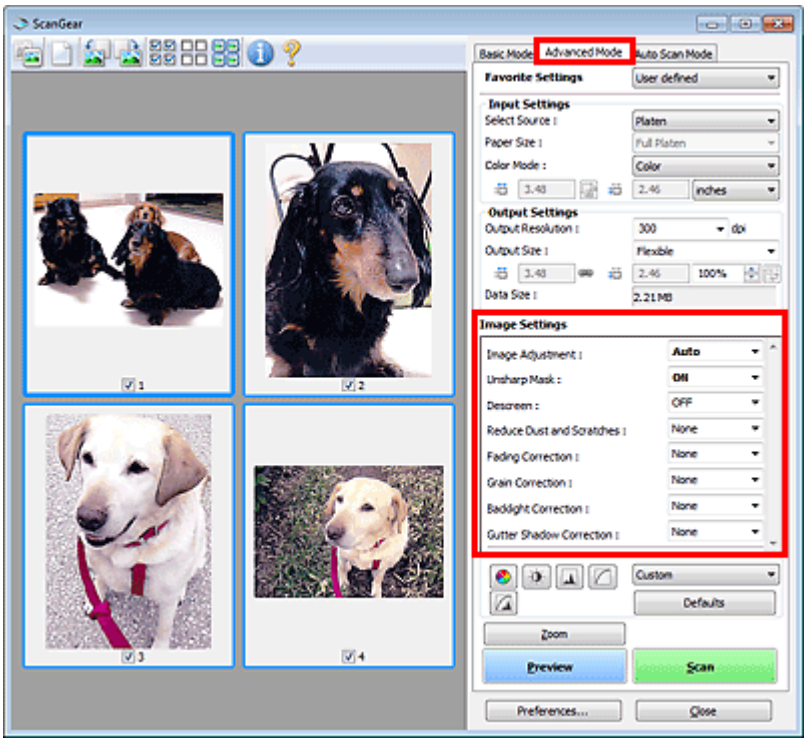
Page top

S308

ScanGear

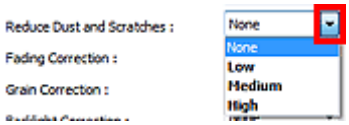
Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)

The Image Settings functions on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver) allow you to enhance the outline of the subjects, reduce dust/scratches and correct faded colors when scanning images.



Setting Items

Click (Arrow) of a function and select an item from the pull-down menu.



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- See "Image Settings " for details and precautions on each function.

Note

- See "Scanning in Advanced Mode" to start the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear and scan.
- The setting items vary depending on whether Select Source is Platen or film.

Adjusting the image brightness and color tone

Set Image Adjustment to Auto, Photo, Magazine, Newspaper or Document according to the document

type.

None	Auto
	

Sharpening slightly out-of-focus images

Set Unsharp Mask to ON.

OFF	ON
	

Reducing gradations and stripe patterns

Set Descreen to ON.

OFF	ON
	

Note

- Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Reducing dust and scratches

Set Reduce Dust and Scratches to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of dust and scratches.

None	Medium
	

Note

- When the resolution is set to 4801 dpi or higher and Reduce Dust and Scratches checkbox is selected, images are scanned at an optical resolution of 4800 dpi then interpolated by the software to yield the specified resolution.

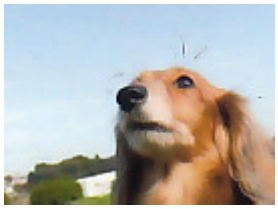
Correcting photos that have faded with time or due to colorcast

Set Fading Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of fading or colorcast.

None	Medium
	

Reducing graininess

Set Grain Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of graininess.

None	Medium
	

Correcting backlit images

Set Backlight Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of backlight.

None	Medium
	

Correcting shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets

Set Gutter Shadow Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of shadows.

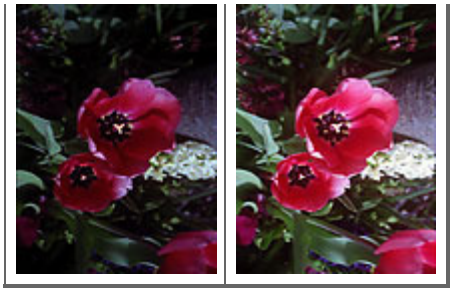
None	Medium
	

Adjusting the film exposure manually

Click (Down arrow) of Exposure/Tone Settings.

Select the Manual Exposure checkbox and adjust the exposure within the range of 50% to 200%.

Before	After



Scanning film at high quality

Click (Down arrow) of Exposure/Tone Settings and set High Quality to ON.

OFF	ON
	

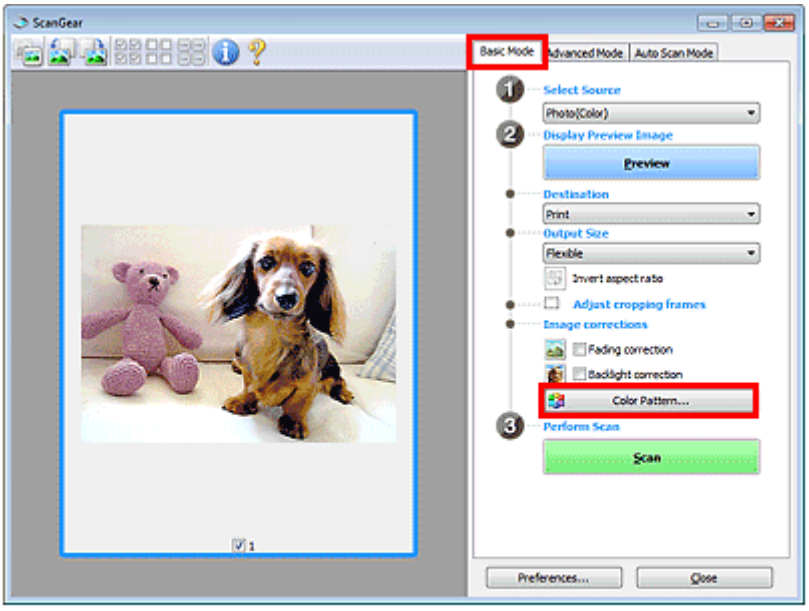
Page top

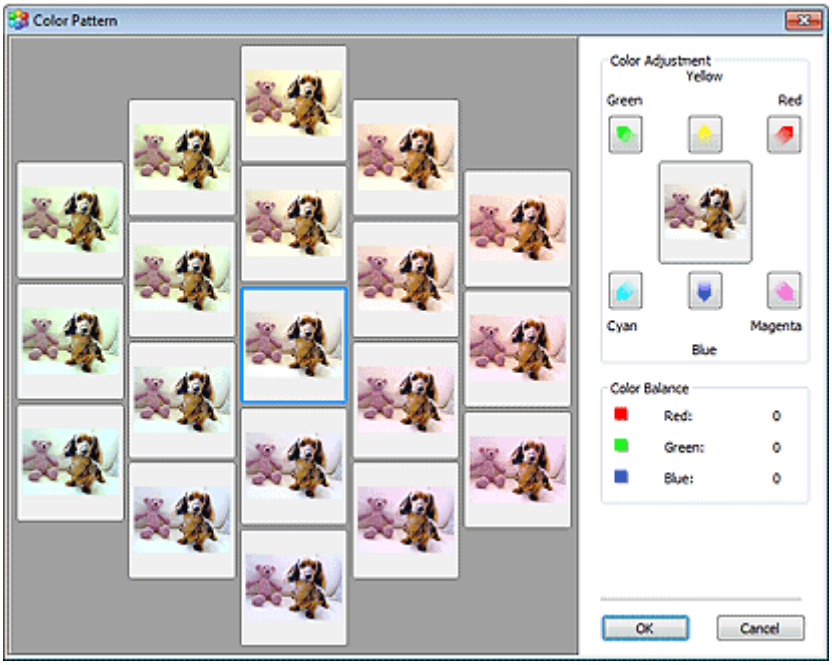
S301

ScanGear

Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

You can preview color changes and reproduce natural colors by using the color pattern function in ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Basic Mode tab.





Color Adjustment

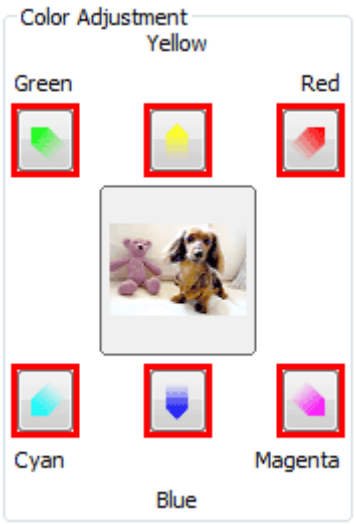
Correct colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Click an arrow in Color Adjustment to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & red, magenta & green and yellow & blue are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust the colors so that the portion turns white.

Preview image appears in the center. Preview image colors change as you adjust them.



Below is an example of correcting a bluish image.

Since Blue and Green are too strong, click the Yellow and Magenta arrows to correct.

Before	After
	

Note

- Color adjustments are applied only to the scan area (cropping frame) or the frame selected in thumbnail view.
  You can select multiple frames or cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
- You can also select a color tone from the color pattern displayed on the left of the Color Pattern screen.
- You can also use this function to add a specific tint to an image. Increase the magenta to add a warm tint, and increase the blue to add a cool tint.

Page top

S303

ScanGear

Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Saturation/Color Balance).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Saturation

Adjust the image's saturation (vividness). You can brighten colors that have faded with time, etc.

Move ▲ (Slider) under Saturation to the left to decrease the saturation (darken the image), and to the right to increase the saturation (brighten the image). You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Saturation decreased	Original image	Saturation increased
		

Note

- The natural color tone of the original image may be lost if you increase saturation too much.

Color Balance

Adjust images that have a colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the

entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Move ▲ (Slider) under Color Balance to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & Red

Magenta & Green

Yellow & Blue

These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

Below is an example of an image in which the "Cyan & Red" pair has been adjusted.



Cyan is increased	Red is increased
	

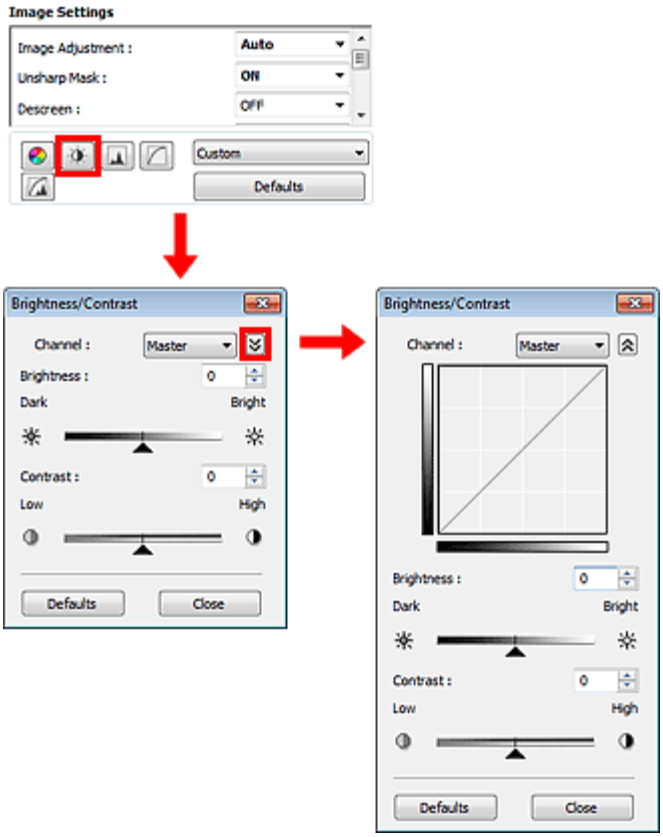
Page top

S304

ScanGear

Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click (Brightness/Contrast).



Note

- Click (Down arrow) to switch to detailed view. Click (Up arrow) to return to the previous view.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**

  Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.

- **Red**

  Adjust the Red channel.

- **Green**

  Adjust the Green channel.

- **Blue**

  Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale or Grayscale(16bit).

Brightness

Adjust the image brightness. Move ▲ (Slider) under Brightness to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Darkened	Original image	Brightened
		

Note

- Highlights may be lost if you brighten the image too much, and shadows may be lost if you darken the image too much.

Contrast

"Contrast" is the degree of difference between the brighter and darker parts of an image. Increasing contrast will increase the difference, thus sharpening the image. Decreasing contrast will decrease the difference, thus softening the image.

Move ▲ (Slider) under Contrast to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Decreased contrast	Original image	Increased contrast
		

Note

- Increasing the contrast is effective in adding a three-dimensional feel to soft images. However, shadows and highlights may be lost if you increase the contrast too much.

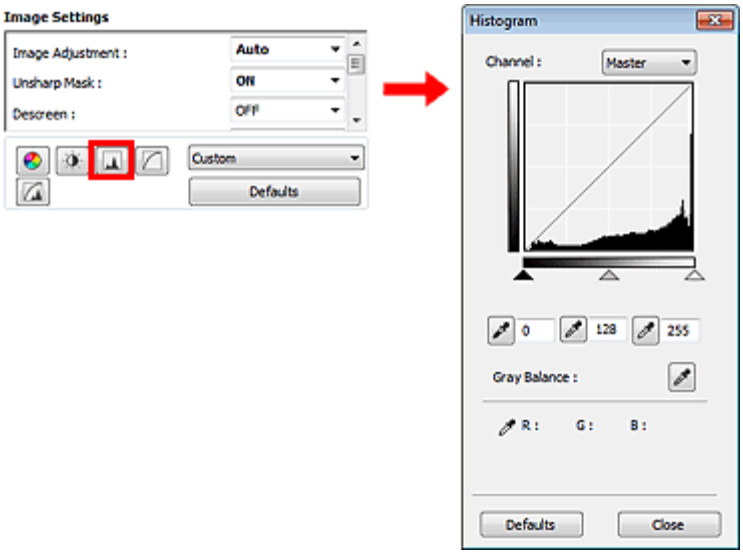
Page top

S305

ScanGear

Adjusting Histogram

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Histogram).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**

  Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.

- **Red**

  Adjust the Red channel.

- **Green**

  Adjust the Green channel.

- **Blue**

  Adjust the Blue channel.

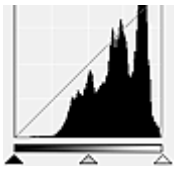
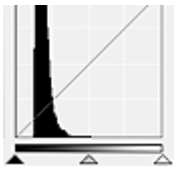
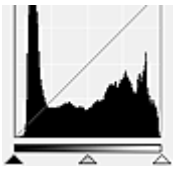
Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale or Grayscale(16bit).

Reading Histograms

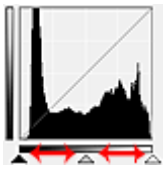
You can see the histogram of a specified area for each Channel. The higher the histogram peak, the more data is distributed to that level.



(1) Bright area	(2) Dark area	(3) Whole image
		
More data is distributed to the highlight side.	More data is distributed to the shadow side.	Data is widely distributed between the highlight and shadow.

Adjusting Histograms (Using the Slider)

Select a Channel, then move (Black-point Slider) or (White-point Slider) to specify the level to be set as the shadow or highlight.



- All parts to the left of (Black-point Slider) will be black (level 0).
- The parts at (Mid-point Slider) will turn to the color exactly between the black-point and white-point.
- All parts to the right of (White-point Slider) will turn white (level 255).

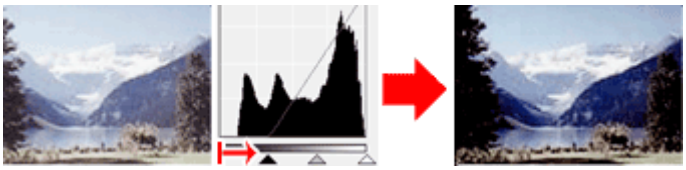
When Image Adjustment is set to anything but None, the adjustments shown below are performed automatically.

Moving the Black-point and White-point Sliders

Move the Black-point Slider or White-point Slider to adjust brightness.

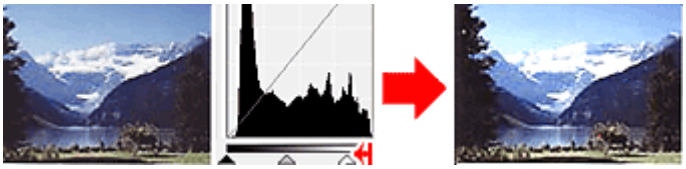
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side.



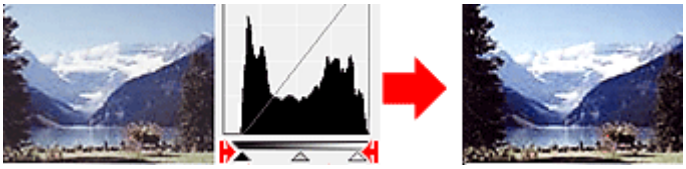
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the White-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Images with widely distributed data

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side, and White-point Slider toward the shadow side.

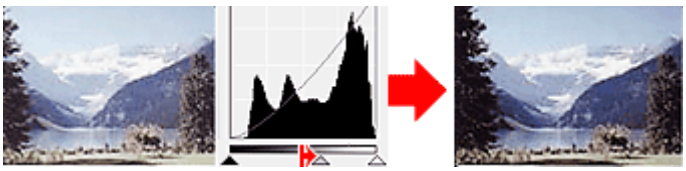


Moving the Mid-point Slider

Move the Mid-point Slider to specify the level to be set as the middle of the tonal range.

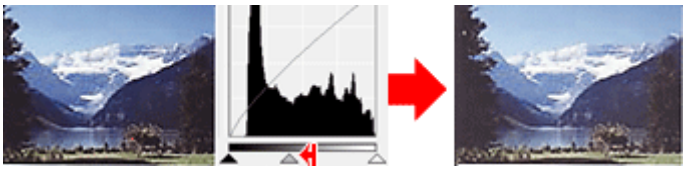
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the highlight side.



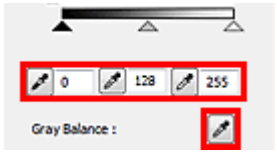
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Adjusting Histograms (Using the Droppers)

When you select a Channel and click the Black-point, Mid-point or White-point Dropper, the mouse pointer on the preview image changes to a dropper. Click a Dropper displayed below the histogram to change the setting.



- The point clicked with  (Black-point Dropper) will be the darkest point. You can also enter a value (0 to 245).

- The point clicked with  (Mid-point Dropper) will be the middle of the tonal range. You can also enter a value (5 to 250).

- The point clicked with  (White-point Dropper) will be the brightest point. You can also enter a value (10 to 255).

- Click  (Dropper) for Gray Balance and click the area you want to adjust the color in the preview image.

The clicked point will be set as the achromatic color reference, and the rest of the image is adjusted accordingly. For instance, if snow in a photo appears bluish, click the bluish part to adjust the whole image and reproduce natural colors.

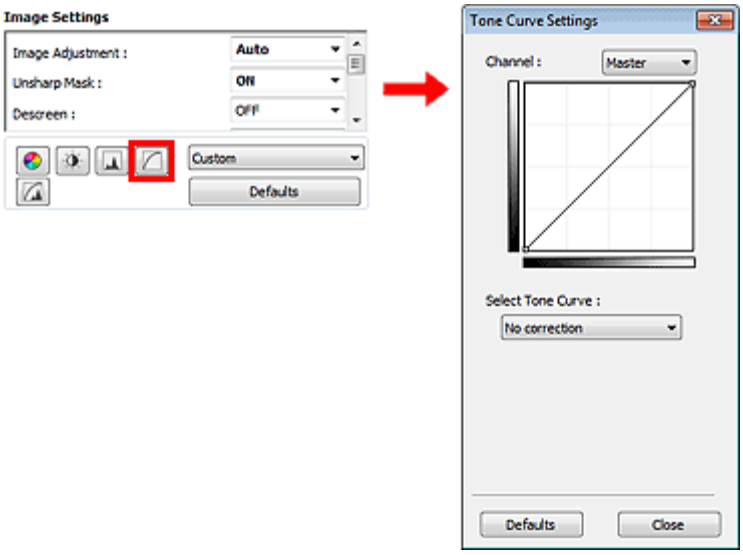
Page top

S306

ScanGear

Adjusting Tone Curve

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Tone Curve Settings).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**

  Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.

- **Red**

  Adjust the Red channel.

- **Green**

  Adjust the Green channel.

- **Blue**

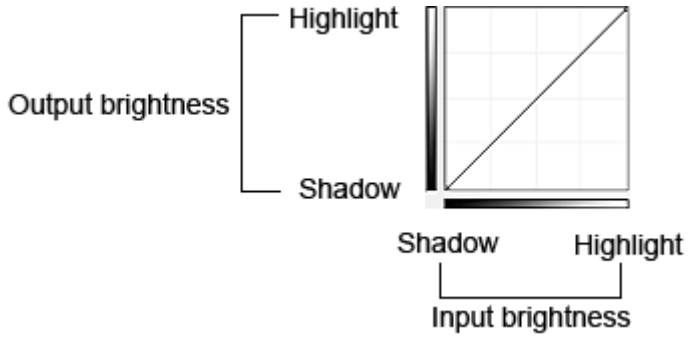
  Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale or Grayscale(16bit).

Reading Tone Curves

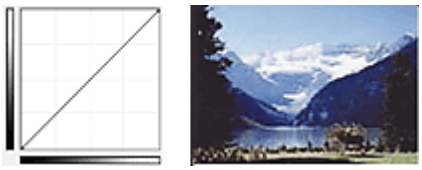
With ScanGear, scanning images via a scanner is the input, and displaying to a monitor is the output. "Tone Curve" shows the balance of tone input and output for each Channel.



Adjusting Tone Curve

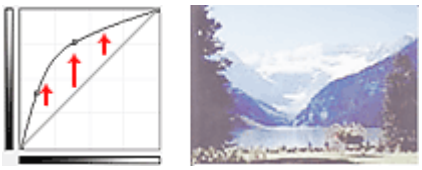
In Select Tone Curve, select a tone curve from No correction, Overexposure, Underexposure, High contrast, Reverse the negative/positive image and Edit custom curve.

No correction (No adjustment)



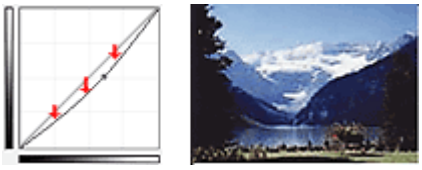
Overexposure (Convex curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the highlight of the output side, resulting in a bright-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



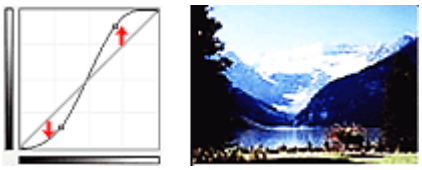
Underexposure (Concave curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the shadow of the output side, resulting in a dark-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



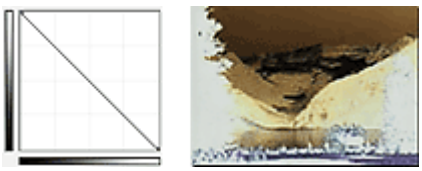
High contrast (S curve)

The highlight and shadow of the input side are enhanced, resulting in a high-contrast image.



Reverse the negative/positive image (Downward-sloping line)

The input and output sides are reversed, resulting in a negative-positive inverted image.



Edit custom curve

You can drag specific points on the Tone Curve to freely adjust the brightness of the corresponding areas.

Page top

S307

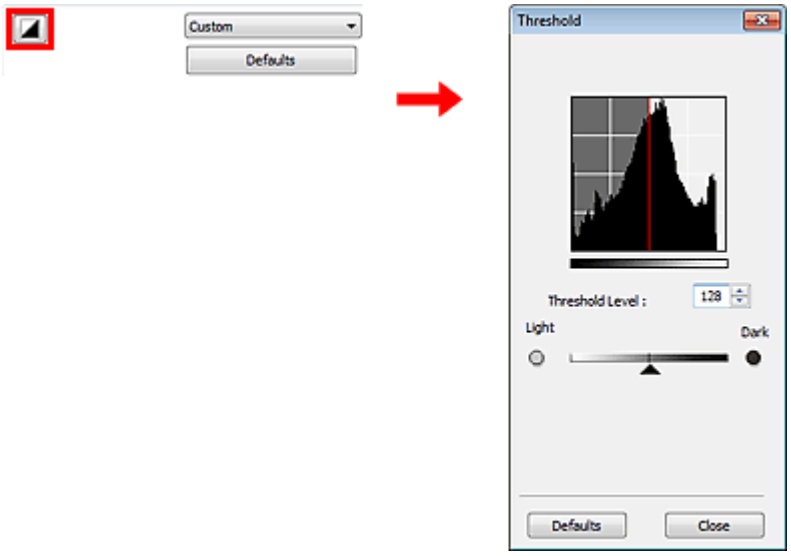
ScanGear

Setting Threshold

The brightness of color and grayscale images is expressed in a value between 0 and 255. However, in creating black and white images, all colors are mapped to either black (0) or white (255). "Threshold" is the borderline value that determines a color as black or white. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

This function is available when Color Mode is Black and White.

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Threshold).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Adjusting Threshold

Move ▲ (Slider) to the right to increase the threshold value and thus increase the black areas. Move the slider to the left to decrease the value and thus increase the white areas. You can also enter a value (0 to 255).



Page top

S800

ScanGear

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens

The following sections describe ScanGear (scanner driver)'s screens and functions, and how to use ScanGear.

Basic Mode Tab

Advanced Mode Tab

- Input Settings
- Output Settings
- Image Settings
- Color Adjustment Buttons

Auto Scan Mode Tab

Preferences Dialog Box

- Scanner Tab
- Preview Tab
- Scan Tab
- Color Settings Tab

Page top

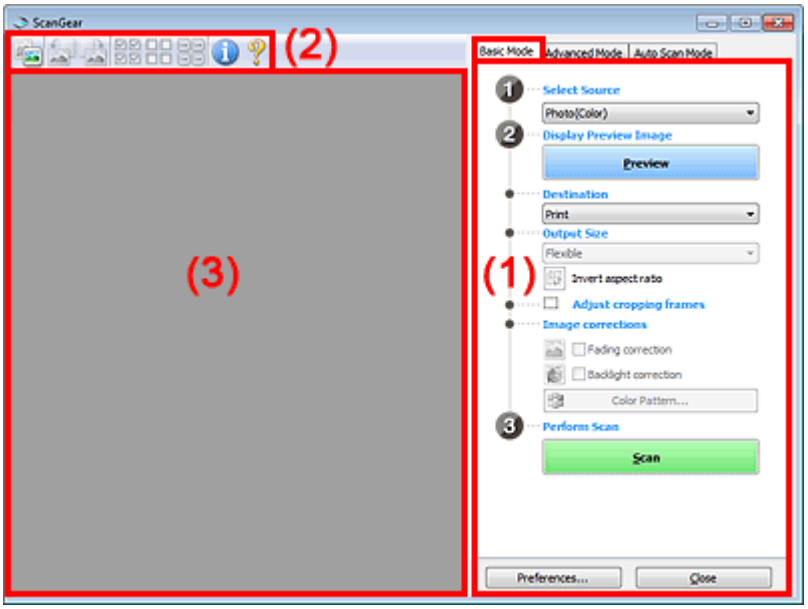
S801

ScanGear

Basic Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the Basic Mode tab.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Preview Area

Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Select Source**
  - **Photo(Color)**

    Scan color photos.
  - **Magazine(Color)**

    Scan color magazines.
  - **Newspaper(Grayscale)**

    Scan text and line drawings in black and white.
  - **Document(Grayscale)**

    Scan documents and photos in black and white.
    Select this mode to create high-resolution black and white images.
  - **Negative Film(Color)**

    Scan 35 mm color negative film in color.
  - **Positive Film(Color)**

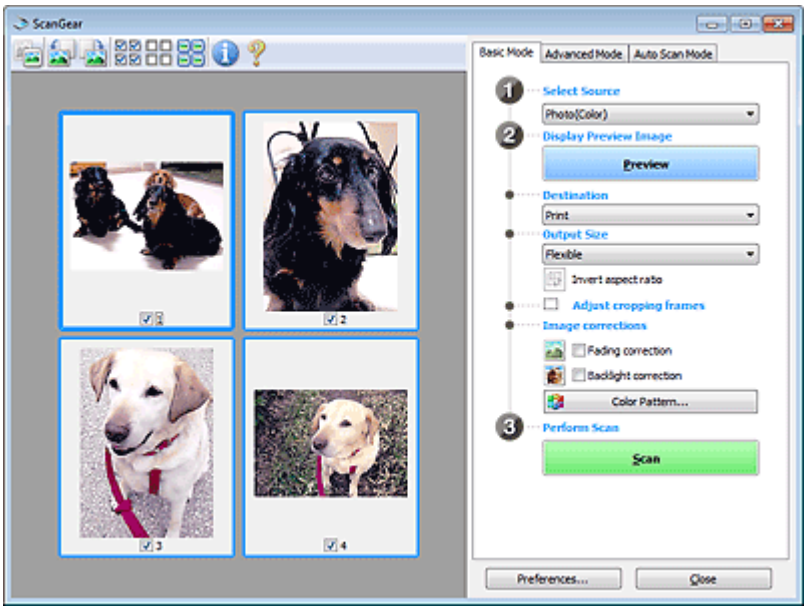
    Scan 35 mm color positive film in color.

Note

- To scan black and white film, scan from the Advanced Mode tab.
  Scanning Film in Advanced Mode
- When you select a document type, the unsharp mask function will be active. The image adjustment function which adjusts images based on the document type will also be active.
- If you select Magazine(Color), the descreen function will be active.

- **Display Preview Image**
  - **Preview**

    Performs a trial scan.



Note

- When using the machine for the first time, scanner calibration starts automatically. Wait a while until the preview image appears.

- **Destination**

  Select what you want to do with the scanned image.
  - **Print**

    Select this to print the scanned image on a printer.
  - **Image display**

    Select this to view the scanned image on a monitor.
  - **OCR**

    Select this to use the scanned image with OCR software.
    "OCR software" is software that converts text scanned as an image into text data that can be edited in word processors and other programs.

Important

- This option is not displayed when film is selected for Select Source.

- **Output Size**

  Select an output size.
  Output size options vary by the item selected in Destination.
  - **Flexible**

    Allows you to freely adjust the cropping frames.

    #### In thumbnail view

    Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is

displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

In whole image view

When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

- **Paper Size (L, A4, etc.)**

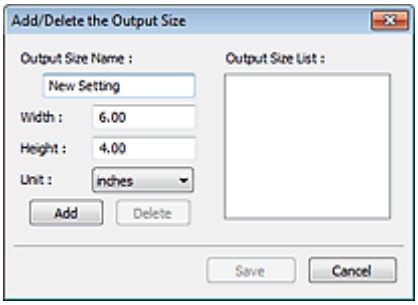
  Select an output paper size. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

  Select an output size in pixels.
  A cropping frame of the selected monitor size will be displayed and the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

  Opens the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, in which you can specify custom output sizes. You can select this option when Destination is Print or Image display.



In the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the Output Size list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, enter Output Size Name, Width and Height, then click Add. For Unit, you can select inches or mm when Destination is Print but you can only select pixels when Destination is Image display. The name of the added size appears in Output Size List. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in Output Size List and click Delete. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as A4 and 1024 x 768 pixels.

Note

- Save up to 10 items.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the setting range.

Note

- For details on whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " Preview Tab " (Preferences dialog box).

- **Invert aspect ratio**

  This button is available when Output Size is set to anything but Flexible.
  Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Adjust cropping frames**

  You can adjust the scan area within the Preview area.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop) or film size. If an area is specified, only the portion in the cropping frame will be scanned.
Adjusting Cropping Frames

- **Image corrections**

  Allows you to apply corrections to images.

  Important
  - Available functions vary by the document type selected in Select Source.
  - Auto Document Fix, Fading correction and Backlight correction are available when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

  Note
  - To change exposure, select the " Manual Exposure " checkbox in Advanced Mode tab, then adjust the value and scan.

  - **Reduce Dust and Scratches**

    Reduces dust and scratches when scanning film.

  - **Auto Document Fix**

    Sharpens text in a document or magazine for better readability.

    Important
    - When this checkbox is selected in ScanGear (scanner driver) started from MP Navigator EX, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
    - Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
    - The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.
    - Auto Document Fix may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

  - **Fading correction**

    Corrects and scans photos and film that have faded with time or have a colorcast.

  - **Backlight correction**

    Corrects photos and film that have been shot against light.

  - **Gutter shadow correction**

    Corrects shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

    Important
    - For precautions on using this function, see " Gutter Shadow Correction ."

  - **Color Pattern...**

    Allows you to adjust the image's overall color. You can correct colors that have faded due to colorcast, etc. and reproduce natural colors while previewing color changes.
    Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

    Important
    - This setting is not available when you select Color Matching on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Perform Scan**
  - **Scan**

    Scanning starts.

    Note
    - When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

- **Preferences...**

  The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **Close**

  Closes ScanGear.

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

  You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

  When Select Source is other than film and in thumbnail view

  When Select Source is other than film and in whole image view

  When Select Source is film and in thumbnail view

  When Select Source is film and in whole image view

  -  **(Thumbnail)** /  **(Whole Image)**

    Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is other than film.

    Preview Area

  -  **(Film Thumbnail)** /  **(Whole Film Image)**

    Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is film.

    Preview Area

  -  **(Mirror)**

    Inverts the preview image horizontally.
    - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
    - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

  -  **(Rotate Left)**

    Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
    - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
    - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

  -  **(Rotate Right)**

    Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.
    - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
    - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

  -  **(Auto Crop)**

    Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.

  -  **(Check All Frames)**

    This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Uncheck All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Deselects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Select All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the image in thumbnail view and the image will be outlined in blue.

- **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

  This button is available when there are two or more cropping frames.
  All cropping frames will be displayed in thick broken lines. The settings will be applied to all the cropping frames.

- **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

  Removes the selected cropping frame.

- **(Information)**

  Displays the version of ScanGear and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).

- **(Open Guide)**

  This page appears.

Preview Area

- **Preview Area**

  This is where a trial image is displayed after you click Preview. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in " Settings and Operation Buttons ."

When (Thumbnail) or (Film Thumbnail) is displayed on the Toolbar

Thumbnails of images cropped to the document size are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
  - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
  - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while

pressing the Ctrl key.
- Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.

- Double-click a frame to zoom in on the image. Click (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

When (Whole Image) or (Whole Film Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

When document type is other than film, items on the Platen are scanned and displayed as a single image. When document type is film, the whole film image is displayed. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



Whole image view (Full Platen)



Whole film image view

Note

- If frames are not detected (for example, only four frames out of six frames are displayed) due to the image color of the film, display the whole image and scan.

Note

- You can specify the scan area (cropping frame) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.
  Adjusting Cropping Frames

Related Topic

▶ Scanning in Basic Mode

Page top

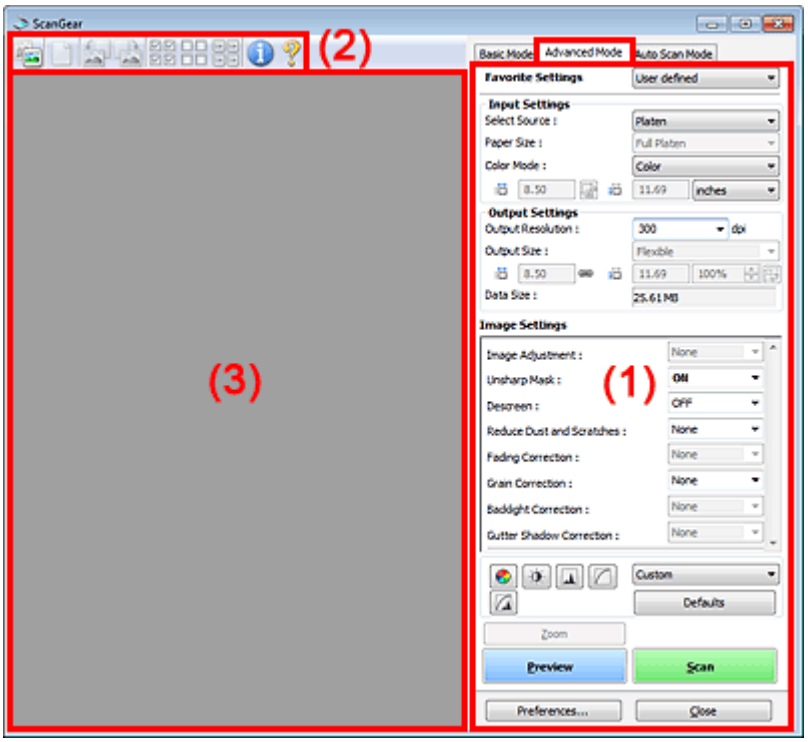
S803

ScanGear

Advanced Mode Tab

This mode allows you to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the Advanced Mode tab.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Preview Area

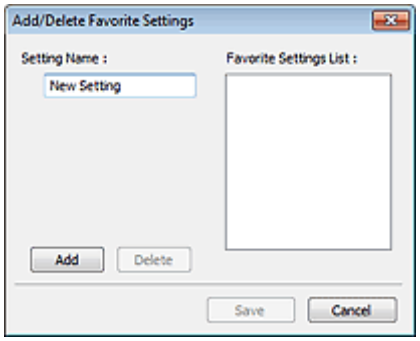
Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Favorite Settings**

  You can name and save a group of settings (Input Settings, Output Settings, Image Settings and Color Adjustment Buttons) on Advanced Mode tab, and load it as required. It is convenient to save a group of settings if you will be using it repeatedly. You can also use this to reload the default settings.
  Select Add/Delete... from the pull-down menu and the Add/Delete Favorite Settings dialog box opens.



Enter Setting Name and click Add. The name appears in Favorite Settings List.
When you click Save, the item appears in the Favorite Settings list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.
To delete an item, select it in Favorite Settings List and click Delete. Click Save to save settings displayed in Favorite Settings List.

Note

- You can set Add/Delete... in Favorite Settings after preview.
- Save up to 10 items.

- **Input Settings**

  Specify the input settings such as the document type and size.
  ➡ Input Settings

- **Output Settings**

  Specify the output settings such as the output resolution and size.
  ➡ Output Settings

- **Image Settings**

  Enable/disable various image correction functions.
  ➡ Image Settings

- **Color Adjustment Buttons**

  These buttons can be used to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones. You can adjust the image's overall brightness or contrast, and adjust its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).
  ➡ Color Adjustment Buttons

- **Zoom**

  Zooms in on an image or the portion within the cropping frame. When the image is zoomed in, Zoom changes to Undo. Click Undo to return the display to its non-magnified state.

In thumbnail view

When multiple images are displayed in thumbnail view, clicking this button zooms in on the selected frame. Click  (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame.

Note

- You can also zoom in on an image by double-clicking the frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

In whole image view

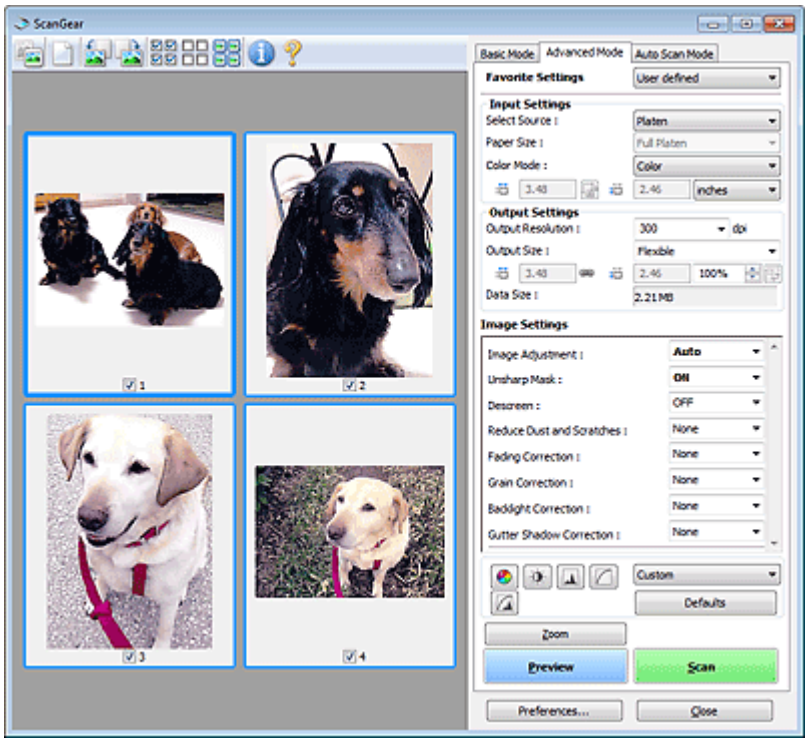
Rescans the portion within the cropping frame at higher magnification.

Note

- Zoom rescans the image and displays high-resolution image in Preview.
-  (Enlarge/Reduce) on the Toolbar zooms in on the preview image quickly. However, the resolution of the displayed image will be low.

- **Preview**

  Performs a trial scan.



- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
- When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning in "Scan Tab" (Preferences dialog box).
- It will take time to process the images if the total size of the scanned images exceeds a certain size. In that case, a warning message appears. It is recommended that you reduce the total size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

- **Preferences...**

  The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **Close**

  Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

  You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

  When Select Source is Platen and in thumbnail view



  When Select Source is Platen and in whole image view



  When Select Source is film and in thumbnail view



When Select Source is film and in whole image view



- **(Thumbnail)** / **(Whole Image)**

  Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is Platen.
  Preview Area

- **(Film Thumbnail)** / **(Whole Film Image)**

  Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is film.
  Preview Area

- **(Clear)**

  Click this button to delete the preview image.
  It also resets the Toolbar and color adjustment settings.

- **(Crop)**

  Allows you to specify the scan area by dragging the mouse.

- **(Move Image)**

  If an enlarged image is too large to fit in the Preview area, you can click this button and drag the image across the screen until the part you want to see is displayed. You can also move the image using the scroll bars.

- **(Enlarge/Reduce)**

  Click this button then click on the image to enlarge it (zoom in). Right-click on the image to reduce it (zoom out).

- **(Mirror)**

  Inverts the preview image horizontally.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Rotate Left)**

  Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Rotate Right)**

  Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Auto Crop)**

  Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.

- **(Check All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Uncheck All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Deselects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Select All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the image in thumbnail view and the image will be outlined in blue.

- **(Display Film Cropping Frame)**

  Displays the cropping frame according to the film size selected in Film Size.

- **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

  This button is available when there are two or more cropping frames.
  All cropping frames will be displayed in thick broken lines. The settings will be applied to all the cropping frames.

- **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

  Removes the selected cropping frame.

- **(Information)**

  Displays the version of ScanGear and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).

- **(Open Guide)**

  This page appears.

Preview Area

- **Preview Area**

  This is where a trial image is displayed after you click Preview. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in " Settings and Operation Buttons ."

When (Thumbnail) or (Film Thumbnail) is displayed on the Toolbar

Thumbnails of images cropped to the document size are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.

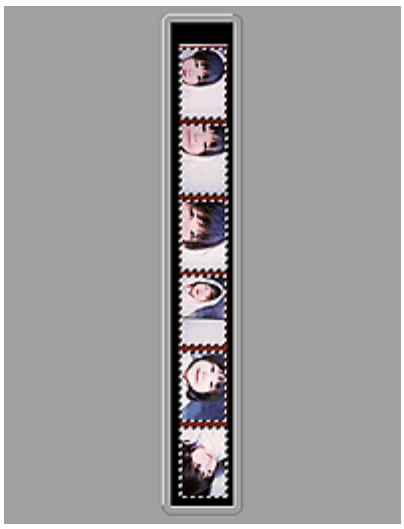
- Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
- Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
- Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.

When (Whole Image) or (Whole Film Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

When document type is Platen, items on the Platen are scanned and displayed as a single image. When document type is film, the whole film image is displayed. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



Whole image view (Full Platen)



Whole film image view

Note

- If frames are not detected (for example, only four frames out of six frames are displayed) due to the image color of the film, display the whole image and scan.

Note

- You can specify the scan area (cropping frame) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.
  Adjusting Cropping Frames

Related Topic

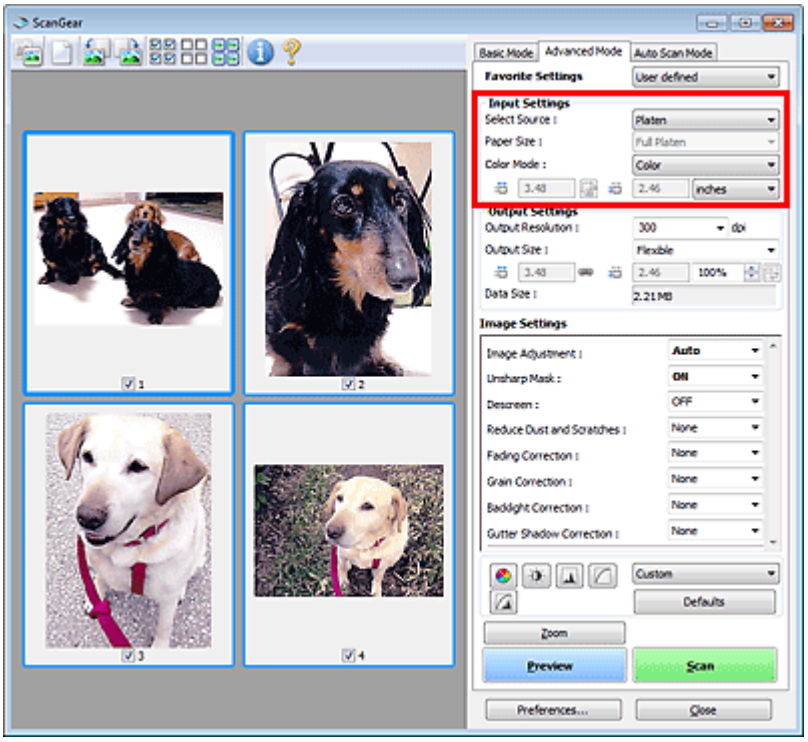
- Scanning in Advanced Mode
- Scanning Film in Advanced Mode

Page top

S804

ScanGear

Input Settings



Input Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Select Source**

  The type of document to be scanned is displayed.

- **Paper Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned. This setting is available in whole image view only.
  When you select a size, the Preview area size changes accordingly.

Important

- Some applications have a limit to the amount of scan data they can receive. ScanGear (scanner driver) can scan data that is of:
  - 21000 pixels x 30000 pixels or less (and 1.8 GB or less in data size)
- If you change Paper Size after previewing, the preview image will be deleted.

Note

- If you are not sure which size you should select for Paper Size, set Paper Size to Full Platen, then measure the size of the document and enter the values into (Width) and (Height).

- **Film Size / Scan Area**

  Select the size of the film to be scanned.

  - **Film Size**

    This is displayed in thumbnail view. The film size is automatically detected.

  - **Scan Area**

    This is displayed in whole image view. Detect the film size automatically or select the size of the

film to be scanned.

Note

- Click  (Film Thumbnail) or  (Whole Film Image) on the Toolbar to switch views.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

  - **Color**

    Select this mode to scan color documents or film, or to create color images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

  - **Color(48bit)**

    Select this mode to scan color photos or film. This mode renders the image in 65536 levels (16 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

  - **Grayscale**

    Select this mode to scan black and white photos or film, or to create black and white images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

  - **Grayscale(16bit)**

    Select this mode to scan film in black and white. This mode renders the image in 65536 levels (16 bit) of black and white.

  - **Black and White**

    Select this mode to scan photos and documents in black and white. This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level) into black and white and is rendered in two colors. The threshold level can be set with  (Threshold).

Important

- Some applications cannot display images scanned in Color(48bit) or Grayscale(16bit).
- Color(48bit) and Grayscale(16bit) are displayed only when the Enable 48/16 bit Output checkbox is selected on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  Scan Tab

- **Input Size**

  In thumbnail view, the cropped document size or film size is displayed after preview.
  In whole image view, the Paper Size is displayed before preview, and the cropping frame (scan area) size or film size is displayed after preview.

  You can adjust the cropping frame size by entering the values into  (Width) and  (Height). Click  (Change Aspect Ratio) and change it to  (Keep Aspect Ratio) to maintain the aspect ratio when you specify the cropping frame size.

Important

- Input size settings are available only when Output Size in Output Settings is Flexible. If you select a size other than Flexible, a cropping frame calculated from Output Size and Output Resolution is displayed, and its aspect ratio is fixed.

Note

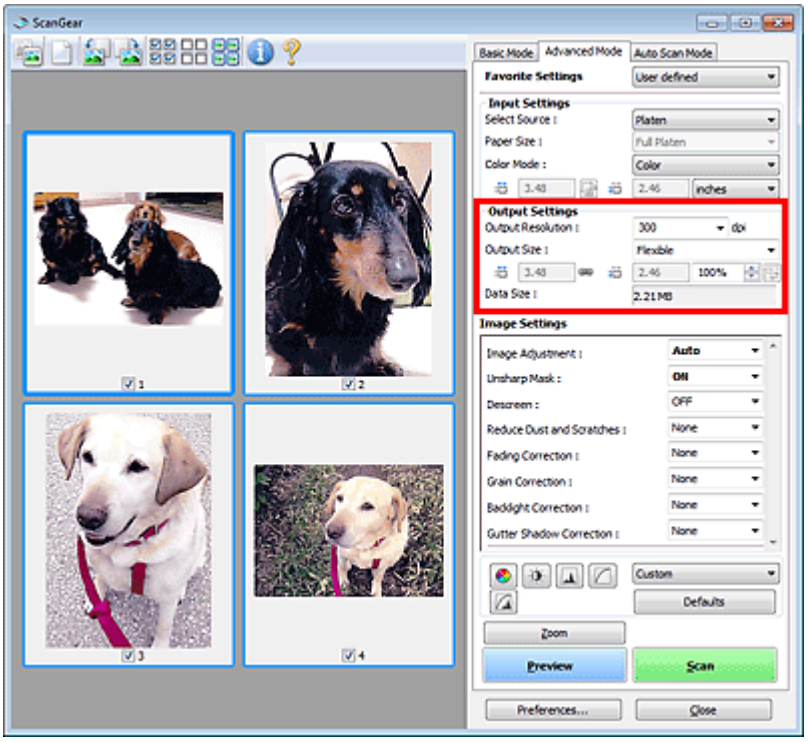
- The values you can enter will be within the range of the selected document size. The minimum size is 96 pixels x 96 pixels when Output Resolution is 600 dpi, scaled at 100%.
- When Auto Crop is performed in whole image view, the aspect ratio will not be maintained since the size will be prioritized.
- See "Adjusting Cropping Frames " for details on cropping frames.

Page top

S805

ScanGear

Output Settings



Output Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Output Resolution**

  Select the resolution to scan at.
  The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.
  Select a resolution from the options displayed by clicking the button, or enter a value within the range of 25 dpi to 19200 dpi (in 1 dpi increments).
  ➡ Resolution

- **Output Size**

  Select an output size.
  Select Flexible to set custom sizes or select a size for printing or displaying. Select Add/Delete... to set custom size and save it as a new output size option.

  - **Flexible**

    You can specify the output resolution and scale, and adjust the cropping frame.

    ### In thumbnail view

    Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

    ### In whole image view

    When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

Note

- To enlarge/reduce the scanned image, enter values into (Width) and (Height) in

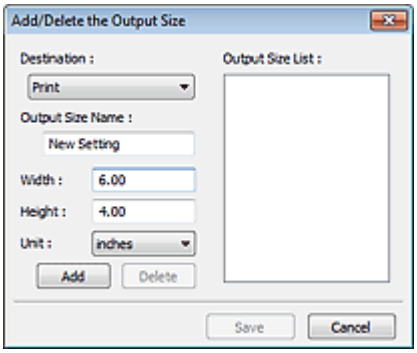
Output Settings or specify a value (by 1%) for %. The maximum value available for % depends on the Output Resolution. % can be specified for up to 19200 dpi (the maximum available output resolution).

- **Paper Size (L, etc.) & Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

(Width), (Height) and scale cannot be specified. The preview image will be cropped according to the selected output size and resolution. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper/monitor size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge, reduce or move it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

Opens the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, in which you can specify custom output sizes.



In the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the Output Size list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, select Print or Image display for Destination, then enter Output Size Name, Width, and Height then click Add. For Unit, you can select inches or mm when Destination is Print but you can only select pixels when Destination is Image display. The name of the added size appears in Output Size List.
Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in Output Size List and click Delete. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as A4 and 1024 x 768 pixels.

Note

- Save up to 10 items for each destination.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the range displayed in the message.

Note

- See "Adjusting Cropping Frames " for details on cropping frames.
- For details on whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " Preview Tab" (Preferences dialog box).

- **(Switch Aspect Ratio)**

This button is available when Output Size is set to anything but Flexible.
Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Data Size**

The file size of the preview image when saved in BMP format is displayed.

Note

- When the file size exceeds a certain size, the value appears in red. In that case, a warning

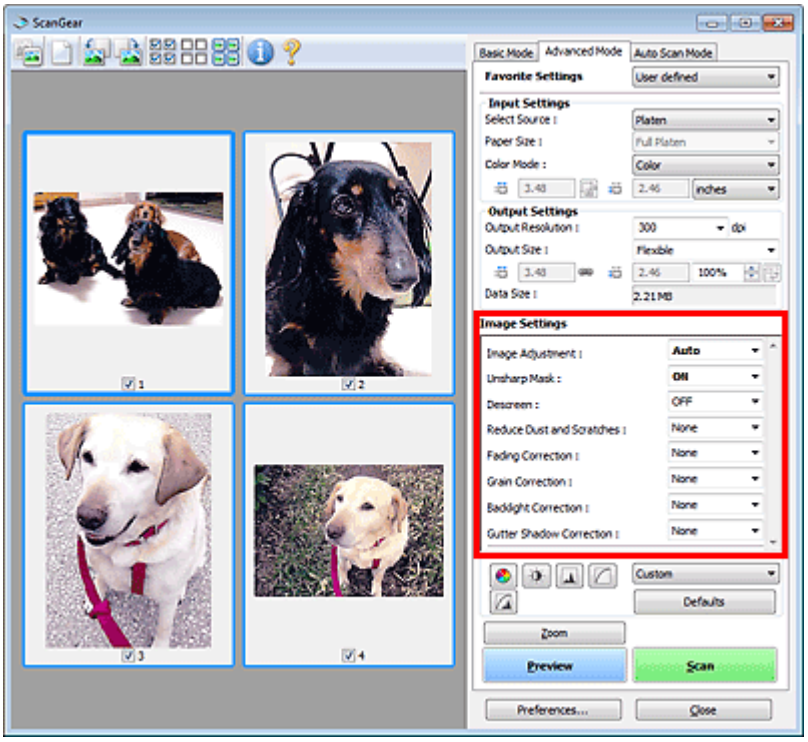
message appears when you click Scan. It is recommended that you adjust the settings to reduce Data Size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

Page top

S806

ScanGear

Image Settings



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- Image correction results may not be reflected in the preview image.

Note

- Selectable settings depend on color mode settings.
- Scanning may take longer when you use Image Settings.

Image Settings allows you to set the following items:

Note

- The setting items vary depending on whether Select Source is Platen or film.

- **Image Adjustment**

  When Image Adjustment is set, the brightness of the specified portion of the image is optimized. Images can be adjusted according to the automatically detected document type or the specified document type. The result of the adjustment will be reflected in the entire image.

  - **None**

    Image Adjustment will not be applied.

  - **Auto**

    Applies Image Adjustment by automatically detecting the document type. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **Photo**

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for photos and film.

- **Magazine**

  Applies Image Adjustment suitable for magazines.

- **Newspaper**

  Applies Image Adjustment suitable for newspapers.

- **Document**

  Applies Image Adjustment suitable for text documents.

Important

- You can set Image Adjustment after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Only Photo and None are available when Select Source is film.
- If the image is not adjusted properly with Auto, specify the document type.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to the Image Adjustment. In that case, set Image Adjustment to None.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  When this is set to ON, the outline of the subjects is emphasized to sharpen the image.

- **Descreen**

  Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Note

- Even if Descreen is set to ON, some moire effects may remain if Unsharp Mask is set to ON. In that case, set Unsharp Mask to OFF.
- Selecting Magazine(Color) in Select Source on the Basic Mode tab has the same effect as setting Descreen to ON on the Advanced Mode tab.

- **Reduce Dust and Scratches**

  Scanned photos and film may contain white dots caused by dust or scratches. Use this function to reduce such noise.

  - **None**

    Dust and scratches will not be reduced.

  - **Low**

    Select this to reduce small dust particles and scratches. Large ones may remain.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this to reduce small/large dust particles and scratches. Evidence of the reduction process may remain and may also remove delicate parts of the image.

Important

- This function may not be effective for some types of photos.

Note

- It is recommended that you select None when scanning printed materials.
- When the resolution is set to 4801 dpi or higher and Reduce Dust and Scratches checkbox is selected, images are scanned at an optical resolution of 4800 dpi then interpolated by the software to yield the specified resolution.

- **Fading Correction**

  Use this function to correct photos and film that have faded with time or have a colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

  - **None**

    Fading correction will not be applied.

  - **Low**

    Select this to correct a small amount of fading and colorcast.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this to correct a large amount of fading and colorcast. This can affect the tone of the image.

Important

- You can set Fading Correction after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.
- Fading Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Grain Correction**

  Use this function to reduce graininess (roughness) in photos taken with high-speed or sensitized film.

  - **None**

    Graininess will not be reduced.

  - **Low**

    Select this when the photo is slightly grainy.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this when the photo is very grainy. This can affect the gradation and sharpness of the image.

Important

- Grain Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Backlight Correction**

  Use this function to correct photos and film that have been shot against light.
  When you change the Backlight Correction setting, the result will be reflected in the preview image.

  - **None**

    Backlight correction will not be applied.

  - **Low**

    Select this to correct slightly backlit photos. This will not affect the image contrast.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this to correct strongly backlit photos. This can affect the image contrast.

Important

- You can set Backlight Correction after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

- Backlight Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

Note

- Noise patterns may appear when Backlight Correction is applied. Applying Grain Correction and setting Unsharp Mask to OFF may reduce the noise patterns.

- **Gutter Shadow Correction**

  Use this function to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.
  When you set the Gutter Shadow Correction setting in the preview image, the result will be reflected.
  Preview the effects before scanning, as results vary depending on the type of document and how it is pressed.
  Unclear or blurred text/lines caused by curved pages are not corrected.

  - **None**

    Gutter shadow will not be corrected.

  - **Low**

    Select this when the effect level is too strong with the medium setting.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this when the effect level is too weak with the medium setting.

Important

- Do not place items that weigh 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg) or more on the Platen. Also, do not press on the document with a force exceeding 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg). If you press heavily, the scanner may not work correctly or you might break the glass.
- Align the document with the edge of the Platen. If not, the shadow will not be corrected properly.



- Shadows may not be corrected properly depending on the document. If the page background is not white, shadows may not be detected correctly or may not be detected at all.
- While scanning, press down on the spine with the same amount of pressure you used to preview the scan. If the binding part is not even, the shadow will not be corrected properly.



- How to place the document depends on your model and the document to be scanned.

Note

- Cover the document with black cloth if white spots, streaks, or colored patterns appear in scan results due to ambient light entering between the document and the Platen.
- If the shadow is not corrected properly, adjust the cropping frame on the preview image.

Adjusting Cropping Frames

- **Exposure/Tone Settings (Film only)**
  - **Manual Exposure**

    This function enables you to adjust the exposure data according to the film.
    When this checkbox is not selected, the optimal exposure data (the exposure level for each RGB channel and compensation levels) is automatically set according to the color density of the portion within the cropping area of the film.
    Select this checkbox if you intend to adjust the image using an application after it is scanned or to scan with an under-exposed or over-exposed effect.
    After you select this checkbox, you can adjust the exposure in 1% increments within the range of 50% to 200%.

    Important
    - You can set Manual Exposure after preview.
    - This setting is not available when Apply the tone value to all frames / Apply the tone value to all crops is applied.

    Note
    - When this checkbox is not selected, the time required for scanning varies by film since the exposure is automatically optimized according to the film.

  - **Apply the tone value to all frames** / **Apply the tone value to all crops**

    "All frames" is displayed in thumbnail view, and "All crops" is displayed in whole image view.
    Click Apply to reflect the color adjustment data of the selected film frame or the portion within the selected cropping frame into other frames. This color adjustment data will be used in subsequent scans. It will remain in effect until you click Reset.
    This is useful when you want to scan film of photos taken on the same day in the same place, in a consistent color tone.

    Important
    - You can set Apply the tone value to all frames / Apply the tone value to all crops after preview.

  - **High Quality**

    Set to ON to improve the image quality and reduce noise when scanning film.

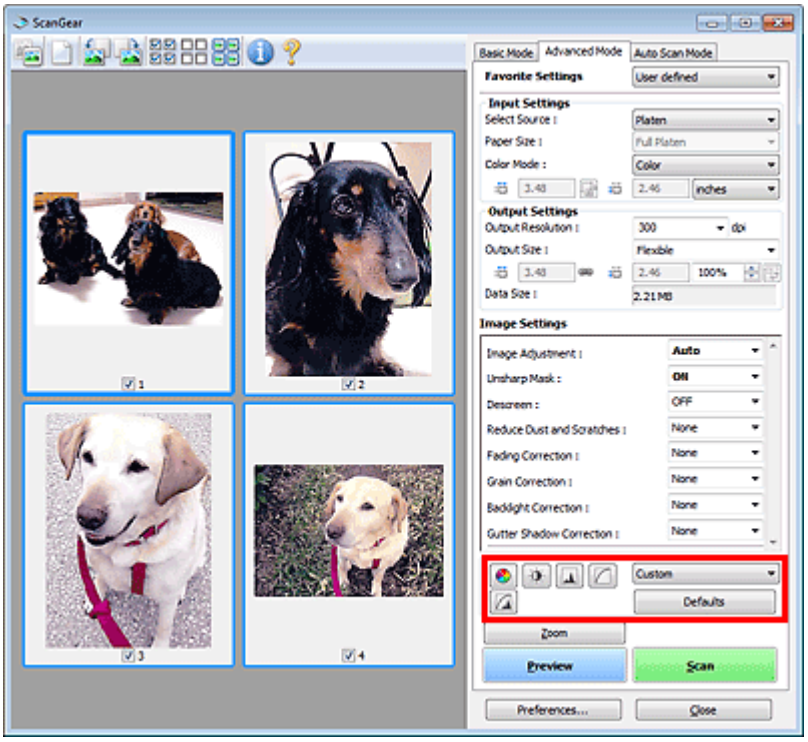
    Important
    - Image quality may not change depending on the film type.
    - This setting is not available when Apply the tone value to all frames / Apply the tone value to all crops is applied.

Page top

S807

ScanGear

Color Adjustment Buttons



The Color Adjustment Buttons allow you to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones. You can adjust the image's overall brightness or contrast, and adjust its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).

Important

- The Color Adjustment Buttons are not available when you select Color Matching on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- When Select Source is film, you can use the Color Adjustment Buttons after preview.
- Selectable settings depend on color mode settings.
- When you adjust the image via the Color Adjustment Buttons, the results will be reflected in the preview image.

Click a Color Adjustment Button to set the following items:

-  **(Saturation/Color Balance)**

  Adjust the saturation (vividness) and color tone of the image. Use this function to brighten colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

  Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

-  **(Brightness/Contrast)**

  Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image. If the image is too dark or too bright, or if the image quality is flat due to lack of contrast, you can adjust the levels of brightness and contrast.

  Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

-  **(Histogram)**

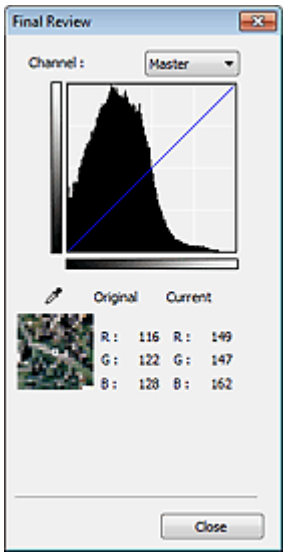
  A histogram allows you to see the data concentration at each brightness level of an image. You can specify the darkest level (shadow) and brightest level (highlight) within an image, cut the levels and expand the middle of the tonal range of the image.
  Adjusting Histogram

-  **(Tone Curve Settings)**

  Adjust the brightness of an image by selecting the type of graph (tone curve) showing the balance of tone input and output. You can make fine adjustments to the brightness of a specific area.
  Adjusting Tone Curve

-  **(Final Review)**

  Make a final check of color adjustments. The final synthesized tone curve and the histogram derived from the subsequent image processing will be displayed. There are no settings to make in this screen.



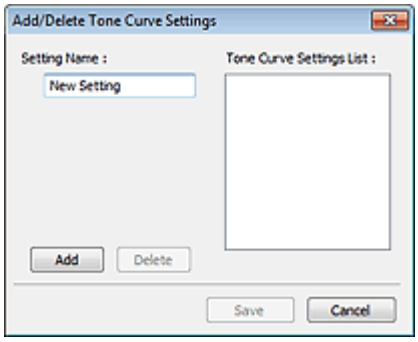
  - For a color image, select a color in Channel to check either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to check three colors together.
  - If you place the cursor on the preview image, the portion will be enlarged and its RGB values (only L when Color Mode is Grayscale) before and after the adjustments will be displayed.

-  **(Threshold)**

  Set the boundary (threshold) at which black and white are divided. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.
  Setting Threshold

- **Custom**

  You can name and save a set of tone curve and threshold settings of the Color Adjustment Buttons. Select Add/Delete... from the pull-down menu. When Color Mode is set to anything but Black and White, the Add/Delete Tone Curve Settings dialog box opens. When Color Mode is Black and White, the Add/Delete Threshold Settings dialog box opens.



Enter Setting Name and click Add. The name appears in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List.
Click Save to save.
You can load and apply the saved tone curve/threshold settings to a preview image. To load the settings, select the saved item from the pull-down menu.
To delete an item, select it in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List and click Delete.
Click Save to save settings displayed in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List.

Note

- Save up to 20 items.

- **Defaults**

  Reset all adjustments (saturation/color balance, brightness/contrast, histogram and tone curve).

Page top

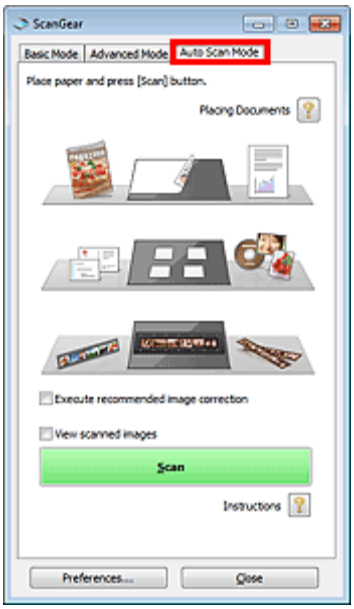
S813

ScanGear

Auto Scan Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by simply placing documents on the Platen and clicking a button.

On the Auto Scan Mode tab, documents are automatically detected. You do not need to specify cropping frames or make image corrections.



- **Supported Documents**

  Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents, BD/DVD/CD and film.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. In that case, specify the document type or size on the Basic Mode tab or the Advanced Mode tab and scan.
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos

  ➡ Scanning in Basic Mode
  ➡ Scanning in Advanced Mode
- To scan black and white film, scan from the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

  ➡ Scanning Film in Advanced Mode
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.

  See "Placing Documents " for details on how to place documents.

Note

- Scan from the " Basic Mode Tab " or "Advanced Mode Tab " to reduce moire.

- **Placing Documents**

  "Placing Documents " appears.

- **Execute recommended image correction**

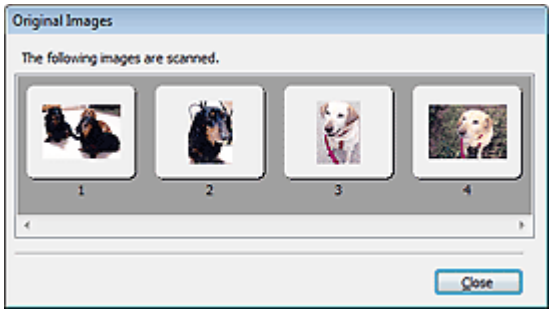
  Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

  Important

  - When this checkbox is selected in ScanGear started from MP Navigator EX, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
  - Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
  - You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  - The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **View scanned images**

  Select this checkbox to display the thumbnails of scanned images in a different window.



- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

  Note

  - When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
  - When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning in "Scan Tab" (Preferences dialog box).

- **Instructions**

  This page appears.

- **Preferences...**

  The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.

  Preferences Dialog Box

- **Close**

  Closes ScanGear.

Related Topic

Scanning in Auto Scan Mode

Page top

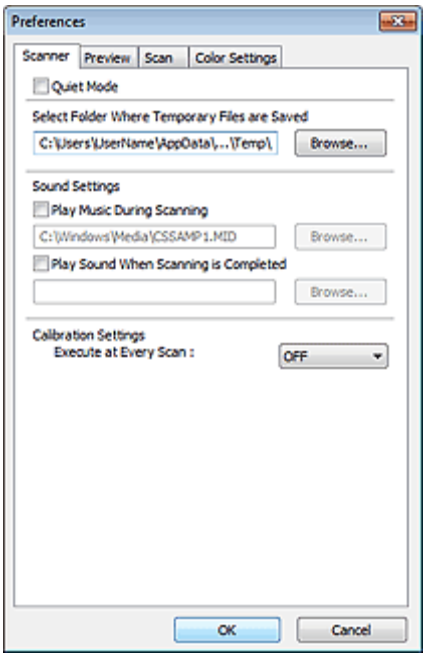
S808

ScanGear

Preferences Dialog Box

Click Preferences... in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen to open Preferences dialog box.

In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to ScanGear functions via the Scanner, Preview, Scan and Color Settings tabs.



Scanner Tab

Allows you to specify a folder to save images temporarily and a music file to play during or at the end of a scan.

➡ Scanner Tab

Preview Tab

Allows you to select what to do with Preview when ScanGear is started and how to display cropping frames after previewing images. You can also select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents and film.

➡ Preview Tab

Scan Tab

Allows you to select what to do with ScanGear after scanning, set the option for scanning film into applications that do not open the ScanGear screen, and set the Color Mode (48/16 bit output) option for Advanced Mode tab.

➡ Scan Tab

Color Settings Tab

Allows you to select how to adjust color, and specify the monitor gamma value.

➡ Color Settings Tab

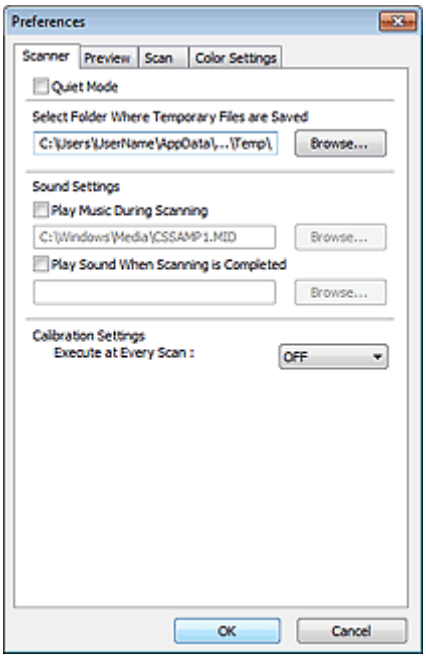
Page top

S812

ScanGear

Scanner Tab

On the Scanner tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Quiet Mode**

  Select this checkbox to reduce scanner sound by slowing down the scanner head when previewing or scanning documents.

  Note

  - Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

- **Select Folder Where Temporary Files are Saved**

  Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

- **Sound Settings**

  You can set the machine to play music during/at the end of a scan.
  Select the Play Music During Scanning or Play Sound When Scanning is Completed checkbox, then click Browse... and specify a sound file.
  You can specify the following files.
  - MIDI file (*.mid, *.rmi, *.midi)
  - Audio file (*.wav, *.aif, *.aiff)
  - MP3 file (*.mp3)

- **Calibration Settings**

  When you set Execute at Every Scan to ON, the scanner will be calibrated every time before previewing and scanning, to reproduce correct color tones in scanned images. For film, the scanner will be calibrated every time before previewing.

  Note

  - Even when Execute at Every Scan is set to OFF, the scanner may be calibrated automatically in some cases (such as immediately after you turn the machine on).
  - Calibration may take time depending on your computer.

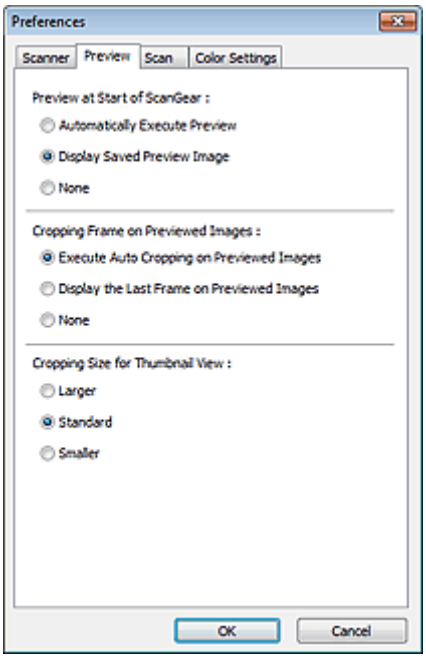
Page top

S809

ScanGear

Preview Tab

On the Preview tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Preview at Start of ScanGear**

  Select what to do with Preview when ScanGear (scanner driver) is started.

  - **Automatically Execute Preview**

    ScanGear will automatically start previewing at startup.

  - **Display Saved Preview Image**

    The previously previewed image will be displayed.
    The Color Adjustment Button settings, the Toolbar settings, and the Advanced Mode tab settings are also saved.

  - **None**

    No preview image will be displayed at startup.

Note

- Select None if you do not want to save the preview image.

- **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images**

  Select how to display cropping frames after previewing images.

  - **Execute Auto Cropping on Previewed Images**

    The cropping frame will automatically be displayed in the document size after previewing.

  - **Display the Last Frame on Previewed Images**

    A cropping frame of the same size as the last used cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

  - **None**

No cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

- **Cropping Size for Thumbnail View**

  Select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents and film.

  - **Larger**

    Displays 105% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

  - **Standard**

    The standard size.

  - **Smaller**

    Displays 95% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

Note

- When you change the Cropping Size for Thumbnail View setting, the preview images will be refreshed and cropped to the new size. As the preview images are refreshed, the color adjustments and other settings applied to them are reset.

Page top

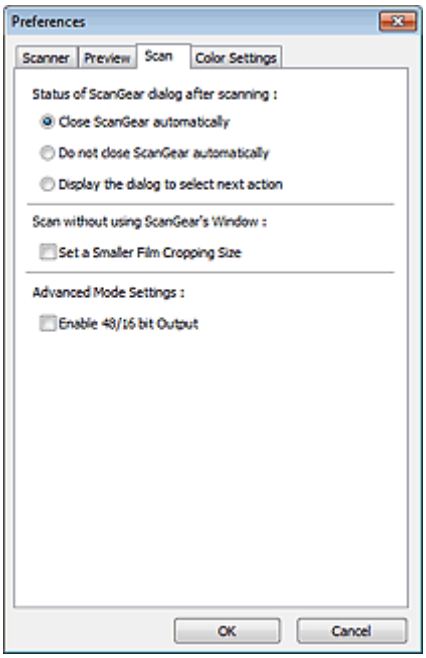
Advanced Guide

S810

ScanGear

Scan Tab

On the Scan tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning**

  Select what to do with ScanGear (scanner driver) after scanning images.

  - **Close ScanGear automatically**

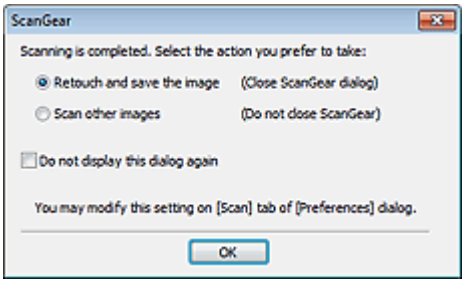
    Select this to return to the original application when scanning is completed.

  - **Do not close ScanGear automatically**

    Select this to return to the ScanGear screen for another scan when scanning is completed.

  - **Display the dialog to select next action**

    Select this to open a screen and select what to do when scanning is completed.

Note

- Even if Do not close ScanGear automatically or Display the dialog to select next action is set, some applications may not support it.

- **Scan without using ScanGear's Window**

  Set the option for scanning film into applications that do not open the ScanGear screen.

- **Set a Smaller Film Cropping Size**

  Select this checkbox to display 95% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard film size.

Important

- This setting is not applied when scanning with the ScanGear screen displayed.

- **Advanced Mode Settings**

  - **Enable 48/16 bit Output**

    When Select Source is film on the Advanced Mode tab, select this checkbox to display Color(48bit) and Grayscale(16bit) in Color Mode.

    Important

    - Some applications cannot receive images scanned in Color(48bit) or Grayscale(16bit), or may close when such images are received.

    Note

    - When Color(48bit) or Grayscale(16bit) is selected for Color Mode, deselecting this checkbox changes Color(48bit) to Color and Grayscale(16bit) to Grayscale.

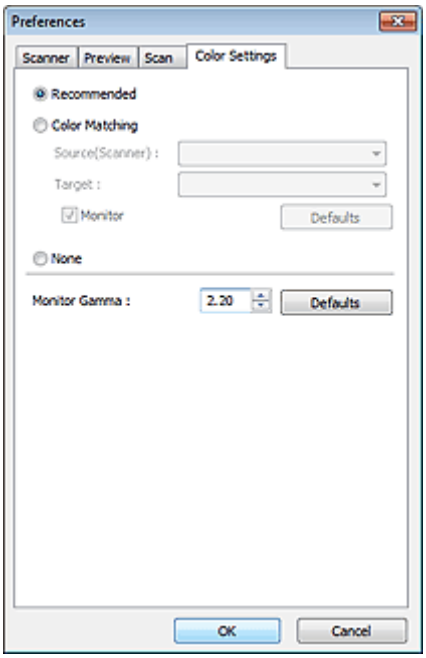
Page top

S811

ScanGear

Color Settings Tab

On the Color Settings tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Color Adjustment**

  Select either of the following.
  You can select one when Color Mode is Color, Color(48bit), Grayscale or Grayscale(16bit).

  - **Recommended**

    Select this to vividly reproduce the tone of a document on the screen. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **Color Matching**

    Select this to automatically match the scanner, monitor and color printer colors, thus reducing time and trouble to manually match the monitor and printer colors.
    Color Adjustment Buttons will be disabled.
    This function is available when Color Mode is Color or Color(48bit).
    - Source(Scanner): Select scanner profile.
    - Target: Select target profile.
    - Monitor: Select this to display preview image with optimum correction for monitor.
    - Defaults: Returns to the default Color Matching settings.

  - **None**

    Select this to disable color correction provided by ScanGear (scanner driver).

Note

- Color Matching is available when ScanGear, monitor, color management-compliant application (such as Adobe Photoshop) and printer are set up correctly.
  Refer to the corresponding manual for the monitor, printer and application settings.

- **Monitor Gamma**

  By setting the gamma value of a monitor, you can adjust the input data to the brightness

characteristics of the monitor. Adjust the value if your monitor's gamma value does not match the default value set in ScanGear, and the colors of the original image are not accurately reflected in the monitor.
Click Defaults to return to the default Monitor Gamma value (2.20).

Note

- Refer to the manual of your monitor to check its gamma value. If it is not written in the manual, contact the manufacturer.

Page top

S012

Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning

- **Adjusting the cropping frame (scan area)**

  Adjusting Cropping Frames
- **Selecting the best resolution**

  Resolution
- **Learning about file formats**

  File Formats
- **Learning about Color Matching**

  Color Matching
- **Matching the colors between the document and monitor**

  See Monitor Gamma in the following section.
  Color Settings Tab

Page top

S802

Adjusting Cropping Frames

You can specify the scan area by creating a cropping frame on the image displayed in the Preview area of the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen. When you click Scan, only the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned and passed to the application.

Cropping Frame Types



(1) Active Cropping Frame (rotating thick broken lines)

The settings on the Basic Mode tab or Advanced Mode tab will be applied.

(2) Selected Cropping Frame (stationary thick broken lines)

The settings will be applied to the Active Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.

(3) Unselected Cropping Frame (stationary thin broken lines)

The settings will not be applied.

Note

- Active Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames are displayed in whole image view.

Initial Cropping Frame

In thumbnail view

Cropping frame is not displayed initially. Drag the mouse over a frame to create a cropping frame.

In whole image view

A cropping frame (Active Cropping Frame) is displayed automatically around the preview image according to the document size. You can also create a cropping frame by dragging the mouse in the Preview area.

Note

- Cropping frames are set according to the document size (Auto Crop) by default. For details, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " Preview Tab " (Preferences dialog box).

Adjusting a Cropping Frame

The cursor will change into  (Arrow) when it is positioned over a cropping frame. If you click and drag the mouse in the direction of the arrow, the cropping frame will expand or contract accordingly.



The cursor will change into (Crosshair arrow) when it is positioned within a cropping frame. Click and drag the mouse to move the entire cropping frame.



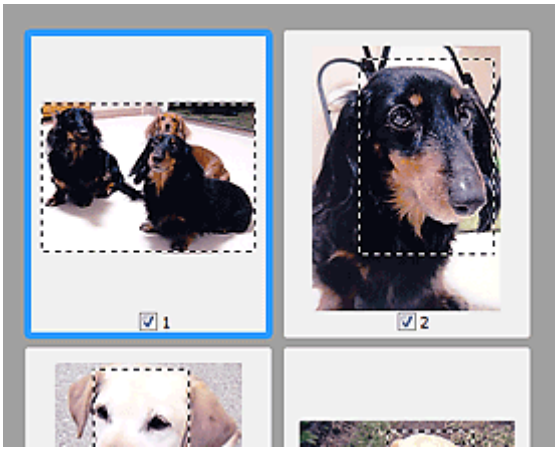
Note

- In Advanced Mode tab, you can specify the cropping frame size by entering the values into (Width) and (Height) in Input Settings.
  Input Settings
- You can rotate a cropping frame 90 degrees by clicking (Switch Aspect Ratio). However, (Switch Aspect Ratio) is not available when Output Size is Flexible.

Creating Multiple Cropping Frames

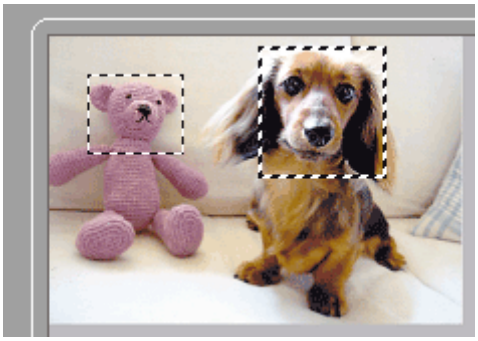
In thumbnail view

You can only create one cropping frame per image.



In whole image view

Click and drag the mouse in a space outside the existing cropping frame to create a new cropping frame in the Preview area. The new cropping frame will be the Active Cropping Frame, and the old cropping frame will be the Unselected Cropping Frame.



You can create multiple cropping frames and apply different scan settings to each cropping frame.

You can also select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.

If you select multiple cropping frames and change the settings on a tab at the right of ScanGear, the settings will be applied to all the selected cropping frames.

When you create a new cropping frame, it retains the settings of the latest cropping frame.

Note

- The maximum numbers of cropping frames are as follows:
  - When document type is paper or photo: 12 frames
  - When document type is film: 30 frames
- Scanning takes longer than usual when multiple cropping frames are selected.

Deleting Cropping Frames

In thumbnail view

To delete a cropping frame, click an area outside the cropping frame on an image.

In whole image view

To delete a cropping frame, select it and click  (Remove Cropping Frame) on the Toolbar. Alternatively, press the Delete key.

When there are multiple cropping frames, all the selected cropping frames (Active Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames) are deleted simultaneously.

Page top

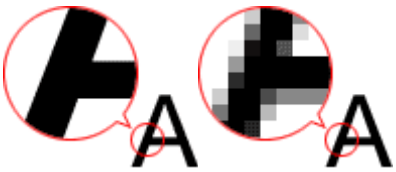
S309

Resolution

What is Resolution?

The data in the image you have scanned is a collection of dots carrying information about brightness and color. The density of these dots is called "resolution", and resolution will determine the amount of detail your image contains. The unit of resolution is dots per inch (dpi). Dpi is the number of dots per inch (2.54 cm).

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image; the lower the resolution (value), the less detail.



Setting the Resolution in MP Navigator EX

In MP Navigator EX, you can specify the resolution with Scanning Resolution in the Scan Settings dialog box.

Images for Display on a Monitor

Documents to be viewed on a display should be scanned at 150 dpi, which is close to ordinary monitor resolution.

For film, set the resolution to 600 dpi since images are enlarged approximately four times their original size when scanned.

Images for Printing

Images to be printed should be scanned at a resolution that corresponds to the resolution of the printer.

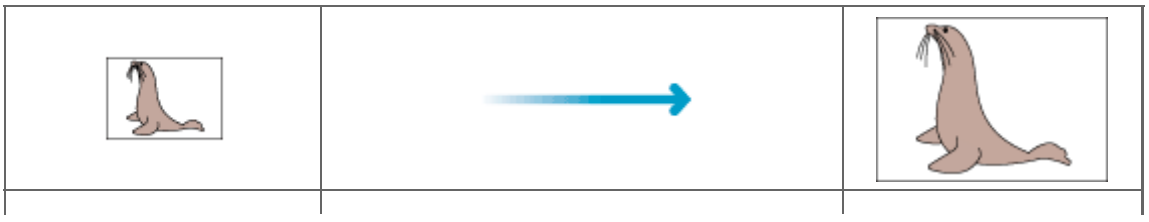
For example, if you want to print documents using a 600 dpi black and white printer, you should set the resolution to 600 dpi. For film, set to 2400 dpi since images are enlarged approximately four times their original size when scanned.

With a color printer, specifying the resolution at half the resolution of the printer should be fine. For example, if you want to print using a 600 dpi color printer, you should set the resolution to 300 dpi for documents and 1200 dpi for film. However, with a high-resolution printer, printing takes longer than usual if you set the resolution to half the resolution of the printer.

Example of Appropriate Resolution when Printing to Scale

If you print a document at twice the size both vertically and horizontally, the resolution of the document will be reduced by half. If the resolution of the original document is 300 dpi, the resolution of the enlarged document will be 150 dpi. If you print the document with a 600 dpi color printer, the lack of detail in the image may be obvious. In that case, if you scan at the Scanning Resolution of 600 dpi, the resolution will be 300 dpi even if you double the size of document and you can print the document with sufficient quality. Conversely, if you print a document at half scale, it should be sufficient to scan at half the resolution.

When Printing Color Photos at Twice the Size



Document resolution: 300 dpi Scanning resolution: 600 dpi Scale: 200%	Print at twice the size Scanning resolution/actual scanning resolution: 600 dpi	Printing resolution: 300 dpi

When Printing Color Film at L Size

		
Document resolution: 300 dpi Scanning resolution: 1200 dpi Scale: 400%	Print at four times the size Scanning resolution/actual scanning resolution: 1200 dpi	Printing resolution: 300 dpi

Setting the Resolution in ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

In ScanGear, you can specify the resolution with Output Resolution in Output Settings on the Advanced Mode tab.

Example of Appropriate Resolution when Printing to Scale

The scanning resolution is automatically set so that the value set in Output Resolution will be the resolution of the scanned image. If you set Output Resolution to 300 dpi and scan at twice the size, the document will be automatically scanned at 600 dpi, and the resolution of the scanned image will be 300 dpi. You can print the document with sufficient quality using a 600 dpi color printer.

When Printing L Size (3.5 inches x 5 inches) (89 mm x 127 mm) Photos at Twice the Size

		
Document resolution: 300 dpi Output resolution: 300 dpi Scale: 200%	Scan at twice the size Actual scanning resolution: 600 dpi	Image resolution/printing resolution: 300 dpi

When Printing 35 mm Color Film (0.9 inches x 1.4 inches) (24 mm x 36 mm) at L Size (3.5 inches x 5 inches) (89 mm x 127 mm)

		
Document resolution: 300 dpi Output resolution: 300 dpi Scale: 400%	Scan at four times the size Actual scanning resolution: 1200 dpi	Image resolution/printing resolution: 300 dpi

Appropriate Resolution Settings

Set the resolution according to the use of the scanned image.

Note

- Although you can change Output Resolution in ScanGear, it is recommended that you scan at the default value.

For displaying on a monitor: 150 dpi

For printing: 300 dpi

When Output Size is set to Flexible in ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab (scale is 100%)

Document	Use	Color Mode	Output Resolution
Film	Copying (Printing)	Color	1200 dpi
Color photo	Copying (Printing)	Color	300 dpi
	Creating a postcard	Color	300 dpi
	Saving to a computer	Color	75 dpi - 300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Color	75 dpi - 150 dpi
Black and white photo	Saving to a computer	Grayscale	75 dpi - 300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Grayscale	75 dpi - 150 dpi
Text document	Copying	Color, Grayscale or Black and White	300 dpi
	Attaching to e-mail	Color, Grayscale or Black and White	150 dpi
	Scanning text using OCR	Color or Grayscale	300 dpi - 400 dpi

Important

- If you double the resolution, the file size quadruples. If the file is too large, the processing speed will slow down significantly, and you will experience inconvenience such as lack of memory. Set the minimum required resolution according to the use of the image.

Page top

S310

File Formats

You can select a file format when saving scanned images. You should specify the most suitable format according to how you want to use the image on which application.

Available file formats vary by application and computer (Windows or Macintosh).

See below for the characteristics of each image file format.

BMP (Standard File Extension: .bmp)

A standard file format for Windows.

BMP is often selected for images that are used only on Windows.

JPEG (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A file format often used on websites and for digital camera images.

JPEG features high compression rates. JPEG images slightly degrade every time they are saved, and cannot be returned to their original state.

JPEG is not available for black and white images.

Exif (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A file format supported by many digital cameras.

It adds information such as the date of image capture, camera model, shutter speed, shooting mode and comments to JPEG files.

The file format version must be Exif 2.2 or later in order to print on a Direct Print compatible printer.

TIFF (Standard File Extension: .tif)

A file format featuring a relatively high compatibility between various computers and applications. (Some TIFF files are incompatible.) TIFF is suitable for editing saved images.

Note

- MP Navigator EX supports the following TIFF file formats.
  - Uncompressed, black and white binary
  - Uncompressed, RGB (8 bits per channel)
  - Uncompressed, YCC (8 bits per component)
  - Uncompressed, RGB (16 bits per channel)
  - Uncompressed, YCC (16 bits per component)
  - Uncompressed, Grayscale

PDF (Standard File Extension: .pdf)

A file format developed by Adobe Systems. It can be used on various computers and operating systems. Therefore, PDF files can be exchanged between people who use different operating systems, fonts, etc. regardless of the differences.

Important

- Only PDF files created with MP Navigator EX are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.

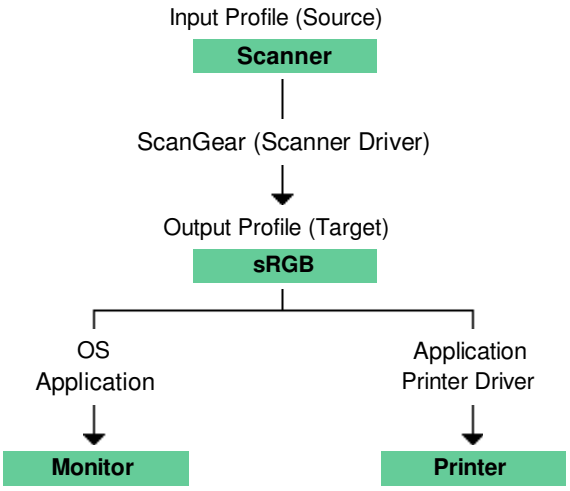
Page top

S815

Color Matching

Color Matching adjusts devices as shown below to match the colors of an image displayed on a monitor or a printed image with the colors of the original document.

Example: When sRGB is selected as the output profile (target)



ScanGear converts the image's color space from the scanner's color space to sRGB.

When displaying on a monitor, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the monitor's color space based on the operating system's monitor settings and the application's working space settings.

When printing, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the printer's color space based on the application's print settings and the printer driver's settings.

Page top

Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Screens

Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Menu and Setting Screen

Page top

S814

Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Menu and Setting Screen

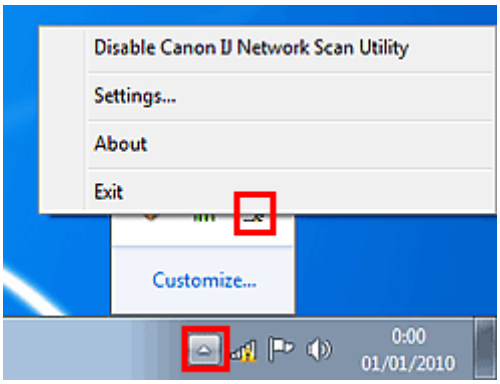
Set up Canon IJ Network Scan Utility to scan images into a computer over a network using the Operation Panel of the machine.

After installation, Canon IJ Network Scan Utility appears in the notification area of the taskbar.

Note

- If (Enabled) is not displayed in the notification area of the taskbar, from the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon IJ Network Utilities > Canon IJ Network Scan Utility > Canon IJ Network Scan Utility to start it.

Menu



- **Disable Canon IJ Network Scan Utility or Enable Canon IJ Network Scan Utility**

  Enables or disables Canon IJ Network Scan Utility.
  When you select Disable Canon IJ Network Scan Utility, you will not be able to scan over a network using the Operation Panel.

  Enabled: , Disabled:

- **Settings...**

  The Canon IJ Network Scan Utility dialog box opens. You can select the product you want to use.

- **About**

  Displays the version information.

- **Exit**

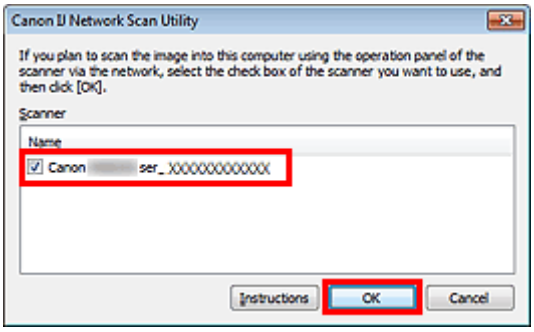
  Exits Canon IJ Network Scan Utility. (Enabled) disappears from the notification area of the taskbar.

Canon IJ Network Scan Utility Dialog Box

The machine must be selected with Canon IJ Network Scan Utility before scanning over a network.

In the notification area of the taskbar, right-click the icon and select Settings... to open the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility dialog box.

Normally, the machine is already selected. In that case, you do not need to select it again.



Select the product you want to use.

Scanners that are registered to the system are displayed. Select the checkbox of the product you want to use.

You can select up to three scanners.

Click Instructions to open this page.

Note

- If the scanner you want to use is not displayed, check the following conditions and click OK to close the dialog box, then reopen it and select the scanner.
  - The MP Drivers is installed
  - Network setup is completed after installing the MP Drivers
  - Network communication between the product and computer is enabled

  If the scanner is still not displayed, see " Troubleshooting ."
- You do not need to use this software when scanning via USB or from a computer. See " Uninstalling the Canon IJ Network Tool/Canon IJ Network Scan Utility " to delete it. You can scan via USB or from a computer even if it is not deleted.

Page top

Other Scanning Methods

- Scanning with WIA Driver
- Scanning Using the Control Panel (Windows XP Only)

Page top

S604

Scanning with WIA Driver

You can scan an image from a WIA-compliant application and use the image in that application.

WIA (Windows Image Acquisition) is a driver model implemented in Windows XP or later. It allows you to scan documents without using an application. Scan documents from a TWAIN-compliant application to specify advanced settings for scanning.

The procedure varies depending on the application. The following procedures are examples only.

For details, refer to the application's manual.

Important

- In Windows XP, you cannot scan using the WIA driver via a network connection.
- You cannot scan film using the WIA driver.
- Complete the following settings to enable scanning over a network.
  1. From the Start menu, select Computer > Network.
  2. Right-click (model name) _MAC address in the displayed screen, then select Install.

Scanning with WIA Driver 2.0

The following is an example of scanning using "Windows Fax and Scan."

1. Place the document on the Platen.

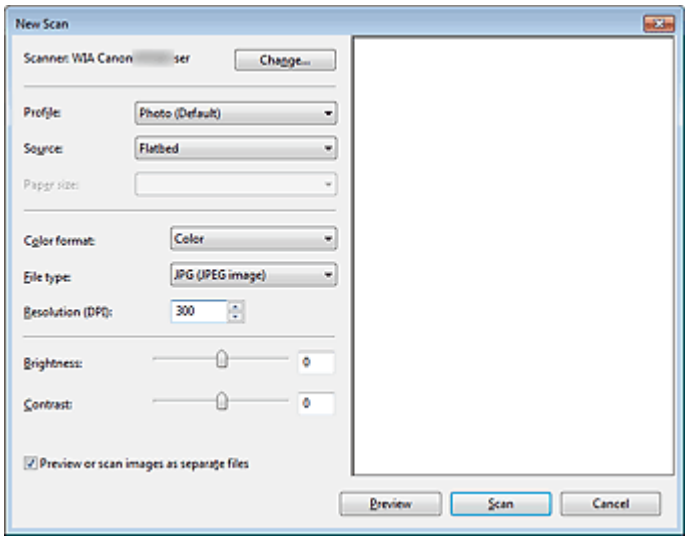
Placing Documents

2. Click Scan... from New on the File menu.

For network connection, double-click (model name) _MAC address from the list.

The scan setting screen appears.

3. Specify the settings.



- **Scanner**

  The currently set product name is displayed. To change the scanner, click Change... and select the product you want to use.

- **Profile**

  Select Photo (Default) or Documents according to the document to be scanned. To save a new

Profile, select Add profile.... You can specify the details in the Add New Profile dialog box.

- **Source**

  Select a scanner type.

- **Paper size**

  This setting is not available for this machine.

- **Color format**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **File type**

  Select a file format from JPEG, BMP, PNG and TIFF.

- **Resolution (DPI)**

  Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi. 300 dpi is set by default.
  Resolution

- **Brightness**

  Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-100 to 100).

- **Contrast**

  Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-100 to 100).

- **Preview or scan images as separate files**

  Select this checkbox to preview or scan multiple images as separate files.

Note

- With network connection, you cannot specify Brightness and Contrast.

4. Click Preview to preview the image.

   The preview image appears on the right.

5. Click Scan.

   When scanning is completed, the scanned image appears in the application.

Scanning with WIA Driver 1.0

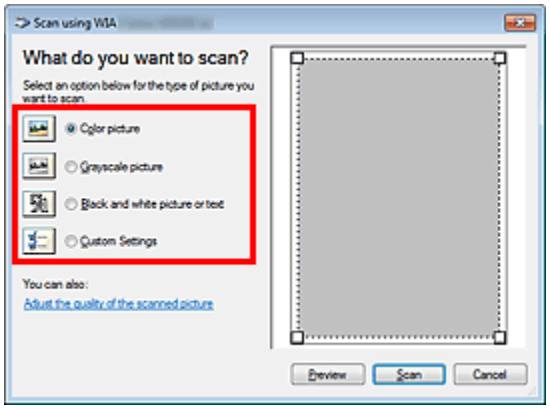
The following is an example of scanning using "Paint."

1. Place the document on the Platen.

   Placing Documents

2. Click From scanner or camera from . (Select the command to scan a document in the application.)

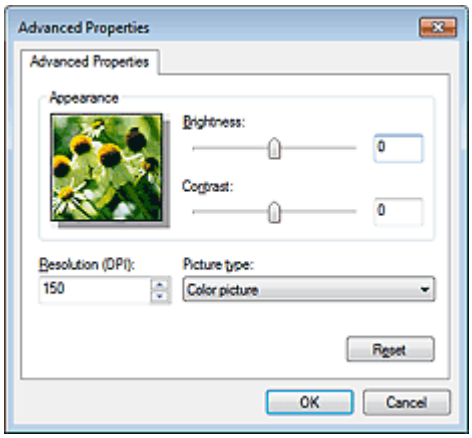
3. Select an image type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- With network connection, an image type that can be selected may differ from that for USB connection.
- To scan with the values previously set in Adjust the quality of the scanned picture, select Custom Settings.

4. Click Adjust the quality of the scanned picture and set the preferences as required.



- **Brightness**

  Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Contrast**

  Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Resolution (DPI)**

  Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi.
  Resolution

- **Picture type**

  Select the type of scan you want for your document.

- **Reset**

  Click to restore the original settings.

Note

- With network connection, you cannot specify Brightness and Contrast.

5. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right. Drag ❑ to specify the scan area.

6. Click Scan.

When scanning is completed, the scanned image appears in the application.

Page top

S605

Scanning Using the Control Panel (Windows XP Only)

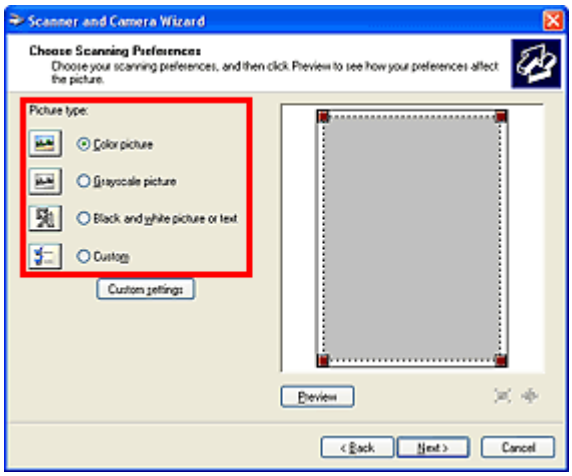
You can scan images via the Control Panel of Windows XP using the WIA driver.

Important

- With network connection, you cannot scan using the WIA driver.
- You cannot scan film using the Control Panel.

1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.
2. Click Printers and Other Hardware > Scanners and Cameras, then double-click WIA Canon (model name).

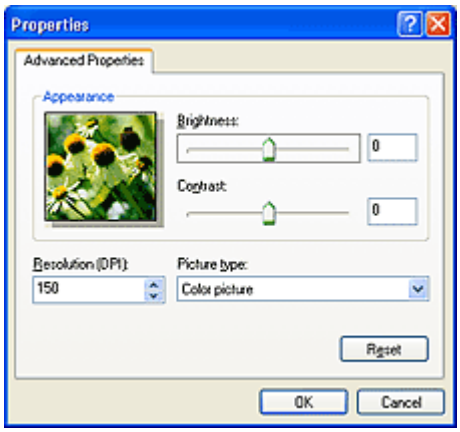
   The Scanner and Camera Wizard dialog box opens.
3. Click Next.
4. Select Picture type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- To scan with the values previously set in Custom settings, select Custom.

5. Click Custom settings to set the preferences as required.



- **Brightness**

  Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Contrast**

  Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Resolution (DPI)**

  Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi.
  Resolution

- **Picture type**

  Select the type of scan you want for your document.

- **Reset**

  Click to restore the original settings.

6. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right. Drag to specify the scan area.

7. Click Next and follow the instructions.

Page top

About Disc Label Printing

Printing a Disc Label
Troubleshooting

Page top

Printing a Disc Label

- Items to Prepare
- Cautions When Printing on the Disc Label
- Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray
- Printing on the Disc Label
- Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer
- Printing Area

Page top

D018

Items to Prepare

The following items are needed to print onto the printable disc:

- **Disc Tray**



"G" is on the upper side.

- **3.15 inches / 8 cm Disc Adapter**



Needed only when printing on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.

Attached to the Disc Tray when shipped.

Important

- You need to print from the computer to print on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.

- **Printable Discs**

Obtain a 4.72 inches / 12 cm or 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable disc with a label surface compatible with inkjet printing.

A "printable disc" differs from regular BD/DVD/CDs in that its label surface has been specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

Page top

D001

Cautions When Printing on the Disc Label

- Be sure to use the Disc Tray supplied with this machine. It has an "G" on the upper side.
- Do not print on printable discs that are not compatible with inkjet printing. The ink will not dry and may cause problems with the disc itself or devices which the disc is loaded onto.
- Do not print on the printable discs' recording surface. Doing so will make data recorded on discs unreadable.
- Hold the printable discs by their edges. Do not touch either the label surface (printing surface) or recording surface.
- Remove any dirt from the Disc Tray before placing printable discs on the Disc Tray. Loading discs in a dirty Disc Tray may scratch the recording surface of the discs.
- After printing, allow the printing surface of the disc to dry naturally. Do not use hairdryers or expose the disc to direct sunlight to dry the ink. Do not touch the printing surface until the ink has dried.
- Do not attach the Disc Tray while the machine is in operation.
- Do not remove the Disc Tray while printing on printable discs. Doing so may damage the machine, the Disc Tray, or the disc.
- Do not get dirt or scratches on the reflectors of the Disc Tray. The machine may not be able to recognize loading of the printable disc, or printing may become misaligned. If the reflectors on the Disc Tray become dirty, wipe the reflector clean with a soft, dry cloth, taking care not to scratch the plate.
- The Disc Tray may become dirty if software other than CD-LabelPrint or Easy-PhotoPrint EX is used.
- Always use the supplied 3.15 inches / 8 cm Disc Adapter when printing on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.
- Always close the Inner Cover after printing on printable discs.
- To keep the print quality at an optimal level, it is recommended to stop printing discs once every ten discs when printing more than ten discs continuously.
  To stop the printing operation, detach the Disc Tray from the machine, then close the Inner Cover. After approximately three minutes have elapsed, open the Inner Cover, attach the Disc Tray to the machine, then resume printing.

Page top

D013

Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray

The external appearance may differ depending on the machine you are using.

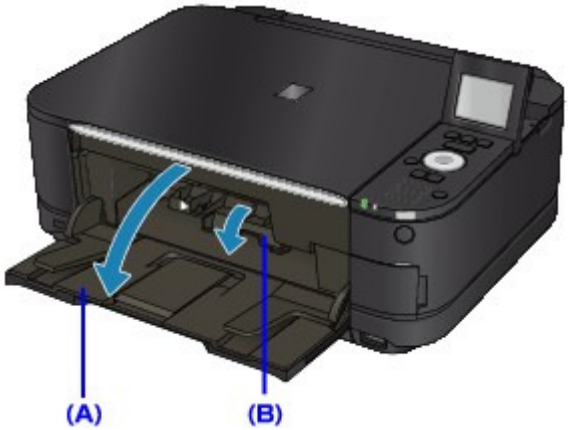
Attaching the Disc Tray

Important

- Do not attach the Disc Tray until the message asking you to load the printable disc is displayed. Doing so can damage the machine.

1. Open the Paper Output Tray (A).

2. Make sure that the message asking you to load the printable disc is displayed, then open the Inner Cover (B).

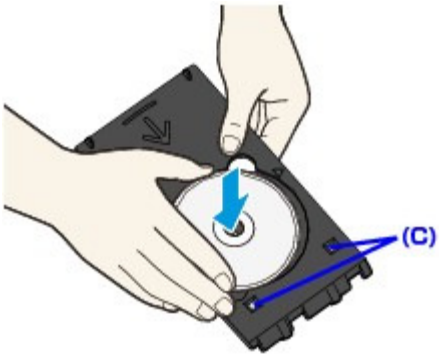


3. Place the printable disc on the Disc Tray.

Important

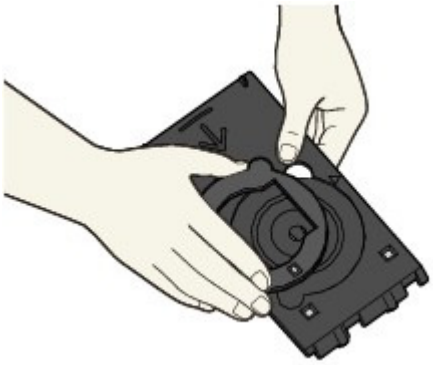
- Make sure that there is no dirt on the Disc Tray before placing a printable disc on the Disc Tray.
- When placing a printable disc on the Disc Tray, do not touch the printing surface of the disc or the reflectors (C) on the Disc Tray.

- **4.72 inches / 12 cm printable disc:**
  1. Place the printable disc on the Disc Tray with the printable surface facing up.

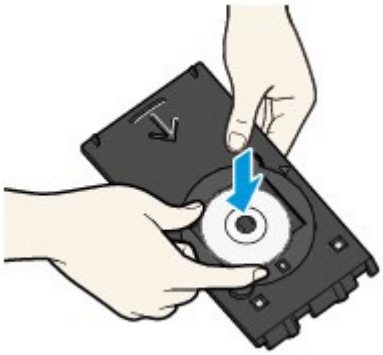


- **3.15 inches / 8 cm printable disc:**

1. Align the protrusions on both edges of the 3.15 inches / 8 cm Disc Adapter with indentations on the Disc Tray.



2. Place the 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable disc on the Disc Tray with the printing surface facing up.

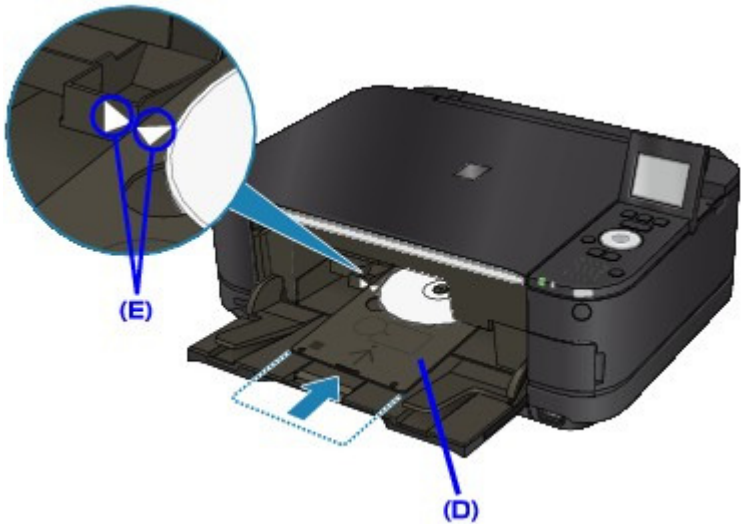


4. Attach the Disc Tray to the machine.

Note

- The Disc Tray may be ejected after a specified period of time has elapsed. In this case, follow the on-screen instructions to attach the Disc Tray.

5. Insert the Disc Tray straight until the arrow (▷) on the Inner Cover is almost aligned with the arrow (◁) on the Disc Tray.



(D) Keep the Disc Tray level when inserting it.

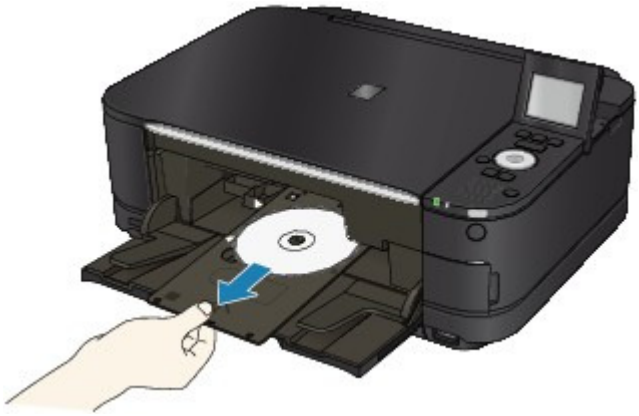
(E) Align the arrow (◁) on the Disc Tray with the arrow (▷) on the Inner Cover.

Important

- Do not insert the Disc Tray beyond the arrow (▷) on the Inner Cover.

Removing the Disc Tray

1. **Pull out the Disc Tray.**



2. **Close the Inner Cover.**

Important

- If the Inner Cover is opened, you cannot print on paper as it will not feed properly. Make sure that the Inner Cover is closed.



3. **Remove the printable disc from the Disc Tray.**

Important

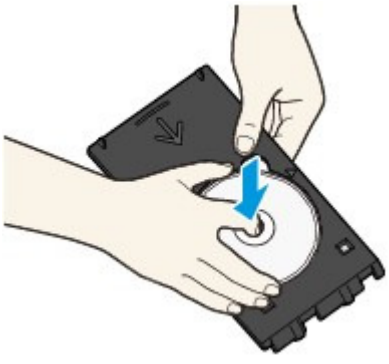
- Do not touch the printing surface when removing the disc from the Disc Tray.

Note

- Dry the printing surface sufficiently before removing the disc. If you see printing on the Disc Tray or the transparent parts on inner or outer diameter of the printable disc, wipe them off after the printing surface has dried.

- **4.72 inches / 12 cm printable disc:**

  1. Remove the printable disc from the Disc Tray.

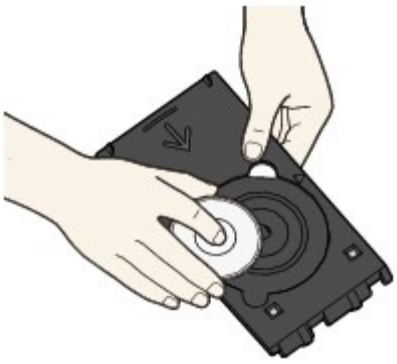


- **3.15 inches / 8 cm printable disc:**

1. Remove the 3.15 inches / 8 cm Disc Adapter from the Disc Tray.



2. Remove the 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable disc from the Disc Tray.



Important

- The Disc Tray cannot be used if it becomes warped. Be sure to keep the Disc Tray on a flat place.

Page top

D002

Printing on the Disc Label

The Disc Tray (supplied) allows the printing of images on printable discs (BD/DVD/CD etc.).

Note

- We recommend that you test print on an unneeded printable disc first.

Using Useful Disc Label Printing Functions

Choose either of the method below according to your purpose.

- **To copy the label side of source disc onto a printable disc**

  You can print the label side of the source disc onto a printable disc by loading the source disc on the Platen Glass.

  Copying the Label Side of Disc

- **To print photo saved on a memory card or USB flash drive onto a printable disc**

  You can print photo saved on a memory card or USB flash drive onto a printable disc by inserting the memory card into the Card Slot or inserting USB flash drive into the Direct Print Port.

  Printing Photo on the Disc Label

- **To reprint photo on the disc label**

  You can print the printed photos on a printable disc by loading the printed photos on the Platen Glass.

  For MG8100 series only, you can print the image on the film (35 mm negative/positive (strip/slide)) onto a printable disc.

  Reprinting Photo on the Disc Label

- **To print photo onto a printable disc from a PictBridge compliant device**

  You can print photo onto a printable disc from a PictBridge compliant device by connecting it to the machine.

  Printing Photographs on the Disc Label from a PictBridge Compliant Device

- **To print photo on the disc label by using the supplied application software**

  CD-LabelPrint is bundled application software that allows you to edit and modify data before printing. Install it on your computer to use it.

  Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer

Adjusting the Print Area

If the image was not printed on the intended area, follow the steps below to adjust the print area.

1. **Make sure that the machine is turned on.**

2. **Select**  **Setup on the HOME screen.**

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine.

3. **Select**  **Device settings, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

4. **Use the ▲▼ button to select Print settings, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

5. **Use the ▲▼ button to select Adjust disc print area, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

6. **Use the ▲▼ button to select Right/left or Top/bottom and use the ◄► button to adjust the print area.**

   You can adjust the printing area by 0.003 inches / 0.1 mm between -0.03 inches / -0.9 mm and +0.03 inches / +0.9 mm.

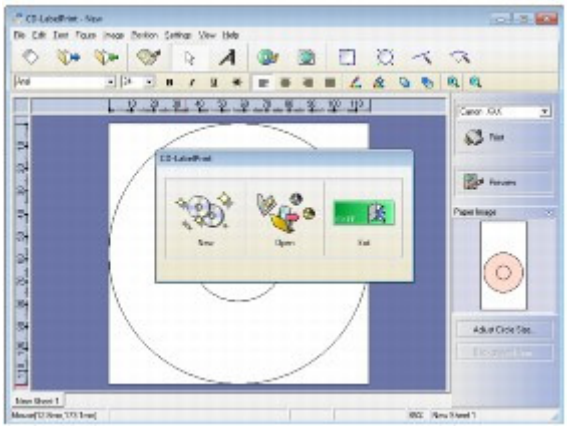
7. **Use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

Page top

D007

Printing with CD-LabelPrint from the Computer

- CD-LabelPrint is bundled application software that allows you to edit and modify data before printing. Install it on your computer to use it. To install this software, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then perform Custom Install and select CD-LabelPrint.
- For details on how to print with CD-LabelPrint, refer to its manual.
  Click Start > All Programs > CD-LabelPrint > Manual.



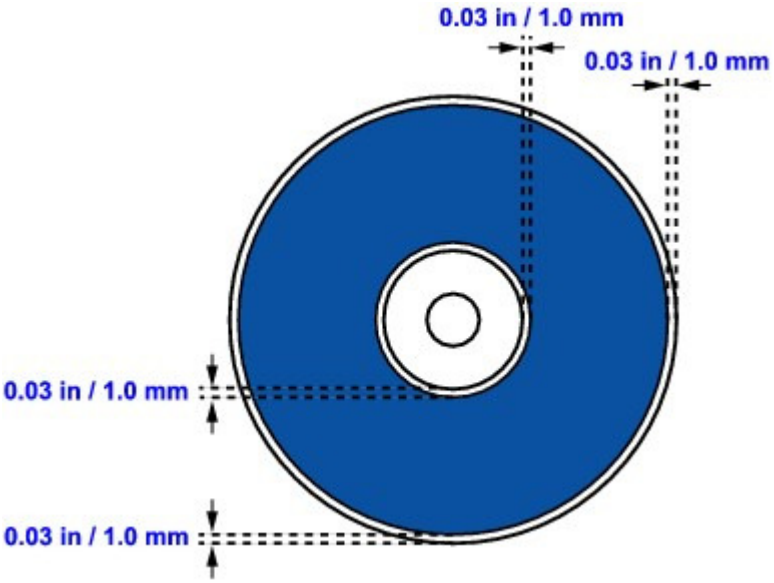
Page top

D015

Printing Area

Printable Discs

The printing area of the printable disc is the area excluding the 0.03 inches / 1 mm area from the internal and external diameters of the label.



Recommended printing area

Page top

Troubleshooting

- An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD
- Message Appears on the Computer Screen
- Cannot Print on the Disc Label
- Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

Page top

D008

An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD

If an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the corresponding action described below.

Message	Action
Open the inner cover, set the disc tray and press OK.	If the Inner Cover is closed when starting disc label printing, open the Inner Cover with the Scanning Unit (Cover) closed, set the Disc Tray, and then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error. Do not open or close the Inner Cover while printing is in progress. Doing so may damage the machine.

Page top

D009

Message Appears on the Computer Screen

Errors About Disc Label Printing Are Displayed

- **Check 1: If the Inner Cover is closed when starting disc label printing.**

  Open the Inner Cover, properly place the Disc Tray again, then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error.

  Do not open or close the Inner Cover while printing is in progress. This may damage the machine.

- **Check 2: Is the Disc Tray placed properly?**

  Open the Inner Cover, properly place the Disc Tray again, then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error.

  Make sure that you are using the Disc Tray supplied with the machine ("G" is on the upper side).

  For details on how to place the Disc Tray, see Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray .

- **Check 3: Is the printable disc placed on the Disc Tray?**

  Properly place the printable disc on the Disc Tray, attach the Disc Tray again, then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error.

  Make sure that you are using the Disc Tray supplied with the machine ("G" is on the upper side).

  For details on how to place the Disc Tray, see Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray .

- **Check 4: Unrecognizable printable disc may be placed.**

  Canon recommends that you use printable discs specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

- **Check 5: Is the printable disc on the Disc Tray already printed?**

  If you place a printable disc on which has already been printed on the Disc Tray, the Disc Tray may be ejected.

  In this case, try printing again after clearing the Detects a printable disc in the disc tray check box in Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab in the printer driver and clicking Send. When printing is over, select the Detects a printable disc in the disc tray check box and click Send.

Note

- If the Detects a printable disc in the disc tray check box is cleared, printing may start without the printable disc loaded. Selecting the check box prevents the Disc Tray from getting dirty.

Page top

D010

Cannot Print on the Disc Label

Disc Label Printing Does Not Start
Disc Tray Does Not Feed Properly
Disc Tray Jammed

Disc Label Printing Does Not Start

- **Check 1: Is the Disc Tray placed properly?**

  Open the Inner Cover, properly place the Disc Tray again, then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error.

  Use the Disc Tray supplied with this machine ("G" is on the upper side).

  For details on how to place the Disc Tray, see Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray .

- **Check 2: Is the printable disc placed on the Disc Tray?**

  Place the printable disc on the Disc Tray properly, then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error.

  Make sure that you are using the Disc Tray supplied with the machine ("G" is on the upper side).

  For details on how to place the Disc Tray, see Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray .

- **Check 3: If disc label printing stops before it is complete, try the operation again.**

  If a certain period of time has elapsed while disc label printing is in progress, the machine stops initializing.

  The machine resumes initializing by using the **OK** button.

  Try the operation again following the on-screen instructions.

Disc Tray Does Not Feed Properly

- **Check 1: Is the Disc Tray placed properly?**

  Properly place the Disc Tray again, then use the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error.

  Make sure that you are using the Disc Tray supplied with the machine ("G" is on the upper side).

  For details on how to place the Disc Tray, see Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray .

- **Check 2: Unrecognizable printable disc may be placed.**

  Canon recommends that you use printable discs specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

- **Check 3: Is the printable disc on the Disc Tray already printed?**

  If you place a printable disc on which has already been printed on the Disc Tray, the Disc Tray may be ejected.

  In this case, try printing again after clearing the Detects a printable disc in the disc tray check box in Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab in the printer driver and clicking Send. When printing is over, select the Detects a printable disc in the disc tray check box and click Send.

Note

- If you left cleared Detects a printable disc in the disc tray check box and start printing another printable disc, printing may start without the printable disc loaded. Selecting the

check box prevents the Disc Tray from getting dirty.

Disc Tray Jammed

Pull out the Disc Tray gently.

If the Disc Tray cannot be pulled out, turn the machine off, then turn the machine back on again. The Disc Tray will automatically be ejected.

When the Disc Tray is pulled out, place the Disc Tray ("G" is on the upper side) again, then retry printing. Place the printable disc properly.

Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray

If the Disc Tray is still jammed, check if there is a problem with the printable disc.

Disc Tray Does Not Feed Properly

Page top

D011

Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

The following are the possible errors that may occur when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device and the countermeasures to clear them.

Note

- For the errors indicated on the PictBridge compliant device and their solution, also refer to the instruction manual of the device. For other troubles on the device, contact the manufacturer.

Error Message on the PictBridge Compliant Device	Action
"No paper"	See Cannot Print on the Disc Label and take the appropriate action.
"Paper Error"	See Cannot Print on the Disc Label and take the appropriate action.

Page top

Printing Photographs Directly from a Compliant Device

Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device

Page top

Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device

Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device
About PictBridge Print Settings
Printing Photographs on the Disc Label from a PictBridge Compliant Device

Page top

U052

Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device

You can connect a PictBridge compliant device such as a digital camera, camcorder, or mobile phone connect to the machine using a USB cable recommended by the device's manufacturer, and print recorded images directly without using a computer.

Important

- Do not use the USB cable longer than around 10 feet / 3 meters to connect any PictBridge compliant device to the machine since it may affect the operation of other peripheral devices.

Note

- When printing photos with the PictBridge compliant device connected to the machine, we recommend the use of the AC adapter supplied with the device. If you are using the device battery, be sure to charge it fully.
- Depending on the model or brand of your device, you may have to select a print mode compliant with PictBridge before connecting the device. You may also have to turn on the device or select Play mode manually after connecting the device to the machine.
  Perform necessary operations on the PictBridge compliant device before connecting it to this machine according to instructions given in the device's instruction manual.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.
2. Load paper.
3. Make sure that the PictBridge compliant device is turned off.
4. Connect the PictBridge compliant device to the machine using a USB cable (A) recommended by the device's manufacturer.

   The PictBridge compliant device turns on automatically.
   If your device does not turn on automatically, turn it on manually.
   When machine is correctly connected to the device, the message that the machine is connected will be displayed on the LCD of the device. Refer to the device's instruction manual.



5. Specify the print settings such as the paper type and layout.

You can perform settings using the menu on the LCD of your PictBridge compliant device. Select the size and type of paper that you loaded in the machine.

➡ Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device

If your PictBridge compliant device does not have a setting menu, change the setting from the machine.

➡ Settings on the Machine

6. Start printing from your PictBridge compliant device.

Important

- Never disconnect the USB cable during printing unless when explicitly allowed to by the PictBridge compliant device. When disconnecting the USB cable between the PictBridge compliant device and machine, follow the instructions given in the device's instruction manual.

Page top

U053

About PictBridge Print Settings

Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device

Settings on the Machine

Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device

This section describes the PictBridge function of the machine. For the print settings on a PictBridge compliant device, refer to the instructions given in the device's instruction manual.

Note

- In the following description, names of setting items are given according to those used in Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. Setting item names may be different depending on the brand or model of your device.
- Some setting items explained below may not be available on some devices. In this case, the settings made on the machine are applied. Also, when some items are set to Default on a PictBridge compliant device, the machine settings for these items are applied.
  Settings on the Machine

The following settings can be used when printing from a PictBridge compliant device.

Paper size	4" x 6"/ 10 x 15 cm, 5" x 7"*1, 8" x 10"/ 20 x 25 cm, A4, 8.5" x 11"(Letter), 4" x 7.1"/ 10.1 x 18 cm*2 *1 Can be selected only on certain Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. (May not be selected depending on the device.) *2 Hi Vision may appear on a non-Canon brand PictBridge compliant device.
Paper type	• Default (Selections based on the machine setting) • Photo: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201/Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" GP-501 /Photo Paper Glossy GP-502/Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201/Photo Stickers* * When printing on sticker paper, select 4" x 6"/ 10 x 15 cm in Paper size. Do not set Layout to Borderless. • Fast Photo: Photo Paper Pro Platinum PT-101 • Plain: A4/Letter When Paper type is set to Plain, borderless printing will be disabled even when Layout is set to Borderless.
Layout	Default (Selections based on the machine setting), Index, Bordered, Borderless, N-up (2, 4, 9, 16)*1, 20-up*2, 35-up*3 *1 Layout compatible with A4 or Letter-sized paper and Canon-brand sticker above. A4/Letter: 4-up Photo Stickers: 2-up, 4-up, 9-up, 16-up. *2 With a Canon brand PictBridge compliant device, selecting items with "i" mark allows you to print shooting info (Exif Data) in list format (20-up) or on the margins of the specified data (1-up). (May not be available with some Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices.) *3 Printed in 35 mm Film Style Layout (Contact Printing Layout). Available only with a Canon-brand PictBridge compliant device. (May not be available with some Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices.)
Print date & file no.	Default (Off: No printing), Date, File No., Both, Off
Image optimize	Default (Selections based on the machine setting), On*1 (Exif Print), Off, NR (Noise Reduction)*2, VIVID*2, Face*2, Red-Eye*2

	*1 Photos are optimized for printing using the Photo optimizer pro function. *2 Can be selected only on certain Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. (May not be selected depending on the device.)
Trimming	Default (Off: No trimming), On (follow the camera's setting), Off

Settings on the Machine

You can change the PictBridge print settings from the PictBridge print settings screen. Set the print settings to Default on the PictBridge compliant device when you want to print according to the settings on the machine.

This section describes the procedure to display the PictBridge print settings screen. For setting items, see PictBridge print settings .

1. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine.

2. Select  Device settings, then touch the OK button.

3. Use the ▲▼ button to select PictBridge print settings, then touch the OK button.

4. Check the message that is displayed, then touch the OK button.

The PictBridge print settings screen is displayed.

Note

- Depending on the country or region of purchase, the screen to select a menu may be displayed. In this case, use the ▲▼ button to select Photo print setting, then touch the **OK** button.

Page top

D016

Printing Photographs on the Disc Label from a PictBridge Compliant Device

This section describes how to print photos onto printable discs from a PictBridge compliant device.

Important

- Depending on your PictBridge compliant device, you may not be able to print on the label side of discs.
- For details, refer to your PictBridge compliant device's instruction manual.
- You cannot print on 3.15 inches / 8 cm printable discs.
- Do not use the USB cable longer than around 10 feet / 3 meters to connect any PictBridge compliant device to the machine since it may affect the operation of other peripheral devices.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Connect the PictBridge compliant device to the machine using a USB cable recommended by the manufacturer of the device.

   For details, refer to Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device .

3. Specify the print settings as follows.

   - Paper size: Size for 4.72 inches / 12 cm printable disc
   - Paper type: Default
   - Layout: Bordered or Default

   You can perform image optimize settings using the menu on the LCD of your PictBridge compliant device. For details, refer to About PictBridge Print Settings .

   Note

   - If your PictBridge compliant device does not have setting menu, change the setting from the machine.
     Specifying the PictBridge Print Settings on the Machine

4. Set the printable disc.

   Attaching/Removing the Disc Tray

5. Start printing from your PictBridge compliant device.

Specifying the PictBridge Print Settings on the Machine

You can specify the PictBridge print settings on the machine.

Note

- When a PictBridge compliant device is connected to the machine, the PictBridge print settings screen can also be displayed by using the left Function button.

1. **Make sure that the machine is turned on.**

2. **Select**  **Setup on the HOME screen.**

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine.

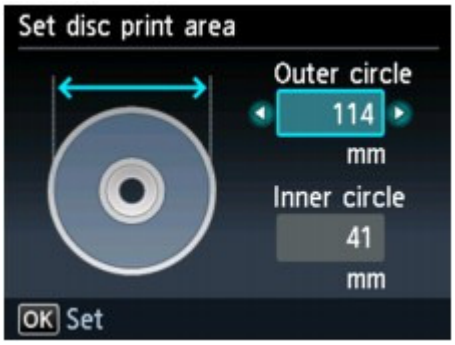
3. **Select**  **Device settings, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

4. **Select PictBridge print settings, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

5. **Confirm the message, then use the OK button to go the next step.**

6. **Select Disc label print setting, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

The screen to change the print area is displayed.



7. **Use the ▲▼ button to select Outer circle or Inner circle and use the ◀▶ button to change the print area.**

8. **Use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

Note

- Measure the outer and inner diameters of the printing surface of the printable disc and make sure you set a value smaller than the measured value for the outer diameter, and a value larger than the measured value for the inner diameter.
- For information on printable discs, contact their manufacturers.

9. **Use the ▲▼ button to select Recommended disc or Other disc, then use the OK button to confirm the selection.**

Note

- If your printable disc is the recommended discs, specify Recommended disc for the suitable density printing. If not, specify Other disc.

Page top

Maintenance

Cleaning Your Machine
Aligning the Print Head Manually
Performing Maintenance from a Computer

Page top

Cleaning Your Machine

Cleaning
Cleaning the Exterior of the Machine
Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover
Cleaning the Inside of the Machine (Bottom Plate Cleaning)
Cleaning the Protrusions inside the Machine

Page top

U059

Cleaning

This section describes the cleaning procedure that is needed to maintain your machine.

Important

- Do not use tissue paper, paper towels, rough-textured cloth, or similar materials for cleaning so as not to scratch the surface. Paper tissue powder or fine threads may remain inside the machine and cause problems such as print head blockage and poor printing results. Be sure to use a soft cloth.
- Never use volatile liquids such as thinners, benzene, acetone, or any other chemical cleaner to clean the machine, as this may cause a malfunction or damage the machine's surface.

Cleaning the Exterior of the Machine
Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover
Cleaning the Inside of the Machine (Bottom Plate Cleaning)
Cleaning the Protrusions inside the Machine

Page top

U060

Cleaning the Exterior of the Machine

Be sure to use a soft cloth such as eyeglasses cleaning cloth and wipe off dirt on the surface gently.
Smooth out wrinkles on the cloth if necessary before cleaning.

Important

- Be sure to turn off the power and disconnect the power plug before cleaning the machine.
- Do not use tissue paper, paper towels, rough-textured cloth, or similar materials, as this may scratch the surface.
- Use a soft cloth soaked in water and wrung well to wipe off stains on the Operation Panel. Do not turn on the power until the surface of the Operation Panel has completely dried.

Page top

U061

Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

Important

- Be sure to turn off the power and disconnect the power plug before cleaning the machine.

With a clean, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the Platen Glass (A), the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet (white sheet) (B), and the FAU lamp (C) gently. Make sure not to leave any residue, especially on the Platen Glass.



Important

- The FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet (white sheet) (B) is easily damaged, so wipe it gently.

Page top

U062

Cleaning the Inside of the Machine (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

This section explains how to clean the inside of the machine. If the inside of the machine becomes dirty, printed paper may get dirty, so we recommend performing cleaning regularly.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.
2. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.
3. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

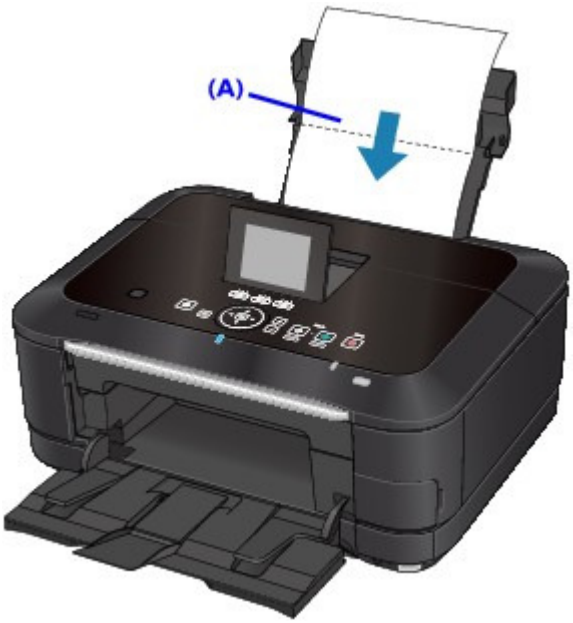
   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

4. Select  Maintenance, then touch the **OK** button.

   The Maintenance screen is displayed.
5. Use the ▲▼ button to select Bottom plate cleaning, then touch the **OK** button.

   The confirmation screen is displayed.
6. Use the ▲▼ button to select Yes, then touch the **OK** button.
7. Remove any paper from the Rear Tray following the on-screen instructions.
8. Fold a single sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in half widthwise, then unfold the paper following the on-screen instructions.
9. Load this and only this sheet of paper on the Rear Tray with the open side facing to the front following the on-screen instructions.



(A) Load the paper after unfolding it.
The paper cleans the inside of the machine as it feeds through the machine.
Check the folded part of the ejected paper. If it is smudged with ink, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning again.
If the problem is not resolved after performing cleaning again, the protrusions inside the machine may be stained. Clean them according to instructions.

Cleaning the Protrusions inside the Machine

Note

- When performing Bottom Plate Cleaning again, be sure to use a new sheet of paper.

Page top

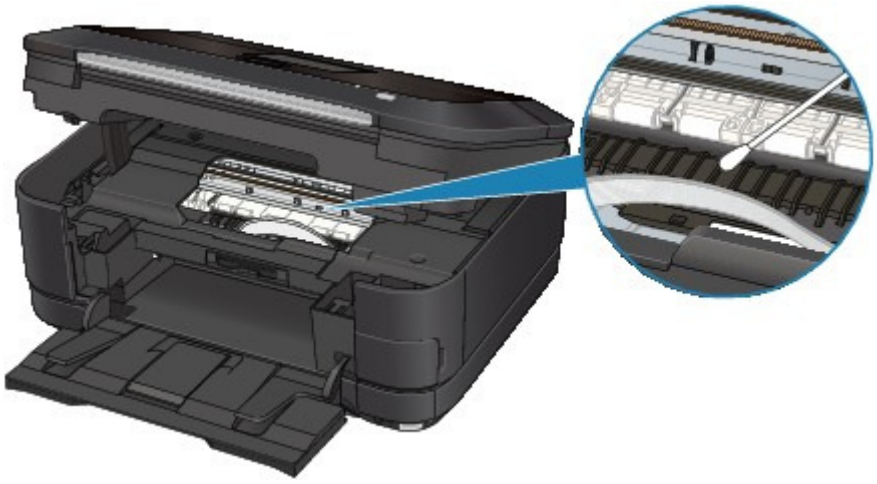
U063

Cleaning the Protrusions inside the Machine

If protrusions inside the machine are stained, wipe off any ink from the protrusions using a cotton swab or the like.

Important

- Be sure to turn off the power and disconnect the power plug before cleaning the machine.



Page top

Aligning the Print Head Manually

Manual Print Head Alignment

Page top

U064

Manual Print Head Alignment

This section describes how to align the Print Head manually.

If the results of Automatic Print Head Alignment are not satisfactory, follow the procedure below to perform Manual Print Head Alignment to precisely align the Print Head.

For details on performing Automatic Print Head Alignment, refer to Routine Maintenance .

Note

- Close the Inner Cover if it is open.
- The print head alignment pattern is printed in black and blue only.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.
2. Load three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the Cassette.
3. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, and open the Output Tray Extension.
4. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

5. Select  Maintenance, then touch the **OK** button.

   The Maintenance screen is displayed.

6. Use the ▲▼ button to select Manual head alignment, then touch the **OK** button.

   The confirmation screen is displayed.

   Note

   - To confirm the current setting, select Print the head alignment value and print the pattern.

7. Use the ▲▼ button to select Yes, then touch the **OK** button.

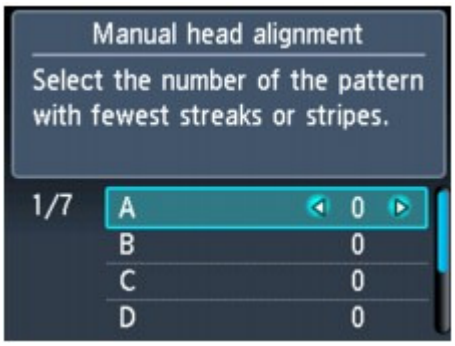
   The print head alignment pattern is printed.

   Important

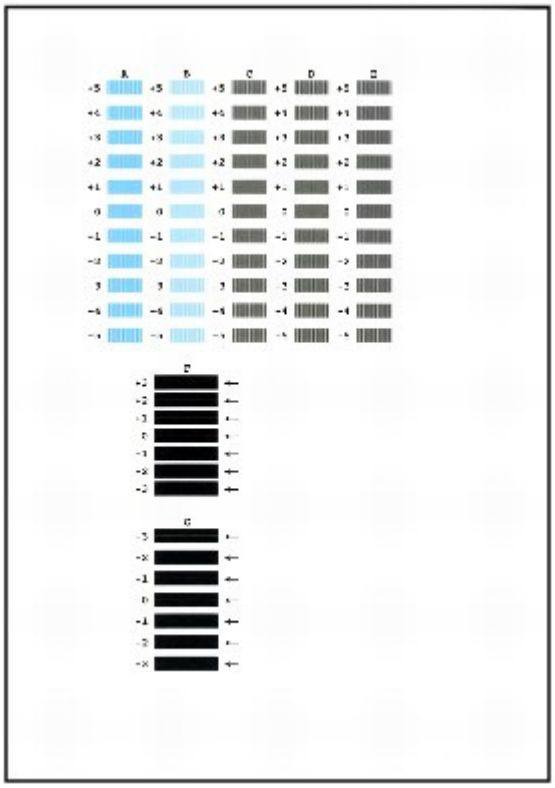
   - Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

8. When Did the patterns print correctly? is displayed, confirm that the pattern is printed correctly, use the ▲▼ button to select Yes, then touch the **OK** button.

   The input screen for the head position adjustment values is displayed.



9. Check the printed patterns, and use the ◄► button to input the number of the pattern in column A that has the least noticeable vertical streaks.



Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



(A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
(B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

10. Repeat the same procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for columns B to G, then touch the **OK** button.

For the column F and G, pick the setting pointed by an arrow that produces the least noticeable horizontal streaks.

Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white streaks.



(C) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks
(D) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

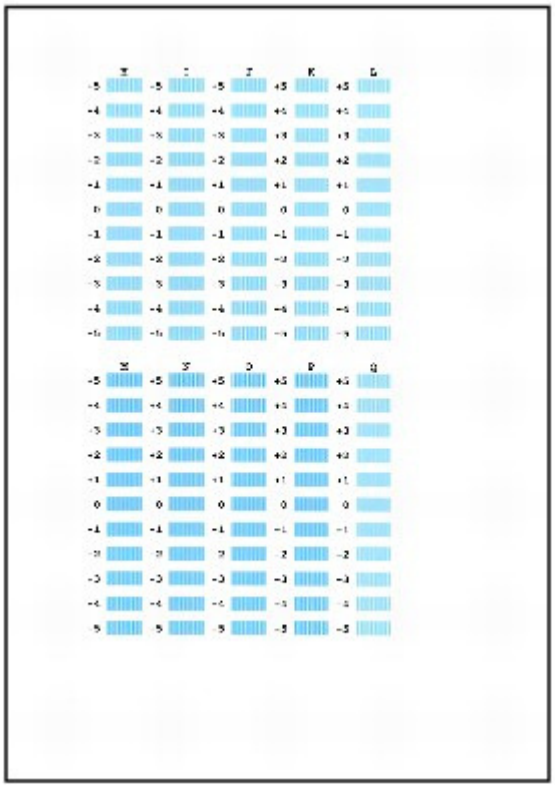
11. Confirm the displayed message and touch the **OK** button.

The second pattern is printed.

Important

- Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

12. Check the printed patterns, and use the ◄► button to input the number of the pattern in column H that has the least noticeable vertical streaks.



Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



(E) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
(F) More noticeable vertical white streaks

13. Repeat the same procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for columns I to Q, then touch the **OK** button.

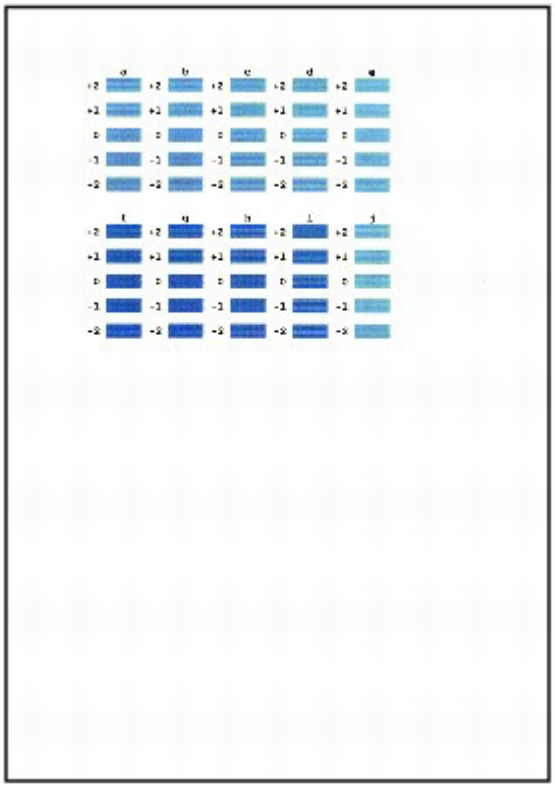
14. Confirm the displayed message and touch the **OK** button.

The third pattern is printed.

Important

- Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

15. Check the printed patterns, and use the ◄► button to input the number of the pattern in column a that has the least noticeable horizontal streaks.



Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white streaks.



(G) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks
(H) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

16. Repeat the same procedure until you finish inputting the pattern number for columns b to j, then touch the **OK** button.

Manual Print Head Alignment is complete.

Page top ↑

Performing Maintenance from a Computer

- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- Aligning the Print Head Position
- Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- Cleaning Inside the Machine

Page top

P026

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head cleaning function allows you to unclog clogged nozzles in the print head. Perform print head cleaning if printing is faint or a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

The procedure for cleaning the print heads is as follows:



Cleaning

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Print Head Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box.
   Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Cleaning.

3. Execute cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and then click Execute.

   Print head cleaning starts.

4. Complete cleaning

   The Nozzle Check dialog box opens after the confirmation message.

5. Check the results

   To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

   If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.



Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than cleaning. Perform deep cleaning when two Cleaning attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Deep Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Deep Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box.
   Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Deep Cleaning.

3. Execute deep cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and then click Execute.
   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

   Print head deep cleaning starts.

4. Complete deep cleaning

The Nozzle Check dialog box opens after the confirmation message.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

Important

- Cleaning consumes a small amount of ink. Deep Cleaning consumes a larger amount of ink than Cleaning.
  Cleaning the print heads frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Consequently, perform cleaning only when necessary.

Note

- If there is no sign of improvement after Deep Cleaning, switch off the machine, wait 24 hours, and then perform Deep Cleaning again. If there is still no sign of improvement, the ink may have run out or the print head may be worn. For details on the remedial action to be taken, see " Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected ."

Related Topic

Checking the Print Head Nozzles

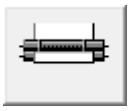
Page top

P027

Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers

Cleans the paper feed roller. Perform feed roller cleaning when there are paper particles sticking to the paper feed roller and paper is not fed properly.

The procedure for performing the feed roller cleaning is as follows:



Roller Cleaning

1. Prepare the machine

   Remove all sheets of paper from the paper source from which paper could not be properly fed.

2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Click Roller Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Roller Cleaning dialog box opens.

4. Select Rear Tray or Cassette, and click OK

   The confirmation message appears.

5. Execute paper feed roller cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and click OK.
   Paper feed roller cleaning starts.

6. Complete paper feed roller cleaning

   After the rollers have stopped, follow the instruction in the message, load three sheets of plain paper into the selected paper source of the machine, and click OK.

   Paper will be ejected and feed roller cleaning will be completed.

Page top

P028

Aligning the Print Head Position

Print head alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves deviated colors and lines.

This machine supports two head alignment methods: automatic head alignment and manual head alignment. Normally, the machine is set for automatic head alignment.
If the printing results of automatic print head alignment are not satisfactory, see " Manual Print Head Alignment ," and perform manual head alignment. To change to the manual head alignment, click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab, and then check the Align heads manually check box.

The procedure for performing print head alignment is as follows:



Print Head Alignment

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Print Head Alignment on the Maintenance tab

   The Start Print Head Alignment dialog box opens.

3. Load paper in the machine

   Load a sheet of A4 size or Letter size Matte Photo Paper (MP-101) into the rear tray.

   Note

   - The type of media and number of sheets to be used differ when you select the manual head alignment.

4. Execute head alignment

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Align Print Head.
   Follow the instruction in the message.

   Note

   - To print and check the current setting, open the Start Print Head Alignment dialog box, and click Print Alignment Value.

Page top

P029

Checking the Print Head Nozzles

The nozzle check function allows you to check whether the print heads are working properly by printing a nozzle check pattern. Print the pattern if printing becomes faint, or if a specific color fails to print.

The procedure for printing a nozzle check pattern is as follows:



Nozzle Check

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Nozzle Check on the Maintenance tab

   The Nozzle Check dialog box opens.
   Click Initial Check Items to display the items that you need to check before printing the nozzle check pattern.

3. Load paper in the machine

   Load a sheet of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the cassette.

4. Print a nozzle check pattern

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Print Check Pattern.
   Printing of the nozzle check pattern begins.

   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
   The Pattern Check dialog box opens.

5. Check the print result

   Check the print result. When the print result is normal, click Exit.
   If the print result is smudged or if there are any unprinted sections, click Cleaning to clean the print head.

Related Topic

Cleaning the Print Heads

Page top

P030

Cleaning Inside the Machine

Perform bottom plate cleaning before you execute duplex printing to prevent smudges on the back side of the paper.
Also perform bottom plate cleaning if ink smudges caused by something other than print data appear on the printed page.

For details on how to load paper into the machine, see " Cleaning the Inside of the Machine (Bottom Plate Cleaning)."

The procedure for performing bottom plate cleaning is as follows:



Bottom Plate Cleaning

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Bottom Plate Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Bottom Plate Cleaning dialog box opens.

3. Load paper in the machine

   As instructed in the dialog box, fold the A4 size or Letter size plain paper in half horizontally, and then unfold the sheet.
   Load the paper into the rear tray in the portrait orientation with the crest of the crease facing down.

4. Perform the bottom plate cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Execute.
   Bottom plate cleaning starts.

Page top

About Bluetooth Communication

Handling Precautions
Preparation to Use the Bluetooth Unit
Printing Data via Bluetooth Communication
Basic Procedure for Printing via Bluetooth Communication
Bluetooth Settings
Troubleshooting
Specifications

Page top

Handling Precautions

Shipping the Product

Page top

B003

Shipping the Product

This product may not be used in countries or regions other than the country or region where it was purchased due to local laws and regulations. Please note that the use of this product in such countries or regions may lead to penalties and that Canon should not be liable for such punishment.

Page top

Preparation to Use the Bluetooth Unit

Bluetooth Unit
Attaching to and Removing from the Printer

Page top

B004

Bluetooth Unit

The Bluetooth Unit BU-30 (hereafter referred to as the Bluetooth unit) is an adaptor which can be used with a Canon IJ printer with Bluetooth interface.

By attaching the Bluetooth unit to a Canon IJ printer with Bluetooth interface, wireless printing from a Bluetooth enabled device, such as a computer or mobile phone, is possible.

Note

- Communication is possible in a range of up to about 33 ft. / 10 m depending on the conditions below. Printing speed may vary depending on the following conditions:
  - Presence of obstacles between the communication equipment and radio wave conditions.
  - Presence of magnetic fields, static electricity or electromagnetic interference.
  - Software and operating system to be used.
  - Receiver sensitivity and antenna performance of the communication equipment.

Page top

B005

Attaching to and Removing from the Printer

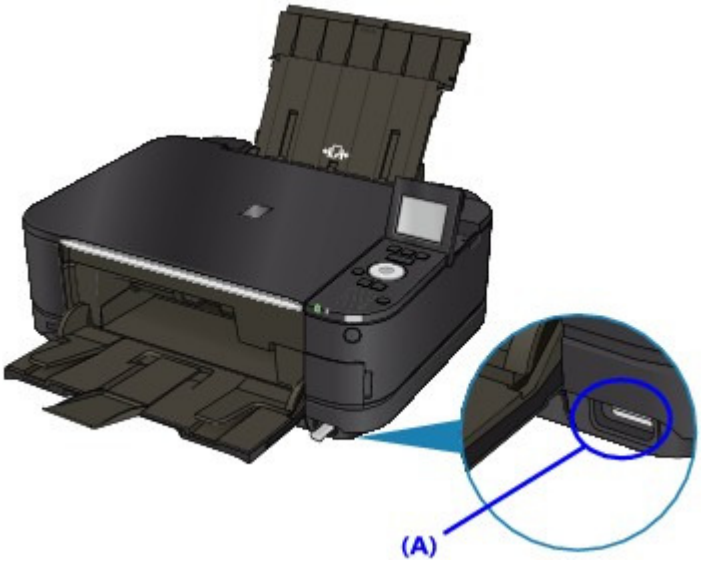
Attaching the Bluetooth Unit to the Printer

Removing the Bluetooth Unit from the Printer

Attaching the Bluetooth Unit to the Printer

Attach the Bluetooth unit to the Direct Print Port (A) of the printer in accordance with the following procedure.

The external appearance may differ depending on the printer you are using.

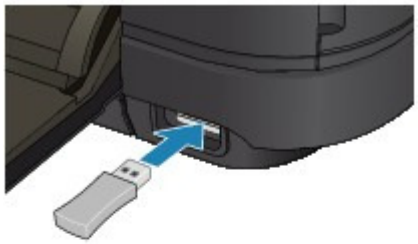


1. **Make sure that the printer is turned on.**

   Make sure that the **POWER** lamp is lit.

2. **Insert the Bluetooth unit to the Direct Print Port of the printer.**

   Detach the cap from the Bluetooth unit. Store the cap in a safe location.





Note

- When the Bluetooth unit is properly attached to the printer, the message is displayed on the LCD.

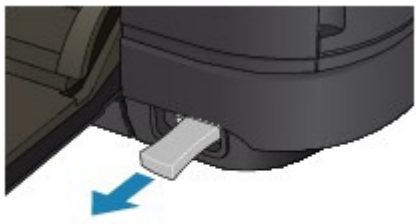
Removing the Bluetooth Unit from the Printer

Remove the Bluetooth unit from the Direct Print Port of the printer in accordance with the following procedure.

1. Remove the Bluetooth unit from the Direct Print Port of the printer.

Important

- Make sure that the lamp on the Bluetooth unit is neither lit nor flashing before you remove the Bluetooth unit.



Important

- Store the Bluetooth unit with the cap attached.

Page top

Printing Data via Bluetooth Communication

Preparation
Installing the MP Drivers
Setting the Printer
Registering the Printer
Deleting the Printer

Page top

B006

Preparation

In order to print via Bluetooth communication with Windows, the following system requirements must be satisfied.

- **Computer**

  A computer in which an internal Bluetooth module is installed or a computer to which an optional Bluetooth adapter (available from various manufacturers) is attached.

- **OS**

  Microsoft Windows 7 (Satisfying any one of the following conditions is needed)

  - **Add a Bluetooth Device is displayed in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel**
  - **Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba Version 7.00.00 or later is installed**

  Microsoft Windows Vista (Satisfying any one of the following conditions is needed)

  - **Bluetooth Devices is displayed in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel**
  - **Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba Version 5.10.04 or later is installed**

  Microsoft Windows XP (Satisfying any one of the following conditions is needed)

  - **Windows XP SP2 or later is installed, and Bluetooth Devices is displayed in Printers and Other Hardware under Control Panel**
  - **Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba Version 3.00.10 or later is installed**

  For more information about how to confirm the version of Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba, see Check 2: Is unsupported Bluetooth driver used? .

In order to connect the Bluetooth unit and print via Bluetooth communication, the following steps are required.

1. Check that the Bluetooth unit is properly attached to the printer.

   See Attaching to and Removing from the Printer .

2. Install the MP Drivers.

   See Installing the MP Drivers .

3. Check the device name of the printer using the LCD.

   See Setting the Printer .

4. Register the printer as a Bluetooth device using Bluetooth Devices.

   - **When using Windows 7, and when Add a Bluetooth Device is displayed in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel**

     Authenticate the printer as a Bluetooth device on Add a Bluetooth Device in Printers and Other Hardware under Control Panel.

     See Registering the Printer .

   - **When using Windows Vista, and when Bluetooth Devices is displayed in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel**

Authenticate the printer as a Bluetooth device on Bluetooth Devices in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel.

See Registering the Printer .

- **When using Windows XP SP2 or later, and when Bluetooth Devices is displayed in Printers and Other Hardware under Control Panel**

  Authenticate the printer as a Bluetooth device on Bluetooth Devices in Printers and Other Hardware under Control Panel.

  See Registering the Printer .

- **When using a Toshiba Windows 7, Windows Vista or Windows XP computer**

  Authenticate the printer as a Bluetooth device using Bluetooth Settings*.

  * When the computer which has Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba or the program attached to the Bluetooth adapter of the option manufactured by Toshiba is used, the computer can register a printer easily.

  Bluetooth Settings can be started by clicking Start and selecting All Programs, TOSHIBA, Bluetooth, and Bluetooth Settings.

  For details on Bluetooth Settings, refer to the application software's instruction manual.

- **The operations may vary depending on your operating program. In this case, refer to your computer's operation manual.**

Page top

B007

Installing the MP Drivers

Note

- If you use the printer connecting with a computer, the MP Drivers have already been installed. In this case, move to the next step.
  Setting the Printer

Before connecting the Bluetooth unit to the printer for wireless printing, first the USB cable must be connected between the printer and computer, and the MP Drivers must be installed.

If you reinstall the MP Drivers, perform Custom Install on the *Setup CD-ROM* , then select MP Drivers.

Page top

B008

Setting the Printer

This section describes the procedures for checking the settings of the Bluetooth unit on the LCD of the printer in preparation for Bluetooth printing.

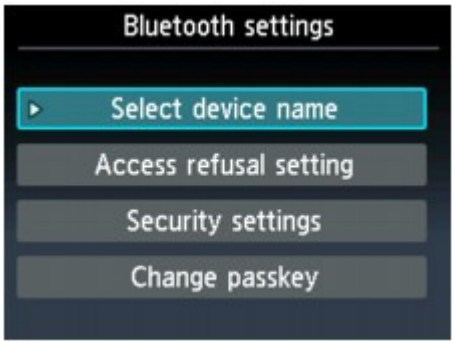
If you need more information about the Bluetooth settings, see Setting Bluetooth Printing .

1. Make sure that the Bluetooth unit is attached and the printer is turned on.

For information about how to attach the Bluetooth unit, see Attaching to and Removing from the Printer.

2. Display the Bluetooth settings screen on the LCD.

For information about how to display the Bluetooth settings screen, refer to Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD .

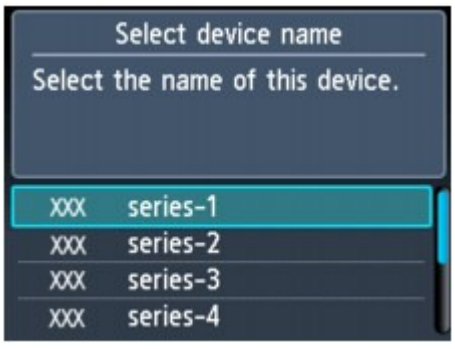


Note

- If the Bluetooth settings screen is not displayed on the LCD, the Bluetooth unit may not be attached correctly. Remove the Bluetooth unit from the printer and attach it once again.
  For details, see Attaching to and Removing from the Printer .
  If the Bluetooth settings screen is not yet displayed, the Bluetooth unit may be faulty. In this case, contact the service center.

3. Select Select device name.

The Select device name screen is displayed.



4. Check the device name.

The device name is necessary to register the printer as a Bluetooth device. Be sure to note the device name.

Note

- If multiple printer units with the same model name are connected to the system, assigning a different device name to each printer is recommended for easy identification of the printer you will use. See Bluetooth settings Screen .

After checking the device name, use the **OK** button on the printer to finish setting.
After checking the Bluetooth settings using the LCD, register the printer on your computer.

Registering the Printer

Page top

B009

Registering the Printer

Register the printer as a Bluetooth device using Add a Bluetooth Device (Bluetooth Devices except for Windows 7) under Control Panel.

Note

- Before registering the printer on Add a Bluetooth Device (Bluetooth Devices except for Windows 7) under Control Panel, enable the Bluetooth function of your computer.
  For more information, refer to your computer's operation manual.
- If you want to re-register the printer as a Bluetooth device, first delete the registered printer, and then re-register it.
  See Deleting the Printer .

It may vary depending on how you authenticate the computer's.

In Windows 7 or Windows Vista:

In Windows XP:

In Windows 7 or Windows Vista:

The following procedure is described assuming that Windows 7 has been installed in your computer.

1. **Log into a user account with the administrator privilege.**

2. **Click Control Panel, then Add a Bluetooth Device under Hardware and Sound.**

   In Windows Vista, click Control Panel, Bluetooth Device under Hardware and Sound, then Add Wireless Device.

3. **Select the device name of the printer and click Next.**

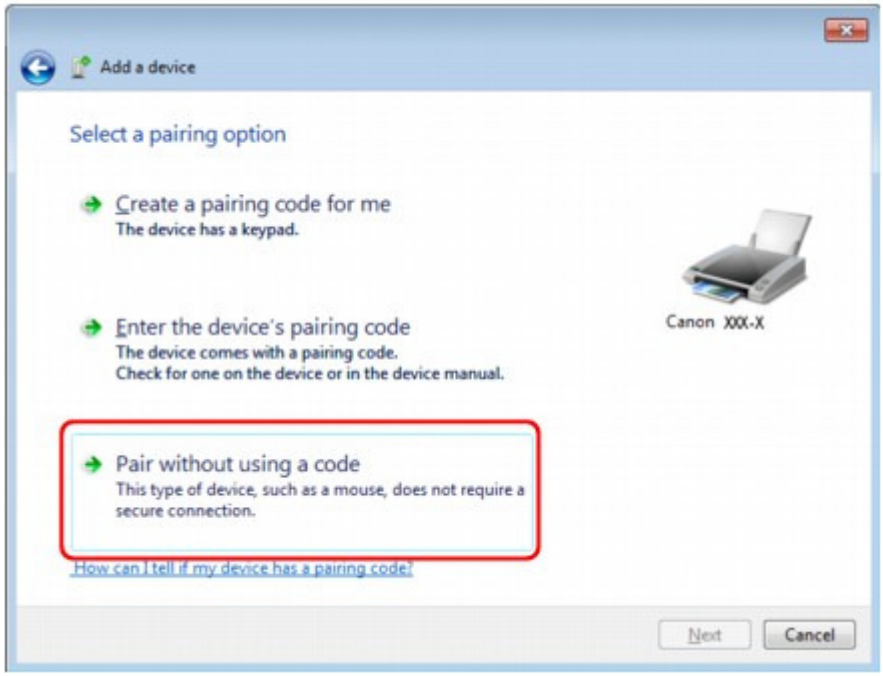


Select the same device name as that checked under Setting the Printer .

Note

- If the device name is not displayed, see Check 3: Is the printer name which you want to register displayed in the printer list? .

4. **Select Pair without using a code.**



When registering this printer, Connecting with this device (Pairing with this wireless device in Windows Vista) is displayed.

Note

- If you set a passkey on the printer, select Enter the device's pairing code and input the passkey, then click Next.
  For more information about setting a passkey, see Bluetooth settings Screen .

5. **When This device has been successfully added to this computer is displayed, click Close.**

In Windows Vista, when This wireless device is paired with this computer is displayed, click Close.



Now, the settings for printing via Bluetooth communication are ready.

Note

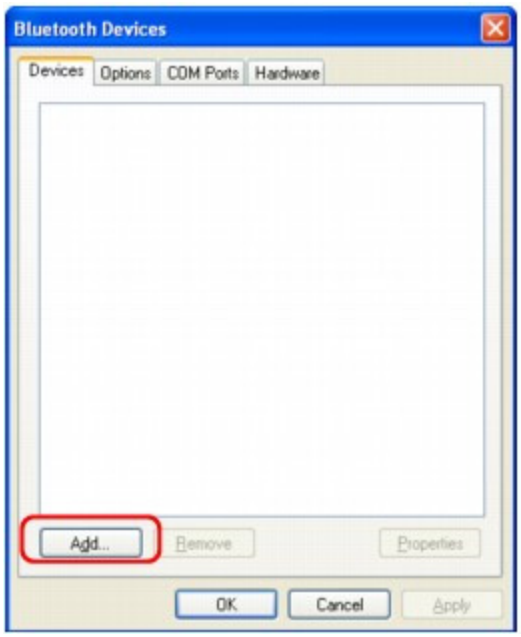
- In Windows Vista, the Windows needs to install driver software for your Bluetooth Peripheral Device screen may be displayed automatically. In this case, click Don't show this message again for this device.

In Windows XP:

1. **Log into a user account with the administrator privilege.**

2. **Click Control Panel, Printers and Other Hardware, then Bluetooth Devices.**

3. **Click Add on the Devices sheet.**

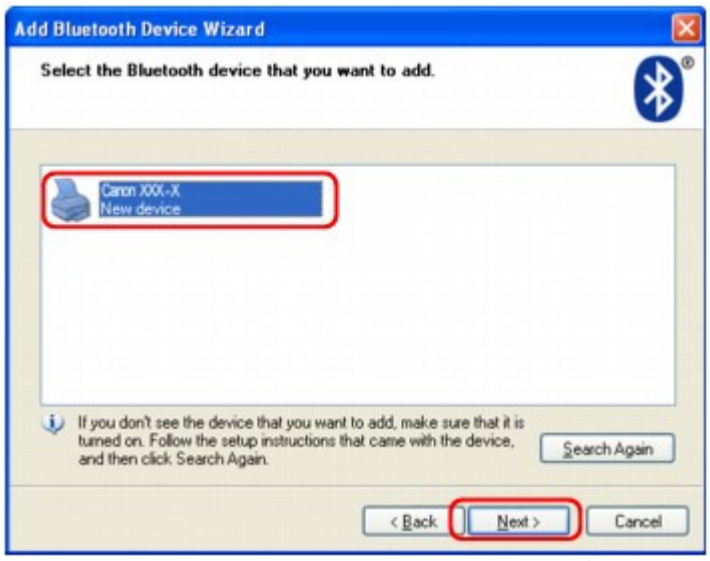


Add Bluetooth Device Wizard will start.

4. **Make sure that the printer is turned on, check the My device is set up and ready to be found check box and then click Next.**



5. **Select the device name of the printer and click Next.**

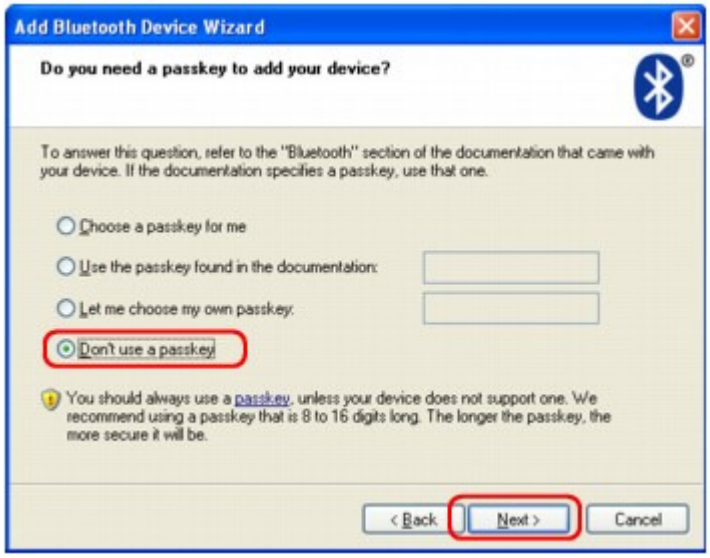


Select the same device name as that checked under Setting the Printer .

Note

- If the device name is not displayed, see Check 3: Is the printer name which you want to register displayed in the printer list? .

6. Select Don't use a passkey, and then Next.



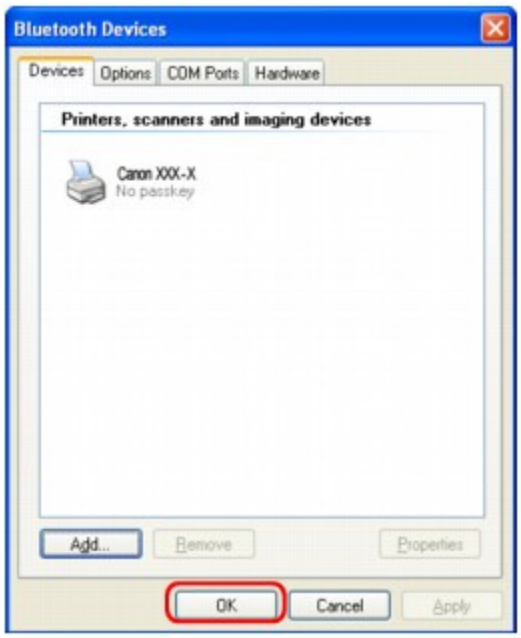
Note

- If you set a passkey on the printer, select Use the passkey found in the documentation and input the passkey then click Next.
  For more information about a passkey, see Bluetooth settings Screen .

7. Click Finish.



8. Check that the device name selected at step 5 is registered on the Devices sheet, and click OK.



Now, the settings for printing via Bluetooth communication are ready.

Page top

B010

Deleting the Printer

This section describes the procedure to delete the registered printer.

If you want to re-register the printer as a Bluetooth device, first follow the procedure below to delete the printer, and then re-register it.

For the procedure to re-register the printer, see Registering the Printer .

The following procedure is described assuming that Windows 7 has been installed in your computer.

1. Log into a user account with the administrator privilege.

2. Click Control Panel, then Devices and Printers under Hardware and Sound.

   When using Windows Vista, click Control Panel, then Printers under Hardware and Sound.
   When using Windows XP, click Control Panel, then Printers and Faxes under Printers and Other Hardware.

3. Click the icon of the printer used for printing via Bluetooth communication.

4. Select Remove device.

   When using Windows Vista, select Delete from the Organize menu.
   When using Windows XP, select Delete from the File menu.

- **In Windows Vista or Windows XP:**

  Continue following the procedure below to delete the printer from Bluetooth Devices.

  - In Windows Vista:
    1. Click Control Panel, then Bluetooth Devices under Hardware and Sound.
    2. Click the icon of the printer used for printing via Bluetooth communication.
    3. Select Remove Wireless Device.
  - In Windows XP:
    1. Click Control Panel, then Bluetooth Devices under Printers and Other Hardware.
    2. On the Devices sheet click the icon of the printer used for printing via Bluetooth communication.
    3. Click Remove.

Page top

Basic Procedure for Printing via Bluetooth Communication

Printing with Computers

Printing with Bluetooth Compliant Devices other than a Computer

Page top

B011

Printing with Computers

When using Bluetooth communication, also refer to the computer's instruction manual.

When printing from a Bluetooth compliant device other than a computer, see Printing with Bluetooth Compliant Devices other than a Computer .

Note

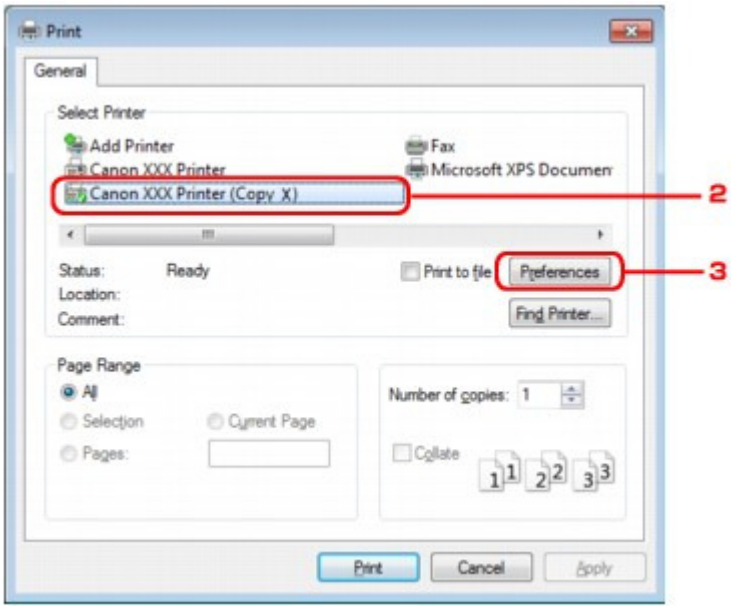
- Depending on your application software, operations may differ. For details, refer to your software application's instruction manual.
  The steps described in this section are for printing in Windows 7.
- Bluetooth communication distance: Approx. 33 ft./10 m in normal environment.
  The distance may vary depending on the radio conditions or the communication equipment.

1. Turn on the printer and load paper.

2. Create a document or open a file to print using an appropriate application software.

3. Open the printer properties dialog box.

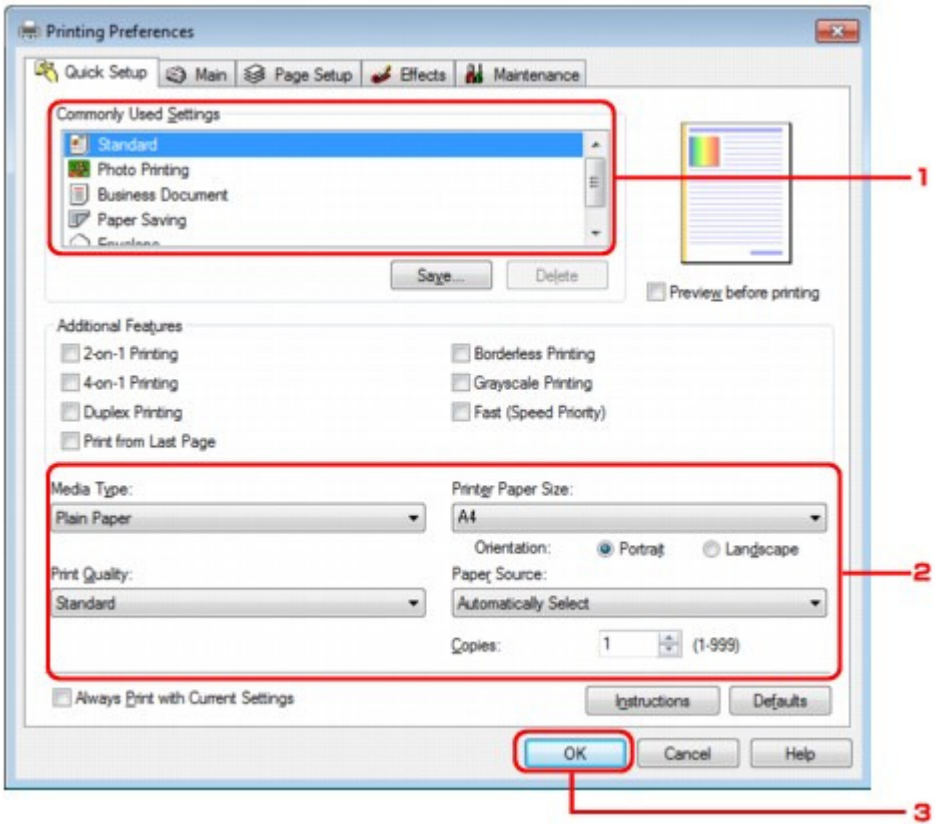
1. Select Print on the application software's File menu.
   The Print dialog box opens.
2. Select the printer to which you attached the Bluetooth unit such as Canon XXX Printer (Copy X) from Select Printer.
3. Click Preferences (or Properties).
   The Quick Setup sheet of the Printing Preferences dialog box is displayed.



Note

- The printer registered on Add a Bluetooth Device (Bluetooth Devices except for Windows 7) is displayed as Canon XXX Printer (Copy X).
- "X" is a device name or a digit. The number of digits may differ depending on the printer.

4. Specify the required settings.



1. Select the print setting in Commonly Used Settings.
2. Confirm the required print settings in Media Type, Printer Paper Size, and so on.

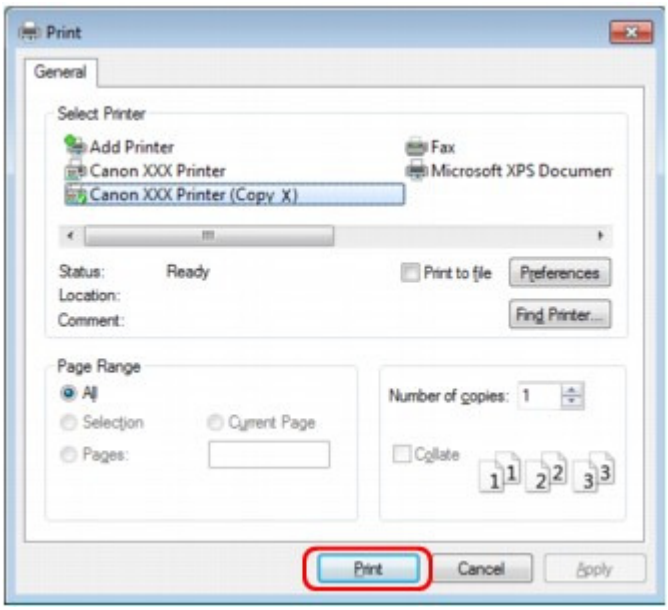
Note

- You can specify the advanced print settings on Main sheet and Page Setup sheet. For details on the print settings, refer to Various Printing Methods .

3. Click OK.

   The Print dialog box is displayed.

5. Click Print (or OK) to print the document.



Printing begins.

Note

- When you use a USB cable for printing, select Canon XXX Printer from Select Printer.
- To cancel a print job in progress, use the **Stop** button on the printer or click Cancel Printing on the printer status monitor. After printing is canceled, a sheet of paper may be ejected with no printing results.
  To display the printer status monitor, click Canon XXX Printer (Copy X) on the taskbar.
- "X" is a device name or a digit. The number of digits may differ depending on the printer.

Page top

B012

Printing with Bluetooth Compliant Devices other than a Computer

The LCD of the printer allows you to perform settings for printing using Bluetooth compliant devices other than a computer.

When you print with one of these devices, also refer to your product's instruction manual.

When printing from a computer, see Printing with Computers .

Note

- Mobile phones, PDAs and digital cameras supporting OPP (Object Push Profile) or BIP (Basic Imaging Profile) can print photos.
  Depending on your product, you may not perform printing even if your product supports the profiles above. For details of profiles, refer to your product's instruction manual.

1. Turn on the printer and load paper.

2. Select  Special print on the HOME screen.

   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Select  Print from mobile phone, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.

   Note

   - You can change the print settings by using the right Function button. For setting items, refer to Mobile phone print settings .

4. Start printing from the Bluetooth compliant device.

   When you select the device name, select the initial value of the printer "Canon XXX-1" (where "XXX" is your printer's name).
   If you are required to input the passkey, input the initial value "0000".
   You can change the device name of the printer or passkey on the Bluetooth settings screen on the LCD.
   ➡ Setting Bluetooth Printing

Page top

Bluetooth Settings

Setting Bluetooth Printing
Bluetooth settings Screen

Page top

B013

Setting Bluetooth Printing

1. Make sure that the printer is turned on, and attach the Bluetooth unit.

Note

- When the Bluetooth unit is properly attached to the printer, the message is displayed on the LCD.

2. Display the Bluetooth settings screen on the LCD.

For information about how to display the Bluetooth settings screen, refer to Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD .

3. Select the contents which you want to set on the LCD.

➡Bluetooth settings Screen

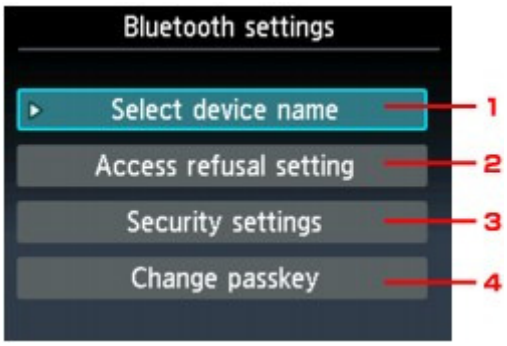
Note

- For information about how to set a media type and a paper size when printing from a mobile phone, refer to Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD .

Page top

B014

Bluetooth settings Screen



1. Select device name

Displays the device name of the printer to which the Bluetooth unit is attached.

➡Select device name Screen

2. Access refusal setting

Selecting ON will disable searching of this printer by a Bluetooth-compatible device.

➡Access refusal setting Screen

3. Security settings

Select Enable and then specify the security mode to activate the passkey set on the Change passkey screen.

➡Security settings Screen

4. Change passkey

You can change the passkey. The passkey refers to an identification number to be determined. It is used to prevent unwanted access from other Bluetooth devices. The initial value is set to 0000.

➡Change passkey Screen

Select device name Screen

Allows you to set the device name of the printer on a Bluetooth device.

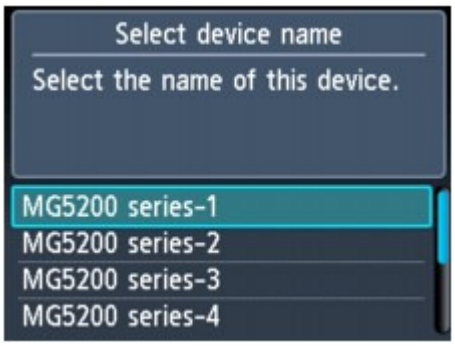
In the example used for this explanation, the model name is set to MG5200 series.

When a model other than MG5200 series is used, whatever appears in place of "MG5200" becomes the model name use.

Ex:

When you select MG5200 series-2, the printer name displayed on the Bluetooth device is Canon MG5200 series-2.

The initial value is set to MG5200 series-1.



Access refusal setting Screen

When you search from a Bluetooth device, you can enable or disable the display of the printer name.

- **ON**

  Disables searching from a Bluetooth device.

- **OFF (Default setting)**

  Enables searching and printing from a Bluetooth device.

Security settings Screen

- **Enable**

  Selecting Enable allows you to choose either of the security modes below.

  - Mode 3(recommended)
    This mode is activated on link level enforced security.
    The passkey will be required when a Bluetooth device communicates with the printer.
    Normally select this mode.
  - Mode 2
    This mode is activated on service level enforced security.
    The passkey will be required when printing through the Bluetooth communication.

  After setting the security mode, we recommend making a trial print through Bluetooth communication. If printing does not start, change the security mode and try again.

  Setting a passkey will prevent unwanted access from other Bluetooth devices. You can change the passkey on the Change passkey screen.

- **Disable (Default setting)**

  When you register the printer, you are not required to input a passkey.

Change passkey Screen

When you select Enable on the Security settings screen, you are required to set a passkey to register the printer on other Bluetooth devices.

After you change the passkey, you may be asked to input the passkey on the Bluetooth devices you were able to print from before the passkey was changed. In this case, input the new passkey.



Page top

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting
Printer Cannot be Registered
Printing Does Not Start

Page top

B015

Troubleshooting

This section describes how to solve the problems occurred during the use of the Bluetooth unit.

Problems related to the printer's hardware, MP Drivers installation, and so on, are also described in Troubleshooting.

Page top

B016

Printer Cannot be Registered

- ## Check 1: Have MP Drivers been installed?

  If MP Drivers are not yet installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then perform Custom Install and select MP Drivers.

- ## Check 2: Is unsupported Bluetooth driver used?

  Confirm that the Bluetooth driver installed on your computer is supported.

  - Toshiba Windows 7, Windows Vista or Windows XP computer
    Windows 7:
    Click Start, and select All Programs, TOSHIBA, Bluetooth, then Bluetooth Settings.
    On the Bluetooth Settings dialog, click the help button, the version number, then make sure that the version number is 7.00.00 or later.
    Windows Vista:
    Click Start, and select All Programs, TOSHIBA, Bluetooth, then Bluetooth Settings.
    On the Bluetooth Settings dialog, click the help button, the version number, then make sure that the version number is 5.10.04 or later.
    Windows XP:
    Click Start, and select All Programs, TOSHIBA, Bluetooth, then Bluetooth Settings.
    On the Bluetooth Settings dialog, click the help button, the version number, then make sure that the version number is 3.00.10 or later.
  - Windows 7 computer (except for Toshiba Windows 7 computers)
    Log into a user account with the administrator privilege, and click Control Panel, then Hardware and Sound.
    Make sure that the Add a Bluetooth Device is displayed in the dialog.
  - Windows Vista (except for Toshiba Windows Vista computers)
    Log into a user account with the administrator privilege, and click Control Panel, then Hardware and Sound.
    Make sure that the  Bluetooth Devices icon is displayed in the dialog.
  - Windows XP SP2 or later (except for Toshiba Windows XP computers)
    Log into a user account with the administrator privilege, click Control Panel, then Printers and Other Hardware.
    Make sure that the  Bluetooth Devices icon is displayed in the dialog.

  The operations may vary depending on your operating program. In this case, refer to your computer's operation manual.

- ## Check 3: Is the printer name which you want to register displayed in the printer list?

  - **Make sure that the printer is turned on.**
    Make sure that the **POWER** lamp is lit.
  - **Make sure that the printer is not operating.**
  - **Check whether the Bluetooth unit is usable.**
    Make sure that the Bluetooth settings screen can be displayed on the LCD of the printer. If the screen cannot be displayed, Bluetooth communication is disabled. Remove the Bluetooth unit from the printer and attach it again.
    ➡ Attaching to and Removing from the Printer
  - **Make sure that the Bluetooth settings screen can be displayed on the LCD of the printer, and try to register again.**

- **Check whether access from a Bluetooth-compatible device is refused.**

  Check the printer access setting displaying the Bluetooth settings screen on the LCD of the printer.

  1. **Display the Bluetooth settings screen on the LCD of the printer.**

     For information about how to display the Bluetooth settings screen, refer to Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD .

  2. **Select Access refusal setting.**

  3. **Select OFF, then use the OK button on the printer to confirm the selection.**

Page top

B017

Printing Does Not Start

- ## Check 1: Is Bluetooth unit ready for use?

  Make sure that the Bluetooth settings screen can be displayed on the LCD of the printer. If the screen cannot be displayed, Bluetooth communication is disabled. Remove the Bluetooth unit from the printer and attach it once again.

  Attaching to and Removing from the Printer

  Make sure that the Bluetooth settings screen can be displayed on the LCD of the printer, and try to print again.

  If the Bluetooth settings screen still is not displayed after you remove the Bluetooth unit from the printer and attach it again, the Bluetooth unit may be faulty. In this case, contact the service center.

- ## Check 2: Is there a problem with the location of the printer or is the distance between the printer and computer too great?

  The maximum communication distance between the printer and a computer is about 33 ft./10 m, but it varies depending on the following conditions:

  - Presence of obstacles between the communication equipment and radio wave conditions
  - Location where magnetic fields, static electricity, or radio interference occurs
  - Type of software and operating system used
  - Receiver sensitivity and antenna performance of the communication equipment

  Change the printer installation place or move the printer closer to the computer.

- ## Check 3: Is the printer to be used selected correctly?

  Follow the procedure described below to select the printer to which the Bluetooth unit is attached.

  The steps described in this section are for printing in Windows 7.

  1. **Log into a user account with the administrator privilege.**

  2. **Click Control Panel, then Devices and Printers under Hardware and Sound.**

     When using Windows Vista, click Control Panel, then Printers under Hardware and Sound.
     When using Windows XP, click Control Panel, then Printers and Faxes under Printers and Other Hardware.

  3. **Click the  icon of the printer to be used for printing via Bluetooth communication.**

     By default, the icon name is Canon XXX Printer (Copy X).

     Note

     - "X" is a device name or a digit. The number of digits may differ depending on the printer.

  4. **Select Printer properties.**

     When using Windows Vista, select Properties from the Organize menu.
     When using Windows XP, select Properties from the File menu.

  5. Click the Ports tab and select an applicable printer from Port.

     It may vary depending on how you authenticate the printer.
     For Windows 7
     When authenticating the printer as a Add a Bluetooth device in Control Panel
     BTHnnn (Canon XXX Printer (Copy X)) ("n" is a digit).

When authenticating the printer as a Bluetooth device using Bluetooth Settings built in the computer
TBPnnn (Canon XXX Printer (Copy X)) ("n" is a digit)
For Windows Vista or Windows XP
When authenticating the printer as a Bluetooth device in Control Panel
BTHnnn (Canon XXX Printer (Copy X)) ("n" is a digit).
When authenticating the printer as a Bluetooth device using Bluetooth Settings built in the computer
TBPnnn (Canon XXX Printer (Copy X)) ("n" is a digit)

6. Click OK.

- **Check 4: Is the message "This document failed to print" displayed?**
  - Do not retry printing. Check the error message on the LCD.
    Clear the error according to An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD .
  - When you use a Microsoft Bluetooth driver, make sure that the Printing (HCRP) service is effective on your computer.

    In Windows 7:
    Click Control Panel. Select Devices and Printers under Hardware and Sound, then select the printer to be used for Bluetooth communication. Right-click and select Properties.
    Make sure that Printing (HCRP) on the Services sheet is checked.

    In Windows Vista:
    Click Control Panel, Bluetooth Devices under Hardware and Sound, then select the printer to be used for Bluetooth communication and click Properties.
    Make sure that Printing (HCRP) on the Services sheet is checked.

    In Windows XP:
    Click Control Panel, Bluetooth Devices under Printers and Other Hardware, then select the printer to be used for Bluetooth communication and click Properties.
    Make sure that Printing (HCRP) on the Services sheet is checked.

    If Printing (HCRP) is not checked or the Printing (HCRP) service is not detected, follow the procedure below and register the printer again.

    The steps described in this section are for printing in Windows 7.

1. Click Control Panel, then Devices and Printers under Hardware and Sound.

   When using Windows Vista, Control Panel, then Printers under Hardware and Sound.
   When using Windows XP, click Control Panel, then Printers and Faxes under Printers and Other Hardware.

2. Click the  icon of the printer for printing via Bluetooth communication.

3. Select Remove device.

   When using Windows Vista, select Delete from the Organize menu.
   When using Windows XP, select Delete from the File menu.

4. Authenticate the printer as a Bluetooth device on Add a Bluetooth Device in Control Panel.

   When using Windows Vista or Windows XP, authenticate the printer as a Bluetooth device on Bluetooth Devices, in Control Panel.
   For more information about the procedure, see Registering the Printer .

- This message is displayed when the print job is sent from the Bluetooth device while another print job through the USB port is being printed out.
  Printing will begin automatically when the print queue is finished.
- Printing cannot be carried out with Bluetooth communication from more than one computer at the same time. In this case, this message is displayed on the computer during standing by.
  Printing will begin automatically when the print queue is finished.

- **Check 5: Were the MP Drivers installed after printer registration on Add a Bluetooth Device (Bluetooth Devices in Windows Vista or Windows XP)?**

  If you have installed the MP Drivers after registering the printer as a Bluetooth device on Add a Bluetooth Device (Bluetooth Devices in Windows Vista or Windows XP), delete the printer and then register it again.

  For more information about the procedure, see Preparation .

Page top

B019

Specifications

Communication method	Bluetooth v2.0
Maximum Speed	1.44 Mbps
Output	Bluetooth Power Class 2
Communication distance	Line-of-sight distance: approx. 33 ft./10 m * * It may vary depending on factors including the presence of obstacles between communication equipment, radio wave conditions, the presence of magnetic fields around microwave ovens and locations where electrostatic and radio interference occur, the types of software and operating systems used, and receiver sensitivity and antenna performance of communication equipment.
Profile	SPP (Serial Port Profile) OPP (Object Push Profile) BIP (Basic Imaging Profile) HCRP (Hardcopy Cable Replacement Profile)
Compatible PCs	A computer in which an internal Bluetooth module is installed or a computer to which an optional Bluetooth adapter (available from various manufacturers) is attached. OS/Software: Microsoft Windows 7 (Satisfying any one of the following conditions is needed) • Add a Bluetooth Device is displayed in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel • Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba Version 7.00.00 or later is installed Microsoft Windows Vista (Satisfying any one of the following conditions is needed) • Bluetooth Devices is displayed in Hardware and Sound under Control Panel • Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba Version 5.10.04 or later is installed Microsoft Windows XP (Satisfying any one of the following conditions is needed) • Windows XP SP2 or later is installed, and Bluetooth Devices is displayed in Printers and Other Hardware under Control Panel • Bluetooth Stack for Windows by Toshiba Version 3.00.10 or later is installed
Frequency band	2.4 GHz band (2.400 GHz to 2.4835 GHz)
Power supply	Supplied from the Direct Print Port on the printer, DC 4.4 V to 5.25 V
Maximum power consumption	500 mW (MAX)
Operating temperature	5 to 35˚C (41 to 95˚F)
Operating humidity	10 to 90% RH (no condensation)
Dimensions (Width x Depth x Height)	18.5 (W) x 47.5 (D) x 8.7 (H) mm (with cap attached) 0.73 (W) x 1.87 (D) x 0.35 (H) inches
Weight	Approx. 7 g (0.25 oz)

Page top

Changing the Machine Settings

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer

Page top

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
Plain paper feed settings
Print settings
LAN settings
Device user settings
Mobile phone print settings
Bluetooth settings
PictBridge print settings
Language selection
Reset setting

Page top

U066

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

This section describes the procedure to change the settings in the Device settings screen, taking the steps to specify Extended copy amount as an example.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

2. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

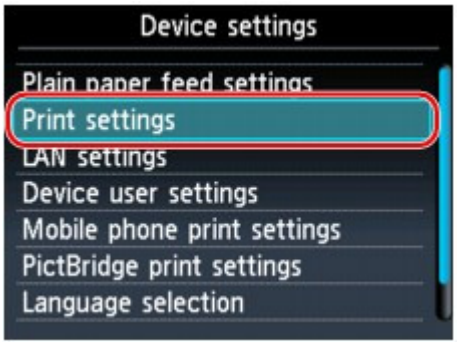
Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Select  Device settings, then touch the **OK** button.

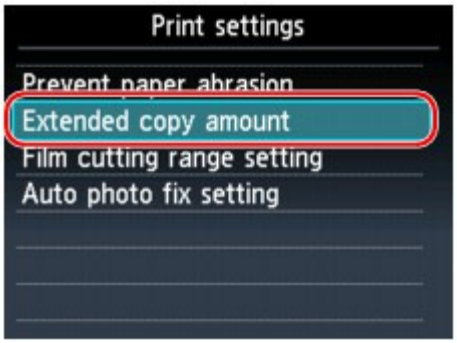
The Device settings screen is displayed.

4. Use the ▲▼ button to select the setting item, then touch the **OK** button.

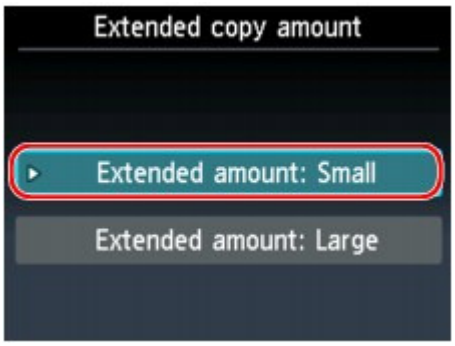


The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select the menu, then touch the **OK** button.



6. Use the ▲▼ button to select the setting item, then touch the **OK** button.



- Plain paper feed settings
- Print settings
- LAN settings
- Device user settings
- Mobile phone print settings
- Bluetooth settings
- PictBridge print settings
- Language selection
- Reset setting

Page top

U083

Plain paper feed settings

Specifies the paper source for A4, Letter, A5, and B5 plain paper.

Note

- A4, Letter, A5, and B5 paper can be loaded in the Cassette. Load the other sizes of paper on the Rear Tray.

Page top

U075

Print settings

- ## Prevent paper abrasion

  Use this setting only if the print surface becomes smudged.

  Important

  - Be sure to set this back to OFF after printing since it may result in lower printing speed or lower print quality.

- ## Extended copy amount

  Selects the amount of image that extends off the paper when printing in borderless (full). Slight cropping may occur at the edges since the copied image is enlarged to fill the whole page. You can change the width to be cropped from the borders of the original image as needed.

  Cropped area will be larger if Extended amount: Large is selected.

  Important

  - This setting can be applied under the following conditions:
    -When performing borderless copying
    -Borderless is selected for Border when printing from printed photos or films

  Note

  - If printouts contain margins even though you are printing in Borderless, specifying Extended amount: Large for this setting may help solve the problem.

- ## Film cutting range setting

  Use this setting to specify the cutting range of the 35 mm film.

  Important

  - Select Undersize cut when the frame of film is scanned on the edge of the image.
  - Select Oversize cut when the edge of image is not scanned.

- ## Auto photo fix setting

  When ON is selected, you can select whether to print photos using the Exif information recorded in the image files in the following cases.

  - Auto photo fix is selected for Photo fix when printing from a memory card/USB flash drive
  - When printing with PictBridge compliant device that meets both the following conditions:
    -The print setting on the PictBridge compliant device is set to Default
    -Auto photo fix is selected for Photo fix in PictBridge print settings

Page top

U076

LAN settings

Change wireless/wired

Activates either wireless LAN or wired LAN. You can also deactivate wireless/wired LAN.

Note

- When you change the connection method (wired or wireless), set up the machine according to the method you will use. For details, refer to your setup manual.

Wireless LAN setup

Selects the setting method for wireless LAN connection.

Note

- You can enter this setting menu by following the procedure below:
  1. Select Setup on the HOME screen.
  2. Select Wireless LAN setup.
  In this case, activate wireless LAN.

- Easy setup
  Select when you perform settings for wireless LAN manually using the Operation Panel of the machine.

  ### Note

  - If you perform settings for wireless LAN from the computer, refer to your setup manual.

- Other setup
  Select WPS, WCN, or Advanced setup. If you select WPS, select Push button method or PIN code method according to the method your access point supports, then follow the on-screen instructions. If you select WCN, you need a USB flash drive on which settings for wireless LAN are saved. If you select Advanced setup, follow the on-screen instructions.

Confirm LAN settings

The list of wireless LAN settings of this machine is displayed on the LCD.
You can print the list from this setting menu.

- WLAN setting list
  The list of wireless LAN settings of this machine is displayed on the LCD.
  The following setting items are displayed.

Items	Setting (IPv4)	Setting (IPv6)
Connection	Active/Inactive	Active/Inactive
SSID	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Communication mode	Infrastructure	Infrastructure
Channel	XX	XX
Wireless LAN security	Inactive/WEP(64bit)/WEP(128bit)/ WPA-PSK(TKIP)/WPA-PSK(AES)/ WPA2-PSK(TKIP)/WPA2-PSK(AES)	Inactive/WEP(64bit)/WEP(128bit)/ WPA-PSK(TKIP)/WPA-PSK(AES)/ WPA2-PSK(TKIP)/WPA2-PSK(AES)
IP address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
Subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX	-

Subnet prefix length	-	XXX
Default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
IPsec settings	-	Enable (ESP)/Enable (ESP & AH)/ Enable (AH)/Disable
Pre-shared key	-	XXXXXXXXXX
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX

("X" represents an alphanumeric character ranging from 0 to 9 and A to F.)

- LAN setting list
  The list of wired LAN settings of this machine is displayed on the LCD.
  The following setting items are displayed.

Items	Setting (IPv4)	Setting (IPv6)
Connection	Active/Inactive	Active/Inactive
IP address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
Subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX	-
Subnet prefix length	-	XXX
Default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
IPsec settings	-	Enable (ESP)/Enable (ESP & AH)/Enable (AH)/ Disable
Pre-shared key	-	XXXXXXXXXX
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX

("X" represents an alphanumeric character ranging from 0 to 9 and A to F.)

- Print LAN details
  You can print out the network settings of the machine such as its IP address and SSID.
  For more information on the machine's network setting is printed out, refer to Printing Out Network Setting Information .

Important

- This print out contains valuable information about your computer. Handle it with care.

Other settings

- Set printer name
  Specifies the printer name. You can use up to 15 characters for the name.

Note

- You cannot change this setting with the memory card inserted in the Card Slot.
- You cannot use the same printer name as that already used for other LAN connected devices.
- You cannot use a hyphen for the initial or last character of the printer name.

- IPv4/IPv6 setting
  Selects the IP version (IPv4 or IPv6). It is recommended to use the machine with IPv4.

- Set memory card sharing
  Selects whether to share the Card Slot with a LAN connected computer.

  Note

  - You cannot change this setting with the memory card inserted in the Card Slot.

- WSD setting
  Activates/deactivates the WSD (one of the network protocols supported in Windows 7 and Windows Vista) setting or specifies the timeout length.

  Note

  - When this setting is activated, the printer icon is displayed on the Network Explorer in Windows 7 and Windows Vista.

- LLTD setting
  Activates/deactivates the Link Layer Topology Discovery (LLTD) setting. When this setting is activated, Network Map for Windows 7 or Windows Vista is available.
- Bonjour settings
  Setting items for LAN using Bonjour for Macintosh.

  Enable/disable Bonjour
  Selecting Enable allows you to use Bonjour to perform the network settings.

  Service name
  Specifies the Bonjour service name. You can use up to 48 characters for the name.

  Note

  - You cannot use the same service name as that already used for other LAN connected devices.

  LPR service advertising
  Selects whether to advertise the Line PRinter daemon protocol (LPR) service using Bonjour.

  Note

  - Select ON for this setting and Enable for LPR protocol setting to advertise the Line PRinter daemon protocol (LPR) service.

- LPR protocol setting
  Activates/deactivates the LPR setting.

Reset LAN settings

Initializes the network settings on the machine.

Important

- Note that initialization erases all connection settings with computers, and printing or scanning operation may become impossible. To use the machine over network, refer to your setup manual. Be careful when you initialize the network settings on the machine.

Note

- When you initialize the network settings using the Canon IJ Network Tool, refer to Initializing the Network Settings of the Machine .

Page top

U077

Device user settings

- ## Date display format

  Changes the display format of shooting dates when printed.

  Note

  - When ON is selected for Print date on the print settings screen in printing from a memory card or a USB flash drive, the shooting date is printed in the date display format you selected. For print settings, see Setting Items .
  - The shooting date format is as specified in the DPOF setting from DPOF printing.

- ## Read/write attribute

  Selects whether to allow data to be written onto memory cards from a computer.

  Important

  - Remove the memory card before changing this setting. For details, see Setting Up the Card Slot as the Memory Card Drive of the Computer .
  - If you set this setting to Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC, you cannot print photos on a memory card using the Operation Panel of the machine. After you finish operation of the memory card dedicated drive, be sure to set it back to Not writable from PC. When you turn off the machine, Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC will be canceled and the setting is returned to Not writable from PC when you turn on the machine next time.

- ## Volume control

  Selects the volume.

  - Keypad volume
    Selects the beep volume when touching the buttons on the Operation Panel.
    Loud/Normal/OFF
  - Alarm volume
    Selects the alarm volume.
    Loud/Normal/OFF

- ## Power save setting

  The machine enters the Power save mode if not operated for a certain time interval*. In the Power save mode, the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) lamp is turned off to reduce the power consumption of the machine.

  * You can set the wait time before the FAU lamp is turned off. Select from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 1 hour, and 4 hours. The default setting is 15 minutes. If you scan films frequently, it is recommended to set the longer time interval (1 hour or 4 hours).

  Note

  - The machine enters the Power save mode if no operation is performed for the time interval set in Power save setting. The lamp inside the Platen Glass and the FAU lamp are turned off, then the machine is on standby.
  - Touch any button except for the **ON** button or perform printing to restore the machine.

- ## Quiet mode setting

  Enables this function on the machine if you want to reduce the operating noise, such as when printing at night.

  Enabling this function reduces the noises generated in the following cases:

- Copying
- Printing from a memory card/USB flash drive
- Printing from a printed photo or a film
- Printing from a PictBridge compliant device
- Printing from a mobile phone
- Printing a template form

Important

- Operating speed may be reduced compared to when this setting is set to OFF.
- This function may not be so effective depending on the machine's setting.
  Furthermore, certain noise, such as when the machine is preparing for printing, is not reduced.

Note

- The noises generated while scanning or printing from the computer can also be reduced. To reduce these noises, you need to configure the settings on the computer.
  - For the noises while scanning, refer to Scanner Tab .
  - For the noises while printing from the computer, refer to Reducing the Machine Noise .

Guide display settings

Changes the time before the guidance is displayed on the LCD, or selects not to be displayed.

Key repeat

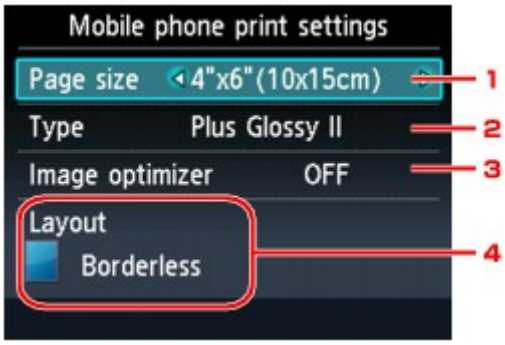
Enables/Disables continuous input by holding down the ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶, **+**, or **-** button when setting the number of copies, changing the photo displayed on the LCD, setting the zoom ratio, etc.

Page top

U078

Mobile phone print settings

When printing from a mobile phone through infrared communication or Bluetooth communication, select the print settings such as page size, media type, layout, and so on.
For details on how to print from a mobile phone through Bluetooth communication, see Printing from Mobile Phone via Infrared Communication or Printing from Mobile Phone via Bluetooth Communication .



1. Page size

Select the page size for printing photos saved on a mobile phone.

2. Type (Media type)

Select the media type for printing photos saved on a mobile phone.

3. Image optimizer

Select ON to correct and smooth out the jagged contours when printing.

4. Layout

Select the layout of the photos according to the paper for printing.

Sticker print:
Stickers x16

Printing on paper other than sticker:
Bordered x 1, x 2, x 4, x 8
Borderless x 1, x 2, x 4, x 8
Mixed 1, 2, 3

Note

- Only bordered layout can be selected when Plain paper is selected for the media type.
- Mixed 1, Mixed 2, or Mixed 3 can be selected only when the page size is set to A4 or 8.5"x11"(LTR).

Page top

U079

Bluetooth settings

You can change the device name of the machine, passkey, and so on in the Bluetooth settings.
For details on how to print from a mobile phone through Bluetooth communication, see Printing from Mobile Phone via Bluetooth Communication .
For details on how to print from a computer through Bluetooth communication, refer to About Bluetooth Communication.

Note

- This menu is displayed only when the optional Bluetooth Unit is attached.

- **Select device name**

  Specifies the name of this machine that is displayed on a Bluetooth-compatible device.

  For example, if you set it to XXX-2, the machine will be displayed as "Canon XXX-2" on the Bluetooth device. The default value is XXX-1 (where "XXX" is your machine's name).

- **Access refusal setting**

  Selecting ON will disable searching of this machine by a Bluetooth-compatible device.

- **Security settings**

  When you select Enable, the passkey set on the Change passkey screen becomes effective. Setting the passkey prevents unwanted access from other Bluetooth devices. You can choose either of the security modes below.

  - Mode 2
    This mode is activated on service level enforced security.
    The passkey will be required when printing through the Bluetooth communication.
    After setting the security mode, we recommend making a trial print through Bluetooth communication.
    If printing does not start, change the security mode and try again.
  - Mode 3(recommended)
    This mode is activated on link level enforced security.
    The passkey will be required when a Bluetooth device communicates with the machine.
    Normally select this mode.

- **Change passkey**

  Changes the passkey. The passkey is a four-digit number used to prevent unwanted access from other Bluetooth devices.

  The initial value is "0000".

  After you change the passkey, you may be required to input the new passkey on a Bluetooth device, even though it had previous access to the machine. In this case, input the new passkey on the device.

Page top

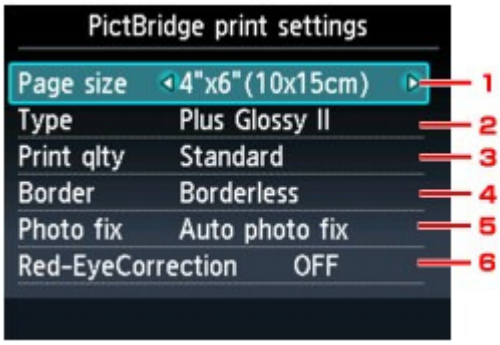
U080

PictBridge print settings

You can change the print settings when printing from a PictBridge compliant device.
Set the print settings to Default on the PictBridge compliant device when you want to print according to the settings on the machine.
See Settings on a PictBridge Compliant Device to change print settings from the PictBridge compliant device.

PictBridge print settings Screen

Select the print quality, when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device.



1. Page size

Select the paper size when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device.
When you perform PictBridge settings from the machine, set Paper size to Default on the PictBridge compliant device.

2. Type (Media type)

Select the media type when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device.
When you perform PictBridge settings from the machine, set Paper type to Default on the PictBridge compliant device.

3. Print qlty (Print quality)

Select the print quality when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device.

4. Border (Bordered/Borderless print)

Select bordered or borderless print.
When you perform PictBridge settings from the machine, set Layout to Default on the PictBridge compliant device.

5. Photo fix

Select automatic image correction or manual image correction.
When Auto photo fix is selected, the scene or person's face of a shot photo is recognized and the most suitable correction for each photo is made automatically. It makes a darkened face by backlight brighter to print. It also analyzes a scene such as scenery, night scene, person, etc. and corrects each scene with the most suitable color, brightness, or contrasts automatically to print.

Note

- As a default, photos on a PictBridge compliant device are printed with auto correction

applied.

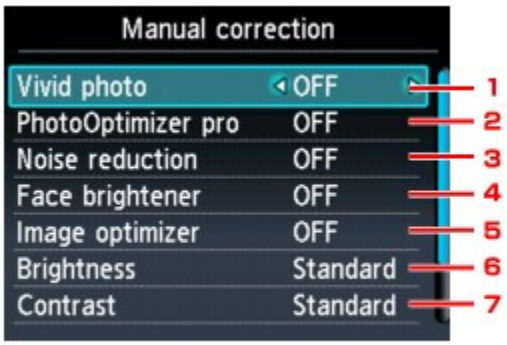
- If the print result with Auto photo fix selected for Photo fix is not satisfactory, select Manual correction, then specify each advanced setting item.
  Manual correction Screen
- If No correction is selected, photos are printed without correction.

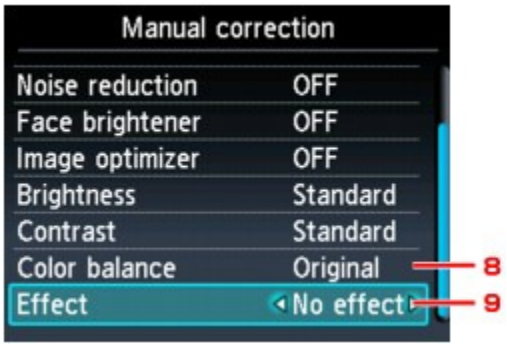
6. Red-EyeCorrection

Select ON to correct red eyes in portraits caused by flash photography.
Depending on the type of the photo, red eyes may not be corrected or parts other than the eyes may be corrected.

Manual correction Screen

Select Manual correction for Photo fix, then touch the right Function button to display the screen below.





1. Vivid photo

Makes green and blue more lively.

2. PhotoOptimizer pro

Automatically optimizes brightness and tone of a photo.

3. Noise reduction

Reduces the noise on blue areas like the sky as well as on black areas.

4. Face brightener

Brightens a darkened face on a photo taken against the light.

5. Image optimizer

Corrects and smoothes the jagged contours for printing.

6. Brightness

Adjust brightness.

7. **Contrast**

Adjust contrast.

8. **Color balance**

Adjust color hue. For example, you can increase red or yellow to adjust the skin tone.

9. **Effect**

Applies special effects to the photo, such as printing in sepia tones or with a sketch illustration like effect.

Page top

U081

Language selection

Changes the language for LCD messages and menus.

Page top

U082

Reset setting

You can change the settings back to the default.

Note

- You cannot change the following setting items back to the default:
  - The language displayed on the LCD
  - The current position of the Print Head
  - The Read/write attribute setting
  - LAN settings*

  * You can change LAN settings back to the default from Reset LAN settings under LAN settings.

Page top

Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer

- Changing the Print Options
- Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile
- Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper
- Managing the Machine Power
- Reducing the Machine Noise
- Changing the Machine Operation Mode

Page top

P413

Changing the Print Options

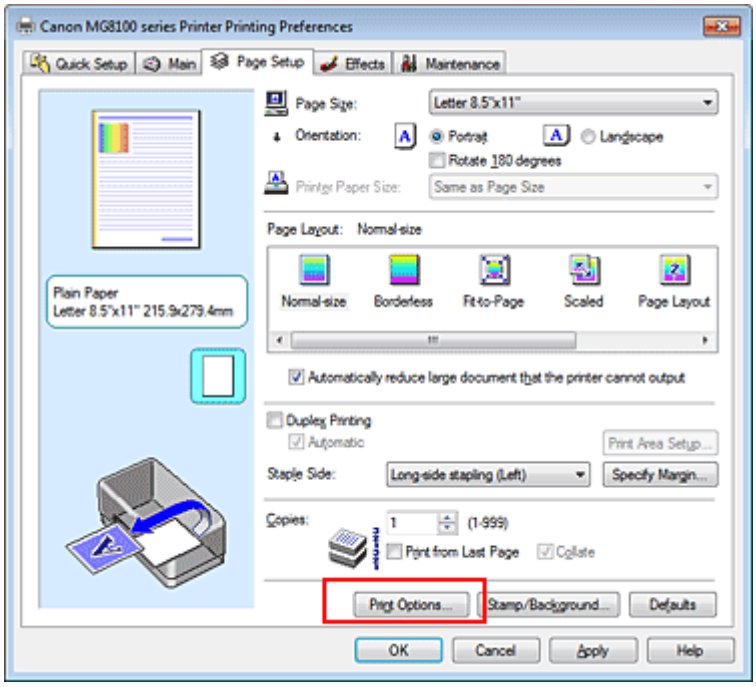
You change the detailed print driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software.

Check this check box if part of the image data is cut off, the paper source during printing differs from the driver settings, or printing fails.

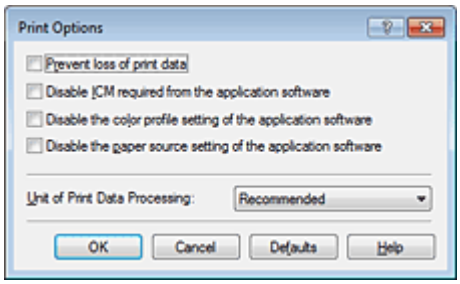
The procedure for changing the print options is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Print Options... on the Page Setup tab



The Print Options dialog box opens.



Note

- When the XPS printer driver is used, certain functions are not available.

3. Change the individual settings

If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click OK.

The Page Setup tab is displayed again.

Page top

P417

Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

You can register the frequently used printing profile to Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering a printing profile is as follows:

Registering a Printing Profile

1. Open the printer driver setup window

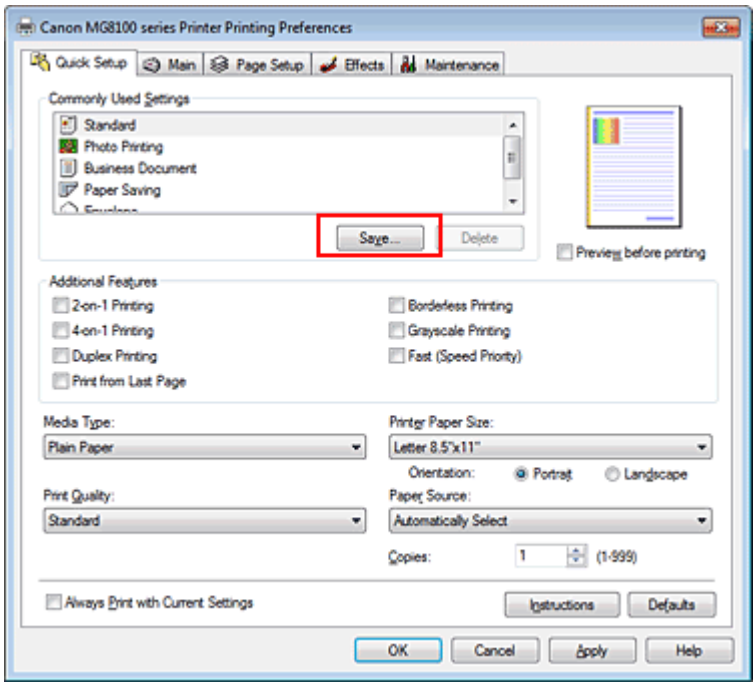
2. Set the necessary items

From Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab, select the printing profile to be used and if necessary, change the settings after Additional Features.
You can also register necessary items on the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs.

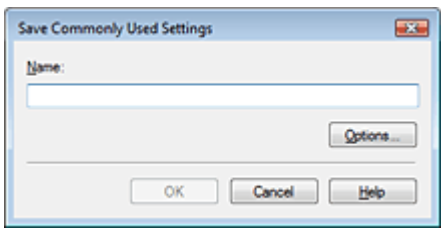
Note

- Effects tab cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.

3. Click Save...



The Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

Enter a name in the Name field, and if necessary, set the items in Options.... Then click OK.
The printing profile is saved, and the Quick Setup tab is displayed again.
The name and icon are added to the Commonly Used Settings list.

Important

- To save the page size, orientation, and number of copies that was set in each sheet, click Options..., and check each item.

Note

- When you install the printer driver again or upgrade the version of the printer driver, the print settings you registered will be deleted from Commonly Used Settings.
  Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. If a profile is deleted, register the print settings again.

Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the Commonly Used Settings list on the Quick Setup tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click Delete. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.
The selected printing profile is deleted from the Commonly Used Settings list.

Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

Page top

P032

Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper

When you select Automatically Select from Paper Source, you can use the printer driver to select the paper source for plain paper.

The procedure for setting the paper source is as follows:



Paper Source Setting for Plain Paper

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click Paper Source Setting for Plain Paper on the Maintenance tab

   The Paper Source Setting for Plain Paper dialog box opens.

Note

- If the machine is off or bi-directional communication is disabled, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the machine status.
  If this happens, click OK to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Transmit the settings

   Select the paper source for plain paper, and then click the Send button.

   The selected settings are enabled hereafter.

Important

- The descriptions in the machine manual assume that the plain paper is supplied from the cassette. When you change the paper source setting, replace all instances of "cassette" with the new paper source.

Page top

P414

Managing the Machine Power

This function allows you to manage the machine power from the printer driver.

The procedure for managing the printer power is as follows:



Power Off

The Power Off function turns off the machine. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the machine on from the printer driver.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Execute power off

   Click Power Off on the Maintenance tab. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

   The machine power switches off, and the Maintenance tab is displayed again.

Page top

P034

Reducing the Machine Noise

This function allows you to reduce the operating noise. Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.
Using this function may lower the print speed.

The procedure for using the quiet mode is as follows:



Quiet Mode

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Quiet Mode on the Maintenance tab

   The Quiet Mode dialog box opens.

3. Set the quiet mode

   If necessary, specify one of the following items:

   Do not use quiet mode
   The operating noise is at normal volume.

   Always use quiet mode
   Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise.

   Use quiet mode within specified time
   The operating noise can be reduced during a specified period of time.
   Set the Start time and End time when you wish the quiet mode to be activated.

   Important

   - The time specified in Start time and in End time must be different.

4. Transmit the settings

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Send.
   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

   The settings are enabled hereafter.

Note

- Depending on the paper source and the print quality settings, effects of the quiet mode may be less.

Page top

P035

Changing the Machine Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of machine operation.

The procedure for configuring Custom Settings is as follows:



Custom Settings

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Make sure that the machine is on, and then click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab

   The Custom Settings dialog box opens.

   Note

   - If the machine is off or bi-directional communication is disabled, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the machine status.
     If this happens, click OK to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

   Prevent paper abrasion
   The machine can increase the gap between the print head and the paper during high-density printing to prevent paper abrasion.
   Check this check box to use this function.

   Align heads manually
   Usually, the Print Head Alignment function on the Maintenance tab is set to automatic head alignment, but you can change it to manual head alignment.
   If the printing results of automatic print head alignment are not satisfactory, see " Manual Print Head Alignment ," and perform manual head alignment.
   Check this check box to perform the manual head alignment. Uncheck this check box to perform the automatic head alignment.

   Ink Drying Wait Time
   You can set the length of the machine rest time until printing of the next page begins. Moving the slider to the right increases the pause time and moving the slider to the left decreases the time.
   If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.
   Reducing the ink drying wait time speeds up printing.

4. Transmit the settings

   Click Send, and click OK when the confirmation message appears.

   The machine operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Page top

Advanced Guide

Troubleshooting

- Troubleshooting
- If an Error Occurs
- The Machine Cannot Be Powered On
- An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD
- LCD Cannot Be Seen At All
- An Unintended Language Is Displayed on the LCD
- Cannot Install the MP Drivers
- Cannot Install the Application Program
- Cannot Connect to Computer with a USB Cable Properly
- Print Results Not Satisfactory
- Printing Does Not Start
- Copying/Printing Stops Before It Is Completed
- Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected
- Printing Speed Is Not as Fast as Expected
- Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for Replacing
- Paper Does Not Feed Properly
- Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the Printer Driver
- Paper Jams
- Message Appears on the Computer Screen
- Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing
- For Windows Users
- Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device
- Cannot Print Properly from a Wireless Communication Device
- Cannot Remove a Memory Card
- Problems with Scanning
- Problems with Scanning/Printing Film
- Software Problems
- MP Navigator EX Problems
- Cannot Use the Contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM
- If You Cannot Resolve the Problem
- FAQs
- Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)
- General Notes (Scanner Driver)

Page top

U301

Troubleshooting

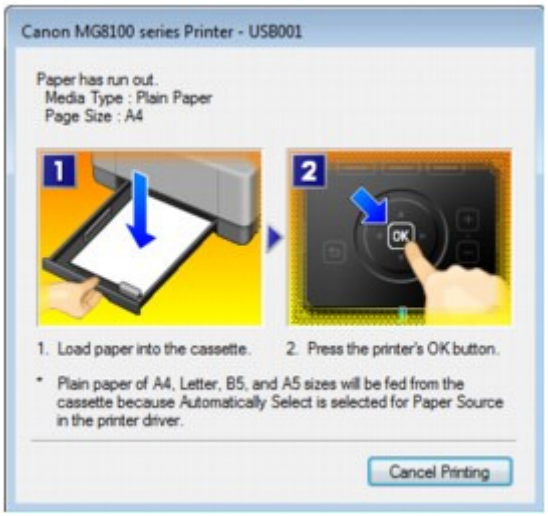
This section describes troubleshooting tips for problems you may encounter when using the machine.
For troubleshooting tips related to the setup, refer to the *Network Setup Troubleshooting* .

Page top

U302

If an Error Occurs

When an error occurs in printing such as the machine is out of paper or paper is jammed, a troubleshooting message is displayed automatically. Take the appropriate action described in the message. The message may vary depending on the version of your operating system.



Page top

U303

The Machine Cannot Be Powered On

- **Check 1: Press the ON button.**
- **Check 2: Make sure that the power plug is securely plugged into the Power Cord Connector of the machine, then turn it back on.**
- **Check 3: Unplug the machine from the power supply, then plug the machine back in and turn the machine back on after leaving it for at least 3 minutes.**
  If the problem is not resolved, contact the service center.

Page top

U304

An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD

If an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the corresponding action described below.

Message	Action
The ink may have run out. Replacing the ink tank is recommended. U041	If the lamp on the ink tank is flashing, ink may have run out. Replacing the ink tank is recommended. If printing is in progress and you want to continue printing, press the machine's **OK** button with the ink tank installed. Then printing can continue. Replacing the ink tank is recommended after the printing. The machine may be damaged if printing is continued under the ink out condition. ➡ Routine Maintenance **Note** ■ If multiple ink lamps are flashing red, see Routine Maintenance and check the status of each ink tank.
Print head is not installed. Install the print head. U051/ The type of print head is incorrect. Install the correct print head. U052	Follow the directions given in your setup sheet to install the Print Head. If the Print Head is already installed, remove the Print Head once and then reinstall it. If the error is not resolved, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the service center.
Some ink tanks are not installed in place. U072/ More than one ink tank of the following color is installed. U071	• Some ink tanks are not installed in the correct position. (The lamp on the ink tank flashes.) • More than one ink tanks of the same color are installed. (The lamp on the ink tank flashes.) Confirm that the ink tanks are installed in the appropriate positions. ➡ Routine Maintenance
The remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Replace the ink tank. U130	The remaining ink level cannot be correctly detected. (The lamp on the ink tank flashes.) Replace the ink tank and close the Scanning Unit (Cover). ➡ Routine Maintenance Printing with an ink tank that was once empty may damage the machine. If you want to continue printing in this condition, you need to release the function for detecting the remaining ink level. Press and hold the machine's **Stop** button for at least 5 seconds, and then release it. With this operation, releasing the function for detecting the remaining ink level is memorized. Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any machine malfunction or damage caused by refilled ink tanks. **Note** ■ If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, the ink tank in gray is

	displayed on the LCD when checking the current ink level. ➡ Routine Maintenance
The following ink tank cannot be recognized. U043 U140 U150	• The ink tank is not installed. Install the ink tank. ➡ Routine Maintenance • The ink tank is not compatible with this machine. (The lamp on the ink tank is off.) Install an appropriate ink tank. ➡ Routine Maintenance • An ink tank error has occurred. (The lamp on the ink tank is off.) Replace the ink tank. ➡ Routine Maintenance
Appropriate ink tank is not installed. Install the appropriate ink tank. U141	Appropriate ink tank is not installed. Printing cannot be executed because the ink tank is not compatible with this machine. Install the appropriate ink tank. ➡ Routine Maintenance If you want to cancel printing, press the machine's **Stop** button.
The ink has run out. Replace the ink tank. U163	The ink has run out. (The lamp on the ink tank flashes.) Replace the ink tank and close the Scanning Unit (Cover). ➡ Routine Maintenance Printing under the current condition may damage the machine. If you want to continue printing in this condition, you need to release the function for detecting the remaining ink level. Press and hold the machine's **Stop** button for at least 5 seconds, and then release it. With this operation, releasing the function for detecting the remaining ink level is memorized. Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any malfunction or trouble which may be caused by continuation of printing under the ink out condition. **Note** ■ If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, the ink tank in gray is displayed on the LCD when checking the current ink level. ➡ Routine Maintenance
Data of supported types are not saved.	• There is no image data or document saved on the memory card or USB flash drive that can be read by this machine. • The machine may not recognize the file if the file name or folder path contain certain characters. Use only alphanumeric characters. • Photo data edited or processed on a computer must be printed from the computer. **Note** ■ When a photo which has been processed on a computer is selected, "?" is displayed on the LCD.

Cannot print the specified PDF file. The format is not supported or the file is too large.	• Make sure the PDF file is printable from a memory card or USB flash drive. See Printing Documents (PDF File) Saved on a Memory Card/USB Flash Drive for more information. **Note** ▪ The names of the PDF files are displayed even though they cannot be printed from the memory card or USB flash drive. It is recommended you confirm whether they are printable. If one of the following conditions applies to the PDF files, they are not printable. ◦ The Details screen is not displayed for the PDF file you want to print. ◦ Characters other than machine name or MP Navigator EX are displayed on Created with on the Details screen. ◦ "?" is displayed on the preview screen. • Data edited or processed on a computer must be printed from the computer.
The specified PDF file contains unprintable data. Some portions may not be printed.	PDF file which contain lot of graphics or hi-resolution images may lose that data or stop before printing is completed. In this case, print from the computer.
The ink absorber is almost full. Press OK to continue printing. Contact the service center.	The ink absorber is almost full. Touch the machine's **OK** button to continue printing. Contact the service center.
Printer error has occurred Contact the service center.	The machine error has occurred. Contact the service center.
Timeout error has occurred.	Some errors occurred while copying and a certain time passed. Touch the **OK** button to dismiss the error, and try to copy again.
Incompatible device detected. Remove the device.	• Check the device connected to the Direct Print Port. Printing photos directly is possible with a PictBridge compliant device or the optional Bluetooth Unit BU-30, or a USB flash drive. • A communication time out occurs if an operation takes too long or if it takes too much time to send data. This may cancel printing. In such cases, disconnect and reconnect the USB cable. When printing from a PictBridge compliant device, depending on the model or brand of your device, you may have to select a PictBridge compliant print mode on the device before connecting it to the machine. You may also have to turn on your device or select Play mode manually after connecting the device to the machine. Perform necessary operations before connecting your device referring to its instruction manual. If the error is still not resolved, check if you can print another photograph.
Auto head align has failed. Press OK and repeat operation. <See manual>	• Print Head nozzles are clogged. Touch the **OK** button to dismiss the error, and print the nozzle check pattern to check the

	status of the Print Head. ➡ Routine Maintenance • Paper of size other than A4 or Letter is loaded in the Rear Tray. Touch the **OK** button on the machine to dismiss the error, then load a sheet of A4/ Letter-sized Canon Matte Photo Paper MP-101 with the printing side (whiter side) facing UP in the Rear Tray. For Automatic Print Head Alignment, always load paper in the Rear Tray. • The Paper Output Slot is exposed to strong light. Touch the **OK** button to dismiss the error message, and then adjust your operating environment and/or the position of the machine so that the Paper Output Slot is not exposed directly to strong light. After carrying out the above measures, if the problem continues after aligning the Print Head again, touch the **OK** button to dismiss the error, and then perform Manual Print Head Alignment. ➡ Manual Print Head Alignment
An unsupported USB hub is connected. Remove the hub.	If a PictBridge compliant device is connected via a USB hub, remove the hub and connect it directly to the machine.
B200 Printer error has occurred. Unplug the power cord and contact the service center.	Turn off the machine, and unplug the power cord of the machine from the power supply. Contact the service center.
**** Printer error has occurred. Turn off power then back on again. If problem persists, see the manual.	"****" is displayed in the alphanumeric character and depends on the error occurred. • 5100/5110 is displayed: Cancel printing, and turn off the machine. Then clear the jammed paper or protective material that is preventing the Print Head Holder from moving, and turn on the machine again. **Important** ▪ Be careful not to touch the components inside the machine. The machine may not print out properly if you touch it. ▪ If the problem is not resolved, contact the service center. • 6000 is displayed: If any object is placed in front of the machine, remove it. Open the Paper Output Tray gently, then turn the power off and back on. • In other cases: Turn off the machine, and unplug the power cord of the machine from the power supply. Plug the machine back in and turn the machine back on. If the problem is not resolved, contact the service center.
Scanner is not operating correctly.	Turn off the machine, and unplug the power cord of the machine from the power supply. After a while, plug the power cord of the machine back in, and then turn on the machine. If the same

	error occurs, contact the service center.
Release the scanner lock switch and turn off power then back on again.	The Scanner Lock Switch is not released. Slide the Scanner Lock Switch to the release position () and press the **ON** button to turn the machine off. Then, turn the power back on. If this error still remains, contact the service center.
The card is currently writable from PC. Set to [Not writable from PC].	The Card Slot is set to Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC. You cannot print from the memory card or save the scanned data to the memory card when the Card Slot is set to Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC. After writing on the memory card, select Not writable from PC in Read/write attribute in Device user settings.
Power was not turned off correctly the last time. Press the ON button when turning power off.	The power cord may have been unplugged last while the machine was still on. Touch the **OK** button to dismiss the error. **Note** ■ See Notice for Unplugging the Power Cord for unplugging the power cord.
Cannot print the data.	The specified data cannot be printed. When you print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM, confirm the message on the computer screen, make sure that genuine Canon ink tanks are installed properly for all colors, then start printing again.

Page top

U306

LCD Cannot Be Seen At All

- **If the POWER lamp is off:**

  The machine is not powered on. Connect the power cord and press the **ON** button.

- **If the POWER lamp is lit:**

  The LCD may be in the screen-saver mode. On the Operation Panel, touch a button other than the **ON** button.

Page top

U307

An Unintended Language Is Displayed on the LCD

Select the language you want to be displayed according to the following procedure.

1. Touch the **HOME** button and wait for about 5 seconds.

2. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

Note

- For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Select  Device settings, then touch the **OK** button.

The Device settings screen is displayed.

4. Touch the ▼ button 6 times, then touch the **OK** button.

If the Bluetooth unit is connected to the machine, touch the ▼ button 7 times, then touch the **OK** button.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select the language for the LCD, then touch the **OK** button.

Page top

U308

Cannot Install the MP Drivers

Important

- If you cannot install the MP Drivers when you use the machine over LAN, refer to the setup manual.

- **If the installation does not start even after the *Setup CD-ROM* is inserted into your computer's disc drive:**

  Start the installation following the procedure below.

  1. Click Start then Computer.

     In Windows XP, click Start then My Computer.

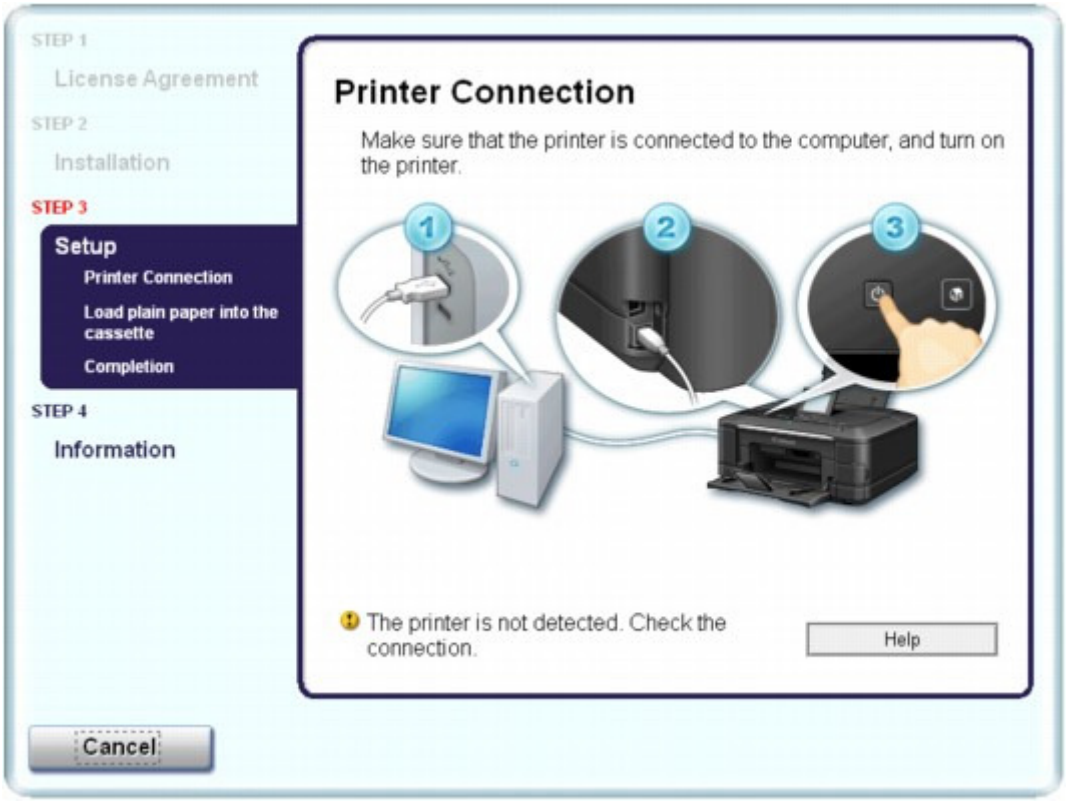
  2. Double-click the  CD-ROM icon on the displayed window.

     If the contents of the CD-ROM are displayed, double-click MSETUP4.EXE.

Note

- If the CD-ROM icon is not displayed, try the following:
  - Remove the CD-ROM from your computer, then insert it again.
  - Restart your computer.
- If the icon is still not displayed, try different discs and see if they are displayed. If other discs are displayed, there is a problem with the *Setup CD-ROM* . In this case, contact the service center.

- **If you are unable to proceed beyond the Printer Connection screen:**



If you are unable to proceed beyond the Printer Connection screen, make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged into the USB port of the machine and is connected to the computer, and then follow the procedure below to reinstall the MP Drivers.

Note

- The printer is not detected. Check the connection. may be displayed depending on the computer you use. In this case, follow the procedure below to reinstall the MP Drivers.

1. Click Cancel.
2. Click Start Over on the Installation Failure screen.
3. Click Back on the screen that appears next.
4. Click Exit on the PIXMA XXX screen (where "XXX" is your machine's name), then remove the CD-ROM.
5. Turn the machine off.
6. Restart the computer.
7. Make sure that you have no application software running.
8. Insert the CD-ROM again, then perform Easy Install to install the MP Drivers.

- **In other cases:**

Follow the procedure described in your setup manual to reinstall the MP Drivers.

If the MP Drivers were not installed correctly, uninstall the MP Drivers, restart your computer, and then reinstall the MP Drivers.

Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers

If you reinstall the MP Drivers, perform Custom Install on the *Setup CD-ROM* , then select MP Drivers.

Note

- If the installer was forced to be terminated due to a Windows error, the system may be in an unstable condition and you may not be able to install the drivers. Restart your computer before reinstalling.

Page top

U347

Cannot Install the Application Program

Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Does Not Start up or Easy-PhotoPrint Pro Menu Does Not Appear

If the Easy-PhotoPrint Pro menu does not appear on Adobe Photoshop although you have installed Easy-PhotoPrint Pro, make sure that Adobe Photoshop is not running and install Adobe Photoshop Plug-In as described below.

1. **Click Start, and select All Programs (or Programs), Canon Utilities, Easy-PhotoPrint Pro and then Photoshop Plug-In Installer.**

2. **Follow the on-screen instructions to install Adobe Photoshop Plug-In.**

Note

- If you have never started up Adobe Photoshop before, Adobe Photoshop Plug-In cannot be installed.

Easy-WebPrint EX Does Not Start up or Easy-WebPrint EX Menu Does Not Appear

If Easy-WebPrint EX does not start up or its menu does not appear on Internet Explorer, confirm the following.

Note

- You can use Easy-WebPrint EX with Internet Explorer 7 or later.

- **Check 1: Is Canon Easy-WebPrint EX is displayed on the Toolbars menu in the Internet Explorer's View menu?**

  If Canon Easy-WebPrint EX is not displayed, Easy-WebPrint EX is not installed on your computer. Perform Custom Install on the *Setup CD-ROM* , then select Easy-WebPrint EX to install it onto your computer.

  ### Note

  - If Easy-WebPrint EX is not installed on your computer, a message asking you to install it may be displayed on the notification area on the taskbar. Click the message, then follow the instructions on the computer screen to install Easy-WebPrint EX.
  - While the installation or download Easy-WebPrint EX is in progress, it is necessary to access the Internet. A connection charge is taken upon yourself.

- **Check 2: Is Canon Easy-WebPrint EX selected on the Toolbars menu in the Internet Explorer's View menu?**

  If Canon Easy-WebPrint EX is not selected, Easy-WebPrint is disabled. Select Canon Easy-WebPrint EX to enable it.

Page top

U309

Cannot Connect to Computer with a USB Cable Properly

Printing or Scanning Speed Is Slow/Hi-Speed USB Connection Does Not Work/"This device can perform faster" Message Is Displayed

If your system environment is not fully compatible with Hi-Speed USB, the machine will operate at a lower speed provided under USB 1.1. In this case, the machine operates properly but printing or scanning speed may slow down due to communication speed.

- **Check: Check the following to make sure that your system environment supports Hi-Speed USB connection.**
  - Does the USB port on your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
  - Does the USB cable or the USB hub support Hi-Speed USB connection?
    Be sure to use a certified Hi-Speed USB cable. We recommend that the cable is no longer than around 10 feet / 3 meters.
  - Does the operating system of your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
    Obtain and install the latest update for your computer.
  - Does the Hi-Speed USB driver operate properly?
    Obtain the latest version of the Hi-Speed USB driver compatible with your hardware and reinstall it on your computer.

Important

- For details on Hi-Speed USB of your system environment, contact the manufacturer of your computer, USB cable, or USB hub.

Page top

U310

Print Results Not Satisfactory

If the print result is not satisfactory due to white streaks, misaligned lines, or uneven colors, confirm the paper and print quality settings first.

- **Check 1: Do the page size and media type settings match the size and type of the loaded paper?**

  When these settings are incorrect, you cannot obtain a proper print result.

  If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, incorrect paper type settings may reduce the quality of the printout color.

  Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

  In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

  The method of confirming the paper and print quality settings differs depending on what you do with your machine.

To copy by operating the machine	Confirm by using the Operation Panel on the machine. ➡ Setting Items
To print from your memory card by operating the machine	Confirm by using the Operation Panel on the machine. ➡ Setting Items
To print from your USB flash drive by operating the machine	Confirm by using the Operation Panel on the machine. ➡ Setting Items
To print from printed photo or film by operating the machine	Confirm by using the Operation Panel on the machine. ➡ Setting Items
To print from a PictBridge compliant device	Confirm by using your PictBridge compliant device. ➡ Printing Photographs Directly from a PictBridge Compliant Device Confirm by using the Operation Panel on the machine. ➡ Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
To print from a mobile phone	Confirm by using the Operation Panel on the machine. ➡ Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
To print from a computer	Confirm by using the printer driver. ➡ Printing with Easy Setup

- **Check 2: Make sure that the appropriate print quality is selected referring to the table in Check 1.**

  Select a print quality option suitable for the paper and image for printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and try printing again.

Note

- When printing from a PictBridge compliant device, set the print quality setting by using the Operation Panel on the machine.
  You cannot make this setting from a PictBridge compliant device.
- You cannot change the print quality setting when printing from a mobile phone.

- **Check 3: If the problem is not resolved, there may be other causes.**

  See also the sections below:

  - Cannot Print to End of Job
  - Part of the Page Is Not Printed
  - No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks
  - Lines Are Misaligned
  - Line or Image Does Not Print or Prints Partially
  - Printed Paper Curls or Has Ink Blots
  - Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched
  - Back of the Paper Is Smudged
  - Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout
  - Colors Are Uneven or Streaked

Page top

U311

Cannot Print to End of Job

- **Check 1: Is the size of the print data extremely large?**

  Click Print Options on the Page Setup sheet. Then, select the Prevent loss of print data check box in the displayed dialog.

- **Check 2: Is the space of your computer's hard disk sufficient?**

  Delete unnecessary files to free disk space.

Page top

U312

Part of the Page Is Not Printed

- **Check: When performing automatic duplex printing, the reason below is possible.**

  When performing automatic duplex printing, the printable area at the top of the page will be 0.08 inches / 2 mm narrower than the usual.

  For this reason, the bottom of the page may not be printed. To prevent this, select Use reduced printing from the printer driver.

Important

- Reduced printing may affect the layout depending on your document.

1. Open the printer driver setup window.

   Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

    Click Here: Printer Driver

   * Before clicking here to open the printer driver setup window, quit the running application software.

2. Click Print Area Setup in the Page Setup sheet and select Use reduced printing.

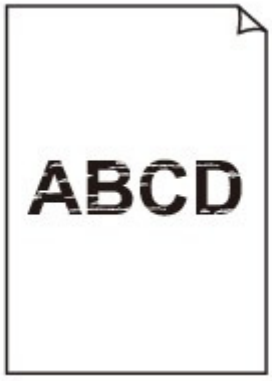
Page top

U313

No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks

No Printing Results

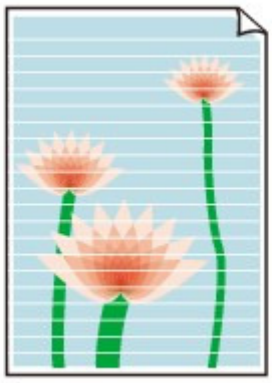
Printing Is Blurred



Colors Are Wrong



White Streaks



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

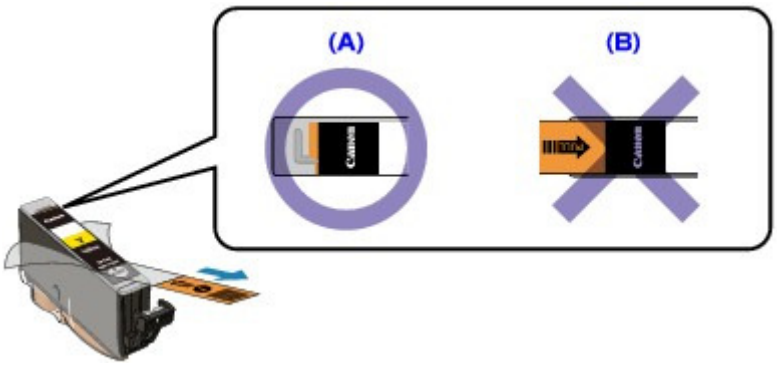
- **Check 2: Check the status of ink tanks. Replace the ink tank if the ink has run out.**

  Routine Maintenance

- **Check 3: Is the orange tape or protective film remaining?**

  Make sure that all of the protective film is peeled off and the L-shape air hole is exposed, as illustrated in (A).

  If the orange tape is left as in (B), pull the orange tape and remove it.



- **Check 4: Print the Nozzle Check Pattern and perform any necessary maintenance operations such as Print Head Cleaning.**

  Print the Nozzle Check Pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

  Refer to Routine Maintenance for the Nozzle Check Pattern printing, Print Head Cleaning, and Print Head Deep Cleaning.

  - If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly:
    Check to see if a particular color's ink tank is not empty.
    If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly though ink is sufficient, perform the Print Head Cleaning and try printing the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
  - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Cleaning twice:
    Perform the Print Head Deep Cleaning.
    If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning, turn off the machine and perform another Print Head Deep Cleaning after 24 hours.
  - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning twice:
    If Print Head Deep Cleaning does not resolve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the service center.

- **Check 5: When using paper with one printable surface, make sure that**

the paper is loaded with the printable side facing up.

Printing on the wrong side of such paper may cause unclear prints or prints with reduced quality.

Refer to the instruction manual supplied with the paper for detailed information on the printable side.

- **Check 6: Is the Platen Glass dirty?**

  Clean the Platen Glass.

  Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

- **When copying, see also the sections below:**

- **Check 7: Make sure that the original is properly loaded on the Platen Glass.**

  Loading Paper / Originals

- **Check 8: Is the original loaded with the side to be copied facing down on the Platen Glass?**

- **Check 9: Did you copy a printout done by this machine?**

  Print from the memory card, from the USB flash drive, or from the digital camera directly, or reprint from the computer.

  If you copy a printout done by this machine, print quality may be reduced.

Page top

U315

Lines Are Misaligned



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

- **Check 2: Perform Print Head Alignment.**

  If the Print Head is misaligned in installing it, straight lines may be printed misaligned. Be sure to align the Print Head after you install it.

  Routine Maintenance

Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Alignment, perform Print Head Alignment manually referring to Manual Print Head Alignment .

Page top

U152

Line or Image Does Not Print or Prints Partially

- **Check 1: Is the size of the print data extremely large?**

  Click Print Options on the Page Setup sheet. Then, select the Prevent loss of print data check box in the displayed dialog.

- **Check 2: Is the Page Layout Printing performed or the Binding margin function used?**

  When the Page Layout Printing or Binding margin function is being used, thin lines may not be printed. Follow the instructions in Check 1 or try thickening the lines in the document.

Page top

U316

Printed Paper Curls or Has Ink Blots

Printed Paper Has Ink Blots

Printed Paper Curls



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

- **Check 2: If the intensity is set high, reduce the Intensity setting in the printer driver and try printing again.**

  If you are using plain paper to print images with high intensity, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

  - When printing from your computer

    You can confirm the intensity using the printer driver.

  - When copying

    Setting Items

- **Check 3: Is Photo Paper used for printing photographs?**

  When printing data with high color saturation such as photographs or images in deep color, we recommend using Photo Paper Plus Glossy II or other Canon speciality paper.

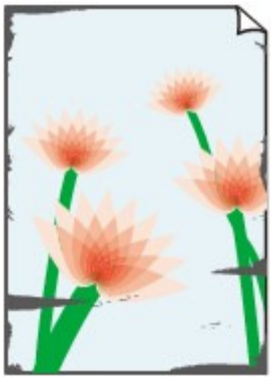
  Loading Paper / Originals

Page top

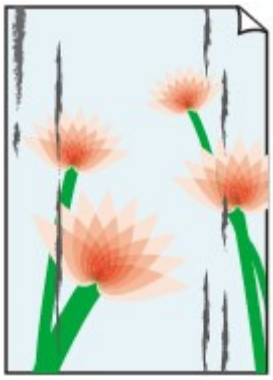
U317

Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched

Paper Is Smudged



The Edges of Paper Are Smudged



Printed Surface Is Smudged

Printed Surface Is Scratched

- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

- **Check 2: Is the appropriate type of paper used? Check the followings:**
  - Check to see if the paper you are printing on is suitable for your printing purpose.
    Loading Paper / Originals
  - When performing Borderless Printing, make sure that the paper you are using is suitable for Borderless Printing.
    If the paper you are using is not suitable for Borderless Printing, the print quality may be reduced at the top and bottom edges of the paper.
    Printing Area

- **Check 3: Load the paper after correcting its curl.**
  - **For Plain Paper**

    Turn the paper over and reload it to print on the other side.

    Leaving the paper loaded on the Rear Tray for a long time may cause the paper to curl. In this case, load the paper with the other side facing up. It may resolve the problem.

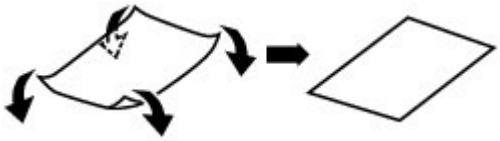
    We recommend putting unused paper back into the package and keeping it on a level surface.

  - **For Other Paper**

    If the curl on the four corners of the paper is more than 0.1 inch / 3 mm (A) in height, the paper may be smudged or may not be fed properly. In such cases, follow the procedure described below to correct the paper curl.



1. Roll up the paper in the opposite direction to the paper curl as shown below.

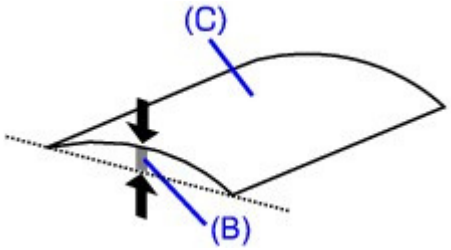


2. Check that the paper is now flat.

   We recommend printing curl-corrected paper one sheet at a time.

Note

- Depending on the media type, the paper may be smudged or may not be fed properly even if it is not curled inward. In such cases, follow the procedure described below to curl the paper outward within 0.1 inch / 3 mm (B) in height before printing. This may improve the print result.



(C) Printing side
We recommend printing paper that has been curled outward one sheet at a time.

- **Check 4: If you are printing on thick paper, select the Prevent paper abrasion setting.**

Selecting the Prevent paper abrasion setting will widen the clearance between the Print Head and the loaded paper. If you notice abrasion even with the media type set correctly to match the loaded paper, set the machine to prevent paper abrasion by using the Operation Panel or the computer.

Print speed may be reduced if you are selecting the Prevent paper abrasion setting.

* Deactivate the Prevent paper abrasion setting once printing is complete. If not, this setting remains enabled for all subsequent print jobs.

- **To set by using the Operation Panel**

  Touch the **HOME** button, select Setup, Device settings, and Print settings in this order, and then set Prevent paper abrasion to ON.
  ➡Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

- **To set by using your computer**

  Open the printer driver setup window, and in Custom Settings in the Maintenance sheet, select the Prevent paper abrasion check box, and then click Send.
  To open the printer driver setup window, see Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window .

- **Check 5: If the intensity is set high, reduce the Intensity setting in the printer driver and try printing again.**

If you are using plain paper to print images with high intensity, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

- When printing from your computer
  Reduce the Intensity setting in the printer driver and try printing again.

1. Open the printer driver setup window.

   Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

   
   Click Here: Printer Driver

   * Before clicking here to open the printer driver setup window, quit the running application software.

2. On the Main sheet, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and then click Set.

3. Drag the Intensity slide bar on the Color Adjustment sheet to adjust the intensity.

- When copying

  Setting Items

- **Check 6: Is printing performed beyond the recommended printing area?**

  If you are printing beyond the recommended printing area of your printing paper, the lower edge of the paper may become stained with ink.

  Resize your original document in your application software.

  Printing Area

- **Check 7: Is the Platen Glass dirty?**

  Clean the Platen Glass.

  Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

- **Check 8: Is the Paper Feed Roller dirty?**

  Clean the Paper Feed Roller.

  Routine Maintenance

  Note

  - Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller will wear the roller, so perform this procedure only when necessary.

- **Check 9: Is the inside of the machine dirty?**

  When performing duplex printing, the inside of the machine may become stained with ink, causing the printout to become smudged.

  Perform the Bottom Plate Cleaning to clean the inside of the machine.

  Cleaning the Inside of the Machine (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

  Note

  - To prevent the inside of the machine from stains, set the paper size correctly.

- **Check 10: Set Ink Drying Wait Time longer.**

  Doing so gives the printed surface enough time to dry so that paper smudged and scratched are prevented.

  1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.

  2. Open the printer driver setup window.

     Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

  3. Click the Maintenance tab and then Custom Settings.

4. Drag the Ink Drying Wait Time slide bar to set the wait time, and then click Send.

5. Confirm the message and click OK.

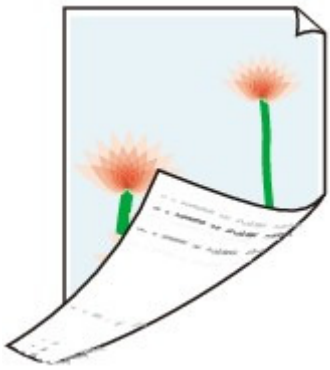
- **Check 11: Is the paper scratched by other loaded paper?**

  Depending on the media type, the paper may be scratched by other loaded paper when feeding from the Rear Tray. In this case, load one sheet at a time.

Page top

U318

Back of the Paper Is Smudged



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

- **Check 2: Perform the Bottom Plate Cleaning to clean the inside of the machine.**

  Cleaning the Inside of the Machine (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

Note

- When performing borderless printing, duplex printing, or too much printing, the inside may become stained with ink.

Page top

U319

Vertical Lines Are Printed on the Sides of the Printout



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper type and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

- **Check 2: Is the size of the loaded paper correct?**

  The vertical lines may be printed in the margin if the size of the loaded paper is larger than that you have specified.

  Set the paper size correctly according to the paper you loaded.

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

Note

- The direction of the vertical line pattern may vary depending on the image data or the print setting.
- This machine performs automatic cleaning when necessary to keep printouts clean. A small amount of ink is ejected for cleaning.
  Although ink is usually ejected on the ink absorber, it may be ejected on the paper if you load paper larger than that you have specified.

Page top

U320

Colors Are Uneven or Streaked

Colors Are Uneven



Colors Are Streaked



- **Check 1: Did you confirm the paper and print quality settings?**

  Print Results Not Satisfactory

- **Check 2: Print the Nozzle Check Pattern and perform any necessary maintenance operations such as Print Head Cleaning.**

  Print the Nozzle Check Pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

  Refer to Routine Maintenance for the Nozzle Check Pattern printing, Print Head Cleaning, and Print Head Deep Cleaning.

  - If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly:
    Check to see if a particular color's ink tank is not empty.
    If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly though ink is sufficient, perform the Print Head Cleaning and try printing the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
  - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Cleaning twice:
    Perform the Print Head Deep Cleaning.
    If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning, turn off the machine and perform another Print Head Deep Cleaning after 24 hours.
  - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning twice:

If Print Head Deep Cleaning does not resolve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the service center.

- **Check 3: Perform Print Head Alignment.**

  Routine Maintenance

Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Alignment, perform Print Head Alignment manually referring to Manual Print Head Alignment .

Page top

U321

Printing Does Not Start

- **Check 1: Make sure that the power plug is securely plugged in, then turn the machine on.**

  While the **POWER** lamp is flashing blue, the machine is initializing. Wait until the **POWER** lamp stops flashing and remains lit blue.

  Note

  - When printing large data such as a photo or graphics, it may take longer to start printing. While the **POWER** lamp is flashing blue, the computer is processing data and sending it to the machine. Wait until printing starts.

- **Check 2: Check the status of ink tanks. Replace the ink tank if ink has run out.**

- **Check 3: Open the Scanning Unit (Cover) and check to see if the ink lamps are flashing red.**

  If there is still sufficient ink but its ink lamp is flashing red, an ink tank may not be installed in a right position.

  Routine Maintenance

- **Check 4: Open the Scanning Unit (Cover) and make sure that the ink lamps light up red.**

  If the ink lamp is not lit, press the PUSH mark on the ink tank until it clicks into place.

- **Check 5: Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer properly.**

  When the machine is connected to your computer with a USB cable, make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged in to the machine and the computer, then check the followings:

  - If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the machine directly to the computer, and try printing again. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Consult the reseller of the relay device for details.
  - There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and try printing again.

  When you use the machine over LAN, make sure that the machine is connected to the network with a LAN cable or is set up correctly. For details, refer to your setup manual.

- **Check 6: Restart your computer if you are printing from the computer.**

  If there are any unnecessary print jobs, delete them.

  Deleting the Undesired Print Job

- **Check 7: Make sure that the Inner Cover is closed.**

  If the Inner Cover is opened, close the Inner Cover and touch the **OK** button on the machine.

- **Check 8: Are the Media Type and the Page Size settings of the printer**

driver correct?

When using Fine Art Paper "Photo Rag" or non Canon genuine specialty paper, be sure to select the type of each media from Media Type and either Fine Art A4 or Fine Art Letter from Page Size or Paper size.

Confirm the settings following the procedure below, and try printing again.

1. Make sure that either Fine Art A4 or Fine Art Letter is selected in the application.

   If the page size you want to use is not displayed, open the File menu of the application and select Print. Then make sure that the name of your printer is selected.

2. Make sure that the paper selected for Media Type in the Main sheet in the printer driver matches the paper loaded in the machine.

3. Make sure that the Page Size setting in the Page Setup tab in the printer driver is the same as the size set in step 1.

- **Check 9: Make sure that your machine's name is selected in the Print dialog box.**

The machine will not print properly if you are using a printer driver for a different printer.

Make sure that your machine's name is selected in the Print dialog box.

Note

- To make the machine the one selected by default, select Set as Default Printer.

- **Check 10: Configure the printer port appropriately.**

Make sure that the printer port is configured appropriately.

1. Log on as a user account with administrator privilege.

2. Select Devices and Printers from the Start menu.

   In Windows Vista, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.
   In Windows XP, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Printers and Other Hardware > Printers and Faxes.

3. Right-click the Canon XXX Printer icon (where "XXX" is your machine's name), then select Printer properties.

   In Windows Vista or Windows XP, right-click the Canon XXX Printer icon (where "XXX" is your machine's name), then select Properties.

4. Click the Ports tab to confirm the port settings.

   Make sure that a port named USBnnn (where "n" is a number) with Canon XXX Printer appearing in the Printer column is selected for Print to the following port(s).

   Note

   - When the machine is used over LAN, the port name of the machine is displayed as "CNBJNP_xxxxxxxxxx".
     * "xxxxxxxxxx" is the character string generated from the MAC address or a character string specified by the user when setting up the machine.

   - If the setting is incorrect:
     Reinstall the MP Drivers.
   - Printing does not start even though the port named USBnnn is selected:
     Launch Canon My Printer from the task tray, select Diagnose and Repair Printer. Follow the on-screen instructions to set the correct printer port, then select Canon XXX Printer.
     If the problem is not resolved, reinstall the MP Drivers.

- Printing does not start even though the port named "CNBJNP_xxxxxxxxxx" is selected when the machine is used over LAN:
  Launch the Canon IJ Network Tool, and select "CNBJNPxxxxxxxxxx" as you confirmed in step 4, then associate the port with the printer using Associate Port in the Settings menu.
  If the problem is not resolved, reinstall the MP Drivers.

- **Check 11: Is the size of the print data extremely large?**

  Click Print Options on the Page Setup sheet. Then, select the Prevent loss of print data check box in the displayed dialog.

Page top

U322

Copying/Printing Stops Before It Is Completed

- ## Check 1: Is the Inner Cover opened while printing on paper?

  Close the Inner Cover, then touch the **OK** button on the machine.

  A page of print data being sent at the time of the error will be erased, so print that page again.

- ## Check 2: Has the machine been printing continuously for a long period?

  If the machine has been printing continuously for a long time, the Print Head may overheat. To protect the Print Head, the machine may stop printing at a line break for a period of time and then resume printing.

  In this case, interrupt your print session at a convenient time and turn the machine off for at least 15 minutes.

  Additionally, if the machine has been printing graphics or photos with intense colors continuously over a period of time, the machine may stop printing to protect the Print Head. In this case, printing will not resume automatically. Turn the machine off for at least 15 minutes.

  Caution

  - The Print Head and the surrounding area can become extremely hot inside the machine. Never touch the Print Head or nearby components.

- ## Check 3: Is the paper loaded?

  Make sure that paper is loaded in the Rear Tray or Cassette.

  If the machine has run out of paper, load paper.

- ## Check 4: Do the printing documents have lots of photographs or illustrations?

  As printing large data such as photos or graphics takes time for the machine and the computer to process, the machine may appear to have stopped operating.

  In addition, when printing data that uses a large amount of ink continuously on plain paper, the machine may pause temporarily. In either case, wait until the process is complete.

  Note

  - If you are printing a document with a large printing area or printing multiple copies of a document, printing may pause to allow the ink to dry.

Page top

U323

Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected

- ## Check 1: Are the Print Head nozzles clogged?

  Print the Nozzle Check Pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

  Refer to Routine Maintenance for the Nozzle Check Pattern printing, Print Head Cleaning, and Print Head Deep Cleaning.

  - If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly:
    Check to see if a particular color's ink tank is not empty.
    If the Nozzle Check Pattern is not printed correctly though ink is sufficient, perform the Print Head Cleaning and try printing the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
  - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Cleaning twice:
    Perform the Print Head Deep Cleaning.
    If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning, turn off the machine and perform another Print Head Deep Cleaning after 24 hours.
  - If the problem is not resolved after performing the Print Head Deep Cleaning twice:
    If Print Head Deep Cleaning does not resolve the problem, the Print Head may be damaged. Contact the service center.

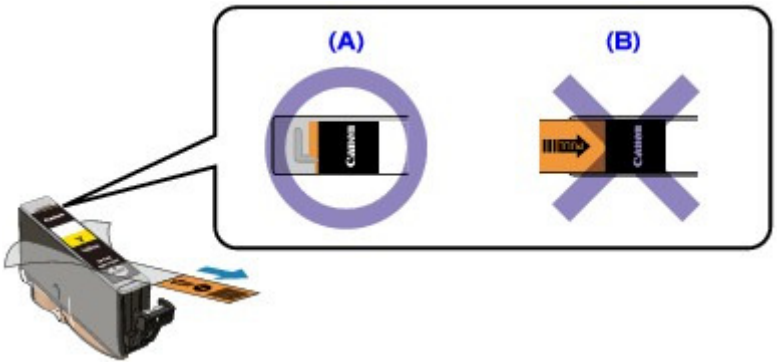
- ## Check 2: Has the ink run out?

  See An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD to identify the ink error, and then take the appropriate action depending on the error condition.

- ## Check 3: Is the orange tape or protective film remaining?

  Make sure that all of the protective film is peeled off and the L-shape air hole is exposed, as illustrated in (A).

  If the orange tape is left as in (B), pull the orange tape and remove it.



Page top

U324

Printing Speed Is Not as Fast as Expected

- ## Check 1: Is printing performed in Quiet Mode?

  Print speed is reduced if you specified to print in Quiet Mode on the computer or Operation Panel. For faster printing, do not print in Quiet Mode.

  For information to make settings on the computer, refer to Reducing the Machine Noise .

  For information to make setting on the Operation Panel, see Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD.

- ## Check 2: Is the print quality set too high?

  Increase the printing speed setting in the printer driver. Setting to prioritize speed makes printing faster.

  1. Open the printer driver setup window.

  Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

  
  Click Here: Printer Driver

  * Before clicking here to open the printer driver setup window, quit the running application software.

  2. On the Main sheet, select Fast for the Print Quality setting.

  Depending on the media type, the Fast option may not be available.

Note

- Setting to prioritize speed may reduce printing quality.
- Printing speed may not improve noticeably by following the instructions above, depending on your system environment.

Page top

U325

Print Head Holder Does Not Move to the Position for Replacing

- **Check 1: Is the POWER lamp off?**

  Check if the **POWER** lamp is lit blue.

  The Print Head Holder will not move unless the power is on. If the **POWER** lamp is off, close the Scanning Unit (Cover) and turn the machine on.

  While the **POWER** lamp is flashing blue, the machine is initializing. Wait until the **POWER** lamp stops flashing and remains lit blue, and then open the Scanning Unit (Cover) again.

- **Check 2: Is an error message displayed on the LCD?**

  Close the Scanning Unit (Cover), follow the directions displayed in the error message to resolve the error, and then reopen it. For details on how to resolve the error, see An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD.

- **Check 3: Has the Scanning Unit (Cover) been left open for 10 minutes or longer?**

  If the Scanning Unit (Cover) is left open for more than 10 minutes, the Print Head Holder moves to the right to prevent the Print Head from drying out. Close and reopen the Scanning Unit (Cover) to return the Print Head Holder to the position for replacing.

- **Check 4: Has the machine been printing continuously for a long period?**

  Close the Scanning Unit (Cover), wait a while, then reopen it.

  If the machine has been printing continuously for a long time, the Print Head Holder may not move to the position for replacing since the Print Head may overheat.

Note

- Opening the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing moves the Print Head Holder to the right. Close the Scanning Unit (Cover), and reopen it after printing finishes.

Page top

U326

Paper Does Not Feed Properly

- **Check 1: Make sure of the following when you load paper.**
  - When loading two or more sheets of paper, flip through the paper before loading.



  - When loading two or more sheets of paper, align the edges of the sheets before loading.
  - When loading two or more sheets of paper, make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the paper load limit.
    However, proper feeding of paper may not be possible at this maximum capacity depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (either very high or low temperature and humidity).
    In such cases, reduce the sheets of paper you load at a time to less than half of the paper load limit.
  - Always load the paper in portrait orientation, either in the Rear Tray or the Cassette, regardless of the printing orientation.
  - When you load the paper on the Rear Tray, load the paper with the print side facing UP and slide the Paper Guides to align with the both sides of the paper.
  - When loading paper in the Cassette, slide the Paper Guide on the front side to align with the corresponding mark of page size. Load the paper with the print side facing DOWN, align the right edge of the paper stack against the right side of the Cassette, then slide the Paper Guide on the left side to align with the left edge of the paper stack.

    Loading Paper / Originals

- **Check 2: Check to see if the paper you are printing on is not too thick or curled.**

  Loading Paper / Originals

- **Check 3: Make sure of the following when you load envelopes.**

  When printing on envelopes, refer to Loading Paper / Originals , and prepare the envelopes before printing.
  Once you have prepared the envelopes, load them in portrait orientation. If the envelopes are placed in landscape orientation, they will not feed properly.

- **Check 4: Confirm the paper source setting.**

  * If the paper source setting is not changed since you purchased this machine, the paper source for plain paper is the Cassette.

  - Setting with the Operation Panel on the machine:

    Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
  - Setting with the printer driver:

    Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose
  - For information on the paper source for plain paper when the Paper Source on the printer driver is set to Automatically Select:

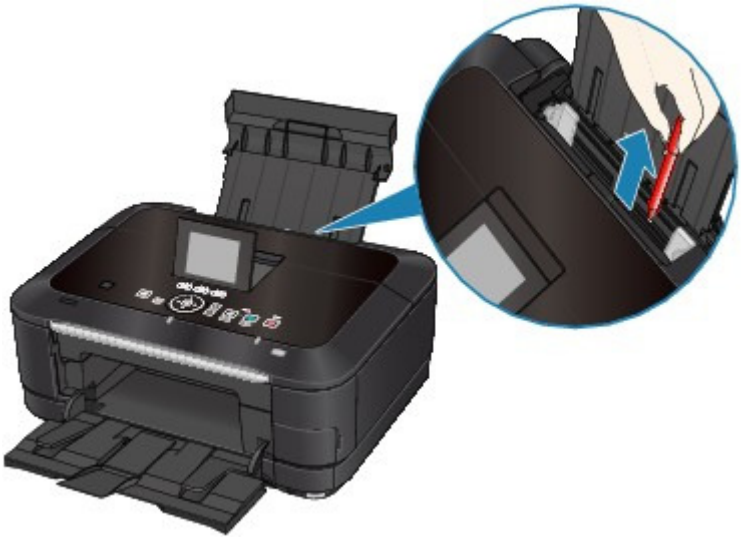
    Setting the Paper Source for Plain Paper

- **Check 5: Remove the foreign object in the Cassette.**
- **Check 6: Make sure that there are not any foreign objects in the Rear Tray.**



If the paper tears in the Rear Tray, see Paper Jams to remove it.

If there are any foreign objects in the Rear Tray, be sure to turn off the machine, unplug it from the power supply, then remove the foreign object.



- **Check 7: Make sure that the Inner Cover is closed completely.**

Paper does not feed properly if the Inner Cover is even slightly open.

➡ Overview of the Machine

- **Check 8: Clean the Paper Feed Roller.**

➡ Routine Maintenance

Note

- Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller will wear the roller, so perform this procedure only when necessary.

- **Check 9: If two or more sheets of paper feed from the Cassette at once, clean the inside of the Cassette.**

For information on cleaning the inside of the Cassette, refer to Routine Maintenance .

- **Check 10: Is the Rear Cover closed completely?**

  Paper may be jammed if the Rear Cover is not closed completely. Push the Rear Cover until it is closed completely.

  Refer to Overview of the Machine for the position of the Rear Cover.

Page top

U327

Paper Does Not Feed from the Paper Source Specified in the Printer Driver

- **Check: Is the paper source setting inconsistent between the application program and the printer driver?**

  Change the application software setting corresponding to the printer driver setting, or click the Print Options on the Page Setup sheet in the printer driver and select Disable the paper source setting of the application software on the Print Options screen.

  When the paper source setting is inconsistent between an application program and the printer driver, the application software setting takes precedence.

Page top

U328

Paper Jams

Note

- If you need to turn off the machine to remove jammed paper during printing, touch the **Stop** button to cancel print jobs before turning off the machine.

Paper Is Jammed in the Paper Output Slot or the Rear Tray
Paper Is Jammed inside the Machine at the Transport Unit
Jammed Paper Is Not Removed out When Automatic Duplex Printing
In Other Cases

Page top

U349

Paper Is Jammed in the Paper Output Slot or the Rear Tray

Remove the paper following the procedure below.

1. Slowly pull the paper out, either from the Rear Tray or from the Paper Output Slot, whichever is easier.



Note

- If the paper tears and a piece remains inside the machine, turn the machine off, open the Scanning Unit (Cover), and remove the paper.
  Be careful not to touch the components inside the machine.
  After removing all paper, close the Scanning Unit (Cover), and turn the machine back on.
- If you cannot pull the paper out, turn the machine off and turn it back on. The paper may be ejected automatically.

2. Reload the paper, and touch the **OK** button on the machine.

If you turned off the machine in step 1, all print jobs in the queue are canceled. Reprint if necessary.

Note

- When reloading the paper, confirm that you are using the paper suited for printing and are loading it correctly.
  Loading Paper / Originals
- We recommend you use paper other than A5 sized one to print documents with photos or graphics; otherwise, the printout may curl and cause paper exit jams.

If you cannot remove the paper or the paper tears inside the machine, or if the paper jam error continues after removing the paper, contact the service center.

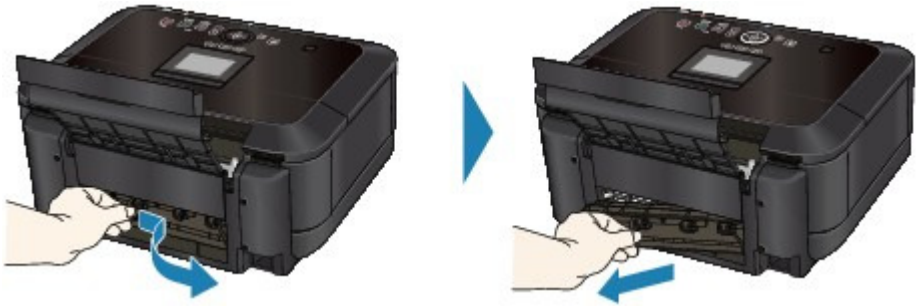
Page top

U350

Paper Is Jammed inside the Machine at the Transport Unit

Remove the paper following the procedure below.

1. Detach the Rear Cover.



2. Pull the paper out slowly.



Note

- Be careful not to touch the components inside the machine.
- If you cannot pull the paper out, turn the machine off and turn it back on. The paper may be ejected automatically.

3. Attach the Rear Cover.

Push the left side of the Rear Cover until it is closed completely.



If you were not able to remove the paper out in step 2:

4. Remove the Cassette.

5. Pull the paper out slowly.



6. If any paper is sticking out of the Cassette, remove the paper, align and reload the paper in the Cassette.

If you did not remove the jammed paper out in step 1 to 5 when automatic duplex printing, check the duplex transport section.

Jammed Paper Is Not Removed out When Automatic Duplex Printing

Note

- When reloading the paper into the machine, confirm that you are using the correct paper and are loading it into the machine correctly.

  Loading Paper / Originals

7. Insert the Cassette into the machine again, and touch the **OK** button on the machine.

If you turned off the machine in step 2, all print jobs in queue are canceled. Reprint if necessary.

If you cannot remove the paper or the paper tears inside the machine, or if the paper jam error continues after removing the paper, contact the service center.

Page top

U351

Jammed Paper Is Not Removed out When Automatic Duplex Printing

Before removing the jammed paper, see Paper Is Jammed inside the Machine at the Transport Unit to remove it from Transport Unit. If the paper jam error continues, remove the jammed paper following the procedure below.

1. Turn off the machine, and unplug the power cord of the machine from the power supply.

2. Remove the Cassette.

   If the paper is loaded on the Rear Tray, remove the paper from the Rear Tray and retract the Paper Support.

3. Set the machine upright with the left side down.

Important

- When standing the machine, make sure that the Scanning Unit (Cover) is closed securely.

4. Slowly pull the jammed paper out so that the paper does not tear.



Note

- Set the machine back to its original position immediately after removing the jammed paper.

5. Align the paper, then reload it in the Cassette.

   Reload paper in the Rear Tray, if necessary.

Note

- When reloading the paper into the machine, confirm that you are using the correct paper and are loading it into the machine correctly.
  ➡ Loading Paper / Originals

6. Insert the Cassette into the machine again.

7. Plug the machine back in and turn the machine back on.

   All print jobs in queue are canceled. Reprint if necessary.

If you cannot remove the paper or the paper tears inside the machine, or if the paper jam error continues

after removing the paper, contact the service center.

Page top

U353

In Other Cases

Make sure of the following:

- **Check 1: Are there any foreign objects around the Paper Output Slot?**
- **Check 2: Are there any foreign objects in the Rear Tray?**



If there are any foreign objects in the Rear Tray, be sure to turn off the machine, unplug it from the power supply, then remove the foreign object.



- **Check 3: Is the Rear Cover closed completely?**
- **Check 4: Is the paper curled?**

➡ Check 3: Load the paper after correcting its curl.

Page top

U331

Message Appears on the Computer Screen

Error Number: B200 A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Then contact the service center. Is Displayed

Error Number: **** A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and then on again. If this doesn't clear the error, see the user's guide for more detail. Is Displayed

Error Regarding Automatic Duplex Printing Is Displayed

Error Regarding Automatic Print Head Alignment Is Displayed

Error Regarding the Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed

Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error

Other Error Messages

The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Screen Is Displayed

Error Number: B200 A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Then contact the service center. Is Displayed

Turn off the machine, and unplug the power cord of the machine from the power supply.

Contact the service center.

Error Number: **** A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and then on again. If this doesn't clear the error, see the user's guide for more detail. Is Displayed

"****" is displayed in the alphanumeric character and depends on the error occurred.

- **5100 or 5110 Is Displayed**

  Confirm the movement of the Print Head Holder blocked.

  Cancel printing from your computer and turn off the machine. Then clear the jammed paper or protective material that is preventing the Print Head Holder from moving, and turn on the machine again.

  Important

  - Be careful not to touch the components inside the machine. The machine may not print out properly if you touch it.
  - If the problem is not resolved, contact the service center.

- **6000 Is Displayed**

  If any object is placed in front of the machine, remove it.

  Open the Paper Output Tray gently, then turn the power off and back on.

- **Four-Digit Alphanumeric and "Printer error has occurred." Is Displayed**

  Turn off the machine, and unplug the power cord of the machine from the power supply.

  Plug the machine back in and turn the machine back on.

  If the problem is not resolved, contact the service center.

Error Regarding Automatic Duplex Printing Is Displayed

- **Check: See Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing and take the appropriate action.**

Error Regarding Automatic Print Head Alignment Is Displayed

- **Check: See Auto head align has failed. in An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD and take the appropriate action.**

Error Regarding the Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed

The power cord may have been unplugged while the machine was still on.
Check the error message that appears on the computer, then click OK.
The machine starts printing.

See Notice for Unplugging the Power Cord for unplugging the power cord.

Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error

- **Check 1: If the POWER lamp is off, make sure that the power plug is plugged in, then turn the machine on.**

  While the **POWER** lamp is flashing blue, the machine is initializing. Wait until the **POWER** lamp stops flashing and remains lit blue.

- **Check 2: Make sure that the printer port is configured appropriately in the printer driver.**

  * In the following instructions, "**XXX**" signifies your machine's name.

  1. **Log on as a user account with administrator privilege.**

  2. **Select Devices and Printers from the Start menu.**

     In Windows Vista, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.
     In Windows XP, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Printers and Other Hardware > Printers and Faxes.

  3. **Right-click the Canon XXX Printer icon, then select Printer properties.**

     In Windows Vista or Windows XP, right-click the Canon XXX Printer icon (where "XXX" is your machine's name), then select Properties.

  4. **Click the Ports tab to confirm the port settings.**

     Make sure that a port named USBnnn (where "n" is a number) with Canon XXX Printer appearing in the Printer column is selected for Print to the following port(s).

     Note

     - When the machine is used over LAN, the port name of the machine is displayed as "CNBJNP_xxxxxxxxxx".
       * "xxxxxxxxxx" is the character string generated from the MAC address or a character string specified by the user when setting up the machine.

     - If the setting is incorrect:
       Reinstall the MP Drivers.
     - Printing does not start even though the port named USBnnn is selected:
       Launch Canon My Printer from the task tray, select Diagnose and Repair Printer. Follow the on-screen instructions to set the correct printer port, then select Canon XXX Printer.
       If the problem is not resolved, reinstall the MP Drivers.
     - Printing does not start even though the port named "CNBJNP_xxxxxxxxxx" is selected when the machine is used over LAN:
       Launch the Canon IJ Network Tool, and select "CNBJNPxxxxxxxxxx" as you confirmed in step 4, then associate the port with the printer using Associate Port in the Settings menu.
       If the problem is not resolved, reinstall the MP Drivers.

- **Check 3: Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer properly.**

  When the machine is connected to your computer with a USB cable, make sure that the USB cable is securely plugged in to the machine and the computer, then check the followings:

  - If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the machine directly to the computer, and try printing again. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Consult the reseller of the relay device for details.
  - There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and try printing again.

  When you use the machine over LAN, make sure that the machine is connected to the network with a LAN cable or is set up correctly. For details, refer to your setup manual.

- **Check 4: Make sure that the MP Drivers are installed correctly.**

  Uninstall the MP Drivers following the procedure described in Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers , insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive and perform Custom Install and select MP Drivers to install again.

- **Check 5: When the machine is connected to your computer with a USB cable, check the status of the device on your computer.**

  Follow the procedure below to check the status of the device.

  1. **Click Control Panel, Hardware and Sound, then Device Manager.**

     If the User Account Control screen is displayed, follow the on-screen instructions.
     In Windows XP, click Control Panel, Performance and Maintenance, System, then click Device Manager on the Hardware sheet.

  2. **Double-click Universal Serial Bus controllers then USB Printing Support.**

     If USB Printing Support is not displayed, make sure that the machine is correctly connected to the computer.
     ➡ Check 3: Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer properly.

  3. **Click the General tab and make sure that there is no indication of a problem with the device.**

     If a device error is displayed, refer to Windows help to resolve the error.

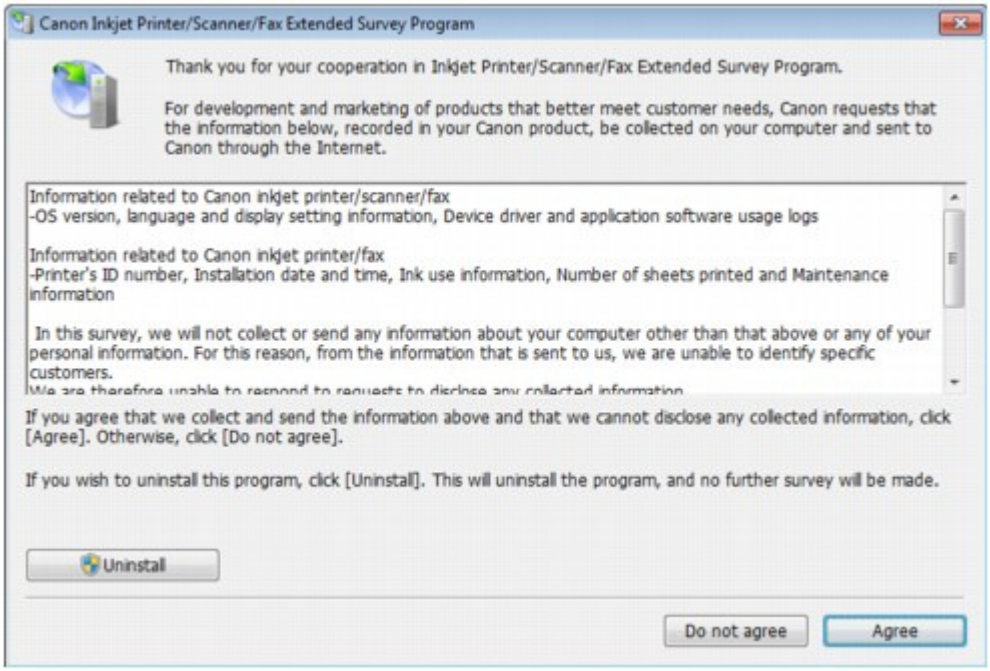
Other Error Messages

- **Check: If an error message is displayed outside the printer status monitor, check the following:**
  - "Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space"
    Delete any unnecessary files to increase the amount of free space on the disk.
  - "Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory"
    Quit other running application softwares to increase available memory.
    If you still cannot print, restart your computer and retry printing.
  - "Printer driver could not be found"
    Uninstall the printer driver according to the procedure described in Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers , and then reinstall it.
  - "Could not print Application name - File name"
    Try printing again once the current job is complete.

The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Screen Is Displayed

If the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program is installed, a confirmation screen asking for permission to send the printer and application software usage information will be displayed one month, three months, and then six months after the installation. After that, it will be displayed every six months for about four years.

Read the instructions on the screen and follow the procedure below.



- **If you agree to participate in the survey program:**

  Click Agree, then follow the on-screen instructions. The printer usage information will be sent via the Internet. If you have followed the on-screen instructions, the information will be sent automatically from the second time onward and the confirmation screen will not be displayed again.

  Note

  - When the information is being sent, a caution screen such as an Internet security screen may be displayed. In this case, confirm that the program name is "IJPLMUI.exe", then allow it.
  - If you deselect the Send automatically from the next time check box, the information will not be sent automatically from the second time onward and a confirmation screen will be displayed at the time of the next survey. To send the information automatically, see Changing the confirmation screen setting: .

- **If you do not agree to participate in the survey program:**

  Click Do not agree. The confirmation screen will be closed, and the survey at that time is skipped. The confirmation screen will be displayed again two months later.

- **To uninstall the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program:**

  To uninstall the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, click Uninstall, then follow the on-screen instructions.

- **Changing the confirmation screen setting:**

  1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below.
     - In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Uninstall a program.
     - In Windows XP, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs.

     Note

     - In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting up software.
       This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
       If you are logged on to an administrator account, follow the on-screen instructions.

  2. Select Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

3. Select Change.

   If you select Yes after you have followed the on-screen instructions, the confirmation screen will be displayed at the time of the next survey.
   If you select No, the information will be sent automatically.

Note

- If you select Uninstall (or Remove), the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program is uninstalled. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Page top

U332

Cannot Print Properly with Automatic Duplex Printing

Check: Is the paper size or media type appropriate?

- Make sure that the actual size of the paper is suitable for automatic duplex printing.
  The sizes of media suitable for automatic duplex printing are A4, Letter, A5, and B5.
  Load paper of suitable size, then touch the **OK** button on the machine.
- Make sure that the Page Size or Paper Size setting matches the actual size of the paper with a size suitable for automatic duplex printing.
  First, check the Page Size setting in the application software you are printing from.
  Then, check the Page Size setting on the Page Setup sheet in the printer driver setup window.

Note

- Duplex printing may not be available depending on the version of the application software.

- Make sure that the type of loaded paper is suitable for automatic duplex printing on the Main sheet in the printer driver setup window.

To switch to manual duplex printing, follow the procedure below.

Open the printer driver setup window, clear the Automatic check box on the Page Setup sheet, and reprint.

When performing manual duplex printing, note the following.

- If you are printing three or more pages of a document with manual duplex printing, one side of all sheets of paper will be printed first. Turn over the paper and reload the paper in the machine, and then the reverse side of all sheets of paper will be printed. Be careful not to change the order of paper in the stack.
- The procedure for reversing the paper varies depending on the staple side and printing orientation. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Page top

U333

For Windows Users

Printer Status Monitor Is Not Displayed

- **Check: Is the printer status monitor enabled?**

  Make sure that Enable Status Monitor is selected on the Option menu of the printer status monitor.

  1. **Open the printer driver setup window.**

     Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

  2. **On the Maintenance sheet, click View Printer Status.**

  3. **Select Enable Status Monitor on the Option menu if it is not selected.**

- **If you are using Windows 7 or Windows Vista:**

Launching MP Navigator EX Whenever Touching the Color or Black Button on the Machine

- **Check: Specify the response from touching the Color or Black button on the machine.**

  Follow the procedure below to specify the response on your computer.

  - **If you are using Windows 7:**

    1. **Log on as a user account with administrator privilege.**

    2. **Select Devices and Printers from the Start menu.**

    3. **Right-click the Canon XXX Printer icon (where "XXX" is your machine's name), then select Scan properties.**

       If the User Account Control screen appears, click Yes.

    4. **Click the Events tab on the WIA Canon XXX ser Properties (where "XXX" is your machine's name) screen.**

    5. **Select Start this program for Actions, then select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 from the pull-down menu.**

       Choose an event from the Select an event pull-down menu, then select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 to launch for each event. If MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 is already selected for each event, click Cancel.

    6. **Click OK.**

  - **If you are using Windows Vista:**

    1. **Log on as a user account with administrator privilege.**

2. **Select the Start menu > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Scanners and Cameras.**

3. **Select WIA Canon XXX ser (where "XXX" is your machine's name), then click the Properties button.**

   If the User Account Control screen appears, click Continue.

4. **Click the Events tab on the WIA Canon XXX ser Properties (where "XXX" is your machine's name) screen.**

5. **Select Start this program for Actions, then select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 from the pull-down menu.**

   Choose an event from the Select an event pull-down menu, then select MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 to launch for each event. If MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 is already selected for each event, click Cancel.

6. **Click OK.**

Page top

U334

Error Message Appears on a PictBridge Compliant Device

The following are the possible errors that may occur when printing directly from a PictBridge compliant device and the countermeasures to clear them.

Note

- This section describes errors that are indicated on Canon-brand PictBridge compliant devices. The error messages and operations may vary depending on the device you are using. For errors on non-Canon PictBridge compliant devices, check the error message on the LCD and take the appropriate action to clear the error. For details, see An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD .
- For the errors indicated on the PictBridge compliant device and their solution, also refer to the instruction manual of the device. For other troubles on the device, contact the manufacturer.

Error Message on the PictBridge Compliant Device	Action
"Printer in use"	If the machine is printing from the computer or warming up, wait until the job ends. When it is ready, the machine starts printing automatically.
"No paper"	Load paper on the Rear Tray, and select Continue* in the display on your PictBridge compliant device. * To resume printing, you can also touch the **OK** button on the machine instead of selecting Continue on the device.
"Paper Error"	If the Inner Cover is opened, close it and select Stop in the display on your PictBridge compliant device to stop printing.
"Paper jam"	Select Stop in the display on your PictBridge compliant device to stop printing. Remove the jammed paper, load new paper, touch the **OK** button on the machine, and try printing again.
"Printer cover open"	Close the Scanning Unit (Cover) on the machine.
"No print head"	The Print Head is defective or is not installed. Check: See Print head is not installed. in An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD and take the appropriate action.
"Waste tank full"/"Ink absorber full"	The ink absorber is nearly full. Check: See The ink absorber is almost full. in An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD and take the appropriate action.
"No ink"/"Ink cassette error"	The ink tank is not installed properly or empty. Check the error message on the LCD and take the appropriate action to resolve the error. ➡ An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD
"Ink Error"	An ink tank that was once empty is installed. Check: See The remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. in An Error Message Is Displayed on the LCD and take the appropriate action.

"Hardware Error"	Ink tank errors have occurred. Replace the ink tank. ➡ Routine Maintenance

Page top

U335

Cannot Print Properly from a Wireless Communication Device

- **Check 1: Does your mobile phones store IrDA compliant infrared communication ports?**

  Printing through infrared communication cannot be performed by the mobile phones does not store IrDA compliant infrared communication ports.

  Printing from Mobile Phone via Infrared Communication

- **Check 2: Place the machine within around 8 inches / 20 cm from the mobile phone in a position that enables proper communication.**

  When printing through infrared communication, confirm that the Infrared Ports on the machine and the mobile phone are placed face to face with each other at a proper angle and distance, and that there is nothing blocking them. Then, retry printing. Operational distance and angle vary depending on the specifications of your mobile phone and your operating environment.

  Printing from Mobile Phone via Infrared Communication

- **Check 3: Did you interrupt infrared communication with the machine during receiving data?**

  If it is interrupted, send the data from the mobile phone again.

- **Check 4: Is printing possible through Bluetooth communication?**

  Printing from Mobile Phone via Bluetooth Communication

Page top

U338

Cannot Remove a Memory Card

Contact the service center.

Important

- Never attempt to remove a memory card using a thin stick or tweezers. Doing so may damage the machine.

Note

- Exclusive adapters are required for the following memory cards. Insert these cards in the machine with adapters attached.
  miniSD Card/miniSDHC Card/microSD Card/microSDHC Card/xD-Picture Card/xD-Picture Card Type M/xD-Picture Card Type H/Memory Stick Micro/RS-MMC/MMCmobile

Page top

S901

Problems with Scanning

- Scanner Does Not Work
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start
- Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear
- Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor
- Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas
- Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time
- Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode
- Slow Scanning Speed
- "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- Computer Stops Operating during Scanning
- Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

Page top

S902

Scanner Does Not Work

Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.

Check 2: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 3: If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 4: Restart the computer.

Page top

S903

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start

Check 1: Make sure that the MP Drivers is installed.

If it is not installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and install MP Drivers.

Check 2: On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

Important

- Do not select the model name that includes WIA in it.

Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 3: Start from a TWAIN-compliant application.

Page top

S904

Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear

Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.

Check 2: Turn off the machine, then reconnect the USB cable and replug the power cord.

Check 3: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 4: If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 5: Make sure that the MP Drivers is installed.

If it is not installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and install MP Drivers.

Check 6: The machine may be locked.

Close the running software program and slide the Scanner Lock Switch to the release position ( ). Then, restart the machine.

Check 7: On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 8: Make sure that the application is TWAIN-compliant.

You cannot open ScanGear (scanner driver) from applications not supporting TWAIN.

Check 9: Exit ScanGear if it is running on another application.

Page top

S905

Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor

Check 1: Increase the scanning resolution.

➡ Resolution

Check 2: Set the scale to 100%.

Some applications do not display images clearly if the image is too small.

Check 3: If moire (stripe pattern) appears, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the Basic Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver), select Magazine(Color) in Select Source.
  ➡ Basic Mode Tab
- On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear, set Descreen in Image Settings to ON.
  ➡ Image Settings

Note

- If moire appears when you scan a digital print photo, take the above measures and scan again.

- If you use MP Navigator EX, set Document Type to Magazine(Color) or enable Descreen in the Scan Settings dialog box and scan again.
  ➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Check 4: Check the monitor's color depth.

- **Windows 7:**

  From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Appearance and Personalization > Adjust screen resolution > Advanced settings.
  On the Monitor tab of the displayed dialog box, set Colors to High Color (16 bit) or True Color (32 bit).

- **Windows Vista:**

  From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Appearance and Personalization > Adjust screen resolution to open the Display Settings dialog box. Set the color depth to Medium (16 bit) or Highest (32 bit).

- **Windows XP:**

  From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Display to open the Display Properties dialog box. On the Settings tab, set Color quality to Medium (16 bit) or Highest (32 bit).

Check 5: Clean the Platen and Document Cover.

➡ Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

Check 6: If the document is in poor condition (dirty, faded, etc.), use Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. in Image Settings on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear.

➡ Image Settings

Check 7: If the color tone of images is different from the original document, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear, set Image Adjustment in Image Settings to None.
  ➡ Image Settings
- On the Color Settings tab in the Preferences dialog box of ScanGear, set Color Matching.

Color Settings Tab

Page top

S906

Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas

Check: Specify the scan area.

Click  (Auto Crop) in whole image view of ScanGear (scanner driver) to automatically display the cropping frame (scan area) according to the document size.

You can also manually specify the scan area in thumbnail view or when there are white margins along the document (for example, in photos), or when you want to create custom cropping frames.

Adjusting Cropping Frames

Page top

S907

Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Scan each item individually.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning.

Page top

S916

Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Multiple image scanning may not be supported.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning. In that case, scan each item individually.

Page top

S908

Slow Scanning Speed

Check 1: To view the image on a monitor, set the output resolution to around 150 dpi. To print, set it to around 300 dpi.

Resolution

Check 2: Set Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. to None.

Image Settings

Check 3: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Correct slanted document / Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images checkbox and scan again.

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

Page top

S909

"There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

Check 1: Exit other applications and try again.

Check 2: Reduce the resolution or output size and scan again.

Resolution

Page top

S910

Computer Stops Operating during Scanning

Check 1: Restart the computer, reduce the output resolution in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

Check 2: Delete unnecessary files to obtain sufficient free hard disk space, then scan again.

Error message may appear if there is not enough hard disk space to scan and save, when the image size is too large (such as when scanning a large document at high resolution).

Check 3: For Location of Temporary Files in MP Navigator EX, specify a folder on a drive with sufficient free space.

General Tab

Check 4: Multiple devices may be connected to USB ports.

Disconnect other devices.

Page top

S911

Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

Check: Disconnect the USB cable, then uninstall and reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.

- **Step 1: Uninstall the MP Drivers.**

  See "Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers " for details.

- **Step 2: Uninstall MP Navigator EX.**

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > MP Navigator EX 4.0 > MP Navigator EX Uninstall.

   Note

   - In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting up software.
     This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
     If you are logged on to an administrator account, follow the on-screen instructions.

2. When a confirmation appears, click Yes.

3. When uninstallation is complete, click OK.

   MP Navigator EX is uninstalled.

- **Step 3: Reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.**

  Insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.

Page top

S920

Problems with Scanning/Printing Film

- Cannot Scan Film
- Scan Quality Is Poor or Colors Are Scanned Incorrectly
- Image Becomes Too Dark or Too Bright When a Cropping Frame Is Moved, Enlarged or Reduced
- Frames Are Not Detected Correctly
- Scanner Stops Operating during Scanning, or "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- Colors Are Different between the Film and the Printed Photos (Reddish/Bluish)

Page top

S921

Cannot Scan Film

Check 1: Make sure that the FAU (Film Adapter Unit) Protective Sheet is removed from the Document Cover.

Check 2: Make sure that the Film Guide is placed correctly on the Platen.

Check 3: Make sure that the calibration slot is not blocked.

Do not block the calibration slot on the Film Guide with film or other items.

Check 4: Make sure that the Document Cover is closed properly.

Check 5: The machine may be locked.

Close the running software program. Slide the Scanner Lock Switch to the release position ( ), then restart the machine.

Check 6: Make sure that ScanGear (scanner driver) is set for scanning film.

In ScanGear, set Select Source on the Basic Mode tab to Negative Film(Color) or Positive Film(Color), or set Select Source on the Advanced Mode tab to Negative Film(Color), Positive Film(Color), Monochrome Negative Film or Monochrome Positive Film.

Check 7: In MP Navigator EX, select the machine on the General tab of the Preferences dialog box and click OK.

Check 8: In the dialog box that opens by clicking an icon in the One-click Mode screen of MP Navigator EX, set Document Type to film, then click Apply.

Check 9: Set the appropriate output resolution and scan again.

If the computer has stopped operating, restart it and scan again.

Page top

S923

Scan Quality Is Poor or Colors Are Scanned Incorrectly

If the quality of the image displayed on the monitor is poor, check Check 1 to Check 3.

Check 1: The Platen or the light source on the Document Cover may be dusty or dirty.

Remove dust and dirt from the Platen and the light source on the Document Cover.

➡ Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

Check 2: If the film is dusty, blow off the dust then set it in place.

Check 3: Light may reflect off white slide mounts into images. In that case, use black slide mounts or cover the white slide mounts with black frames.

Check 4: Recalibrate the scanner from the Scanner tab of the Preferences dialog box of ScanGear (scanner driver).

➡ Scanner Tab

Check 5: If the film is in poor condition (dirty, faded, etc.), use Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. in Image Settings on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear.

➡ Image Settings

Note

- If a print out of an image does not appear satisfactory or the same as what you see on the monitor, you may need to change the printer's settings. Or, there may be a problem with the printer.
  See "Print Results Not Satisfactory" for details.

Check 6: If circular stripe patterns (Newton's rings) appear, load the film face-up and click Preview, then click  (Mirror) on the Toolbar of ScanGear to invert the image, then click Scan.

Check 7: The film may be extremely dark or bright, or the spaces between frames are extremely narrow (0.078 inches (2 mm) is standard).

Scan again using ScanGear if MP Navigator EX or the Operation Panel of the machine yielded less than satisfactory colors.

Check 8: Adjust the brightness, contrast, tone curve, etc. on the Advanced Mode tab if the colors of the ScanGear's preview scan was unsatisfactory.

➡ Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Check 9: Adjust the saturation and color balance on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear if the scanned image appears reddish or bluish.

➡ Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

Page top

S924

Image Becomes Too Dark or Too Bright When a Cropping Frame Is Moved, Enlarged or Reduced

Check: Follow these steps from the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

1. Click Preview.

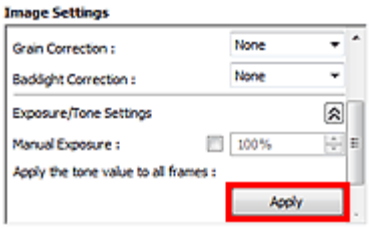
   The preview images are refreshed.

   When the whole film image is displayed, click  (Whole Film Image) on the Toolbar to display the thumbnails.

2. Select the frame you want to correct the colors of.

3. Click Apply in the Apply the tone value to all frames section.

   If the Apply the tone value to all frames section is not displayed, click  (Down arrow) of Exposure/Tone Settings.



4. Specify a cropping frame and click Scan.

   Scanning starts.

Page top

S925

Frames Are Not Detected Correctly

Check 1: Film may be out of position.

Placing Film

Check 2: The film may be extremely dark or bright, or the spaces between frames are extremely narrow (0.078 inches (2 mm) is standard).

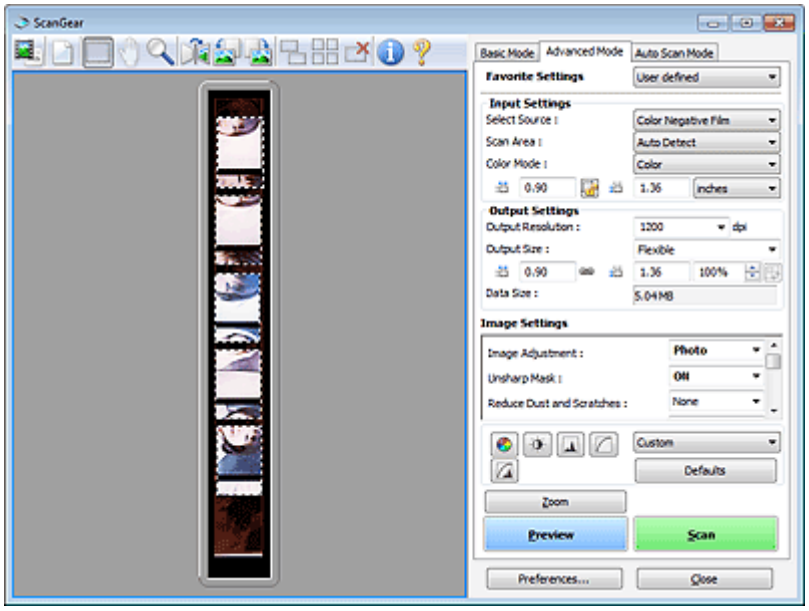
Follow these steps if thumbnails are not displayed correctly when previewed in ScanGear (scanner driver).

The following is an example using the Advanced Mode tab.

1. Click  (Film Thumbnail) on the Toolbar.

   The whole film image is displayed.





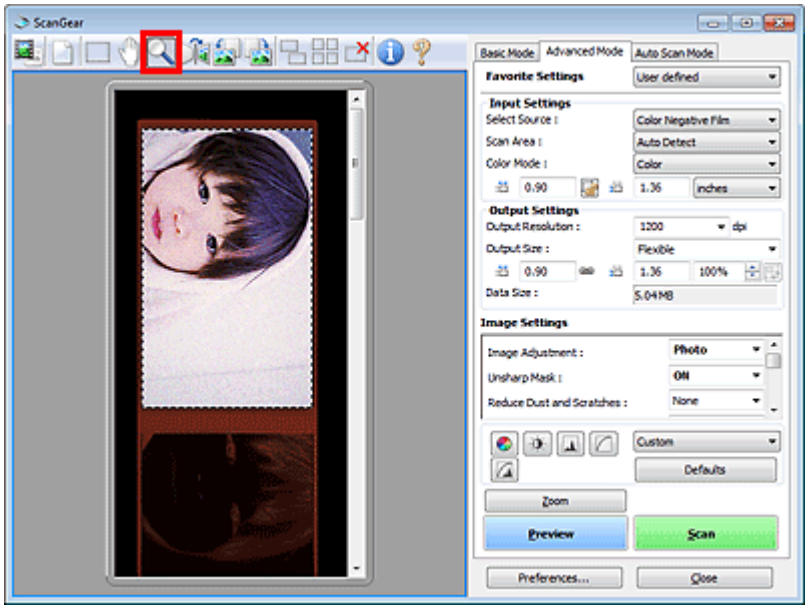
2. Select unnecessary cropping frames and click  (Remove Cropping Frame).

   The cropping frames are deleted. You can also delete the cropping frames by pressing the Delete key.

3. Specify the scan area of the frame that was not displayed correctly.

4. Select  (Enlarge/Reduce) and click on the image.

   The Preview area is enlarged.



5. Click  (Crop) and adjust the cropping frame to the desired size.

6. Click Scan.

   Starts scanning.

Check 3: Check if there are frames that are not cropped even when the whole film image is displayed.

On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear, click  (Film Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to display the whole film image. Cropping frames appear on automatically detected frames. If the frame you want to scan is not cropped correctly, select the size of the film to be scanned from Scan Area and click  (Display Film Cropping Frame). If the frame is still not cropped correctly, adjust the cropping frame. See Step 2 to 6 in Check 2 to adjust the cropping frame.

Page top

S926

Scanner Stops Operating during Scanning, or "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

Check 1: Reduce the resolution or output size and scan again.

Resolution

Check 2: Reduce the number of frames to scan or apply Image Settings (such as Backlight Correction) only to frames that require corrections.

Page top

S927

Colors Are Different between the Film and the Printed Photos (Reddish/Bluish)

Check: Save the scanned image to a computer, then adjust the colors using an image editing application and print.

The printed colors may not be satisfactory even if you adjust them in the advanced settings for film printing, depending on the film.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

Page top

S930

Software Problems

E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Scanned Image Does Not Open

Page top

S931

E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

Check 1: MP Navigator EX may not support the e-mail software program.

The following e-mail software programs are supported. (Images are attached to the mail message automatically.)

- Microsoft Outlook
- Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
- Outlook Express (Windows XP)

Check 2: If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled.

To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.

Check 3: If using an e-mail software program other than the ones listed above, select None (Attach Manually) when prompted to select a program and attach the scanned image manually.

Page top

S932

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Check: Set the printing size in the application.

Page top

S933

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Check 1: Change the display setting in the application.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

Note

- You cannot reduce the image size in Paint. To reduce the display size, open the images in an application.

Check 2: Change the resolution setting in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

The higher the resolution, the larger the resulting image will be.

Resolution

Page top

S934

Scanned Image Does Not Open

Check: If the file format is not supported by the application, scan the image again and save it in a popular file format such as JPEG.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

Page top

S940

MP Navigator EX Problems

- Cannot Scan at the Correct Size
- Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel
- Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted
- Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

Page top

S941

Cannot Scan at the Correct Size

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Set Document Size to the actual document size and scan again.

If the matching size is not found, scan at a larger size and trim the image.

See the Toolbar ( (Trimming)) in " Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details.

Page top

S942

Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Check that the settings are correctly set according to the document.

If you cannot scan properly with Auto Scan, specify the document type and size.

- **When Scanning Using the Operation Panel**

  Setting Items on the Operation Panel of the Machine

- **When Scanning Using MP Navigator EX**

  Scanning Photos and Documents

Page top

S943

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted

Check: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Correct slanted document checkbox and scan again.

- Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)
- Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
- Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

Page top

S944

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

Check: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images checkbox and scan again.

- Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)
- Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
- Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

Page top

U150

Cannot Use the Contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM

Cannot access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM

- **Check 1: Is the power on?**

  If the power is off, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, turn on the machine, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 2: Is the machine connected to the computer?**

  If the machine is not connected to the computer, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, connect the machine to the computer securely, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 3: Are the ink tanks installed properly?**

  If genuine Canon ink tanks are not installed properly, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that genuine Canon ink tanks are installed properly for all colors, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 4: Are any operations in progress on the machine?**

  If any operations are in progress on the machine, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that the operation is complete, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 5: Is the printer driver installed?**

  If the printer driver is not installed, the menu of CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM is not displayed on Solution Menu EX. Install the printer driver, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM.

- **Check 6: Is the machine selected on Solution Menu EX?**

  If the machine is not selected on Solution Menu EX, the menu of CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM is not displayed on Solution Menu EX. Select the machine for Select Model on Solution Menu EX's Settings in the Help & Settings menu, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM.

- **Check 7: Is bidirectional support of the printer driver enabled?**

  If bidirectional support of the printer driver is not enabled, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that bidirectional support of the printer driver is enabled, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

  Note

  - To enable bidirectional support of the printer driver, select the Enable bidirectional support check box under the Ports tab in Properties of the printer driver.

- **Check 8: Is the machine connected to the computer via Bluetooth communication?**

  If the machine is connected to the computer via Bluetooth communication, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Connect the machine using a USB cable or over a network, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 9: Is Internet access available?**

  To access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM, it is necessary to access the Internet. Make sure that your computer is available for Internet access, then access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

Cannot Print the Contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM

- **Check 1: Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX installed?**

  If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, you cannot print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM. Install Easy-PhotoPrint EX, select the printing menu of the contents on Solution Menu EX, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM.

- **Check 2: Did you download and install the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM?**

  Before printing the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM, download and install the contents onto your computer, then start printing again. The contents will not be displayed if the number of copies exceeds the printing limit or the validity term has expired. Access CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM to check the printing limit or validity term of each content.

- **Check 3: Are you trying to print contents which need a larger size of paper than the machine can support?**

  If you are trying to print contents which need a larger size of paper than the machine can support, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, then confirm the paper size suitable for the contents.

- **Check 4: Are the ink tanks installed properly?**

  If genuine Canon ink tanks are not installed properly, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that genuine Canon ink tanks are installed properly for all colors, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 5: Are any operations in progress on the machine?**

  If any operations are in progress on the machine, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that the operation is complete, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 6: Is the printer driver installed?**

  If the printer driver is not installed, you cannot print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM. Install the printer driver, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

- **Check 7: Is the machine selected on Solution Menu EX?**

  If the machine is not selected on Solution Menu EX, the menu of CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM is not displayed on Solution Menu EX. Select the machine for Select Model on Solution Menu EX's Settings in the Help & Settings menu, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM.

- **Check 8: Is bidirectional support of the printer driver enabled?**

  If bidirectional support of the printer driver is not enabled, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that bidirectional support of the printer driver is enabled, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

  Note

  - To enable bidirectional support of the printer driver, select the Enable bidirectional support check box under the Ports tab in Properties of the printer driver.

- **Check 9: Is the machine connected to the computer via Bluetooth communication?**

  If the machine is connected to the computer via Bluetooth communication, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Connect the machine using a USB cable or over a network, then print the contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM again.

Page top

U151

If You Cannot Resolve the Problem

If you cannot resolve the problem with any of the workarounds in this chapter, please contact the seller of the machine or the service center.

Canon support staff are trained to be able to provide technical support to satisfy customers.

Caution

- If the machine emits any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, turn it off immediately. Unplug the power cord from the outlet and contact the seller or the service center. Never attempt to repair or disassemble the machine yourself.
- Attempts by customers to repair or take apart the machine will invalidate any warranty regardless of whether the warranty has expired.

Before contacting the service center, confirm the following:

- Product name:
  * Your machine's name is located on the front cover of the setup manual.
- Serial number: please refer to the setup manual
- Details of the problem
- What you tried to solve the problem, and what happened

Page top

U340

FAQs

No Printing Results/Printing Is Blurred/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks
Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected
Cannot Install the MP Drivers
Printing Does Not Start
Copying/Printing Stops Before It Is Completed
Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error
Print Results Not Satisfactory
Paper Jams
Paper Does Not Feed Properly

Page top

P036

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- Depending on the document type to be printed, the paper feed method specified in the printer driver may not operate correctly.
  If this happens, open the printer driver setup window from the Print dialog box of the application software, and check the setting in the Paper Source field on the Main tab.
- With some applications, the Copies setting in the Page Setup tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.
  In this case, use the copies setting in the Print dialog box of the application software.
- If the selected Language in the About dialog box does not match the operating system interface language, the driver screen may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the Advanced tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.
  Also, if Print to file is selected in the Print dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, such as Adobe Photoshop LE and MS Photo Editor, the following functions will not operate.
  - Preview before printing on the Main tab
  - Prevent loss of print data in the Print Options dialog box
  - Page Layout, Poster, Booklet, Duplex Printing (manually), Specify Margin..., Print from Last Page, Collate, and Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) on the Page Setup tab
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
- With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.
  To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
- If image data is not printed correctly, display the Print Options dialog box from the Page Setup tab and change the setting of Disable ICM required from the application software. This may solve the problem.

Note

- Disable ICM required from the application software cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.

- Using the Bluetooth option under the following conditions may lock the print job with "Printing" displayed in the status monitor, even if printing has completed and the printout is ejected. If this happens, either click the Cancel Printing button on the status monitor or cancel that print job from the print job queue of the printer.
  - When you move the machine during printing to a location where radio waves cannot reach or when the radio wave status becomes poor
  - When you turn off the machine
- When you are using a Bluetooth printer and you cancel printing after a printer error occurs, you may not be able to execute subsequent printing operations. If this happens, turn off the machine and turn it back on again.

- When you are using Bluetooth, you cannot use the operation panel on the machine while the status monitor is displayed from View Printer Status... on the Maintenance tab.
- Do not start up the Canon IJ Network Tool while printing.
- Do not print when the Canon IJ Network Tool is running.
- The card slot (memory card) of the machine may become inaccessible. In such cases, restart the machine or turn it off and reconnect the USB cable.

Points to Note with Applications

- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
  - When Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
  - When selecting Fit-to-Page, Scaled, or Page Layout from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab, the selected printing function may not be effective, depending on the version of Word.
    If this happens, follow the procedure below.
    1. Open Word's Print dialog box.
    2. Open the printer driver setup window, specify Page Layout on the Page Setup tab, and click OK.
    3. Without starting printing, close the Print dialog box.
    4. Open Word's Print dialog box again.
    5. Open the printer driver setup window again and click OK.
    6. Start printing.
- If bitmap printing is enabled in Adobe Illustrator (Adobe Systems Inc), printing may take time or some data may not be printed, printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after unchecking the Bitmap Printing check box in the Print dialog box.

Page top

S004

General Notes (Scanner Driver)

ScanGear (scanner driver) is subject to the following restrictions. Keep these points in mind when using it.

Scanner Driver Restrictions

- When using the NTFS file system, the TWAIN data source may not be invoked. This is because the TWAIN module cannot be written to the winnt folder for security reasons. Contact the computer's administrator for help.
- Some computers (including laptops) connected to the machine may not resume correctly from standby mode. In that case, restart the computer.
- Do not connect two or more machines or multifunction printers with scanner function to the same computer simultaneously. If multiple scanning devices are connected, you cannot scan from the Operation Panel of the machine and also may experience errors while accessing the devices.
- Use the default display font size of the OS. Otherwise, software screens may not appear correctly.
- Scanning may fail if the computer has resumed from sleep or standby mode. In that case, follow these steps and scan again.
  1. Turn off the machine.
  2. Exit ScanGear, then disconnect the USB cable from the computer and reconnect it.
  3. Turn on the machine.
- ScanGear cannot be opened in multiple applications at the same time. Within an application, ScanGear cannot be opened for the second time when it is already open.
- Be sure to close the ScanGear window before closing the application.
- With network connection, the machine cannot be accessed from multiple computers at the same time.
- With network connection, scanning takes longer than usual.
- Make sure that you have adequate disk space available when scanning large images at high resolutions. For example, at least 300 MB of free space is required to scan an A4 document at 600 dpi in full-color.
- Thick documents may not be cropped correctly when scanned. In that case, crop each item individually or crop manually.
- ScanGear and WIA driver cannot be used at the same time.
- Do not enter the computer into sleep or hibernate state during scanning.
- Calibration may take time if the machine is connected via USB 1.1.

Applications with Restrictions on Use

- If you start Media Center included in Windows XP Media Center Edition 2005, you may not be able to scan using the Operation Panel of the machine. In that case, restart the computer.
- You cannot scan images with Media Center included in Windows 7, Windows Vista and Windows XP Media Center Edition 2005. Scan with other applications such as MP Navigator EX.
- In some applications, if you select the View scanned images checkbox on the Auto Scan Mode tab of ScanGear, the window displaying the thumbnails of the scanned images may close automatically.
- Some applications may not display the TWAIN user interface. In that case, refer to the application's manual and change the settings accordingly.

- Some applications do not support continuous scanning of multiple documents. In some cases, only the first scanned image is accepted, or multiple images are scanned as one image.
- To import scanned images into Microsoft Office 2000, first save them using MP Navigator EX, then import the saved files from the Insert menu.
- When scanning platen size images into Microsoft Office 2003 (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.), click Custom Insert in the Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera screen. Otherwise, images may not be scanned correctly.
- When scanning images into Microsoft Office 2007 (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.), use Microsoft Clip Organizer.
- Images may not be scanned correctly in some applications. In that case, increase the operating system's virtual memory and retry.
- When image size is too large (such as when scanning large images at high resolution), your computer may not respond or the progress bar may remain at 0% depending on the application. In that case, cancel the action (for example by clicking Cancel on the progress bar), then increase the operating system's virtual memory or reduce the image size/resolution and retry. Alternatively, scan the image via MP Navigator EX first, then save and import it into the application.

Page top

Appendix

- Before Printing on Art Paper
- Printing Area
- Setting Up the Card Slot as the Memory Card Drive of the Computer
- Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History
- Deleting the Undesired Print Job
- Interpreting the ICC Profile
- Updating the MP Drivers
- Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals
- Transporting the Machine
- Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window
- Notice for Unplugging the Power Cord
- Downloading Premium Content

Page top

U501

Before Printing on Art Paper

When using art paper, dust is liable to be generated. It is therefore recommended that paper dust be removed on art paper just before printing.

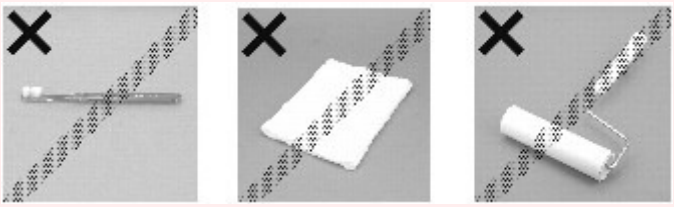
- **You will need a soft hair brush (or similar brush used to clean office automation equipment).**
  The wider the brush, the more effective it will be.



OK - soft brush made from material such as polypropylene, polyethylene, horse hair or goat hair.

Important

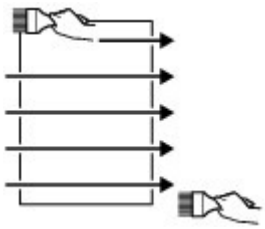
- Be sure not to use brushes as shown below. The printing surface may be damaged.



Not OK - brush made from hard material, cloth or washcloth, sticky and abrasive materials.

- **Paper dust removal procedure:**

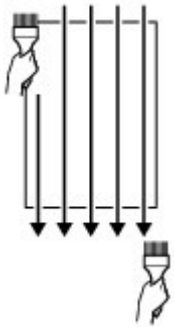
1. Check that the brush is not wet and free from dust or dirt.
2. Brush the overall printing surface carefully in one direction.



Important

- Be sure to brush all the way across the paper; do not start brushing at the middle or stop halfway.
- Be careful not to touch the printing surface as much as possible.

3. To complete the removal of paper dust, brush the paper in the other direction from top to bottom.



Page top

U504

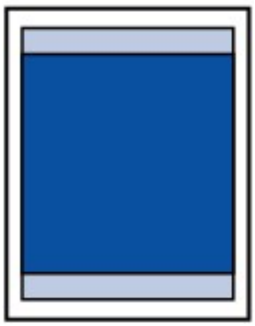
Printing Area

To ensure the best print quality, the machine allows a margin along each edge of media. The actual printable area will be the area inside these margins.

Recommended printing area : Canon recommends that you print within this area.

Printable area : The area where it is possible to print.

However, printing in this area can affect the print quality or the paper feed precision.



Note

- **Borderless Printing**
  - By selecting Borderless Printing option, you can make prints with no margins.
  - When performing Borderless Printing, slight cropping may occur at the edges since the printed image is enlarged to fill the whole page.
  - Duplex printing is not available when performing Borderless Printing.
  - For Borderless Printing, use the following paper:
    - Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" GP-501
    - Photo Paper Glossy GP-502
    - Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201
    - Photo Paper Pro Platinum PT-101
    - Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201
    - Matte Photo Paper MP-101

    Performing Borderless Printing on any other type of paper may substantially reduce printing quality and/or result in printouts with altered color hues.
    Borderless Printing on plain paper may result in printouts with reduced quality. Use them only for test printing. You can perform Borderless Printing on plain paper only when printing from your computer.
  - Borderless Printing is not available for legal, A5, or B5 sized paper, envelopes, or art paper.
  - Depending on the type of paper, Borderless Printing may reduce the print quality at the top and bottom edges of the paper or cause these parts to become smudged.
- With performing Automatic Duplex Printing and Duplex (Two-sided) Copying, the printable area will be 0.08 inches / 2 mm smaller at the top margin.
- When performing borderless copying or borderless printing from a printed photo or a film, you can specify the amount of images that extends off the paper by Extended copy amount in Print settings.

  Print settings

Letter, Legal

Envelopes

Other Sizes than Letter, Legal, Envelopes

Sizes for Art Paper

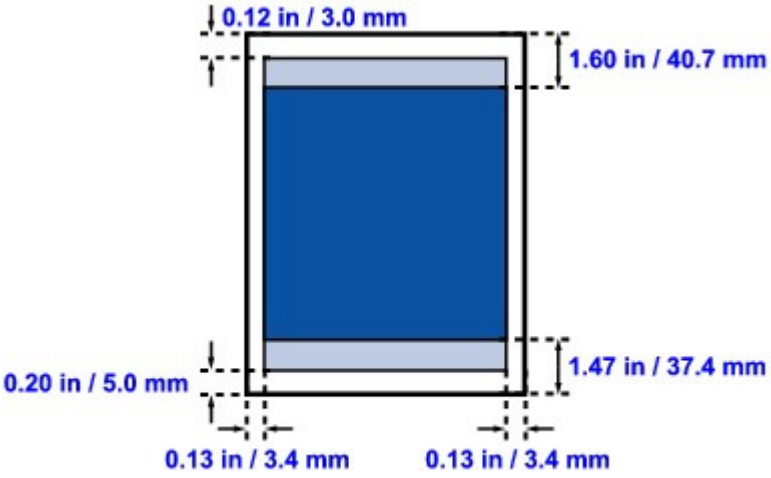
Page top

U502

Other Sizes than Letter, Legal, Envelopes

Size	Printable Area (width x height)
A5	5.56 x 7.95 inches / 141.2 x 202.0 mm
A4	8.00 x 11.38 inches / 203.2 x 289.0 mm
B5	6.90 x 9.80 inches / 175.2 x 249.0 mm
4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm	3.73 x 5.69 inches / 94.8 x 144.4 mm
4" x 8" / 10 x 20 cm*	3.73 x 7.69 inches / 94.8 x 195.2 mm
5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm*	4.73 x 6.69 inches / 120.2 x 169.8 mm
8" x 10" / 20 x 25 cm	7.73 x 9.69 inches / 196.4 x 246.0 mm
Wide	3.73 x 6.80 inches / 94.8 x 172.6 mm

* This page size can be used only when printing from your computer.



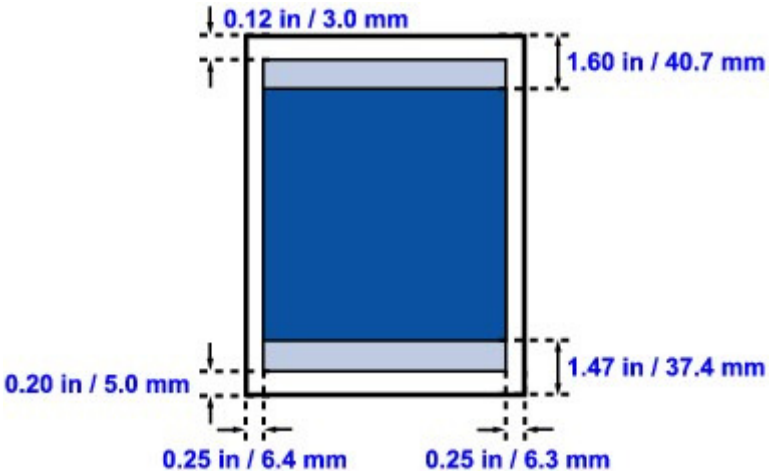
Page top

U503

Letter, Legal

Size	Printable Area (width x height)
Letter	8.00 x 10.69 inches / 203.2 x 271.4 mm
Legal*	8.00 x 13.69 inches / 203.2 x 347.6 mm

* This page size can be used only when printing from your computer.



Recommended printing area

Printable area

Page top

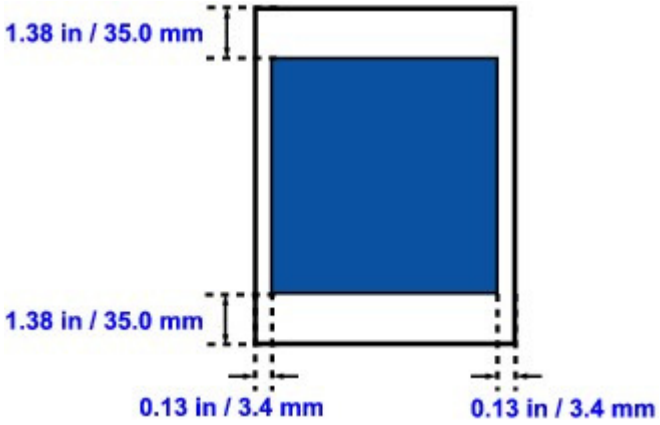
U515

Sizes for Art Paper

When using Fine Art Paper "Photo Rag" or non Canon genuine specialty paper, printing is not done in a 1.38 inches / 35 mm margin along the top and bottom edges. A limit is set to prevent printing along a 1.38 inches / 35 mm margin on the top and bottom edges when a paper size for Art Paper is selected in the printer driver.

Fine Art A4

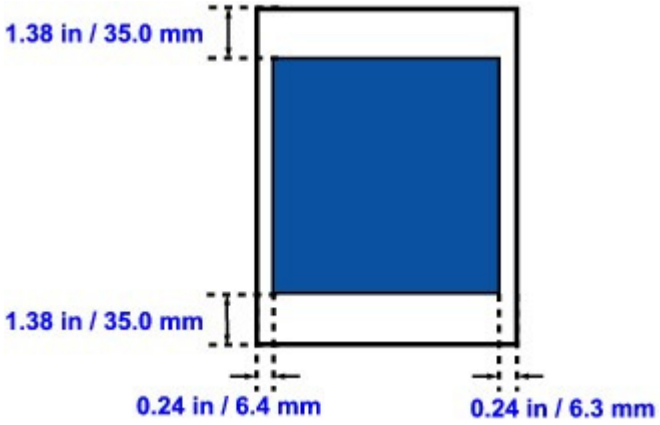
Size	Printable Area (width x height)
Fine Art A4	8.0 x 8.9 inches / 203.2 x 227.0 mm



Recommended printing area

Fine Art Letter

Size	Printable Area (width x height)
Fine Art Letter	8.0 x 8.2 inches / 203.2 x 209.4 mm



Recommended printing area

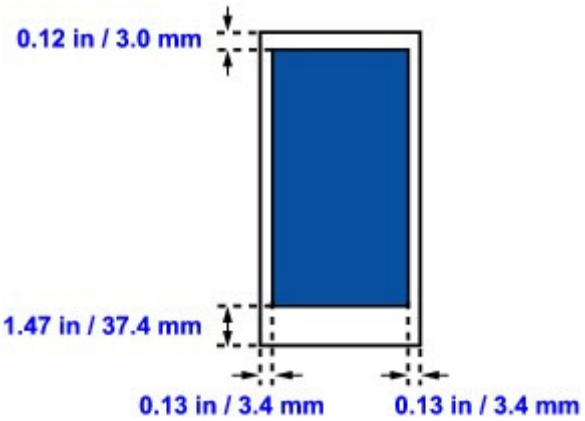
Page top

U505

Envelopes

Size	Recommended Printing Area (width x height)
European DL*	4.06 x 7.07 inches / 103.2 x 179.6 mm
US Comm. Env. #10*	3.86 x 7.91 inches / 98.0 x 200.9 mm

* This page size can be used only when printing from your computer.



Recommended printing area

Page top

U020

Setting Up the Card Slot as the Memory Card Drive of the Computer

The Card Slot of the machine can also be used as the memory card drive of the computer.

Note

- For details on using the Card Slot over a network, see Using the Card Slot over a Network .

Important

- When Read/write attribute in Device user settings in Device settings is set to Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC using the Operation Panel of the machine, you cannot print photos on a memory card using the Operation Panel of the machine. After using the Card Slot as the memory card drive of the computer, remove the memory card, then be sure to set Read/write attribute to Not writable from PC. When you turned off the machine, Writable from USB PC or Writable from LAN PC will be canceled and the setting is returned to Not writable from PC when you turn on the machine next time.

1. Make sure that the memory card is not set.

   If the memory card is set, remove it from the Card Slot. For details, refer to Printing Photos .

2. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .

3. Select  Device settings, then touch the **OK** button.

4. Use the ▲▼ button to select Device user settings, then touch the **OK** button.

5. Use the ▲▼ button to select Read/write attribute, then touch the **OK** button.

6. Specify the read/write attribute.

   Not writable from PC
   The Card Slot is used only for reading. Be sure to select this mode when printing photos from a memory card.

   Writable from USB PC
   The Card Slot is used as the memory card drive of a computer connected to the machine via USB. Data can be written on the memory card from the computer.

   Writable from LAN PC
   The Card Slot is used as the memory card drive of a computer connected to the machine via a network. Data can be written on the memory card from the computer.

7. Touch the **OK** button.

Important

- If you use the Card Slot as the memory card drive of the computer, you need to perform a "safe

removal" operation on your computer before physically removing the memory card from your machine.

- Right-click the  Removable Disk icon and click Eject. If Eject is not displayed on the screen, confirm that the **Access** lamp is not flashing and remove the memory card.
- Over a network, the removal operation is not needed.

Page top

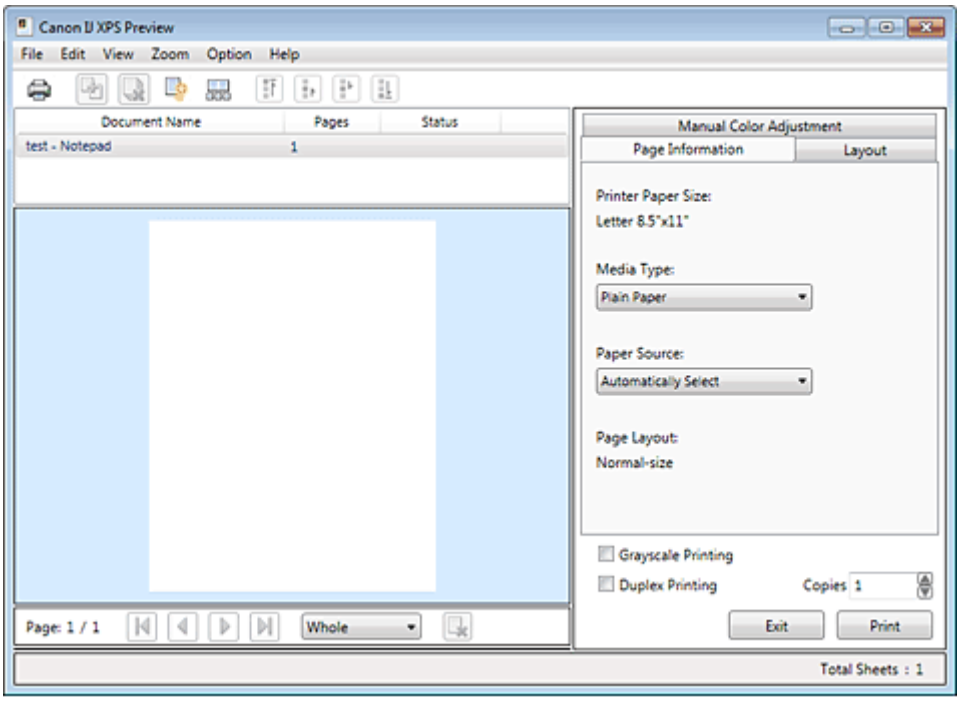
P048

Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History

This function is unavailable when the standard IJ printer driver is used.

In the Canon IJ XPS preview window, you can edit the print document or retrieve the document print history to print the document.

The procedure for using the Canon IJ XPS Preview is as follows:



 Print

 Combine Documents

 Delete Document

 Reset Documents

 View Thumbnails

 Move Document

 Move Page

 Delete Page

Note

- Click  View Thumbnails to view all print pages of the print document selected from the Document Name list.

  To hide the print pages, click  View Thumbnails again.

Editing and Printing a Print Job

When printing multiple documents or pages, you can combine documents, change the print sequence of the documents or pages, or delete documents or pages.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the preview

Check the Preview before printing check box on the Quick Setup tab or the Main tab.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
The Canon IJ XPS Preview will start and the print result will be displayed before printing.

4. Editing print documents and print pages

- **Combining print documents**

  You can combine multiple print documents to form a single document.
  To select multiple print documents, hold down the Ctrl key and click the documents to be merged, or hold down the Shift key and press the upper arrow or lower arrow key.
  By combining print documents, you can prevent blank pages from being inserted when you execute duplex printing or page layout printing.
  From the Document Name list, select the documents to be combined. On the Edit menu, select Combine Documents from Documents to combine the documents in the listed sequence. When you combine documents, the documents selected before the combining are deleted from the list and the combined document is added to the list.

- **Changing the sequence of print documents or print pages**
  - To change the sequence of the print documents, go to the Document Name list, and select the print document to be moved. Next, on the Edit menu, select Move Document from Documents, and select the appropriate item.
  - To change the sequence of the print pages, click View Thumbnails from the Option menu, and select the print page to be moved. Next, on the Edit menu, select Move Page from Pages, and select the appropriate item.

- **Deleting print documents and print pages**
  - To delete a print document, select the target document from the Document Name list, and on the Edit menu, choose Document and then Delete Document.
  - To delete a print page, click View Thumbnails from the Option menu, and select the print page to be deleted. Next, on the Edit menu, select Delete Page from Pages.

After editing the print documents or print pages, you can change the print settings on the Page Information, Layout and Manual Color Adjustment tabs as necessary.

Important

- To display the multiple documents in the list, open the preview and execute print again.
- To return the print documents to their original condition before they were edited in the preview, on the Edit menu, select Reset Documents from Documents.
- If the documents to be combined have different print settings, a message may be displayed. Check the contents of the displayed message before combining the documents.
- If the documents to be combined have different output paper sizes and duplex printing or page layout printing is to be performed, the printer may not produce the expected print results for certain print pages.
  Check the preview before printing.
- Depending on the print settings of the print document, some functions may not be available in the Canon IJ XPS preview.

Note

- You can rename Document Name to any name.

5. Executing print

Click Print.
When you execute print, the printer uses the specified settings to print the data.

Reprinting from the Print History

When you click Save Print History on the File menu to enable the setting, the document printed from the preview is saved, and you can reprint the document with the same settings.

1. Displaying the print history

Select the Start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> View Print History XPS.
The saved print document is displayed in the preview.

Important

- To limit the number of print history registrations, click History Entry Limit on the File menu.
- If the limit on the number of registration is exceeded, the print history registrations are deleted starting from the oldest one.

2. Selecting a print document

From the Document Name list, select the document to be printed.

3. Executing print

Click Print.

Related Topic

Displaying the Print Results before Printing

Page top

P037

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

If the printer does not start printing, cancelled or failed print job data may be remaining.
Delete the undesired print job by using the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

1. Display the Canon IJ Status Monitor

Click the button of the status monitor displayed on the task bar.
The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

2. Display the print jobs

Click Display Print Queue....
The print queue window opens.

3. Delete the print jobs

Select Cancel All Documents from the Printer menu.
When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.

The deletion of the print job is complete.

Important

- Users who have not been granted access permission for printer management cannot delete the print job of another user.

Note

- When you perform this operation, all print jobs are deleted. If the print queue list contained a necessary print job, start the printing process over from the beginning.

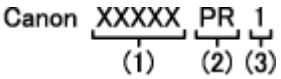
Page top

P049

Interpreting the ICC Profile

When you need to specify the machine profile, select the ICC profile for the paper to print on.

The ICC profiles installed for this machine appear as follows.



- (1) is the model name of the printer.
- (2) is the media type. This notation corresponds to the following media type:

  GL: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II

  PT: Photo Paper Pro Platinum

  SG: Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss

  MP: Matte Photo Paper

  Fine Art Photo Rag: Fine Art "Photo Rag"

  Other Fine Art Paper: Other Fine Art Paper

- (3) is the print quality.
  The print quality is divided into 5 levels, ranging from high speed to high quality. As the number decreases, the print quality becomes higher. This value corresponds to the Quality slide bar in the Custom dialog box of the printer driver.

Page top

Updating the MP Drivers

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers
Before Installing the MP Drivers
Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

P038

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers

The MP Drivers include a printer driver and scanner driver (ScanGear).

By updating the MP Drivers to the latest version of the MP Drivers, unresolved problems may be solved.

Access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

Important

- You can download the MP Drivers for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version.
  For information on how to delete the MP Drivers, see "Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers ."

Related Topics

- Before Installing the MP Drivers
- Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

P039

Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers

The MP Drivers which you no longer use can be deleted.
When deleting the MP Drivers, first exit all programs that are running.

The procedure to delete the unnecessary MP Drivers is as follows:

When There is an Uninstaller

1. Start the uninstaller

- If you are using Windows 7, Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> MP Drivers Uninstaller.
- If you are using Windows XP, select the start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> MP Drivers Uninstaller.

The MP Drivers Uninstaller dialog box is displayed.

Important

- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when starting, installing or uninstalling software.
  This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
  When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Yes (or Continue, Allow) to continue.
  Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

2. Execute the uninstaller

Click Execute. When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
When all the files have been deleted, click Complete.

The deletion of the MP Drivers is complete.

Important

- Printer driver and scanner driver (ScanGear) will be deleted when you uninstall the MP Drivers.

When There is No Uninstaller

When there is no uninstaller in the Start menu of Windows 7 or Windows Vista, follow these steps:

1. Select the printer to be deleted

- If you are using Windows 7, select the Start menu -> Devices and Printers.
  Click the model to delete, then press the Alt key on your keyboard. On the File menu, click Remove device.
- If you are using Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
  Click the model to delete, then press the Alt key on your keyboard. On the File menu, click Delete.

2. Delete the printer

- If you are using Windows 7, when the confirmation message appears, click Yes. Then when the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Yes.
  The icon is deleted.

- If you are using Windows Vista, when the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue. Then when the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
  The icon is deleted.

3. Select the printer driver to be deleted

- If you are using Windows 7, click any icon in Printers and Faxes.
  On the commandbar, click Print server properties, and then click the Drivers tab. If the Change Driver Settings button is displayed, click that button.
  When the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Yes.
  In the Installed printer drivers list, click the printer to delete.

- If you are using Windows Vista, press the Alt key. On the File menu, select Run as administrator, and then click Server Properties....
  When the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue.
  Click the Drivers tab. In the Installed printer drivers list, click the printer to delete.

4. Delete the printer driver

When you click Remove..., Remove Driver And Package dialog box is displayed.
Select Remove driver and driver package., and then click OK.
In the confirmation dialog box, click Yes.

When data collection is completed in the Remove Driver Package dialog box, click Delete.

5. Click OK

The deletion of the printer driver is complete.

Important

- You may not be able to delete the printer driver properly from the Installed printer drivers list.
  If this happens, restart your computer, and then try again.

Page top

P040

Before Installing the MP Drivers

This section describes the items that you should check before installing the MP Drivers. You should also refer to this section if the MP Drivers cannot be installed.

Checking the Machine Status

- Properly connect the personal computer and the machine. For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.
- Turn off the machine.

Checking the Personal Computer Settings

- Terminate all running applications.
- In Windows 7, Windows Vista, log on as a user who has the administrator account.
  In Windows XP, log on as the computer administrator.

Important

- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version. For instructions on deleting the MP Drivers, see " Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers ."

Related Topics

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

P041

Installing the MP Drivers

You can access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

The procedure for installing the downloaded MP Drivers is as follows:

1. Turn off the machine

2. Start the installer

Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.
The installation program starts.

Important

- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when starting, installing or uninstalling software.
  This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
  When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Yes (or Continue, Allow) to continue.
  Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

3. Install the MP Drivers

At the Welcome window, click Next.
When the License Agreement window is displayed, check the contents, and click Yes. If you do not agree to the terms of the Software License Agreement, you cannot install this software.
Installation of the MP Drivers begins.

In the Connection method window, select the printer connection method and then click Next.
After the Installation Complete window is displayed, check that the machine and the computer are connected through a cable.

When the machine is connected directly to the network, follow the procedure below to select the connection destination.

1. Check the Select printer port check box, and click Manual Selection.
2. At the Select Port window, select printer output port (FILE) as connection destination, and then click OK.

4. Complete the installation

Click Complete.
Turn on the machine, and wait awhile until the connection is recognized.

When you are using a USB connection, the procedure for installing the MP Drivers is complete.

Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

Important

- You can download the MP Drivers for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version. For instructions on deleting the MP Drivers, see " Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers ."

Related Topics

- Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
- Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers
- Before Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

U509

Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals

Follow the procedure below to uninstall all of the installed on-screen manuals from your computer.

Before uninstalling the on-screen manuals, exit all on-screen manuals that are opening.

1. Click Start > All Programs > Canon XXX Manual (where "**XXX**" is your machine's name) > Uninstall.

2. Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

Note

- When the message prompting you to restart your computer is displayed, click OK to restart your computer.

Page top

U510

Transporting the Machine

When relocating the machine, pack the machine using the original packing materials.

If you do not have the original packing materials, pack the machine carefully using protective material and place it inside a sturdy box.

Important

- Do not transport or store the machine slanted, vertically, or upside-down, as the ink may leak and damage the machine.

1. Turn the machine off.
2. Confirm that the **POWER** lamp is off and unplug the machine.

   Important

   - Do not unplug the machine while the **POWER** lamp is lit or flashing blue, as it may cause malfunction or damage to the machine, making the machine unable to print.
3. Retract the Paper Support and the Output Tray Extension, close the Paper Output Tray, then fold down the LCD.
4. Disconnect the printer cable from the computer and from the machine, then disconnect the power plug from the machine.
5. Use adhesive tape to secure all the covers on the machine to keep them from opening during transportation. Then pack the machine in the plastic bag.
6. Attach the protective material to the machine when packing the machine in the box.

   Important

   - Make sure to lock the Scanning Unit (Cover) by sliding the Scanner Lock Switch to the Lock position ( ).
   - Pack the machine with the Print Head and ink tanks left installed in the machine.

   Note

   - When you ask a shipping agent to transport the machine, clearly label the box as "FRAGILE" or "HANDLE WITH CARE".

Page top

U511

Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

The printer driver setup window can be displayed through the application software in use or the Start menu of the Windows.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Application Software

Follow the procedure below to configure print settings when printing.

1. Select the command you perform printing on the application software in use.

In general, select Print on the File menu to open the Print dialog box.

2. Select your model name and click Preferences (or Properties).

The printer driver setup window opens.

Note

- Depending on application software you use, command names or menu names may vary and there may be more steps. For details, refer to the user's manual of your application software.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Start Menu

Follow the procedure below to perform maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or to configure print settings that are common for all application software.

1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below.

- In Windows 7, select Devices and Printers from the Start menu.
- In Windows Vista, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.
- In Windows XP, select the Start menu > Control Panel > Printers and Other Hardware > Printers and Faxes.

2. Right-click your model name icon and then select Printing Preferences from the displayed menu.

The printer driver setup window opens.

Important

- Opening the printer driver setup window through Printer properties (Windows 7) or Properties (Windows Vista or Windows XP) displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the Ports (or Advanced) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through Printing Preferences or application software. About tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

Page top

U516

Notice for Unplugging the Power Cord

To unplug the power cord, follow the procedure below.

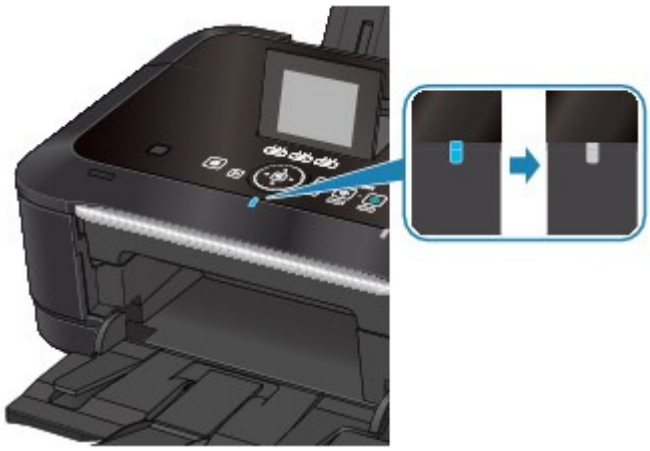
Important

- When you unplug the power cord, press the **ON** button, then confirm that the **POWER** lamp is off. Unplugging the power cord while the machine is still on may cause drying or clogging of the Print Head and print quality may be reduced.

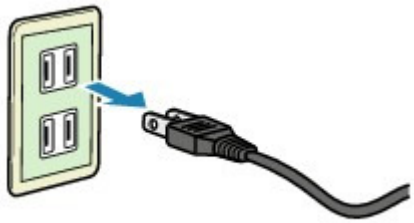
1. Press the **ON** button to turn the machine off.



2. Confirm that the **POWER** lamp is off.



3. Unplug the power cord.



The specification of the power cord differs depending on the country or region of use.

Page top

A006

Downloading Premium Content

Access the CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM website from Solution Menu EX to download content printable with Easy-PhotoPrint EX and other applications.

Important

- You may only use the content downloaded or printed for personal purposes.
  You may not use the content for commercial purposes.

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Solution Menu EX, then click Solution Menu EX.

   Solution Menu EX starts.

2. Select Canon Web Service, then click the CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM icon.

   The CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM website appears.

   Important

   - Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.

3. Select a category.

4. Select and download the content you want to print.

Note

- The application required for printing depends on the downloaded content.
- You need to install the downloaded content to print it with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
- See "Printing Premium Content " for details on how to print the downloaded content with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Page top

A001

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

--- Transforming Your Photos into Creative Works of Art ---

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.

Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Click Here: Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Note

- See the section below for details on how to use Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
  Printing with the Bundled Application Software

Create a Personalized Photo Album

Creating a personalized photo album is an easy task if you use Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

All you need to do is select which photos to use, select a layout, then load paper into your printer and print. After you bind the printed sheets, you'll have the one and only album of your memories!





You can change the layout and background, and attach comments to photos.



You can also select the size and orientation.



You can arrange a photo across the left and right pages.

CHECK! ••••••••••••••••

Select a theme (background design) to create a single-themed album.

Decorate Items with Text and Frames

You can add text and frames to photos. Attach a description of the photo in an album, and add a frame to enhance the photo's atmosphere.



CHECK!

Select Album to add text and frames. You cannot decorate photos with Photo Print.

Create a Calendar Using Your Favorite Photos

Create calendars easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX. Create your own calendar using your favorite photos! It'll be exciting to turn the calendar pages.



You can use all kinds of photos.



You can also create 2-month, 6-month and 12-month calendars.

Create Stickers

Create stickers easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

Create stickers of your favorite photos and share them with your friends!



CHECK!

You can add text to photos.

Page top

S001

MP Navigator EX

Using MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX is an application that enables you to easily scan photos and documents. It is suitable even for beginners.

Start MP Navigator EX

Click Here: MP Navigator EX

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" for details on how to scan images using MP Navigator EX.

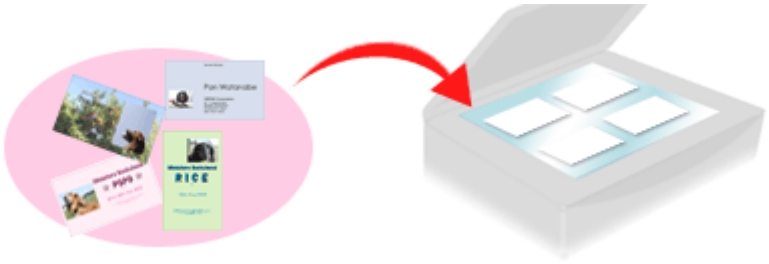
Scan Photos and Documents

You can scan easily by navigating through MP Navigator EX screens. You can also save/print scanned images using MP Navigator EX.



Scan Small Documents at One Time

You can scan multiple small documents (photos, cards, etc.) at one time. It is useful as you do not need to scan multiple times.



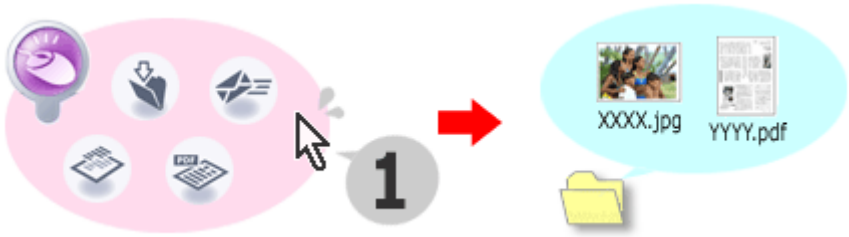
Scan Large Documents

You can easily scan documents that are larger than the Platen using MP Navigator EX. It allows you to scan the left and right halves of a document separately and combine them back into one image.



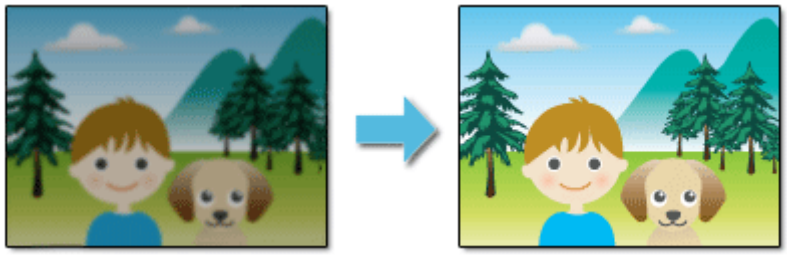
Scan with One-click

In One-click Mode, MP Navigator EX completes from scanning to saving, with a click of an icon. One-click Mode also allows you to scan and save images as PDF files or attach them to e-mail automatically.



Scan and Correct/Enhance Photos

You can easily correct/enhance scanned photos using MP Navigator EX. You do not need to use other applications.



For details on how to use MP Navigator EX, refer to " Scanning with the Bundled Application Software ."

Page top

About Network Communication

Changing and Confirming Network Settings
Troubleshooting
Appendix
Glossary

Page top

Changing and Confirming Network Settings

- Canon IJ Network Tool
- Canon IJ Network Tool Dialog Box
- Canon IJ Network Tool Menus
- Changing the Settings in the Wireless LAN Sheet
- Changing the WPA or WPA2 Detailed Settings
- Changing the Settings in the Wired LAN Sheet (For MG6100 series/MG8100 series)
- Changing the Settings in the Admin Password Sheet
- Monitoring Wireless Network Status
- Initializing the Network Settings of the Machine
- Viewing the Modified Settings
- Printing Out Network Setting Information

Page top

N010

Canon IJ Network Tool

The Canon IJ Network Tool is a utility that enables you to display and modify the machine network settings. It is installed when the machine is set up.

Important

- Do not start up the Canon IJ Network Tool while printing.
- Do not print when the Canon IJ Network Tool is running.
- If the firewall function of your security software is turned on, a message may appear warning that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If the warning message appears, set the security software to always allow access.
- Canon IJ Network Tool has been verified to work on Windows XP, however, it does not support Fast User Switching. It is recommended to exit Canon IJ Network Tool when switching users.

Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool

1. **Click Start and select All programs (or Programs), Canon IJ Network Utilities, Canon IJ Network Tool, and then Canon IJ Network Tool.**

Note

- You can also start up the Canon IJ Network Tool by clicking  Network Settings from Help & Settings on Solution Menu EX.

Page top

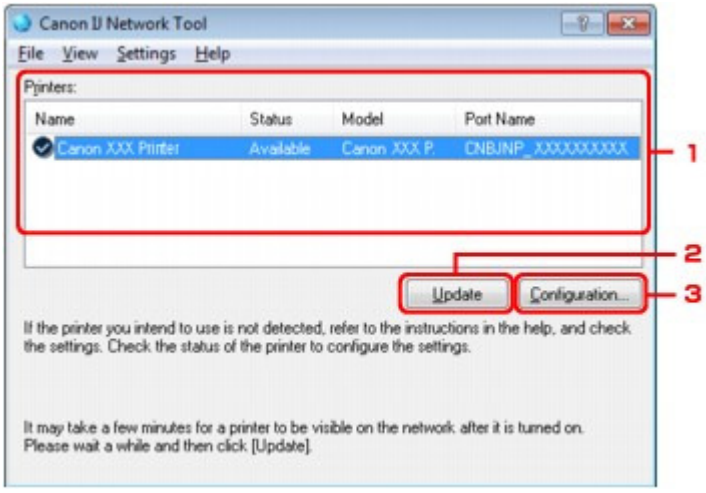
N011

Canon IJ Network Tool Dialog Box

This section describes the items displayed on the Canon IJ Network Tool dialog box.

Important

- To use the machine over LAN, make sure you have the equipment necessary for the connection type, such as an access point or a LAN cable.



1. Printers

The printer name, status, printer model name, and port name are displayed.
A check mark next to the printer in the Name list indicates it is set as the default printer.
Configuration changes are applied to the selected printer.

2. Update

Performs printer detection again. Click this button if the target printer is not displayed.

Important

- To change the printer's network settings using the Canon IJ Network Tool, it must be connected via a LAN.
- If No Driver is displayed for the name, associate the port with the printer.
  Canon IJ Network Tool Menus
- If Not Found is displayed for the status, check the followings:
  - The access point is turned on.
  - When using wired LAN, the LAN cable is connected properly.
- If the printer on a network is not detected, make sure that the printer is turned on, then click Update. It may take several minutes to detect printers. If the printer is not yet detected, connect the machine and the computer with a USB cable, then click Update.
- If the printer is being used from another computer, a dialog box is displayed informing you of this condition.

Note

- This item has the same function as Refresh in the View menu.

3. Configuration

Click to configure settings of the selected printer.

Note

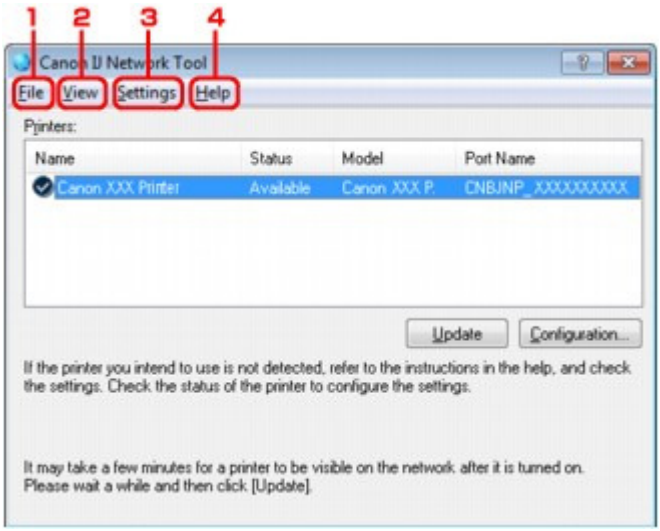
- You cannot configure a printer that has the status Not Found.
- This item has the same function as Configuration in the Settings menu.

Page top

N012

Canon IJ Network Tool Menus

This section describes the menus in the Canon IJ Network Tool dialog box.



1. File menu

Exit
Exits the Canon IJ Network Tool.

2. View menu

Status
Displays the Status dialog box to confirm the printer connection status and wireless communication status.

Refresh
Updates and displays the contents of Printers to the latest information.

Important

- To change the printer's network settings using the Canon IJ Network Tool, it must be connected via a LAN.
- If No Driver is displayed for the name, associate the port with the printer.
- If Not Found is displayed for the status, check the followings:
  - The access point is turned on.
  - When using wired LAN, the LAN cable is connected properly.
- If the printer on a network is not detected, make sure that the printer is turned on, then select Refresh. It may take several minutes to detect printers. If the printer is not yet detected, connect the machine and the computer with a USB cable, then select Refresh.
- If the printer is being used from another computer, a dialog box is displayed informing you of this condition.

Note

- This item has the same function as Update in the Canon IJ Network Tool dialog box.

Network Information
Displays the Network Information dialog box to confirm the network settings of the printer and the computer.

Display Warning Automatically

Enables or disables automatic display of the application's online help.
When this menu is selected, the application's online help is displayed if one or more ports are unavailable for printing.

3. Settings menu

Configuration
Displays the Configuration dialog box to configure settings of the selected printer.

Note

- This item has the same function as Configuration in the Canon IJ Network Tool dialog box.

Associate Port
Displays the Associate Port dialog box and you can associate a port with the printer.
This menu is available when No Driver is displayed for the selected printer. Associating a port with the printer enables you to use it.

Maintenance
Displays the Maintenance dialog box to revert the network settings of the printer to factory default and to mount the Card Slot as the network drive.

4. Help menu

Help Topics
Displays the application's online help.

About
Displays the version of the Canon IJ Network Tool.

Page top

N013

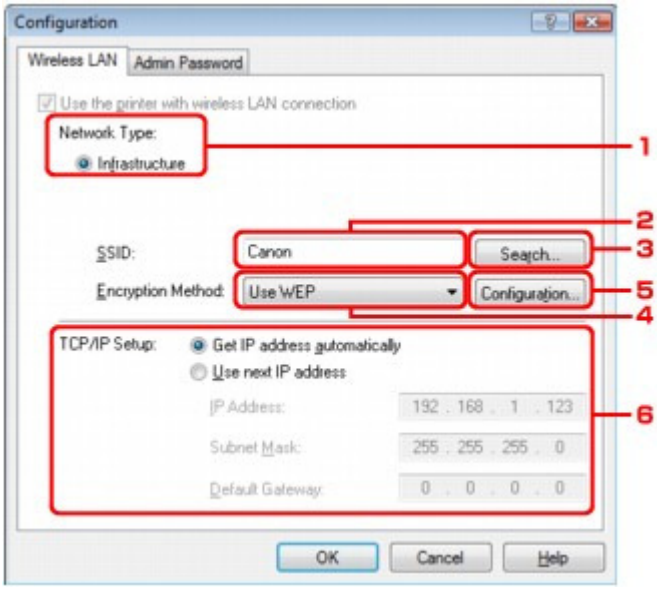
Changing the Settings in the Wireless LAN Sheet

To change the wireless network settings of the printer, connect the printer and the computer with a USB cable temporarily. If you modify the wireless network settings of the computer over wireless connection without USB connection, your computer may not be able to communicate with the machine after modifying the settings.

Note

- If your machine is compatible with wireless LAN and wired LAN:
  Select Wireless LAN active in the Change wireless/wired on the Operation Panel to change the settings in the Wireless LAN sheet.
  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
- If your machine is compatible with wireless LAN only:
  Select Wireless LAN active in the WLAN active/inactive on the Operation Panel to change the settings in the Wireless LAN sheet.
  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

1. Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.
   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool
2. Select the printer in Printers.
3. Select Configuration from the Settings menu.
4. Click the Wireless LAN tab.
   Click OK after changing configuration. A dialog box is displayed asking you for confirmation before the settings are sent to the printer. If you click Yes, the settings are sent to the printer and the Transmitted Settings dialog box is displayed.



1. Network Type

   Infrastructure
   Connects the printer to the wireless LAN with an access point.

2. SSID

The SSID of the wireless LAN is displayed.

Note

- Enter the same SSID that the access point is configured to use. The SSID is case-sensitive.

3. Search

The Search dialog box is displayed to select an access point to connect to.
Search dialog box

Note

- When the Canon IJ Network Tool runs over a LAN, the button is grayed out and cannot be selected. Connect the printer and the computer with a USB cable temporarily to change the settings.

4. Encryption Method

Select the encryption method used over the wireless LAN.

Important

- If all encryption types of the access point, printer, or computer do not match, the printer cannot communicate with the computer. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer after the encryption type of the printer was switched, make sure that encryption types for the computer and the access point matches that set to the printer.
  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key
- If you connect to a network that is not protected with security measures, there is a risk of disclosing data such as your personal information to a third party.

Do not use
Select to disable encryption.

Use WEP
Transmission is encrypted using a WEP key you specified.
If a WEP key has not been set, the WEP Details dialog box is displayed automatically. To change WEP settings set before, click Configuration to display the dialog box.
WEP Details dialog box

Use WPA/Use WPA2
Transmission is encrypted using a WPA or WPA2 key you specified.
The security has been strengthened more than WEP.
If a WPA or WPA2 key has not been set, the Authentication Type Confirmation dialog box is displayed automatically. To change WPA or WPA2 settings set before, click Configuration to display the WPA Details dialog box or WPA2 Details dialog box.
Changing the WPA or WPA2 Detailed Settings

5. Configuration

The detailed settings dialog box is displayed. The WEP, the WPA, or the WPA2 key selected in Encryption Method can be confirmed and changed.

For details on WEP setting:
WEP Details dialog box

For details on WPA or WPA2 setting:
Changing the WPA or WPA2 Detailed Settings

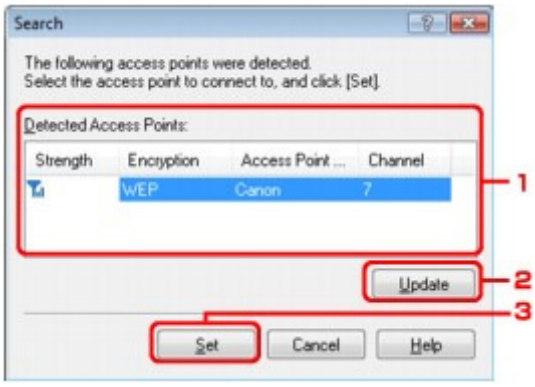
6. TCP/IP Setup

Sets the IP address of the printer to be used over the LAN. Set a value appropriate for your network environment.

Get IP address automatically
Select this option to use an IP address automatically assigned by a DHCP server. DHCP server functionality must be enabled on your wireless LAN router or access point.

Use next IP address
If no DHCP server functionality is available in your setup where you use the printer or you want to use a particular IP address, select this option to use a fixed IP address.

- **Search dialog box**



1. Detected Access Points

The signal strength from the access point, encryption type, name of access point, and the radio channel can be confirmed.

Important

- If you connect to a network that is not protected with security measures, there is a risk of disclosing data such as your personal information to a third party.

Note

- Signal strength is displayed as follows.
  : Good
  : Fair
  : Poor
- Type of encryption is displayed as follows.
  Blank: No encryption
  WEP: WEP is set
  WPA: WPA is set
  WPA2: WPA2 is set

2. Update

Click to update the list of access points when your target access point is not detected.
If the target access point is set to the stealth mode, click Cancel to return to the previous screen and enter the access point's Service Set Identifier in SSID.

Note

- Make sure that the access point is turned on.

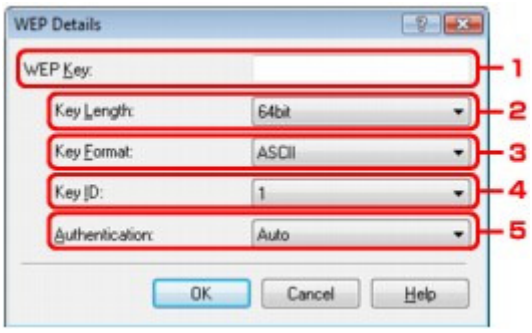
3. Set

Click to set the access point's SSID in SSID on the Wireless LAN sheet.

Note

- Depending on your settings, WEP Details dialog box, WPA Details dialog box, or WPA2 Details dialog box appears when you click the Set button. In the dialog box, configure the details to use the same encryption settings set to the access point.
- Access points that cannot be used by this machine (including those configured to use different encryption methods) are displayed grayed out and cannot be configured.

- **WEP Details dialog box**



Specify the printer WEP settings. When changing the password (WEP key), the same change must be made to the password (WEP key) of the access point.

1. WEP Key

Enter the same key as the one set to the access point.
The number of characters and character type that can be entered differ depending on the key length and key format.

		Key Length	
		64 bit	128 bit
Key Format	ASCII	5 characters	13 characters
	Hexadecimal (Hex)	10 digits	26 digits

2. Key Length

Select either 64 bit or 128 bit.

3. Key Format

Select either ASCII or Hex.

4. Key ID

Select the Key ID (index) set to the access point.

5. Authentication

Select the authentication method to authenticate the printer's access to the access point.
Normally, select Auto. If you want to specify the method manually, select Open System or Shared Key according to the setting of the access point.

Important

- If the printer cannot communicate with the computer after the encryption type of the printer was switched, make sure that encryption types for the computer and the access point matches that set to the printer.
  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key

Page top

N014

Changing the WPA or WPA2 Detailed Settings

To change the wireless network settings of the printer, connect the printer and the computer with a USB cable temporarily. If you modify the wireless network settings of the computer over wireless connection without USB connection, your computer may not be able to communicate with the machine after modifying the settings.

The example screenshots in this section refer to the WPA detailed settings.

1. Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.

   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool

2. Select the printer in Printers.

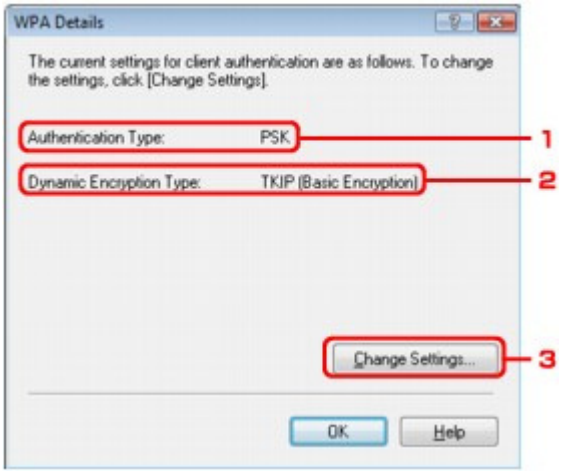
3. Select Configuration from the Settings menu.

4. Click the Wireless LAN tab.

5. Select Use WPA or Use WPA2 in Encryption Method and click Configuration.

   Go to step 7 if encryption is not set to the printer.

6. Click Change Settings.



1. Authentication Type

   Displays the type of authentication used for client authentication.
   This machine supports the PSK authentication method.

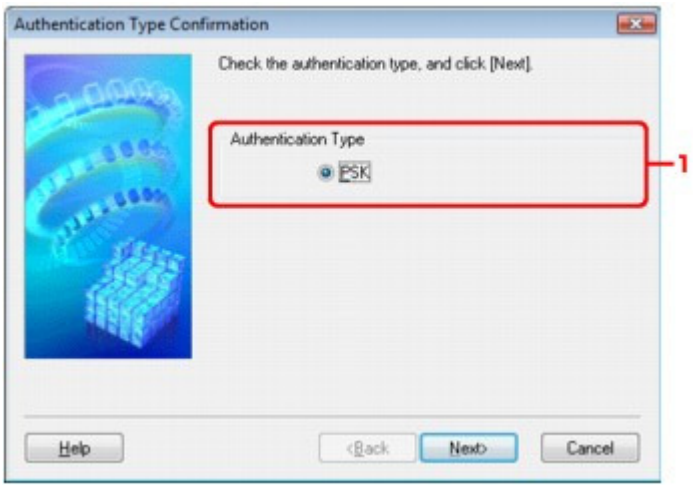
2. Dynamic Encryption Type

   Displays the dynamic encryption method as either TKIP (Basic Encryption), or AES (Secure Encryption).

3. Change Settings

   Displays a dialog box to change WPA or WPA2 settings.

7. Check the client authentication type and click Next.

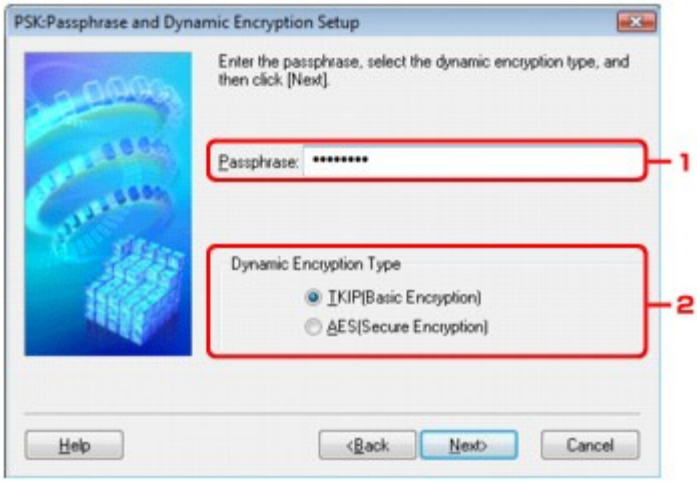


1. Authentication Type

   Type of authentication used for client authentication is displayed.
   This machine supports the PSK authentication method.

   PSK
   This authentication type uses a passphrase entered in the next screen.

8. Enter the passphrase, confirm the type of dynamic encryption and click Next.



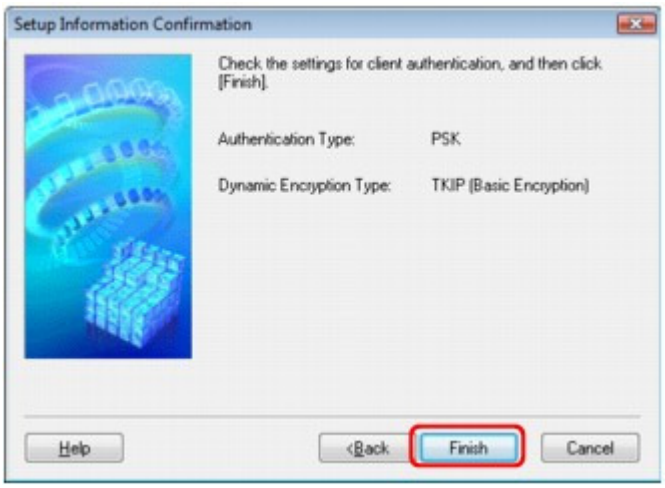
1. Passphrase

   Enter the passphrase set to the access point. The passphrase should be a string of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters or a 64-digit hexadecimal value.
   If you do not know the access point passphrase, refer to the manual provided with the access point or contact its manufacturer.

2. Dynamic Encryption Type

   Select the dynamic encryption method from either TKIP (Basic Encryption), or AES (Secure Encryption).

9. Click Finish.



Important

- If the printer cannot communicate with the computer after the encryption type of the printer was switched, make sure that encryption types for the computer and the access point matches that set to the printer.
  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key

Page top

N016

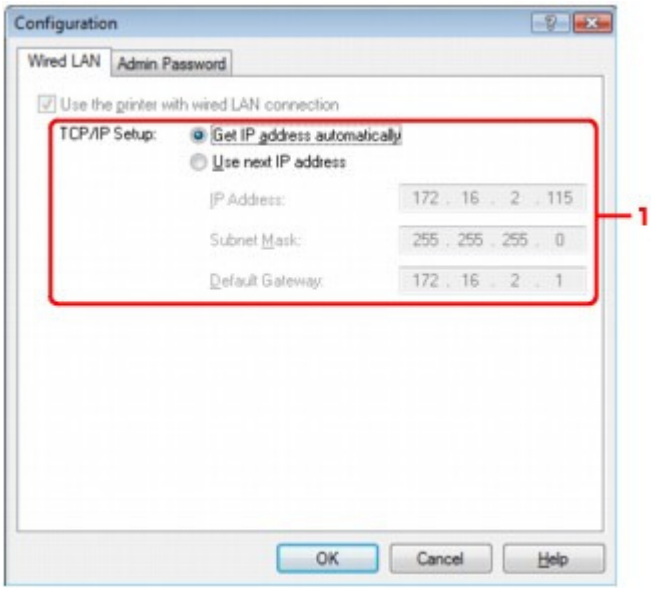
Changing the Settings in the Wired LAN Sheet (For MG6100 series/MG8100 series)

Note

- Select Wired LAN active in the Change wireless/wired on the Operation Panel to change the settings in the Wired LAN sheet.
  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

1. Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.
   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool
2. Select the printer in Printers.
3. Select Configuration from the Settings menu.
4. Click the Wired LAN tab.

   Click OK after changing configuration. A dialog box is displayed asking you for confirmation before the settings are sent to the printer. If you click Yes, the settings are sent to the printer and the Transmitted Settings dialog box is displayed.



1. TCP/IP Setup

   Sets the IP address of the printer to be used over the LAN. Set a value appropriate for your network environment.

   Get IP address automatically
   Select this option to use an IP address automatically assigned by a DHCP server. DHCP server functionality must be enabled on your wireless LAN router or access point.

   Use next IP address
   If no DHCP server functionality is available in your setup where you use the printer or you want to use a particular IP address, select this option to use a fixed IP address.

Page top

N017

Changing the Settings in the Admin Password Sheet

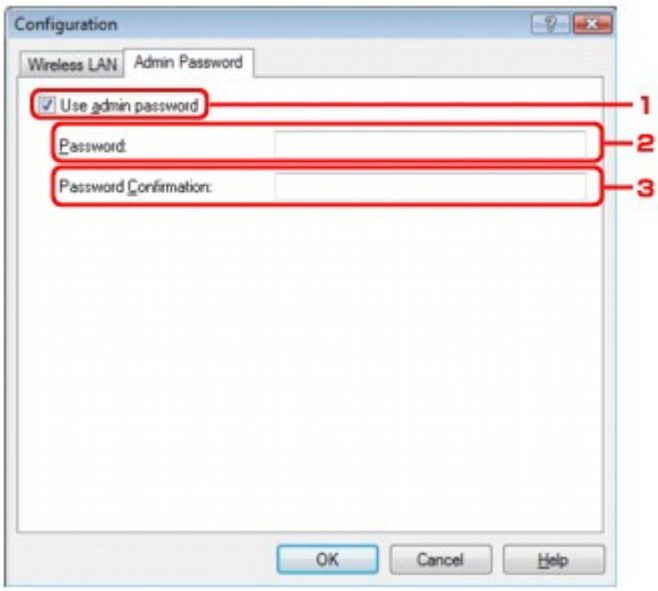
1. Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.

   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool

2. Select the printer in Printers.

3. Select Configuration from the Settings menu.

4. Click the Admin Password tab.



1. Use admin password

   Set a password for the administrator with privileges to set up and change detailed options. To use this feature, select this check box and enter a password.

   Important

   - The password should consist of alphanumeric characters and be no longer than 32 characters. The password is case-sensitive. Do not forget the password you set.

2. Password

   Enter the password to set.

3. Password Confirmation

   Enter the password again for confirmation.

5. Click OK.

A dialog box is displayed asking you for confirmation before the settings are sent to the printer. If you click Yes, the settings are sent to the printer and the Transmitted Settings dialog box is displayed.

Page top

N018

Monitoring Wireless Network Status

Note

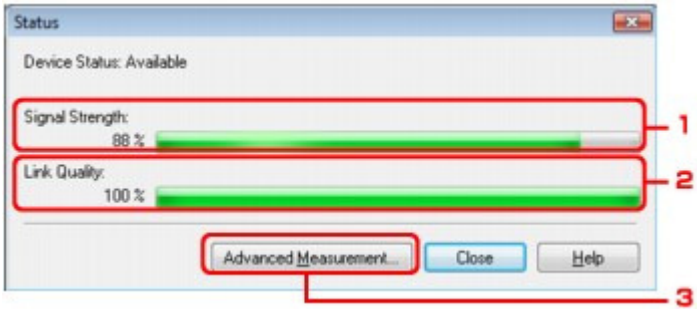
- When using the printer over the Wired LAN, Signal Strength, Link Quality, or Advanced Measurement is not available.

1. Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.

   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool

2. Select the printer in Printers.

3. Select Status from the View menu.



1. Signal Strength

   Indicates the strength of the signal received by the printer, ranging from 0% to 100%.

2. Link Quality

   Indicates the signal quality excluding the noise while communicating, ranging from 0% to 100 %.

   ## Important

   - If the indicated value is low, move your printer closer to the wireless network device.

3. Advanced Measurement

   Click to examine the connection performance between the printer and the access point. Follow the instructions on the screen to start measuring and display the status. Measurement takes a few minutes.

   When is displayed in Connection Performance between the Printer and the Access Point, the printer can communicate with the access point. Otherwise, refer to displayed comments and Help for improving the status of communication link.

   ## Note

   - If any messages appear on Overall Network Performance, move the machine and access point as instructed to improve the performance.

Page top

N019

Initializing the Network Settings of the Machine

Important

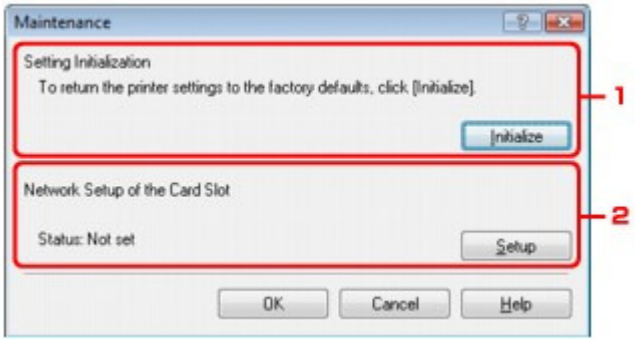
- Note that initialization erases all network settings on the machine, and printing or scanning operation from a computer over network may become impossible. To use the machine over network, refer to the setup manual of the machine to set up the machine again.

1. Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.

   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool

2. Select the printer in Printers.

3. Select Maintenance from the Settings menu.



1. Setting Initialization

   Initialize
   Reverts all the network settings of the printer to factory default. Click Initialize to display the Initialize Settings dialog box and click Yes to initialize the network settings of the printer. Do not turn off the printer during initialization. Click OK when initialization is complete.
   Performing initialization when connected over wireless LAN will break the connection, so refer to your setup manual of the machine to set up the machine again.

2. Network Setup of the Card Slot

   Displays the status of the Card Slot and enables you to mount network drive. For details on how to mount the Card Slot as a network drive, see Using the Card Slot over a Network .

Note

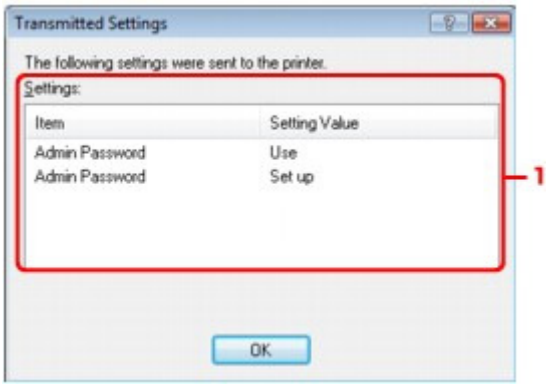
- You can change the network settings of the printer using Canon IJ Network Tool with USB connection after initializing the LAN settings. To change the network settings using Canon IJ Network Tool, set Change wireless/wired in Device settings to Wireless LAN active or Wired LAN active on the Operation Panel.

Page top

N020

Viewing the Modified Settings

The Confirmation dialog box is displayed when you modified the printer settings on the Configuration dialog box. When you click Yes on the Confirmation dialog box, the following screen is displayed for confirming the modified settings.



1. Settings

A list of changes made in the Configuration dialog box is displayed.

Page top

N022

Printing Out Network Setting Information

You can print out the network settings of the machine such as its IP address and SSID.

Important

- This print out contains valuable information about your computer. Handle it with care.

1. Make sure that the machine is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.

   Refer to Loading Paper / Originals .
3. Select  Setup on the HOME screen.

   Note

   - For details on how to select a menu on the HOME screen, refer to Overview of the Machine .
4. Select  Device settings, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
5. Use the ▲▼ button to select LAN settings, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
6. Use the ▲▼ button to select Confirm LAN settings, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
7. Use the ▲▼ button to select Print LAN details, then use the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
8. Use the ▲▼ button to select Yes, then use the **OK** button to start printing.

   The following information on the machine's network setting is printed out.

For MG6100 series/MG8100 series

Item	Explanations of the item	Setting
Wireless LAN	Wireless LAN	Enable/Disable
Link Status	Status of the Wireless LAN	Active/Inactive
MAC Address	MAC Address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
SSID	SSID	SSID of the wireless LAN
Connection Mode	Connection Mode	Infrastructure
Channel	Channel	XX (1 to 13)
Encryption	Method of the Encryption	none/WEP/TKIP/AES
WEP Key Length	WEP Key Length	Inactive/128/64
Authentication	Method of the Authentication	none/auto/open/shared/WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Signal Strength	Signal Strength	0 to 100 [%]
TCP/IP Version	TCP/IP Version	IPv4/IPv6
IP Address	Selected IP Address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Default Gateway	Default Gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Mask*1	Subnet Mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Prefix Length*2	Subnet Prefix Length	XXX
IPsec*3	IPsec setting	Active
Security Protocol*3	Method of the Security Protocol	ESP/ESP & AH/AH
Wired LAN	Wired LAN	Enable/Disable
Link Status	Status of the Wired LAN	Active/Inactive
MAC Address	MAC Address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
TCP/IP Version	TCP/IP Version	IPv4/IPv6
IP Address	IP Address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Default Gateway	Default Gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Mask*1	Subnet Mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Prefix Length*2	Subnet Prefix Length	XXX
IPsec*3	IPsec setting	Active
Security Protocol*3	Method of the Security Protocol	ESP/ESP & AH/AH
Printer Name	Printer name	Printer name (Up to 15 characters)
Shared Memory Card	Memory card sharing	Enable/Disable
WSD	WSD setting	Enable/Disable
WSD Timeout	Timeout	1/5/10/15/20 [min]
LLTD	LLTD setting	Enable/Disable
LPR Protocol	LPR protocol setting	Enable/Disable
Bonjour	Bonjour setting	Enable/Disable
Bonjour Service Name	Bonjour service name	Bonjour service name (Up to 48 characters)
Bonjour LPR Service	Bonjour LPR service advertising	Enable/Disable
IP Address Filtering	IP Address Filtering	Enable/Disable

("X" represents an alphanumeric character ranging from 0 to 9 and A to F.)
*1 Only when IPv4 is selected on IPv4/IPv6 setting, the status of the network is printed.
*2 Only when IPv6 is selected on IPv4/IPv6 setting, the status of the network is printed.
*3 Only when IPv6 is selected on IPv4/IPv6 setting and Active is selected on IPsec settings, the status of the network is printed.

For MG5200 series

Item	Explanations of the item	Setting
Wireless LAN	Wireless LAN	Enable/Disable
Link Status	Status of the Wireless LAN	Active/Inactive
MAC Address	MAC Address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
SSID	SSID	SSID of the wireless LAN
Connection Mode	Connection Mode	Infrastructure
Channel	Channel	XX (1 to 13)
Encryption	Method of the Encryption	none/WEP/TKIP/AES
WEP Key Length	WEP Key Length	Inactive/128/64

Authentication	Method of the Authentication	none/auto/open/shared/WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK
Signal Strength	Signal Strength	0 to 100 [%]
TCP/IP Version	TCP/IP Version	IPv4/IPv6
IP Address	Selected IP Address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Default Gateway	Default Gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Mask*1	Subnet Mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Prefix Length*2	Subnet Prefix Length	XXX
IPsec*3	IPsec setting	Active
Security Protocol*3	Method of the Security Protocol	ESP/ESP & AH/AH
Printer Name	Printer name	Printer name (Up to 15 characters)
Shared Memory Card	Memory card sharing	Enable/Disable
WSD	WSD setting	Enable/Disable
WSD Timeout	Timeout	1/5/10/15/20 [min]
LLTD	LLTD setting	Enable/Disable
LPR Protocol	LPR protocol setting	Enable/Disable
Bonjour	Bonjour setting	Enable/Disable
Bonjour Service Name	Bonjour service name	Bonjour service name (Up to 48 characters)
Bonjour LPR Service	Bonjour LPR service advertising	Enable/Disable
IP Address Filtering	IP Address Filtering	Enable/Disable

("X" represents an alphanumeric character ranging from 0 to 9 and A to F.)
*1 Only when IPv4 is selected on IPv4/IPv6 setting, the status of the network is printed.
*2 Only when IPv6 is selected on IPv4/IPv6 setting, the status of the network is printed.
*3 Only when IPv6 is selected on IPv4/IPv6 setting and Active is selected on IPsec settings, the status of the network is printed.

Page top

Advanced Guide

Troubleshooting

- Troubleshooting
- How to Set a Network Key/Network Password/Passphrase
- Cannot Communicate With the Machine/Cannot Print from the Machine
- The Following Screen Is Displayed During Setup
- Printer Status Monitor of the Machine Does Not Operate
- Cannot Print, Scan, or Access the Card Slot from a Computer Connected to the Network
- It Takes a Long Time for Printing to Start
- The Admin Password Set to the Machine Was Forgotten
- Checking Information about the Network
- Restoring the Machine's Network Settings to Factory Default
- Updating the MP Drivers
- Uninstalling the Canon IJ Network Tool/Canon IJ Network Scan Utility
- Cannot Mount the Card Slot
- Cannot Use the Card Slot
- Cannot Access to the Memory Card in the Card Slot Using MP Navigator EX
- Cannot Access to the Card Slot Because of Some Security Settings on the Computer
- Date Modified of Files Changes When Saving Them on the Memory Card over Network

Page top

N040

Troubleshooting

This section describes troubleshooting tips for problems you may encounter when using the machine.
For troubleshooting tips related to the setup, refer to the *Network Setup Troubleshooting* .

Page top

N041

How to Set a Network Key/Network Password/Passphrase

Cannot Connect with an Access Point to Which a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key Is Set (You Forgot the WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key)

How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key

Cannot Connect with an Access Point to Which a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key Is Set (You Forgot the WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key)

For information on how to set up the access point, refer to the manual provided with the access point or contact its manufacturer. Make sure that the computer and the access point can communicate with each other, then set up the machine to match the settings of the access point.

How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key

Refer to the manual provided with the access point or contact its manufacturer and check the access point settings. Make sure that the computer and the access point can communicate with each other, then set up the machine to match the settings of the access point.

- **When using WEP**

  The key length, key format, the key to use (one of 1 to 4), and the authentication method must match among the access point, the printer, and the computer.

  For access points that use automatically generated WEP keys, use the hexadecimal key format for the machine.

  Example:

  Using 64 bit key length, when the string "canon" is entered, an access point generates the following codes.

  Key 1: C9 42 28 B8 AE

  Key 2: 87 C0 FB 05 6B

  Key 3: 9A 15 FB F6 F3

  Key 4: 62 56 67 58 44

  In order to communicate with such an access point, you must configure the machine to use the key generated by the access point by entering it in hexadecimal format.

  Normally, select Auto for the authentication method. Otherwise, select Open System or Shared Key according to the setting of the access point.

  When the WEP Details dialog box appears after clicking Set on the Search dialog box, follow the on-screen instructions and set the key length, the key format, the key number, and the authentication to enter a WEP key.

  For details, see WEP Details dialog box .

- **When using WPA or WPA2**

  The authentication method, passphrase, and dynamic encryption type must match on the access point, the machine, and the computer.

  Enter the passphrase configured on the access point (a sequence of between 8 and 63 alphanumeric characters, or a 64-character hexadecimal number).

  Select either TKIP (Basic Encryption) or AES (Secure Encryption) for the dynamic encryption method.

  For details, see Changing the WPA or WPA2 Detailed Settings .

Note

- This machine supports WPA-PSK (WPA-Personal) and WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Personal).

Page top

N042

Cannot Communicate With the Machine/Cannot Print from the Machine

Cannot Communicate with the Machine After Applying MAC/IP Address Filtering or Entering a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key to the Access Point

Cannot Communicate with the Machine After the Network Settings Are Changed

Cannot Connect to the Target Access Point

When Encryption Is Enabled, Cannot Communicate With the Machine After the Encryption Type Was Switched on the Access Point

Cannot Communicate with the Machine with USB Connection

Cannot Communicate with the Machine over the Wireless LAN

Cannot Communicate with the Machine over the Wired LAN

The Machine Cannot Be Detected in the Wireless LAN

The Machine Cannot Be Detected in the Wired LAN

Cannot Communicate with the Machine After Applying MAC/IP Address Filtering or Entering a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key to the Access Point

- **Check 1: Confirm the access point setting.**

  Refer to the manual provided with the access point or contact its manufacturer to confirm the access point setting. Make sure that the computer and the access point can communicate with each other under this setting.

- **Check 2: If you are performing MAC address filtering or IP address filtering at the access point, confirm that the MAC address or IP address for both the computer or the network device and the printer are registered.**

- **Check 3: If you are using a WEP/WPA/WPA2 key, make sure that the key for the computer or the network device and the printer matches that set to the access point.**

  Besides the WEP key itself, the key length, key format, the key ID to use, and the authentication method must match among the machine, the access point, and the computer.

  Normally, select Auto for the authentication method. If you want to specify the method manually, select Open System or Shared Key according to the setting of the access point.

  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key

Cannot Communicate with the Machine After the Network Settings Are Changed

Wait until the IP address is assigned to the computer. You may need to restart your computer.

Search for the printer again after confirming a valid IP address is assigned to the computer.

Cannot Connect to the Target Access Point

- **Check 1: Make sure that the SSID/network name of the target access point and the machine are identical.**

  For the procedures to connect an access point and set it up, refer to the manual of your access point or contact its manufacturer.

  For the procedures to set up the printer, see Changing the Settings in the Wireless LAN Sheet.

- **Check 2: Make sure that Wireless LAN active is selected in WLAN active/inactive or Change wireless/wired on the Operation Panel.**

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

- **Check 3: If a network key is set to the access point, set the machine to match it.**

  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key

- **Check 4: Make sure that the valid wireless channel is used.**

  The wireless channel to be used may be limited depending on wireless network devices installed in the computer. Refer to the manual provided with your computer or your wireless network device to specify the valid wireless channel.

- **Check 5: Make sure that the channel set to the access point is valid to communicate with the computer, confirmed in Check 4.**

  If not, change the channel set to the access point.

- **For placement:**

  Make sure that there is no barrier or obstacle between the access point and the machine.

- **When using the printer in a multiple access point setup, make sure that the access point to be used can communicate with the machine and the computer.**

  Make sure that the wireless channel of the access point is far enough away with those of other access points.

  Windows XP may automatically connect to an unintended access point. Follow the steps below to make your access point the highest priority.

  1. **Select Start and Connect To.**
  2. **Right click Wireless Network Connection and select Properties.**
  3. **Click the Wireless Networks tab and confirm that Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings is checked.**
  4. **Confirm that the target access point is displayed in the Preferred networks list.**

When Encryption Is Enabled, Cannot Communicate With the Machine After the Encryption Type Was Switched on the Access Point

If the printer cannot communicate with the computer after the encryption type of the printer was switched, make sure that encryption types for the computer and the access point matches that set to the printer.

Cannot Communicate with the Machine After Applying MAC/IP Address Filtering or Entering a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key to the Access Point

Cannot Communicate with the Machine with USB Connection

- **Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.**
- **Check 2: Make sure that the USB cable is connected properly.**

  Refer to the setup manual of the machine to connect the USB cable properly.

- **Check 3: Do not start up the Canon IJ Network Tool while printing.**
- **Check 4: Do not print while the Canon IJ Network Tool is running.**
- **Check 5: Make sure that Enable bidirectional support is selected in the Ports sheet of the properties dialog box of the printer driver.**

Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

Cannot Communicate with the Machine over the Wireless LAN

- **Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.**
- **Check 2: Is Change wireless/wired or WLAN active/inactive in LAN settings set to Disable LAN?**

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
- **Check 3: Make sure that the network settings in the machine are identical with those of the access point.**

  Refer to the manual provided with the access point or contact its manufacturer to check the access point settings, and then modify the machine settings.

  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key
- **Check 4: Make sure that the machine is not place as far away from the access point.**

  The access point is located indoors within the effective range for wireless communication. Locate the machine within 50 m from the access point.
- **Check 5: Make sure that there is no obstruction.**

  Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Adjust the location of the devices.
- **Check 6: Make sure that there is no source of radio wave interference in your vicinity.**

  There may be a device such as a microwave oven using the same frequency bandwidth as the wireless station. Place the wireless devices as far away from the interference source as possible.
- **Check 7: Make sure that the network settings of the computer are correct.**

  For the procedures to connect a network device to the computer and set them up, refer to the manual of your network device or contact its manufacturer.
- **Check 8: Make sure that the radio status is good and adjust the installation positions while monitoring the radio status with Canon IJ Network Tool.**

  Monitoring Wireless Network Status
- **Check 9: Make sure that the valid wireless channel is used.**

  The wireless channel to be used may be limited depending on wireless network devices installed in the computer. Refer to the manual provided with your computer or your wireless network device to specify the valid wireless channel.
- **Check 10: Make sure that the channel set to the access point is valid to communicate with the computer, confirmed in Check 9.**

  If not, change the channel set to the access point.
- **Check 11: Make sure that the firewall of the security software is disabled.**

  If the firewall function of your security software is turned on, a message may appear warning that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If the warning message appears, set the security software to always allow access.

  If using any programs that switch the network environment, check their settings. Some programs will enable a firewall by default.
- **Check 12: When using a router, connect the printer and computer to the LAN side (same network segment).**
- **For placement:**

When using wireless LAN, make sure that there is no barrier or obstacle between the access point and the machine.

Cannot Communicate with the Machine over the Wired LAN

- **Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.**
- **Check 2: Is Change wireless/wired in LAN settings set to Disable LAN?**

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
- **Check 3: Make sure that the LAN cable is connected properly.**

  Refer to the setup manual of the machine to connect the USB cable properly.

The Machine Cannot Be Detected in the Wireless LAN

- **Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.**
- **Check 2: Is Change wireless/wired or WLAN active/inactive in LAN settings set to Disable LAN?**

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
- **Check 3: Make sure that the USB cable is connected properly.**

  When the machine is connected to the computer temporarily using a USB cable to change the wireless LAN settings, connect the machine and the computer securely referring to your setup manual.
- **Check 4: Make sure that the machine setup is completed.**

  If not, refer to your setup manual of the machine to complete the machine setup.
- **Check 5: When using Canon IJ Network Tool, click Update to search for the printer again.**

  Canon IJ Network Tool Dialog Box
- **Check 6: When searching for a printer over a network, make sure that the machine is associated with the port driver.**

  When No Driver is displayed under Name in the Canon IJ Network Tool, there is no association. Select Associate Port on the Settings menu, then associate the port with the printer.

  Canon IJ Network Tool Menus
- **Check 7: Make sure that the network settings in the printer are identical with those of the access point.**

  Refer to the manual provided with the access point or contact its manufacturer to check the access point settings, and then modify the machine settings.

  How to Set a WEP/WPA/WPA2 Key
- **Check 8: Make sure that there is no obstruction.**

  Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Adjust the location of the devices.
- **Check 9: Make sure that the machine is not place as far away from the access point.**

  The access point is located indoors within the effective range for wireless communication. Locate the machine within 50 m from the access point.
- **Check 10: Make sure that there is no source of radio wave interference in your vicinity.**

There may be a device such as a microwave oven using the same frequency bandwidth as the wireless station. Place the wireless devices as far away from the interference source as possible.

- **Check 11: Make sure that the network settings of the computer are correct.**

  Make sure that the computer can communicate with the printer and the access point over the wireless LAN.

- **Check 12: Make sure that Enable bidirectional support is selected in the Ports sheet of the properties dialog box of the printer driver.**

  Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

- **Check 13: Make sure that the firewall of the security software is disabled.**

  If the firewall function of your security software is turned on, a message may appear warning that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If the warning message appears, set the security software to always allow access.

  If using any programs that switch the network environment, check their settings. Some programs will enable a firewall by default.

- **Check 14: When using a router, connect the printer and computer to the LAN side (same network segment).**

The Machine Cannot Be Detected in the Wired LAN

- **Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.**

- **Check 2: Is Change wireless/wired in LAN settings set to Disable LAN?**

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

- **Check 3: Make sure that the LAN cable is connected properly.**

  Refer to the setup manual of the machine to connect the USB cable properly.

Page top

N043

The Following Screen Is Displayed During Setup

The Enter Password Dialog Box Is Displayed During Setup

The Dialog Box for Setting the Encryption Is Displayed After Selecting the Access Point in the Search Dialog Box

"You are connecting the machine to the non encrypted wireless network" Is Displayed

The Enter Password Dialog Box Is Displayed During Setup

The following dialog box is displayed if an administrator password is set to the machine which has already been set up.



Enter the administrator password you have set.

Changing the Settings in the Admin Password Sheet

The Dialog Box for Setting the Encryption Is Displayed After Selecting the Access Point in the Search Dialog Box

This dialog box is displayed automatically if the encryption settings are changed on the access point. You need to change the machine's encryption settings to match those of the access point.

For information on the encryption settings, see Changing the Settings in the Wireless LAN Sheet .

"You are connecting the machine to the non encrypted wireless network" Is Displayed

Security is not configured on the access point. The machine can still be used, so continue the setup procedure to complete it.

Important

- If you connect to a network that is not protected with security measures, there is a risk of disclosing data such as your personal information to a third party.

Page top

N044

Printer Status Monitor of the Machine Does Not Operate

Use the printer driver with bidirectional communication.

Select Enable bidirectional support in the Ports sheet of the properties dialog box of the printer driver.

Opening the Printer Driver Setup Window

Page top

N045

Cannot Print, Scan, or Access the Card Slot from a Computer Connected to the Network

- **Check 1: Make sure that the network settings of the computer are correct.**

  For the procedures to set up the computer, refer to the manual of your computer or contact its manufacturer.

- **Check 2: If the MP Drivers is not installed, install the MP Drivers.**

  Insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive and perform Custom Install and select MP Drivers to install again.

- **Check 3: When using wireless LAN, make sure that access control is not set to the access point.**

  For the procedures to connect an access point and set it up, refer to the manual of your access point or contact its manufacturer.

Note

- To check the MAC address or the IP address of the computer, see Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the Computer.

Page top

N046

It Takes a Long Time for Printing to Start

- **Check 1: The machine may be printing out or scanning a large job issued from another computer.**
- **Check 2: Make sure that the radio status is good and adjust the installation positions while monitoring the radio status with Canon IJ Network Tool.**

  Monitoring Wireless Network Status

  Make sure that there is no barrier or obstacle between the access point and the machine. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. The metal, concrete, or timber including the metallic material, mud wall, or insulator may interrupt a wireless communication. If the machine cannot communicate with the computer over a Wireless LAN for the wall material, place the machine and the computer in the same room or floor.
- **Check 3: When using wireless LAN, make sure that there is no source of interference in your vicinity.**

  Since a device such as a microwave oven uses the same frequency bandwidth, it may cause interference. Place the wireless devices as far away from the source of interference as possible.

Page top

N047

The Admin Password Set to the Machine Was Forgotten

Initialize the LAN settings.

Restoring the Machine's Network Settings to Factory Default

After initializing the LAN settings, refer to your setup manual of the machine to set up the machine again.

Page top

N049

Checking Information about the Network

Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the Machine
Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the Computer
Checking If the Computer and the Machine, or Computer and the Access Point Can Communicate
Checking the Network Setting Information

Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the Machine

To check the IP address or the MAC address of the machine, display the network setting information using the Operation Panel of the machine or print out the network setting information of the machine.

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
Printing Out Network Setting Information

To display the network setting information using the Canon IJ Network Tool, select Network Information on the View menu.

Canon IJ Network Tool Menus

Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the Computer

To check the IP address or MAC address assigned to the computer, follow the procedure below.

1. **Click Start > All Programs (or Programs) > Accessories > Command Prompt.**

2. **Enter "ipconfig/all" and press the Enter key.**

   The IP addresses and the MAC addresses of the network devices installed on your computer are displayed. When the network device is not connected to the network, the IP address is not displayed.

Checking If the Computer and the Machine, or Computer and the Access Point Can Communicate

To check that communication is available, perform the ping test.

1. **Click Start > All Programs (or Programs) > Accessories > Command Prompt.**

2. **Type the ping command and the IP address of the target printer or the target access point, and then press the Enter key.**

   ping XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
   "XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.
   If the communication is available, a message such as the following is displayed.
   Reply from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=255
   When Request timed out is displayed, the communication is not available.

Checking the Network Setting Information

To check the IP address or the MAC address of the machine, display the network setting information using the Operation Panel of the machine or print out the network setting information of the machine.

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
Printing Out Network Setting Information

Page top

N050

Restoring the Machine's Network Settings to Factory Default

Important

- Note that initialization erases all network settings on the machine, and printing or scanning operation from a computer over network may become impossible. To use the machine over network, refer to the setup manual of the machine to set up the machine again.

Select Reset LAN settings on the Operation Panel of the machine to initialize the network setting.

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

Page top

N051

Updating the MP Drivers

Download the latest MP Drivers in advance.

To obtain the latest MP Drivers, access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

After uninstalling the MP Drivers, install the latest MP Drivers according to the regular procedure. When the connection method selection screen is displayed, select Use the printer on network. The machine will be detected automatically in the network.

After making sure that the machine is detected, install the MP Drivers following the on-screen instructions.

Note

- You can use the machine over a LAN without performing setup again.

Page top

N053

Uninstalling the Canon IJ Network Tool/Canon IJ Network Scan Utility

Uninstalling the Canon IJ Network Tool

Follow the procedure below to uninstall the Canon IJ Network Tool from your computer.

Important

- Even if the Canon IJ Network Tool is uninstalled, you can print over network and scan from the computer. However, you cannot change the network settings and use the Card Slot of the machine over network.
- Log into a user account with administrator privilege.

1. Click Start > All Programs (or Programs) > Canon IJ Network Utilities > Canon IJ Network Tool > Uninstaller.

2. Click Yes when the confirmation message appears.

   When the message prompting you to restart your computer is displayed, click OK to restart your computer.

Note

- You can also use Uninstall a program (or Add or Remove Programs) on Control Panel to uninstall the Canon IJ Network Tool.

Uninstalling the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility

Follow the procedure below to uninstall the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility from your computer.

Important

- Even if the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility is uninstalled, you can print and scan from a computer over network. However, you cannot forward scanned data to a computer over network using the Operation Panel on the machine.
- Log into a user account with administrator privilege.

1. Click Start > All Programs (or Programs) > Canon IJ Network Utilities > Canon IJ Network Scan Utility > Uninstaller.

2. Click Yes when the confirmation message appears.

   When the message prompting you to restart your computer is displayed, click OK to restart your computer.

Note

- You can also use Uninstall a program (or Add or Remove Programs) on Control Panel to uninstall the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility.

Page top

N054

Cannot Mount the Card Slot

The Available Drive Letter Cannot Be Selected on the Network Setup of the Card Slot Dialog Box

The Card Slot Cannot Be Mounted with the Canon IJ Network Tool

The Available Drive Letter Cannot Be Selected on the Network Setup of the Card Slot Dialog Box

On this dialog box, only D to Z can be selected as the network drive for the Card Slot.

When the Card Slot has been set up to be used over network, you cannot select a drive letter. If you want to assign another drive letter to the network drive for the Card Slot, disconnect it from the network, then set up the Card Slot again using the Canon IJ Network Tool.

Using the Card Slot over a Network

The Card Slot Cannot Be Mounted with the Canon IJ Network Tool

If you cannot mount the Card Slot to use it over network with the Canon IJ Network Tool, follow the procedure below to mount the Card Slot manually.

Important

- If you change the printer name with Set printer name in Other settings under LAN settings using the Operation Panel of the machine before you mount the Card Slot with the Canon IJ Network Tool, you cannot mount the Card Slot with the Canon IJ Network Tool. In this case, follow the procedure below and input the specified printer name in place of the Default Name to mount the Card Slot manually.

1. **Check the Default Name of the machine by selecting Network Information on the View menu of the Canon IJ Network Tool.**

2. **Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.**

   In Windows XP, click Start > Run.

3. **Input "\\xxxxxxxxxxxx\", then click OK.**

   For example, if the Default Name is "0000000847B6\canon_memory", then input only "\\0000000847B6\".

   ### Note

   - If you cannot mount the Card Slot with the method above, input the IP address of the machine instead of the 12 alphanumeric characters of the Default Name, and try again. For example, "\\192.168.1.1\canon_memory\". If you mount the Card Slot with the IP address, you have to remount it whenever the machine's IP address changes.

4. **When the  canon_memory icon appears, right-click the icon, then select Map Network Drive.**

5. **Select the drive letter, then click Finish.**

Page top

N055

Cannot Use the Card Slot

- **Check 1: Is the icon of the Card Slot displayed?**

  To use the Card Slot over network, you have to mount the Card Slot as the network drive of the computer.

  The canon_memory (\\xxxxxxxxxxxx) (or canon_memory on `xxxxxxxxxxxx') icon with the mapped drive letter appears on Computer (or My Computer).

  - "xxxxxxxxxxxx" is a string of 12 alphanumeric characters.
  - The icon name may vary depending on the language version of Windows you are using.

  If the icon is not displayed, mount the Card Slot.
  Mounting the Card Slot as the Network Drive

- **Check 2: Is the memory card inserted in the Card Slot?**

  Make sure that a memory card is inserted in the Card Slot. If it is not inserted, insert it.
  For information on how to insert a memory card, refer to Printing Photos .

- **Check 3: Is Read/write attribute set to Writable from USB PC?**

  When Read/write attribute in Device user settings is set to Writable from USB PC, you cannot access the memory card over network. Set Read/write attribute to Writable from LAN PC to write data to the memory card over network.

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

- **Check 4: Is Read/write attribute set to Not writable from PC?**

  When Read/write attribute in Device user settings is set to Not writable from PC, you can read data on the memory card, but cannot write data to it. To write data to the memory card in the Card Slot over network, set Read/write attribute to Writable from LAN PC.

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

- **Check 5: To share the printer's Card Slot with multiple computers over a network, set Set memory card sharing in LAN settings to Enable.**

  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

- **Check 6: Is another computer writing data to the memory card?**

  While one computer is writing a file into the memory card, other computers cannot access the same file. Wait for a while, then try again.

Page top

N056

Cannot Access to the Memory Card in the Card Slot Using MP Navigator EX

If "Cannot access the memory card" is displayed when you click Memory Card under Scan/Import Documents or Images on MP Navigator EX, confirm what the message says, then click Retry. If the message appears again, mount the Card Slot as the network drive. For details on how to mount the Card Slot, see Mounting the Card Slot as the Network Drive . Confirm the icon for the Card Slot appears on Computer (or My Computer), and try to access using MP Navigator EX.

Page top

N057

Cannot Access to the Card Slot Because of Some Security Settings on the Computer

- **Check 1: Make sure that Read/write attribute in Device user settings is set to Writable from LAN PC.**
  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
- **Check 2: Make sure that the memory card is inserted in the Card Slot.**
- **Check 3: To share the printer's Card Slot with multiple computers over a network, set Set memory card sharing in LAN settings to Enable.**
  Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD
- **Check 4: Disable the Windows Firewall function, or open port 137:139 to allow communication with the machine following the procedure below.**
  For information on other security software, refer to its instruction manual or manufacturer.

Important

- If you disabled the firewall function, disconnect your network from the Internet. You can do this by configuring your access point or router not to connect to the Internet or WAN.

- **To disable the Windows Firewall:**
  - **If you are using Windows 7:**
    1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.
    2. Click Turn Windows Firewall on or off.
    3. Select Turn off Windows Firewall.
  - **If you are using any operation system other than Windows 7:**
    1. Click Start > Control Panel > Security > Windows Firewall > Change settings.
       In Windows XP, click Start > Control Panel > Security Center > Windows Firewall.
    2. Select Off and click OK.
- **To open port 137:139:**
  - **If you are using Windows 7:**
    1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.

2. Click the Advanced settings.

   If the User Account Control screen is displayed, click Yes.

3. Right-click Inbound Rules, then select New Rule.

   If you set outbound rules, right-click Outbound Rules.

4. Select Port, then click Next.

5. Select TCP, then select Special local ports: and input "137", then click Next.

   If you open UDP ports, select UDP.
   If you open other ports, input the other port's number in Specific local ports:.

6. Select Allow the connection, then click Next.

7. Choose the profile for which this rule applies, then click Next.

8. Input any name and description, then click Finish.

9. Repeat steps 3 to 8 to open the other ports (138TCP, 138UDP, 139TCP, and 139UDP).

10. Confirm that the port names are added on the Inbound Rules screen, then close Windows Firewall.

- **If you are using any operation system other than Windows 7:**

1. Click Start > Control Panel > Security > Windows Firewall > Change settings.

   In Windows XP, click Start > Control Panel > Security Center > Windows Firewall.

2. Click the Exceptions tab, and click Add port.

3. On the Add a Port dialog box, input the following information, and click OK.

   Name: Input any name for the port.
   Port number: Input "137".
   Protocol: Select TCP.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3.

   On the Add a Port dialog box, input the same information as you did in step 3 except for selecting UDP in Protocol.

5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 to open the other ports (138TCP, 138UDP, 139TCP, and 139UDP).

6. Confirm that the port names are added on the Exceptions sheet, and click OK.

- **Check 5: Change the workgroup name to "WORKGROUP" following the procedure below.**

1. Right-click Computer, select Properties, then click Change settings.

   In Windows Vista, right-click Computer, select Properties, then click Change settings.
   In Windows XP, right-click My Computer, then select Properties.

2. Click the Computer Name tab, then click Change.

3. Change the workgroup name to "WORKGROUP", then click OK.

- **Check 6: Disconnect the network drive for the Card Slot and mount it again following the procedure below.**

1. Right-click Computer (or My Computer), and select Disconnect Network Drive.

2. Select the network drive to disconnect, then click OK.

3. Remount the Card Slot using the Canon IJ Network Tool.

   Using the Card Slot over a Network

Page top

N058

Date Modified of Files Changes When Saving Them on the Memory Card over Network

- **Check: Does the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility run?**

  If you write files to a memory card over a network when the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility is not running, the Date Modified of the files will change. Make sure to start up the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility before you write files to a memory card over the network.

Page top

Appendix

Restrictions
Initial Values Set at Factory (Network)
Using the Card Slot over a Network

Page top

N002

Restrictions

If you use a printer over the wireless LAN, the printer may recognize nearby wireless systems, you should set a network key (WEP, WPA, or WPA2) to the access point to encrypt wireless transmission. Wireless communication with a product that does not comply with the Wi-Fi standard cannot be guaranteed.

Connecting with too many computers may affect the printer performance, such as printing speed.

Page top

N003

Initial Values Set at Factory (Network)

Item	Initial Values
Enable/disable LAN	Disable LAN
SSID	BJNPSETUP
Communication mode	Infrastructure
Wireless Security	Disable
IP address	Getting automatically
Printer name setting*	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
IPv4/IPv6 setting	IPv4
Set memory card sharing	Enable
Enable/disable WSD (WSD settings)	Enable
Timeout setting (WSD settings)	1 minute
LLTD setting	Enable
Enable/disable Bonjour (Bonjour settings)	Enable
Service name (Bonjour settings)*	Canon MGXXXX series _XXXXXXXXXXX
LPR service advertising (Bonjour settings)	OFF
LPR protocol setting	Enable

("X" represents an alphanumeric character ranging from 0 to 9 and A to F.)

* The initial value in this item varies by machine. You can check the value in this item using the Operation Panel on the machine.

Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD

Page top

N004

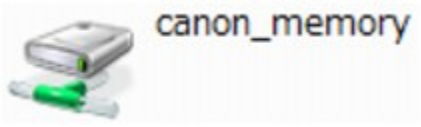
Using the Card Slot over a Network

Confirming Whether the Card Slot is Mounted
Mounting the Card Slot as the Network Drive
Restrictions on Card Slot Use over a Network

Confirming Whether the Card Slot is Mounted

The Card Slot must be mounted to use it over a network.

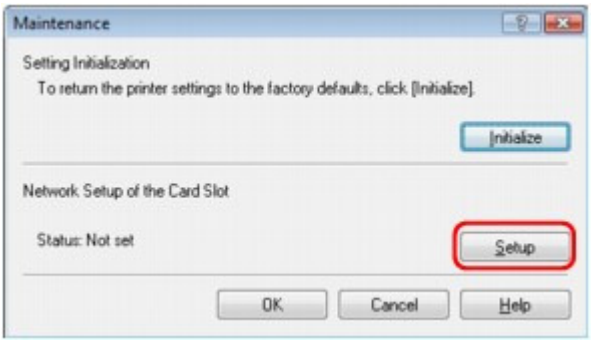
When the Card Slot is mounted, the following icon appears on Computer (or My Computer). If the icon does not appear, see Cannot Use the Card Slot .



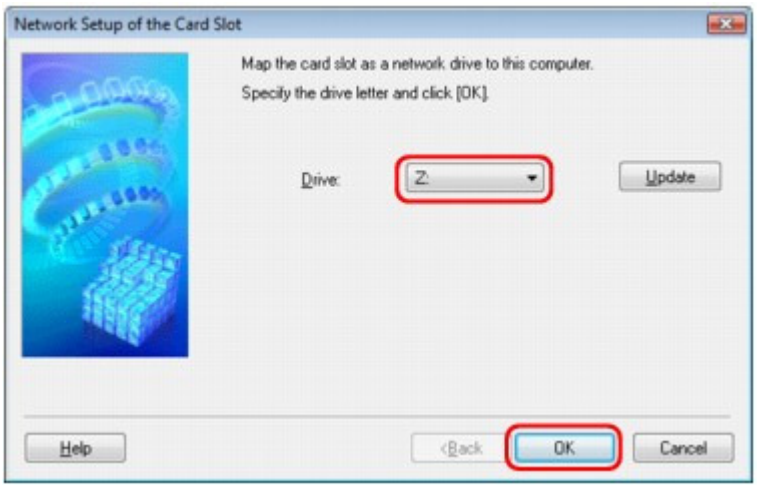
If these icons are not found, the network drive for the Card Slot is not mounted yet. For details on how to mount the Card Slot, see Mounting the Card Slot as the Network Drive .

Mounting the Card Slot as the Network Drive

1. **Start up the Canon IJ Network Tool.**
   Starting up Canon IJ Network Tool
2. **Select the machine.**
3. **Select Maintenance on the Settings menu.**
4. **Click Setup.**



5. **Specify the drive letter, then click OK.**



6. **Confirm that the**  **canon_memory icon for the Card Slot appears on Computer (or My Computer).**

Note

- If the Card Slot cannot be mounted properly, see Cannot Mount the Card Slot .

Restrictions on Card Slot Use over a Network

- **The Card Slot can be shared by multiple computers, if the machine is connected to a network. Multiple computers can read files from a memory card in the Card Slot at the same time. However, while one computer is writing a file into a memory card, other computers cannot access the same file.**
- **If your computer joins a domain, the Card Slot may not be mounted as the network drive.**
- **If you use the memory card stored the large size files or many files, a large amount of card access may be generated. In this case, the operation in the memory card may be impossible or slow. Operate after the Access lamp of the machine is lit.**
- **When you access the network drive for the Card Slot over the network, file names consisting of eight or less lowercase letters (not including its extension) may be shown in uppercase.**
  For example, a file name such as "abcdefg.doc" will be "ABCDEFG.DOC", while a name such as "AbcdeFG.doc" will appear the same.
  The file is not actually renamed, but merely appears to be changed.
- **When the Read/write attribute setting of the machine is set to Writable from USB PC on Device user settings, you cannot access the network drive of the Card Slot. On the other hand, when this setting is set to Writable from LAN PC, the Card Slot is not detected via USB. Make sure that the Read/write attribute setting is set properly depending on your connection type. Select Not writable from PC to read files from a memory card via USB and over a network, although you cannot write files to a memory card in either way with this setting.**
  For details on how to change the machine setting, refer to Changing the Machine Settings on the LCD .
- **When the Read/write attribute setting of the machine is set to Writable from LAN PC on Device user settings, you can write files to a memory card from a computer connected to a network. Note that it may increase the risk that the data on the memory card is infected by computer viruses or accessed illegally. It is recommended to use the access control function of the machine or connect**

to the Internet via a router. For information on using a router, contact your Internet service provider or a network device manufacturer.

- **If you write files to a memory card over a network when the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility is not running, the Date Modified of the files may not be proper. Make sure to start up the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility before you write files to a memory card over the network. For details on how to use the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility, refer to the online help of the Canon IJ Network Scan Utility.**

Note

- If the following occurs when using the network drive for the Card Slot over a network, see Cannot Use the Card Slot .
  - Cannot access the Card Slot after the network setup of the Card Slot is complete
  - Can read the memory card in the Card Slot, but cannot write to it
  - The Card Slot is disconnected
  - The Date Modified of files changes when saving them in the network drive for the Card Slot

Page top

Glossary

About Technical Terms

Page top

N100

About Technical Terms

In this section, technical terms used in the manual are explained.

A
B
C
D
F
I
K
L
M
O
P
R
S
T
U
W

A

- **Access Point**

  A wireless transceiver or base station that receives information from wireless clients/the machine and rebroadcasts it. Required in an infrastructure network.

- **Ad-hoc**

  Client computer and machine setting where wireless communication occurs on a peer-to-peer basis, i.e., all clients in with the same SSID/network name communicate directly with each other. No access point is required. This machine does not support ad-hoc communication.

- **Admin Password**

  Administration password in Canon IJ Network Tool to restrict access to network users. It must be entered to access the printer and change printer settings.

  When the printer's network settings are factory default, the admin password does not have to been entered.

- **AES**

  An encryption method. It is optional for WPA. Strong cryptographic algorithm adopted within U.S. government organizations for information processing.

- **Authentication Method**

  The method that an access point uses to authenticate a printer through a wireless LAN. The methods are agreeable each other.

  When using WEP as an encryption method, the authentication method is able to fix to Open System or Shared Key. (The default authentication method is Auto.)

  For WPA/WPA2, authentication method is PSK.

  - Auto

The printer automatically changes its authentication method to match the access point.

- Open System
  In this authentication method, the communication partner is authenticated without using WEP key even if Use WEP is selected.
- Shared Key
  In this authentication method, the communication partner is authenticated using the WEP key that was set for encryption.

B

- **Bonjour**

  A service built into Mac OS X operating system to detect the connectable devices on a network automatically.

C

- **Channel**

  Frequency channel for wireless communication. In the infrastructure mode, the channel is automatically adjusted to match that set to the access point. This machine supports channels 1 to 13. Note that the number of channels that can be used for your wireless LAN varies depending on the region or country.

D

- **Default Gateway**

  A relay device to connect to another network such as a router or a computer.

- **DHCP server functionality**

  The router or the access point assigns an IP address automatically whenever the printer or the personal computer on a network starts up.

F

- **Firewall**

  It is a system that prevents an unlawful computer access in the network. To prevent, you can use the firewall function of a broadband router, the security software installed in the computer, or operation system for computer.

I

- **IEEE 802.11b**

  International standard for wireless LAN using the 2.4 GHz frequency range with a throughput of up to 11 Mbps.

- **IEEE 802.11g**

  International standard for wireless LAN using the 2.4 GHz frequency range with a throughput of up to 54 Mbps. Compatible with 802.11b.

- **IEEE 802.11n**

  International standard for wireless LAN using the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency ranges. Even when using two or more antennas simultaneously or obtaining a bigger transfer rate than before by using multiple communication channels at the same time, the transmission speed may be influenced by the connected apparatus.

  At the maximum transfer rate of 600 Mbps, it is possible to communicate with multiple computer terminals within a dozen or so metre radius.

Compatible with 802.11b and 802.11g.

- **Infrastructure**

  Client computer and machine setup where all wireless communications pass through an access point.

- **IP Address**

  A unique number with four parts separated by dots. Every network device that is connected to the Internet has an IP address. Example: 192.168.0.1

  An IP address is usually assigned by an access point or a DHCP server of the router automatically.

  For the procedure to check the IP address of the printer, see Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the Machine .

- **IPv4/IPv6**

  They are internetwork-layer protocol used on the internet. IPv4 uses 32-bit addresses and IPv6 uses 128-bit addresses.

K

- **Key Format**

  Select either ASCII or Hex as the WEP key format. The character that can be used for the WEP key differs depending on the selected key formats.

  - ASCII
    Specify with a 5 or 13-character string that can include alphanumeric and underscore "_" characters. It is case-sensitive.
  - Hex
    Specify a 10-digit or 26-digit string that can contain hexadecimal (0 to 9, A to F, and a to f).

- **Key Length**

  Length of the WEP key. Select either 64 bits or 128 bits. Longer key length allows you to set a more complex WEP key.

L

- **Link Quality**

  The status of connection between the access point and the printer excluding noise (interference) is indicated with a value from 0 to 100%.

- **LLTD**

  A Link Layer protocol built in Windows 7 or Windows Vista for network topology discovery and quality of service diagnostics.

  LLTD is used by its Network Map feature to display a graphical representation of the local network.

- **LPR**

  A platform-independent printing protocol used in TCP/IP networks. It is not supported bidirectional communication.

M

- **MAC Address**

  Also known as the physical address. A unique and permanent hardware identifier that is assigned to network devices by its manufacturer. MAC addresses are 48 bits long and are written as a hexadecimal number separated by colons, i.e., 11:22:33:44:55:66. To check the MAC address of this machine, see Checking the IP Address or the MAC Address of the

Machine.

O

- **Operation Status**

  Indicates the status on whether the printer can be used.

P

- **PSK**

  An encryption method employed by WPA/WPA2.

R

- **Router**

  A relay device to connect to another network.

S

- **Signal Strength**

  The strength of the signal received by the printer from the access point is indicated with a value from 0 to 100%.

- **SSID**

  Unique label for wireless LAN. It is often represented such as a network name or an access point name.

  SSID distinguishes one wireless LAN from another to prevent interference.

  The printer and all clients on a wireless LAN must use the same SSID in order to communicate with each other. The SSID can be up to 32 characters long, and is made up of alphanumeric characters. The SSID may also be referred to by its network name.

- **Stealth**

  In the stealth mode, an access point hides itself by not broadcasting its SSID. The client must specify the SSID set to the access point to detect it.

- **Subnet Mask**

  IP address has two components, the network address and the host address. Subnet Mask used to calculate the Subnet Mask address from the IP address. A Subnet Mask is usually assigned by an access point or a DHCP server of the router automatically.

  Example:
  IP Address: 192.168.127.123
  Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
  Subnet Mask Address: 192.168.127.0

T

- **TCP/IP**

  Suite of communications protocols used to connect hosts on the Internet or the LAN. This protocol allows different terminals to communicate with each other.

- **TKIP**

  An encryption protocol employed by WPA/WPA2.

U

- **USB**

  Serial interface designed to enable you to "hot-swap" devices, i.e., by plugging and unplugging them without turning off the power.

W

- **WCN (Windows Connect Now)**

  Users running Windows Vista or later can easily create network configuration settings and transmit them to the access point using a USB flash drive (WCN-UFD). Alternatively, they can obtain the setting information directly via wireless network without using a USB flash drive (WCN-NET).

- **WEP/WEP Key**

  An encryption method employed by IEEE 802.11. Shared security key used to encrypt and decrypt data sent over wireless networks. This printer supports key length of 64 bits or 128 bits, key format of ASCII code or Hexadecimal, and key number of 1 to 4.

- **Wi-Fi**

  International association that certifies interoperability of wireless LAN products based on the IEEE 802.11 specification.

  This machine is a Wi-Fi authorized product.

- **Wireless LAN**

  A network that, instead of being connected by physical wires, is connected by a wireless technology, such as Wi-Fi.

- **WPA**

  Security framework announced by the Wi-Fi Alliance in October 2002. The security has been strengthened more than WEP.

  - Authentication
    WPA defines the following authentication methods: PSK that can be used without an authentication server, plus WPA-802.1x that do require an authentication server.
    This machine supports WPA-PSK.
  - Passphrase
    This encrypted key is used to perform WPA-PSK authentication.
    The passphrase should be a string of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters or a 64-digit hexadecimal value.

- **WPA2**

  Security framework released by the Wi-Fi Alliance in September 2004 as a later version of WPA. Provides a stronger encryption mechanism through Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).

  - Authentication
    WPA2 defines the following authentication methods: PSK that can be used without an authentication server, plus WPA2-802.1x that do require an authentication server.
    This machine supports WPA2-PSK.
  - Passphrase
    This encrypted key is used to perform WPA2-PSK authentication.
    The passphrase should be a string of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters or a 64-digit hexadecimal value.

- **WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)**

  WPS is a standard for easy and secure establishment of a wireless network.
  There are 2 primary methods used in the Wi-Fi Protected Setup:
  PIN entry: a mandatory method of setup for all WPS certified devices
  Push button configuration (PBC): an actual push button on the hardware or through a simulated push button in the software.

Page top